PIC18F6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720 Data Sheet

64/80-Pin High-Performance, 256 Kbit to 1 Mbit Enhanced Flash Microcontrollers with A/D

Note the following details of the code protection feature on Microchip devices:

- Microchip products meet the specification contained in their particular Microchip Data Sheet.
- Microchip believes that its family of products is one of the most secure families of its kind on the market today, when used in the intended manner and under normal conditions.
- There are dishonest and possibly illegal methods used to breach the code protection feature. All of these methods, to our knowledge, require using the Microchip products in a manner outside the operating specifications contained in Microchip's Data Sheets. Most likely, the person doing so is engaged in theft of intellectual property.
- Microchip is willing to work with the customer who is concerned about the integrity of their code.
- Neither Microchip nor any other semiconductor manufacturer can guarantee the security of their code. Code protection does not mean that we are guaranteeing the product as “unbreakable.”

Code protection is constantly evolving. We at Microchip are committed to continuously improving the code protection features of our products. Attempts to break Microchip’s code protection feature may be a violation of the Digital Millennium Copyright Act. If such acts allow unauthorized access to your software or other copyrighted work, you may have a right to sue for relief under that Act.

QUALITY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM
CERTIFIED BY DNV

Microchip received ISO/TS-16949:2002 quality system certification for its worldwide headquarters, design and wafer fabrication facilities in Chandler and Tempe, Arizona and Mountain View, California in October 2003. The Company’s quality system processes and procedures are for its PICmicro® 8-bit MCUs, KEELOQ® code hopping devices, Serial EEPROMs, microperipherals, nonvolatile memory and analog products. In addition, Microchip’s quality system for the design and manufacture of development systems is ISO 9001:2000 certified.

PIC18F6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720

64/80-Pin High-Performance, 256 Kbit to 1 Mbit Enhanced Flash Microcontrollers with A/D

High-Performance RISC CPU:

- C compiler optimized architecture/instruction set:
  - Source code compatible with the PIC16 and PIC17 instruction sets
- Linear program memory addressing to 128 Kbytes
- Linear data memory addressing to 3840 bytes
- 1 Kbyte of data EEPROM
- Up to 10 MIPs operation:
  - DC – 40 MHz osc./clock input
  - 4 MHz – 10 MHz osc./clock input with PLL active
- 16-bit wide instructions, 8-bit wide data path
- Priority levels for interrupts
- 31-level, software accessible hardware stack
- 8 x 8 Single Cycle Hardware Multiplier

External Memory Interface (PIC18F8X20 Devices Only):

- Address capability of up to 2 Mbytes
- 16-bit interface

Peripheral Features:

- High current sink/source 25 mA/25 mA
- Four external interrupt pins
- Timer0 module: 8-bit/16-bit timer/counter
- Timer1 module: 16-bit timer/counter
- Timer2 module: 8-bit timer/counter
- Timer3 module: 16-bit timer/counter
- Timer4 module: 8-bit timer/counter
- Secondary oscillator clock option – Timer1/Timer3
- Five Capture/Compare/PWM (CCP) modules:
  - Capture is 16-bit, max. resolution 6.25 ns (T_{CY}/16)
  - Compare is 16-bit, max. resolution 100 ns (T_{CY})
  - PWM output: PWM resolution is 1 to 10-bit
- Master Synchronous Serial Port (MSSP) module with two modes of operation:
  - 3-wire SPI™ (supports all 4 SPI modes)
  - I^{2}C™ Master and Slave mode
- Two Addressable USART modules:
  - Supports RS-485 and RS-232
- Parallel Slave Port (PSP) module

Analog Features:

- 10-bit, up to 16-channel Analog-to-Digital Converter (A/D):
  - Conversion available during Sleep
- Programmable 16-level Low-Voltage Detection (LVD) module:
  - Supports interrupt on Low-Voltage Detection
- Programmable Brown-out Reset (PBOR)
- Dual analog comparators:
  - Programmable input/output configuration

Special Microcontroller Features:

- 100,000 erase/write cycle Enhanced Flash program memory typical
- 1,000,000 erase/write cycle Data EEPROM memory typical
- 1 second programming time
- Flash/Data EEPROM Retention: > 40 years
- Self-reprogrammable under software control
- Power-on Reset (POR), Power-up Timer (PWRT) and Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST)
- Watchdog Timer (WDT) with its own On-Chip RC Oscillator for reliable operation
- Programmable code protection
- Power saving Sleep mode
- Selectable oscillator options including:
  - 4X Phase Lock Loop (of primary oscillator)
  - Secondary Oscillator (32 kHz) clock input
- In-Circuit Serial Programming™ (ICSP™) via two pins
- MPLAB® In-Circuit Debug (ICD) via two pins

CMOS Technology:

- Low-power, high-speed Flash technology
- Fully static design
- Wide operating voltage range (2.0V to 5.5V)
- Industrial and Extended temperature ranges

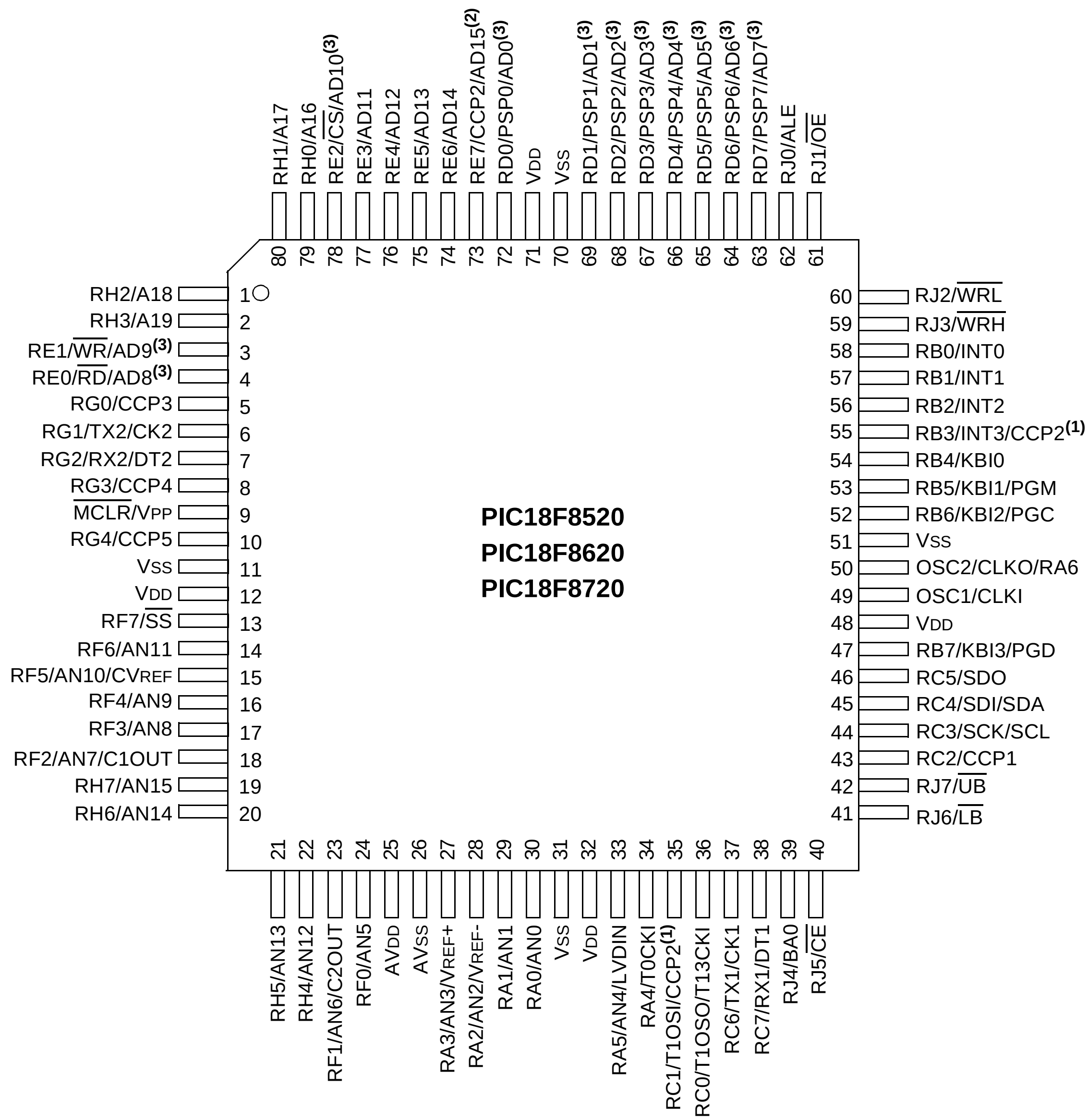
Device	Program Memory		Data Memory		I/O	10-bit A/D (ch)	CCP (PWM)	MSSP		USART	Timers 8-bit/16-bit	Ext Bus	Max F_{OSC} (MHz)
	Bytes	# Single-Word Instructions	SRAM (bytes)	EEPROM (bytes)				SPI	Master I^{2}C				
PIC18F6520	32K	16384	2048	1024	52	12	5	Y	Y	2	2/3	N	40
PIC18F6620	64K	32768	3840	1024	52	12	5	Y	Y	2	2/3	N	25
PIC18F6720	128K	65536	3840	1024	52	12	5	Y	Y	2	2/3	N	25
PIC18F8520	32K	16384	2048	1024	68	16	5	Y	Y	2	2/3	Y	40
PIC18F8620	64K	32768	3840	1024	68	16	5	Y	Y	2	2/3	Y	25
PIC18F8720	128K	65536	3840	1024	68	16	5	Y	Y	2	2/3	Y	25

Pin Diagrams

PIC18F6620

Pin Diagrams (Continued)

80-Pin TQFP



Note 1: CCP2 is multiplexed with RC1 when CCP2MX is set.
2: CCP2 is multiplexed by default with RE7 when the device is configured in Microcontroller mode.
3: PSP is available only in Microcontroller mode.

Table of Contents

TO OUR VALUED CUSTOMERS

It is our intention to provide our valued customers with the best documentation possible to ensure successful use of your Microchip products. To this end, we will continue to improve our publications to better suit your needs. Our publications will be refined and enhanced as new volumes and updates are introduced.

If you have any questions or comments regarding this publication, please contact the Marketing Communications Department via E-mail at **docerrors@mail.microchip.com** or fax the **Reader Response Form** in the back of this data sheet to (480) 792-4150. We welcome your feedback.

Most Current Data Sheet

To obtain the most up-to-date version of this data sheet, please register at our Worldwide Web site at:

http://www.microchip.com

You can determine the version of a data sheet by examining its literature number found on the bottom outside corner of any page. The last character of the literature number is the version number, (e.g., DS30000A is version A of document DS30000).

Errata

An errata sheet, describing minor operational differences from the data sheet and recommended workarounds, may exist for current devices. As device/documentation issues become known to us, we will publish an errata sheet. The errata will specify the revision of silicon and revision of document to which it applies.

To determine if an errata sheet exists for a particular device, please check with one of the following:

- Microchip's Worldwide Web site; http://www.microchip.com
- Your local Microchip sales office (see last page)
- The Microchip Corporate Literature Center; U.S. FAX: (480) 792-7277

When contacting a sales office or the literature center, please specify which device, revision of silicon and data sheet (include literature number) you are using.

Customer Notification System

Register on our Web site at **www.microchip.com/cn** to receive the most current information on all of our products.

NOTES:

1.0 DEVICE OVERVIEW

This document contains device specific information for the following devices:

- PIC18F6520
- PIC18F6620
- PIC18F6720
- PIC18F8520
- PIC18F8620
- PIC18F8720

This family offers the same advantages of all PIC18 microcontrollers – namely, high computational performance at an economical price – with the addition of high endurance Enhanced Flash program memory. The PIC18FXX20 family also provides an enhanced range of program memory options and versatile analog features that make it ideal for complex, high-performance applications.

1.1 Key Features

1.1.1 EXPANDED MEMORY

The PIC18FXX20 family introduces the widest range of on-chip, Enhanced Flash program memory available on PICmicro® microcontrollers – up to 128 Kbyte (or 65,536 words), the largest ever offered by Microchip. For users with more modest code requirements, the family also includes members with 32 Kbyte or 64 Kbyte.

Other memory features are:

- **Data RAM and Data EEPROM:** The PIC18FXX20 family also provides plenty of room for application data. Depending on the device, either 2048 or 3840 bytes of data RAM are available. All devices have 1024 bytes of data EEPROM for long-term retention of nonvolatile data.
- **Memory Endurance:** The Enhanced Flash cells for both program memory and data EEPROM are rated to last for many thousands of erase/write cycles – up to 100,000 for program memory and 1,000,000 for EEPROM. Data retention without refresh is conservatively estimated to be greater than 40 years.

1.1.2 EXTERNAL MEMORY INTERFACE

In the event that 128 Kbytes of program memory is inadequate for an application, the PIC18F8X20 members of the family also implement an External Memory Interface. This allows the controller's internal program counter to address a memory space of up to 2 Mbytes, permitting a level of data access that few 8-bit devices can claim.

With the addition of new operating modes, the External Memory Interface offers many new options, including:

- Operating the microcontroller entirely from external memory
- Using combinations of on-chip and external memory, up to the 2-Mbyte limit
- Using external Flash memory for reprogrammable application code, or large data tables
- Using external RAM devices for storing large amounts of variable data

1.1.3 EASY MIGRATION

Regardless of the memory size, all devices share the same rich set of peripherals, allowing for a smooth migration path as applications grow and evolve.

The consistent pinout scheme used throughout the entire family also aids in migrating to the next larger device. This is true when moving between the 64-pin members, between the 80-pin members, or even jumping from 64-pin to 80-pin devices.

1.1.4 OTHER SPECIAL FEATURES

- **Communications:** The PIC18FXX20 family incorporates a range of serial communications peripherals, including 2 independent USARTs and a Master SSP module, capable of both SPI and I^{2}C (Master and Slave) modes of operation. For PIC18F8X20 devices, one of the general purpose I/O ports can be reconfigured as an 8-bit Parallel Slave Port for direct processor-to-processor communications.
- **CCP Modules:** All devices in the family incorporate five Capture/Compare/PWM modules to maximize flexibility in control applications. Up to four different time bases may be used to perform several different operations at once.
- **Analog Features:** All devices in the family feature 10-bit A/D converters, with up to 16 input channels, as well as the ability to perform conversions during Sleep mode. Also included are dual analog comparators with programmable input and output configuration, a programmable Low-Voltage Detect module and a programmable Brown-out Reset module.
- **Self-programmability:** These devices can write to their own program memory spaces under internal software control. By using a bootloader routine located in the protected Boot Block at the top of program memory, it becomes possible to create an application that can update itself in the field.

1.2 Details on Individual Family Members

The PIC18FXX20 devices are available in 64-pin and 80-pin packages. They are differentiated from each other in five ways:

1. Flash program memory (32 Kbytes for PIC18FX520 devices, 64 Kbytes for PIC18FX620 devices and 128 Kbytes for PIC18FX720 devices)
2. Data RAM (2048 bytes for PIC18FX520 devices, 3840 bytes for PIC18FX620 and PIC18FX720 devices)
3. A/D channels (12 for PIC18F6X20 devices, 16 for PIC18F8X20)
4. I/O pins (52 on PIC18F6X20 devices, 68 on PIC18F8X20)
5. External program memory interface (present only on PIC18F8X20 devices)

All other features for devices in the PIC18FXX20 family are identical. These are summarized in Table 1-1.

Block diagrams of the PIC18F6X20 and PIC18F8X20 devices are provided in Figure 1-1 and Figure 1-2, respectively. The pinouts for these device families are listed in Table 1-2.

TABLE 1-1: PIC18FXX20 DEVICE FEATURES

Features	PIC18F6520	PIC18F6620	PIC18F6720	PIC18F8520	PIC18F8620	PIC18F8720
Operating Frequency	DC – 40 MHz	DC – 25 MHz	DC – 25 MHz	DC – 40 MHz	DC – 25 MHz	DC – 25 MHz
Program Memory (Bytes)	32K	64K	128K	32K	64K	128K
Program Memory (Instructions)	16384	32768	65536	16384	32768	65536
Data Memory (Bytes)	2048	3840	3840	2048	3840	3840
Data EEPROM Memory (Bytes)	1024	1024	1024	1024	1024	1024
External Memory Interface	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Interrupt Sources	17	17	17	18	18	18
I/O Ports	Ports A, B, C, D, E, F, G	Ports A, B, C, D, E, F, G	Ports A, B, C, D, E, F, G	Ports A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, J	Ports A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, J	Ports A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, J
Timers	5	5	5	5	5	5
Capture/Compare/ PWM Modules	5	5	5	5	5	5
Serial Communications	MSSP, Addressable USART (2)	MSSP, Addressable USART (2)	MSSP, Addressable USART (2)	MSSP, Addressable USART (2)	MSSP, Addressable USART (2)	MSSP, Addressable USART (2)
Parallel Communications	PSP	PSP	PSP	PSP	PSP	PSP
10-bit Analog-to-Digital Module	12 input channels	12 input channels	12 input channels	16 input channels	16 input channels	16 input channels
Resets (and Delays)	POR, BOR, RESET Instruction, Stack Full, Stack Underflow (PWRT, OST)	POR, BOR, RESET Instruction, Stack Full, Stack Underflow (PWRT, OST)	POR, BOR, RESET Instruction, Stack Full, Stack Underflow (PWRT, OST)	POR, BOR, RESET Instruction, Stack Full, Stack Underflow (PWRT, OST)	POR, BOR, RESET Instruction, Stack Full, Stack Underflow (PWRT, OST)	POR, BOR, RESET Instruction, Stack Full, Stack Underflow (PWRT, OST)
Programmable Low-Voltage Detect	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Programmable Brown-out Reset	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Instruction Set	77 Instructions	77 Instructions	77 Instructions	77 Instructions	77 Instructions	77 Instructions
Package	64-pin TQFP	64-pin TQFP	64-pin TQFP	80-pin TQFP	80-pin TQFP	80-pin TQFP

FIGURE 1-1: PIC18F6X20 BLOCK DIAGRAM

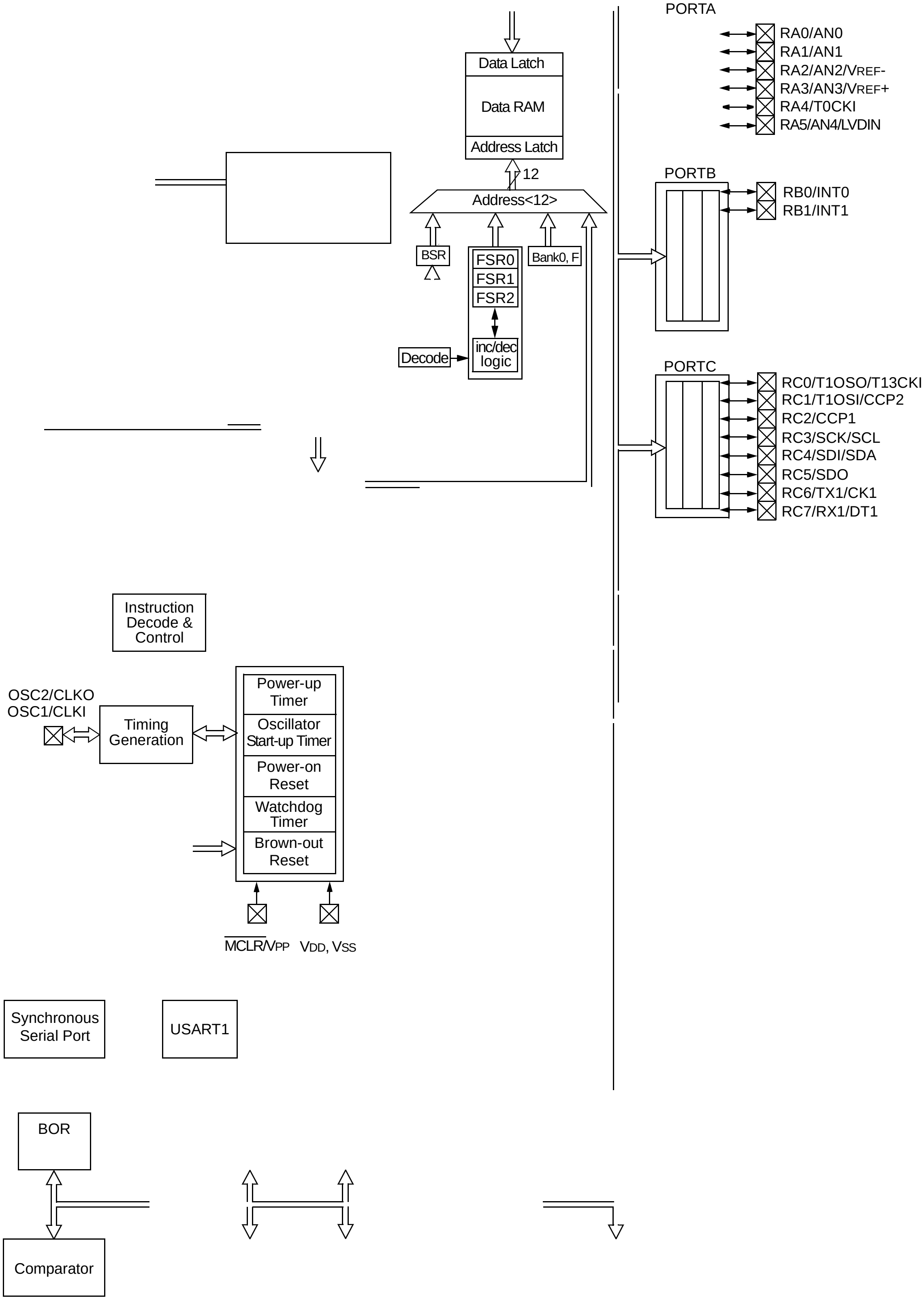
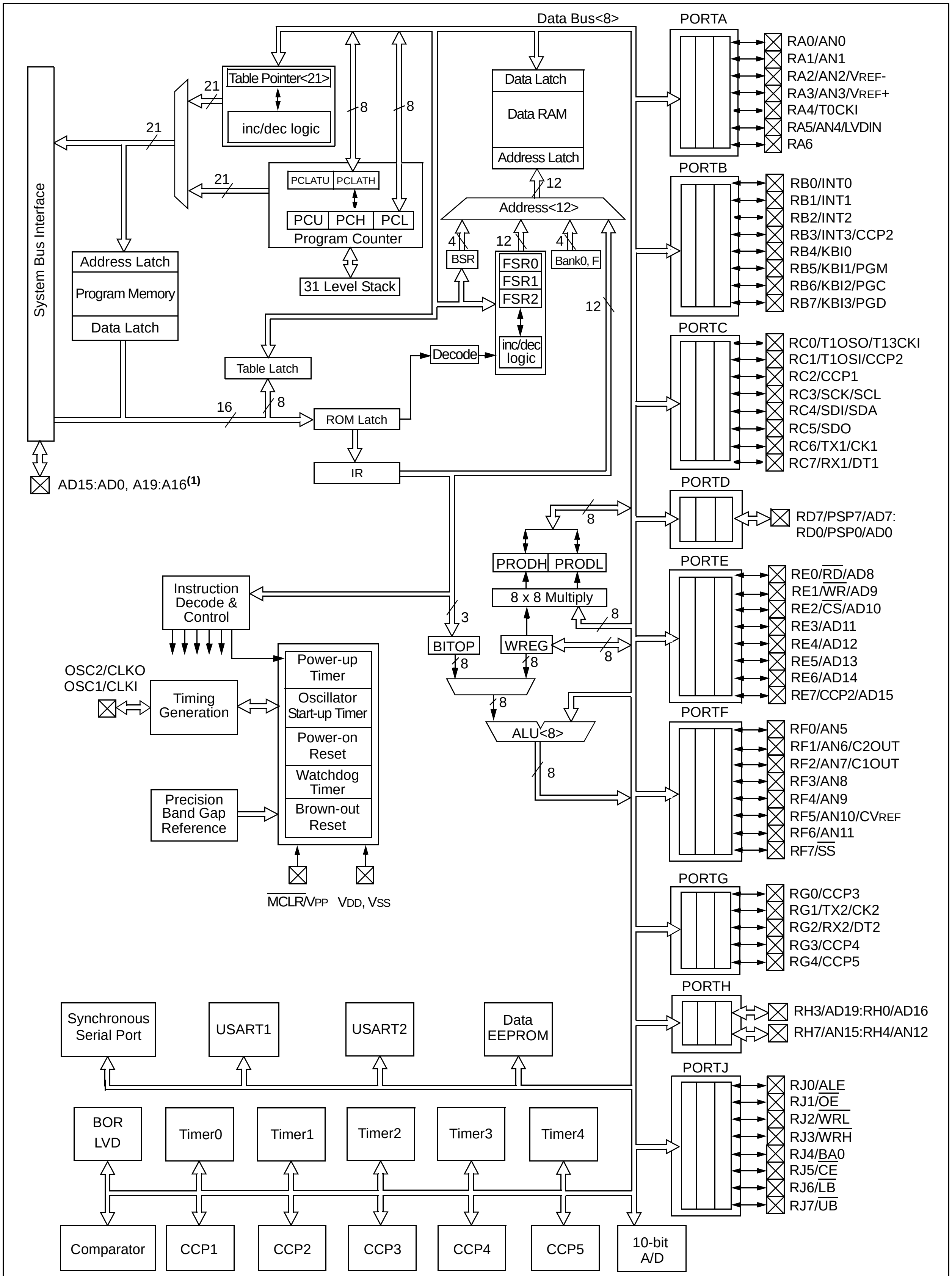


FIGURE 1-2: PIC18F8X20 BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: External memory interface pins are physically multiplexed with PORTD (AD7:AD0), PORTE (AD15:AD8) and PORTH (A19:A16).

TABLE 1-2: PIC18FXX20 PINOUT I/O DESCRIPTIONS

Pin Name	Pin Number		Pin Type	Buffer Type	Description
	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20			
$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$/VPP	7	9			Master Clear (input) or programming voltage (output).
$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$			I	ST	Master Clear (Reset) input. This pin is an active-low Reset to the device.
VPP			P		Programming voltage input.
OSC1/CLKI	39	49			Oscillator crystal or external clock input.
OSC1			I	CMOS/ST	Oscillator crystal input or external clock source input. ST buffer when configured in RC mode; otherwise CMOS.
CLKI			I	CMOS	External clock source input. Always associated with pin function OSC1 (see OSC1/CLKI, OSC2/CLKO pins).
OSC2/CLKO/RA6	40	50			Oscillator crystal or clock output.
OSC2			O	—	Oscillator crystal output. Connects to crystal or resonator in Crystal Oscillator mode.
CLKO			O	—	In RC mode, OSC2 pin outputs CLKO, which has 1/4 the frequency of OSC1 and denotes the instruction cycle rate.
RA6			I/O	TTL	General purpose I/O pin.

Legend: TTL = TTL compatible input; CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output; ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels; Analog = Analog input; I = Input; O = Output; P = Power; OD = Open-Drain (no P diode to VDD)

Note 1: Alternate assignment for CCP2 when CCP2MX is not selected (all operating modes except Microcontroller).

2: Default assignment when CCP2MX is set.

3: External memory interface functions are only available on PIC18F8X20 devices.

4: CCP2 is multiplexed with this pin by default when configured in Microcontroller mode. Otherwise, it is multiplexed with either RB3 or RC1.

5: PORTH and PORTJ are only available on PIC18F8X20 (80-pin) devices.

6: AVDD must be connected to a positive supply and AVSS must be connected to a ground reference for proper operation of the part in user or ICSP modes. See parameter D001A for details.

TABLE 1-2: PIC18FXX20 PINOUT I/O DESCRIPTIONS (CONTINUED)

Pin Name	Pin Number		Pin Type	Buffer Type	Description
	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20			
					PORTA is a bidirectional I/O port.
RA0/AN0	24	30			
RA0			I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
AN0			I	Analog	Analog input 0.
RA1/AN1	23	29			
RA1			I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
AN1			I	Analog	Analog input 1.
RA2/AN2/VREF-	22	28			
RA2			I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
AN2			I	Analog	Analog input 2.
VREF-			I	Analog	A/D reference voltage (Low) input.
RA3/AN3/VREF+	21	27			
RA3			I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
AN3			I	Analog	Analog input 3.
VREF+			I	Analog	A/D reference voltage (High) input.
RA4/T0CKI	28	34			
RA4			I/O	ST/OD	Digital I/O – Open-drain when configured as output.
T0CKI			I	ST	Timer0 external clock input.
RA5/AN4/LVDIN	27	33			
RA5			I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
AN4			I	Analog	Analog input 4.
LVDIN			I	Analog	Low-Voltage Detect input.
RA6					See the OSC2/CLKO/RA6 pin.

Legend: TTL = TTL compatible input; CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output; ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels; Analog = Analog input; I = Input; O = Output; P = Power; OD = Open-Drain (no P diode to VDD)

Note 1: Alternate assignment for CCP2 when CCP2MX is not selected (all operating modes except Microcontroller).

2: Default assignment when CCP2MX is set.

3: External memory interface functions are only available on PIC18F8X20 devices.

4: CCP2 is multiplexed with this pin by default when configured in Microcontroller mode. Otherwise, it is multiplexed with either RB3 or RC1.

5: PORTH and PORTJ are only available on PIC18F8X20 (80-pin) devices.

6: AVDD must be connected to a positive supply and AVSS must be connected to a ground reference for proper operation of the part in user or ICSP modes. See parameter D001A for details.

TABLE 1-2: PIC18FXX20 PINOUT I/O DESCRIPTIONS (CONTINUED)

Pin Name	Pin Number		Pin Type	Buffer Type	Description
	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20			
					PORTB is a bidirectional I/O port. PORTB can be software programmed for internal weak pull-ups on all inputs.
RB0/INT0	48	58			
RB0			I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
INT0			I	ST	External interrupt 0.
RB1/INT1	47	57			
RB1			I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
INT1			I	ST	External interrupt 1.
RB2/INT2	46	56			
RB2			I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
INT2			I	ST	External interrupt 2.
RB3/INT3/CCP2	45	55			
RB3			I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
INT3			I/O	ST	External interrupt 3.
CCP2(1)			I/O	ST	Capture2 input, Compare2 output, PWM2 output.
RB4/KBI0	44	54			
RB4			I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
KBI0			I	ST	Interrupt-on-change pin.
RB5/KBI1/PGM	43	53			
RB5			I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
KBI1			I	ST	Interrupt-on-change pin.
PGM			I/O	ST	Low-Voltage ICSP Programming enable pin.
RB6/KBI2/PGC	42	52			
RB6			I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
KBI2			I	ST	Interrupt-on-change pin.
PGC			I/O	ST	In-Circuit Debugger and ICSP programming clock.
RB7/KBI3/PGD	37	47			
RB7			I/O	TTL	Digital I/O.
KBI3			I/O	ST	Interrupt-on-change pin.
PGD					In-Circuit Debugger and ICSP programming data.

Legend: TTL = TTL compatible input; CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output; ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels; Analog = Analog input; I = Input; O = Output; P = Power; OD = Open-Drain (no P diode to VDD)

Note 1: Alternate assignment for CCP2 when CCP2MX is not selected (all operating modes except Microcontroller).

2: Default assignment when CCP2MX is set.

3: External memory interface functions are only available on PIC18F8X20 devices.

4: CCP2 is multiplexed with this pin by default when configured in Microcontroller mode. Otherwise, it is multiplexed with either RB3 or RC1.

5: PORTH and PORTJ are only available on PIC18F8X20 (80-pin) devices.

6: AVDD must be connected to a positive supply and AVSS must be connected to a ground reference for proper operation of the part in user or ICSP modes. See parameter D001A for details.

TABLE 1-2: PIC18FXX20 PINOUT I/O DESCRIPTIONS (CONTINUED)

Pin Name	Pin Number PIC18F6X20	Pin Number PIC18F8X20	Pin Type	Buffer Type	Description
					PORTC is a bidirectional I/O port.
RC0/T1OSO/T13CKI	30	36			
RC0			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
T1OSO			O	—	Timer1 oscillator output.
T13CKI			I	ST	Timer1/Timer3 external clock input.
RC1/T1OSI/CCP2	29	35			
RC1			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
T1OSI			I	CMOS	Timer1 oscillator input.
CCP2**(2)**			I/O	ST	Capture2 input/Compare2 output/ PWM2 output.
RC2/CCP1	33	43			
RC2			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
CCP1			I/O	ST	Capture1 input/Compare1 output/ PWM1 output.
RC3/SCK/SCL	34	44			
RC3			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
SCK			I/O	ST	Synchronous serial clock input/output for SPI mode.
SCL			I/O	ST	Synchronous serial clock input/output for I^2C mode.
RC4/SDI/SDA	35	45			
RC4			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
SDI			I	ST	SPI data in.
SDA			I/O	ST	I^2C data I/O.
RC5/SDO	36	46			
RC5			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
SDO			O	—	SPI data out.
RC6/TX1/CK1	31	37			
RC6			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
TX1			O	—	USART 1 asynchronous transmit.
CK1			I/O	ST	USART 1 synchronous clock (see RX1/DT1).
RC7/RX1/DT1	32	38			
RC7			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
RX1			I	ST	USART 1 asynchronous receive.
DT1			I/O	ST	USART 1 synchronous data (see TX1/CK1).

Legend: TTL = TTL compatible input; CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output
ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels; Analog = Analog input
I = Input; O = Output
P = Power; OD = Open-Drain (no P diode to VDD)

Note 1: Alternate assignment for CCP2 when CCP2MX is not selected (all operating modes except Microcontroller).

2: Default assignment when CCP2MX is set.

3: External memory interface functions are only available on PIC18F8X20 devices.

4: CCP2 is multiplexed with this pin by default when configured in Microcontroller mode. Otherwise, it is multiplexed with either RB3 or RC1.

5: PORTH and PORTJ are only available on PIC18F8X20 (80-pin) devices.

6: AVDD must be connected to a positive supply and AVSS must be connected to a ground reference for proper operation of the part in user or ICSP modes. See parameter D001A for details.

TABLE 1-2: PIC18FXX20 PINOUT I/O DESCRIPTIONS (CONTINUED)

Pin Name	Pin Number		Pin Type	Buffer Type	Description
	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20			
					PORTD is a bidirectional I/O port. These pins have TTL input buffers when external memory is enabled.
RD0/PSP0/AD0	58	72			
RD0			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
PSP0			I/O	TTL	Parallel Slave Port data.
AD0(3)			I/O	TTL	External memory address/data 0.
RD1/PSP1/AD1	55	69			
RD1			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
PSP1			I/O	TTL	Parallel Slave Port data.
AD1(3)			I/O	TTL	External memory address/data 1.
RD2/PSP2/AD2	54	68			
RD2			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
PSP2			I/O	TTL	Parallel Slave Port data.
AD2(3)			I/O	TTL	External memory address/data 2.
RD3/PSP3/AD3	53	67			
RD3			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
PSP3			I/O	TTL	Parallel Slave Port data.
AD3(3)			I/O	TTL	External memory address/data 3.
RD4/PSP4/AD4	52	66			
RD4			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
PSP4			I/O	TTL	Parallel Slave Port data.
AD4(3)			I/O	TTL	External memory address/data 4.
RD5/PSP5/AD5	51	65			
RD5			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
PSP5			I/O	TTL	Parallel Slave Port data.
AD5(3)			I/O	TTL	External memory address/data 5.
RD6/PSP6/AD6	50	64			
RD6			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
PSP6			I/O	TTL	Parallel Slave Port data.
AD6(3)			I/O	TTL	External memory address/data 6.
RD7/PSP7/AD7	49	63			
RD7			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
PSP7			I/O	TTL	Parallel Slave Port data.
AD7(3)			I/O	TTL	External memory address/data 7.

Legend: TTL = TTL compatible input; CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output
ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels; Analog = Analog input
I = Input; O = Output
P = Power; OD = Open-Drain (no P diode to VDD)

Note 1: Alternate assignment for CCP2 when CCP2MX is not selected (all operating modes except Microcontroller).

2: Default assignment when CCP2MX is set.

3: External memory interface functions are only available on PIC18F8X20 devices.

4: CCP2 is multiplexed with this pin by default when configured in Microcontroller mode. Otherwise, it is multiplexed with either RB3 or RC1.

5: PORTH and PORTJ are only available on PIC18F8X20 (80-pin) devices.

6: AVDD must be connected to a positive supply and AVSS must be connected to a ground reference for proper operation of the part in user or ICSP modes. See parameter D001A for details.

TABLE 1-2: PIC18FXX20 PINOUT I/O DESCRIPTIONS (CONTINUED)

Pin Name	Pin Number		Pin Type	Buffer Type	Description
	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20			
					PORTE is a bidirectional I/O port.
RE0/$\overline{\text{RD}}$/AD8	2	4			
RE0			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
$\overline{\text{RD}}$			I	TTL	Read control for Parallel Slave Port (see $\overline{\text{WR}}$ and $\overline{\text{CS}}$ pins).
AD8(3)			I/O	TTL	External memory address/data 8.
RE1/$\overline{\text{WR}}$/AD9	1	3			
RE1			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
$\overline{\text{WR}}$			I	TTL	Write control for Parallel Slave Port (see $\overline{\text{CS}}$ and $\overline{\text{RD}}$ pins).
AD9(3)			I/O	TTL	External memory address/data 9.
RE2/$\overline{\text{CS}}$/AD10	64	78			
RE2			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
$\overline{\text{CS}}$			I	TTL	Chip select control for Parallel Slave Port (see $\overline{\text{RD}}$ and $\overline{\text{WR}}$).
AD10(3)			I/O	TTL	External memory address/data 10.
RE3/AD11	63	77			
RE3			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
AD11(3)			I/O	TTL	External memory address/data 11.
RE4/AD12	62	76			
RE4			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
AD12			I/O	TTL	External memory address/data 12.
RE5/AD13	61	75			
RE5			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
AD13(3)			I/O	TTL	External memory address/data 13.
RE6/AD14	60	74			
RE6			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
AD14(3)			I/O	TTL	External memory address/data 14.
RE7/CCP2/AD15	59	73			
RE7			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
CCP2(1,4)			I/O	ST	Capture2 input/Compare2 output/ PWM2 output.
AD15(3)			I/O	TTL	External memory address/data 15.

Legend:
TTL = TTL compatible input
ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels
I = Input
P = Power
CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output
Analog = Analog input
O = Output
OD = Open-Drain (no P diode to V_{DD})

Note 1: Alternate assignment for CCP2 when CCP2MX is not selected (all operating modes except Microcontroller).

2: Default assignment when CCP2MX is set.

3: External memory interface functions are only available on PIC18F8X20 devices.

4: CCP2 is multiplexed with this pin by default when configured in Microcontroller mode. Otherwise, it is multiplexed with either RB3 or RC1.

5: PORTH and PORTJ are only available on PIC18F8X20 (80-pin) devices.

6: AV_{DD} must be connected to a positive supply and AV_{SS} must be connected to a ground reference for proper operation of the part in user or ICSP modes. See parameter D001A for details.

TABLE 1-2: PIC18FXX20 PINOUT I/O DESCRIPTIONS (CONTINUED)

Pin Name	Pin Number		Pin Type	Buffer Type	Description
	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20			
					PORTF is a bidirectional I/O port.
RF0/AN5	18	24			
RF0			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
AN5			I	Analog	Analog input 5.
RF1/AN6/C2OUT	17	23			
RF1			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
AN6			I	Analog	Analog input 6.
C2OUT			O	ST	Comparator 2 output.
RF2/AN7/C1OUT	16	18			
RF2			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
AN7			I	Analog	Analog input 7.
C1OUT			O	ST	Comparator 1 output.
RF3/AN8	15	17			
RF1			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
AN8			I	Analog	Analog input 8.
RF4/AN9	14	16			
RF1			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
AN9			I	Analog	Analog input 9.
RF5/AN10/CVREF	13	15			
RF1			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
AN10			I	Analog	Analog input 10.
CVREF			O	Analog	Comparator VREF output.
RF6/AN11	12	14			
RF6			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
AN11			I	Analog	Analog input 11.
RF7/$\overline{SS}$	11	13			
RF7			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
$\overline{SS}$			I	TTL	SPI slave select input.

Legend:
TTL = TTL compatible input
CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output
ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels
Analog = Analog input
I = Input
O = Output
P = Power
OD = Open-Drain (no P diode to VDD)

Note 1: Alternate assignment for CCP2 when CCP2MX is not selected (all operating modes except Microcontroller).
2: Default assignment when CCP2MX is set.
3: External memory interface functions are only available on PIC18F8X20 devices.
4: CCP2 is multiplexed with this pin by default when configured in Microcontroller mode. Otherwise, it is multiplexed with either RB3 or RC1.
5: PORTH and PORTJ are only available on PIC18F8X20 (80-pin) devices.
6: AVDD must be connected to a positive supply and AVSS must be connected to a ground reference for proper operation of the part in user or ICSP modes. See parameter D001A for details.

TABLE 1-2: PIC18FXX20 PINOUT I/O DESCRIPTIONS (CONTINUED)

Pin Name	Pin Number		Pin Type	Buffer Type	Description
	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20			
					PORTG is a bidirectional I/O port.
RG0/CCP3	3	5			
RG0			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
CCP3			I/O	ST	Capture3 input/Compare3 output/ PWM3 output.
RG1/TX2/CK2	4	6			
RG1			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
TX2			O	—	USART 2 asynchronous transmit.
CK2			I/O	ST	USART 2 synchronous clock (see RX2/DT2).
RG2/RX2/DT2	5	7			
RG2			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
RX2			I	ST	USART 2 asynchronous receive.
DT2			I/O	ST	USART 2 synchronous data (see TX2/CK2).
RG3/CCP4	6	8			
RG3			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
CCP4			I/O	ST	Capture4 input/Compare4 output/ PWM4 output.
RG4/CCP5	8	10			
RG4			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
CCP5			I/O	ST	Capture5 input/Compare5 output/ PWM5 output.

Legend: TTL = TTL compatible input; CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output
ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels; Analog = Analog input
I = Input; O = Output
P = Power; OD = Open-Drain (no P diode to VDD)

Note 1: Alternate assignment for CCP2 when CCP2MX is not selected (all operating modes except Microcontroller).

2: Default assignment when CCP2MX is set.

3: External memory interface functions are only available on PIC18F8X20 devices.

4: CCP2 is multiplexed with this pin by default when configured in Microcontroller mode. Otherwise, it is multiplexed with either RB3 or RC1.

5: PORTH and PORTJ are only available on PIC18F8X20 (80-pin) devices.

6: AVDD must be connected to a positive supply and AVSS must be connected to a ground reference for proper operation of the part in user or ICSP modes. See parameter D001A for details.

TABLE 1-2: PIC18FXX20 PINOUT I/O DESCRIPTIONS (CONTINUED)

Pin Name	Pin Number		Pin Type	Buffer Type	Description
	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20			
					PORTH is a bidirectional I/O port[(5)].
RH0/A16	—	79			
RH0			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
A16			O	TTL	External memory address 16.
RH1/A17	—	80			
RH1			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
A17			O	TTL	External memory address 17.
RH2/A18	—	1			
RH2			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
A18			O	TTL	External memory address 18.
RH3/A19	—	2			
RH3			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
A19			O	TTL	External memory address 19.
RH4/AN12	—	22			
RH4			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
AN12			I	Analog	Analog input 12.
RH5/AN13	—	21			
RH5			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
AN13			I	Analog	Analog input 13.
RH6/AN14	—	20			
RH6			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
AN14			I	Analog	Analog input 14.
RH7/AN15	—	19			
RH7			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
AN15			I	Analog	Analog input 15.

Legend: TTL = TTL compatible input; CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output; ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels; Analog = Analog input; I = Input; O = Output; P = Power; OD = Open-Drain (no P diode to V_{DD})

Note 1: Alternate assignment for CCP2 when CCP2MX is not selected (all operating modes except Microcontroller).

2: Default assignment when CCP2MX is set.

3: External memory interface functions are only available on PIC18F8X20 devices.

4: CCP2 is multiplexed with this pin by default when configured in Microcontroller mode. Otherwise, it is multiplexed with either RB3 or RC1.

5: PORTH and PORTJ are only available on PIC18F8X20 (80-pin) devices.

6: AV_{DD} must be connected to a positive supply and AV_{SS} must be connected to a ground reference for proper operation of the part in user or ICSP modes. See parameter D001A for details.

					PORTJ is a bidirectional I/O port[5].
RJ0/ALE	—	62			
RJ0			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
ALE			O	TTL	External memory address latch enable.
RJ1/$\overline{OE}$	—	61			
RJ1			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
$\overline{OE}$			O	TTL	External memory output enable.
RJ2/$\overline{WRL}$	—	60			
RJ2			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
$\overline{WRL}$			O	TTL	External memory write low control.
RJ3/$\overline{WRH}$	—	59			
RJ3			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
$\overline{WRH}$			O	TTL	External memory write high control.
RJ4/BA0	—	39			
RJ4			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
BA0			O	TTL	External memory Byte Address 0 control.
RJ5/$\overline{CE}$	—	40			
RJ5			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
$\overline{CE}$			O	TTL	External memory chip enable control.
RJ6/$\overline{LB}$	—	41			
RJ6			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
$\overline{LB}$			O	TTL	External memory low byte select.
RJ7/$\overline{UB}$	—	42			
RJ7			I/O	ST	Digital I/O.
$\overline{UB}$			O	TTL	External memory high byte select.
VSS	9, 25, 41, 56	11, 31, 51, 70	P	—	Ground reference for logic and I/O pins.
VDD	10, 26, 38, 57	12, 32, 48, 71	P	—	Positive supply for logic and I/O pins.
AVSS[6]	20 0018 09.2vo a	26 bi	P	— , 71	Ground reference for analoglogi411.2rence for anal2.6(r an)12T.

2.0 OSCILLATOR CONFIGURATIONS

2.1 Oscillator Types

The PIC18FXX20 devices can be operated in eight different oscillator modes. The user can program three configuration bits (FOSC2, FOSC1 and FOSC0) to select one of these eight modes:

1. LP — Low-Power Crystal
2. XT — Crystal/Resonator
3. HS — High-Speed Crystal/Resonator
4. HS+PLL — High-Speed Crystal/Resonator with PLL enabled
5. RC — External Resistor/Capacitor
6. RCIO — External Resistor/Capacitor with I/O pin enabled
7. EC — External Clock
8. ECIO — External Clock with I/O pin enabled

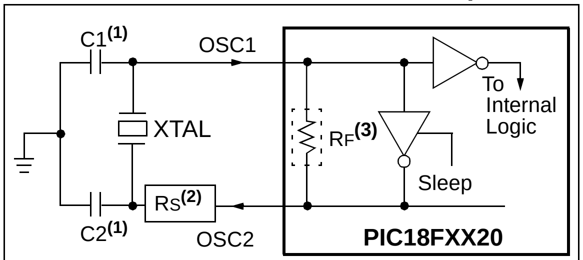
2.2 Crystal Oscillator/Ceramic Resonators

In XT, LP, HS or HS+PLL Oscillator modes, a crystal or ceramic resonator is connected to the OSC1 and OSC2 pins to establish oscillation. Figure 2-1 shows the pin connections.

The PIC18FXX20 oscillator design requires the use of a parallel cut crystal.

Note:	Use of a series cut crystal may give a frequency out of the crystal manufacturer's specifications.

FIGURE 2-1: CRYSTAL/CERAMIC RESONATOR OPERATION (HS, XT OR LP CONFIGURATION)



Note 1: See Table 2-1 and Table 2-2 for recommended values of C1 and C2.

2: A series resistor (RS) may be required for AT strip cut crystals.

3: RF varies with the oscillator mode chosen.

TABLE 2-1: CAPACITOR SELECTION FOR CERAMIC RESONATORS

Ranges Tested:			
Mode	**Freq**	**C1**	**C2**
XT	455 kHz 2.0 MHz 4.0 MHz	68-100 pF 15-68 pF 15-68 pF	68-100 pF 15-68 pF 15-68 pF
HS	8.0 MHz 16.0 MHz	10-68 pF 10-22 pF	10-68 pF 10-22 pF
These values are for design guidance only. See notes following this table.			
Resonators Used:			
2.0 MHz	Murata Erie CSA2.00MG		± 0.5%
4.0 MHz	Murata Erie CSA4.00MG		± 0.5%
8.0 MHz	Murata Erie CSA8.00MT		± 0.5%
16.0 MHz	Murata Erie CSA16.00MX		± 0.5%
All resonators used did not have built-in capacitors.			

Note 1: Higher capacitance increases the stability of the oscillator, but also increases the start-up time.

2: When operating below 3V VDD, or when using certain ceramic resonators at any voltage, it may be necessary to use high gain HS mode, try a lower frequency resonator, or switch to a crystal oscillator.

3: Since each resonator/crystal has its own characteristics, the user should consult the resonator/crystal manufacturer for appropriate values of external components, or verify oscillator performance.

TABLE 2-2: CAPACITOR SELECTION FOR CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR

Ranges Tested:			
Mode	**Freq**	**C1**	**C2**
LP	32 kHz	15-22 pF	15-22 pF
	200 kHz		
XT	1 MHz	15-22 pF	15-22 pF
	4 MHz		
HS	4 MHz	15-22 pF	15-22 pF
	8 MHz		
	20 MHz		

Capacitor values are for design guidance only.

These capacitors were tested with the above crystal frequencies for basic start-up and operation. **These values are not optimized**.

Different capacitor values may be required to produce acceptable oscillator operation. The user should test the performance of the oscillator over the expected V_{DD} and temperature range for the application.

See the notes following this table for additional information.

Note 1: Higher capacitance increases the stability of the oscillator, but also increases the start-up time.

2: When operating below 3V V_{DD}, or when using certain ceramic resonators at any voltage, it may be necessary to use the HS mode or switch to a crystal oscillator.

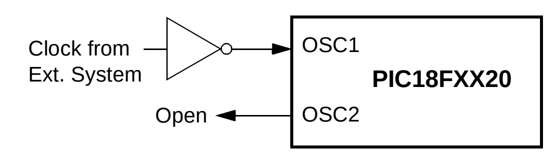
3: Since each resonator/crystal has its own characteristics, the user should consult the resonator/crystal manufacturer for appropriate values of external components, or verify oscillator performance.

4: R_S may be required to avoid overdriving crystals with low drive level specification.

5: Always verify oscillator performance over the V_{DD} and temperature range that is expected for the application.

An external clock source may also be connected to the OSC1 pin in the HS, XT and LP modes, as shown in Figure 2-2.

FIGURE 2-2: EXTERNAL CLOCK INPUT OPERATION (HS, XT OR LP OSC CONFIGURATION)

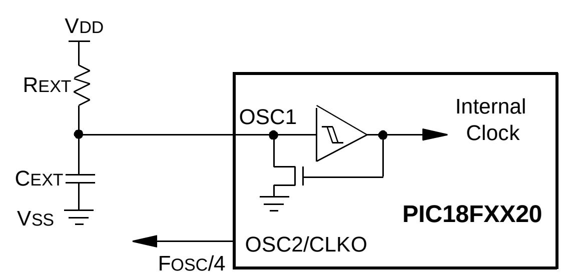


2.3 RC Oscillator

For timing insensitive applications, the “RC” and “RCIO” device options offer additional cost savings. The RC oscillator frequency is a function of the supply voltage, the resistor (R_{EXT}) and capacitor (C_{EXT}) values and the operating temperature. In addition to this, the oscillator frequency will vary from unit to unit, due to normal process parameter variation. Furthermore, the difference in lead frame capacitance between package types will also affect the oscillation frequency, especially for low C_{EXT} values. The user also needs to take into account variation due to tolerance of external R and C components used. Figure 2-3 shows how the R/C combination is connected.

In the RC Oscillator mode, the oscillator frequency divided by 4 is available on the OSC2 pin. This signal may be used for test purposes or to synchronize other logic.

FIGURE 2-3: RC OSCILLATOR MODE



Recommended values: $3\ k\Omega \le R_{EXT} \le 100\ k\Omega$

$C_{EXT} > 20$ pF

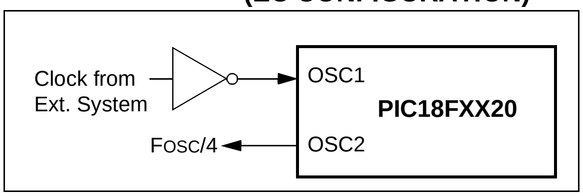
The RCIO Oscillator mode functions like the RC mode, except that the OSC2 pin becomes an additional general purpose I/O pin. The I/O pin becomes bit 6 of PORTA (RA6).

2.4 External Clock Input

The EC and ECIO Oscillator modes require an external clock source to be connected to the OSC1 pin. The feedback device between OSC1 and OSC2 is turned off in these modes to save current. There is a maximum 1.5 µs start-up required after a Power-on Reset, or wake-up from Sleep mode.

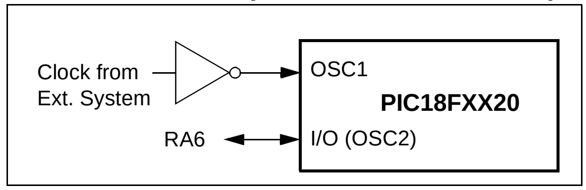
In the EC Oscillator mode, the oscillator frequency divided by 4 is available on the OSC2 pin. This signal may be used for test purposes or to synchronize other logic. Figure 2-4 shows the pin connections for the EC Oscillator mode.

FIGURE 2-4: EXTERNAL CLOCK INPUT OPERATION (EC CONFIGURATION)



The ECIO Oscillator mode functions like the EC mode, except that the OSC2 pin becomes an additional general purpose I/O pin. The I/O pin becomes bit 6 of PORTA (RA6). Figure 2-5 shows the pin connections for the ECIO Oscillator mode.

FIGURE 2-5: EXTERNAL CLOCK INPUT OPERATION (ECIO CONFIGURATION)



2.5 HS/PLL

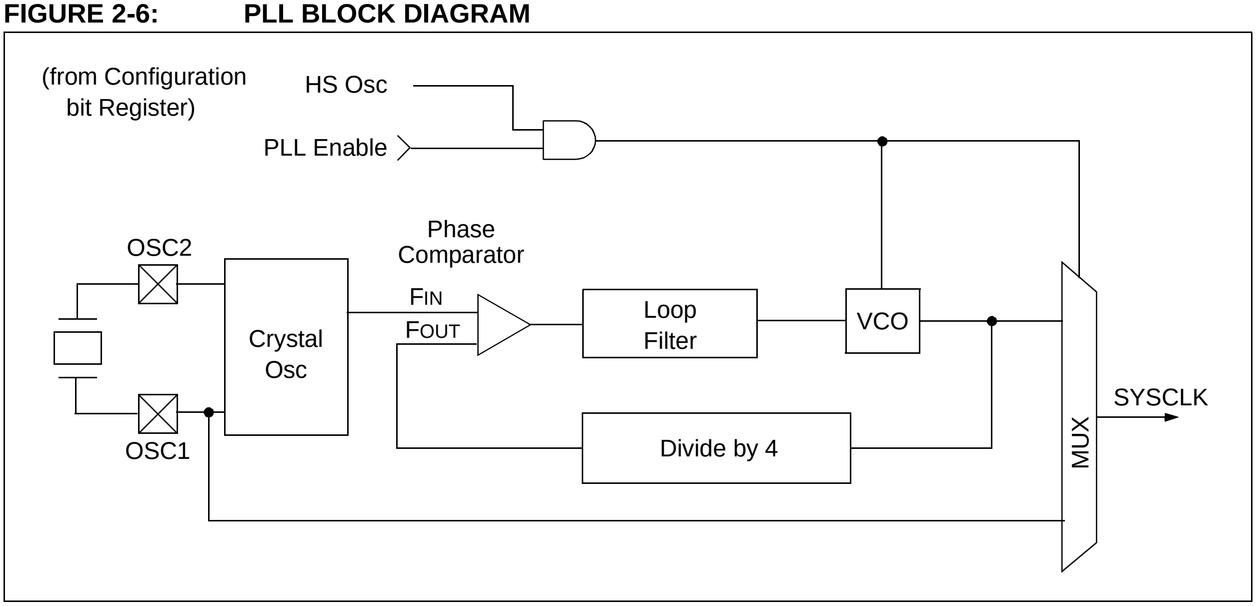
A Phase Locked Loop circuit (PLL) is provided as a programmable option for users that want to multiply the frequency of the incoming crystal oscillator signal by 4. For an input clock frequency of 10 MHz, the internal clock frequency will be multiplied to 40 MHz. This is useful for customers who are concerned with EMI due to high-frequency crystals.

The PLL is one of the modes of the FOSC<2:0> configuration bits. The oscillator mode is specified during device programming.

The PLL can only be enabled when the oscillator configuration bits are programmed for HS mode. If they are programmed for any other mode, the PLL is not enabled and the system clock will come directly from OSC1. Also, PLL operation cannot be changed "on-the-fly". To enable or disable it, the controller must either cycle through a Power-on Reset, or switch the clock source from the main oscillator to the Timer1 oscillator and back again. See **Section 2.6 "Oscillator Switching Feature"** for details on oscillator switching.

A PLL lock timer is used to ensure that the PLL has locked before device execution starts. The PLL lock timer has a time-out that is called TPLL.

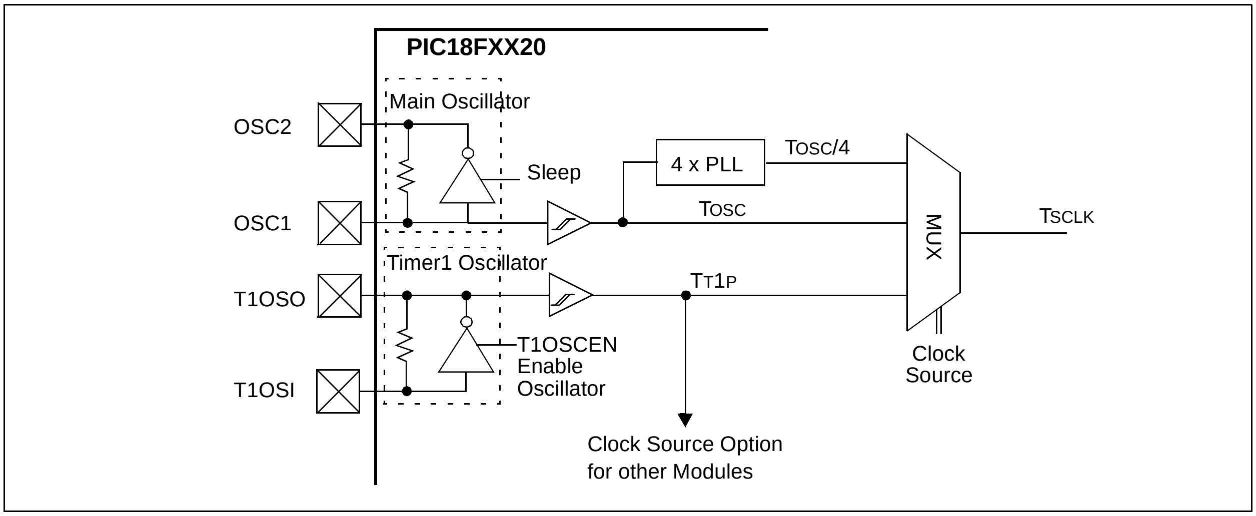
FIGURE 2-6: PLL BLOCK DIAGRAM



2.6 Oscillator Switching Feature

The PIC18FXX20 devices include a feature that allows the system clock source to be switched from the main oscillator to an alternate low-frequency clock source. For the PIC18FXX20 devices, this alternate clock source is the Timer1 oscillator. If a low-frequency crystal (32 kHz, for example) has been attached to the Timer1 oscillator pins and the Timer1 oscillator has been enabled, the device can switch to a low-power execution mode. Figure 2-7 shows a block diagram of the system clock sources. The clock switching feature is enabled by programming the Oscillator Switching Enable ($\overline{\text{OSCSEN}}$) bit in Configuration Register 1H to a '0'. Clock switching is disabled in an erased device. See **Section 12.0 "Timer1 Module"** for further details of the Timer1 oscillator. See **Section 23.0 "Special Features of the CPU"** for Configuration register details.

FIGURE 2-7: DEVICE CLOCK SOURCES



2.6.1 SYSTEM CLOCK SWITCH BIT

The system clock source switching is performed under software control. The system clock switch bit, SCS (OSCCON<0>), controls the clock switching. When the SCS bit is '0', the system clock source comes from the main oscillator that is selected by the FOSC configuration bits in Configuration Register 1H. When the SCS bit is set, the system clock source will come from the Timer1 oscillator. The SCS bit is cleared on all forms of Reset.

Note:	The Timer1 oscillator must be enabled and operating to switch the system clock source. The Timer1 oscillator is enabled by setting the T1OSCEN bit in the Timer1 Control register (T1CON). If the Timer1 oscillator is not enabled, then any write to the SCS bit will be ignored (SCS bit forced cleared) and the main oscillator will continue to be the system clock source.

REGISTER 2-1: OSCCON REGISTER

U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-1
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SCS
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-1 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 0 **SCS:** System Clock Switch bit

When $\overline{\text{OSCSEN}}$ Configuration bit = 0 and T1OSCEN bit is set:
1 = Switch to Timer1 oscillator/clock pin
0 = Use primary oscillator/clock input pin

When $\overline{\text{OSCSEN}}$ and T1OSCEN are in other states:
Bit is forced clear.

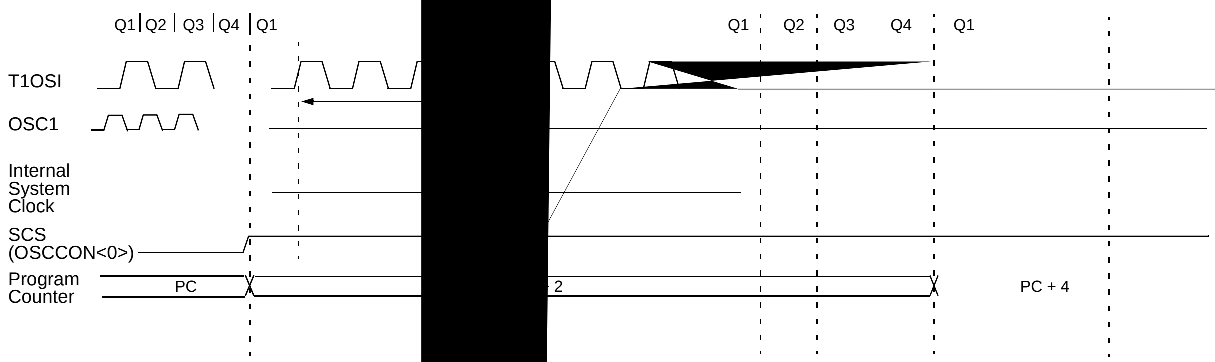
Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

2.6.2 OSCILLATOR TRANSITIO[redacted]

PIC18FXX20 devices contain circuitry [redacted] "glitches" when switching between oscilla[redacted] Essentially, the circuitry waits for eight ris[redacted] the clock source that the processor is switc[redacted] ensures that the new clock source is stabl[redacted] pulse width will not be less than the sh[redacted] width of the two clock sources.

A timing diagram indicating the transition from the main oscillator to the Timer1 oscillator is shown in Figure 2-8. The Timer1 oscillator is assumed to be running all the time. After the SCS bit is set, the processor is frozen at the next occurring Q1 cycle. After eight synchronization cycles are counted from the Timer1 oscillator, operation resumes. No additional delays are required after the synchronization cycles.

FIGURE 2-8: TIMING DIAGRA[redacted]RANSITION FROM OSC1 TO TIMER1 OSCILLATOR



Note 1: Delay on internal system clock is eight osc[redacted] synchronization.

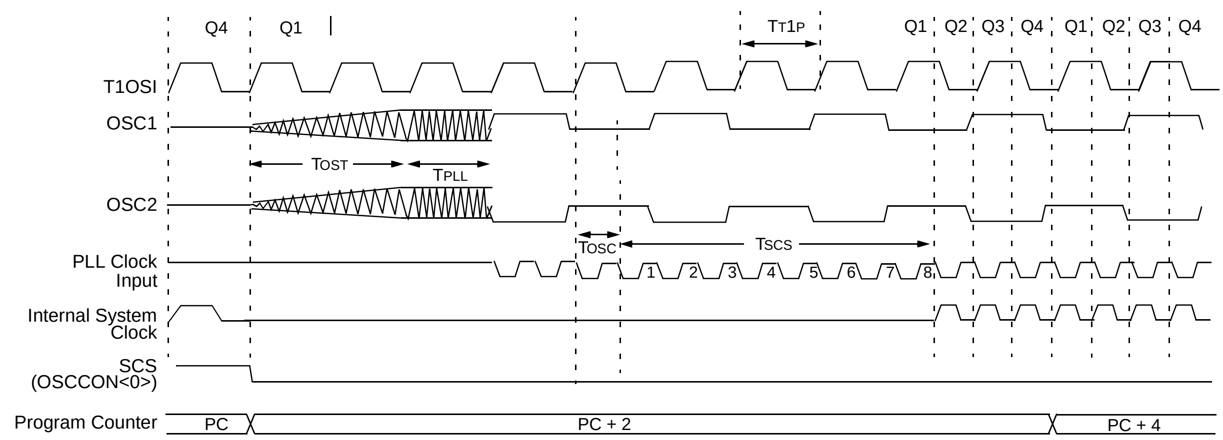
The sequence of events that takes place [redacted]ing from the Timer1 oscillator to the main [redacted] depend on the mode of the main oscillato[redacted] to eight clock cycles of the main oscillat[redacted] delays may take place.

If the main oscillator is configured for an external crystal (HS, XT, LP), then the transition will take place after an oscillator start-up time (TOST) has occurred. A timing diagram, indicating the transition from the Timer1 oscillator to the main oscillator for HS, XT and LP modes, is shown in Figure 2-9.

FIGURE 2-9: TIMING FOR TR[redacted] BETWEEN TIMER1 AND OSC1 (HS, XT, LP)

If the main oscillator is configured for HS-PLL mode, an oscillator start-up time (TOST), plus an additional PLL time-out (TPLL), will occur. The PLL time-out is typically 2 ms and allows the PLL to lock to the main oscillator frequency. A timing diagram, indicating the transition from the Timer1 oscillator to the main oscillator for HS-PLL mode, is shown in Figure 2-10.

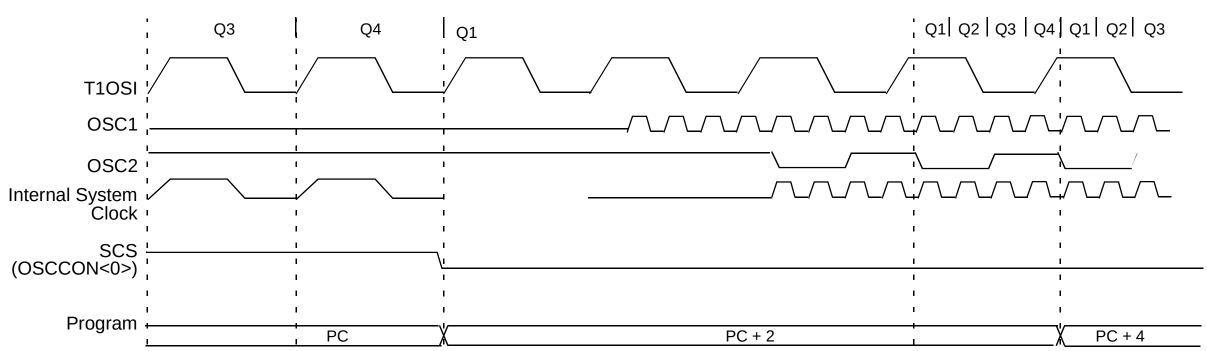
FIGURE 2-10: TIMING FOR TRANSITION BETWEEN TIMER1 AND OSC1 (HS WITH PLL)



Note 1: TOST = 1024 TOSC (drawing not to scale).

If the main oscillator is configured in the RC, RCIO, EC or ECIO modes, there is no oscillator start-up time-out. Operation will resume after eight cycles of the main oscillator have been counted. A timing diagram, indicating the transition from the Timer1 oscillator to the main oscillator for RC, RCIO, EC and ECIO modes, is shown in Figure 2-11.

FIGURE 2-11: TIMING FOR TRANSITION BETWEEN TIMER1 AND OSC1 (RC, EC)



Note 1: RC Oscillator mode assumed.

2.7 Effects of Sleep Mode on the On-Chip Oscillator

When the device executes a SLEEP instruction, the on-chip clocks and oscillator are turned off and the device is held at the beginning of an instruction cycle (Q1 state). With the oscillator off, the OSC1 and OSC2 signals will stop oscillating. Since all the transistor switching currents have been removed, Sleep mode achieves the lowest current consumption of the device (only leakage currents). Enabling any on-chip feature that will operate during Sleep will increase the current consumed during Sleep. The user can wake from Sleep through external Reset, Watchdog Timer Reset or through an interrupt.

2.8 Power-up Delays

Power up delays are controlled by two timers so that no external Reset circuitry is required for most applications. The delays ensure that the device is kept in Reset until the device power supply and clock are stable. For additional information on Reset operation, see **Section 3.0 "Reset"**.

The first timer is the Power-up Timer (PWRT), which optionally provides a fixed delay of 72 ms (nominal) on power-up only (POR and BOR). The second timer is the Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST), intended to keep the chip in Reset until the crystal oscillator is stable.

With the PLL enabled (HS/PLL Oscillator mode), the time-out sequence following a Power-on Reset is different from other oscillator modes. The time-out sequence is as follows: First, the PWRT time-out is invoked after a POR time delay has expired. Then, the Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) is invoked. However, this is still not a sufficient amount of time to allow the PLL to lock at high frequencies. The PWRT timer is used to provide an additional fixed 2 ms (nominal) time-out to allow the PLL ample time to lock to the incoming clock frequency.

TABLE 2-3: OSC1 AND OSC2 PIN STATES IN SLEEP MODE

OSC Mode	OSC1 Pin	OSC2 Pin
RC	Floating, external resistor should pull high	At logic low
RCIO	Floating, external resistor should pull high	Configured as PORTA, bit 6
ECIO	Floating	Configured as PORTA, bit 6
EC	Floating	At logic low
LP, XT and HS	Feedback inverter disabled at quiescent voltage level	Feedback inverter disabled at quiescent voltage level

Note: See Table 3-1 in **Section 3.0 "Reset"** for time-outs due to Sleep and $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset.

3.0 RESET

The PIC18FXX20 devices differentiate between various kinds of Reset:

a) Power-on Reset (POR)
b) $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset during normal operation
c) $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset during Sleep
d) Watchdog Timer (WDT) Reset (during normal operation)
e) Programmable Brown-out Reset (PBOR)
f) RESET Instruction
g) Stack Full Reset
h) Stack Underflow Reset

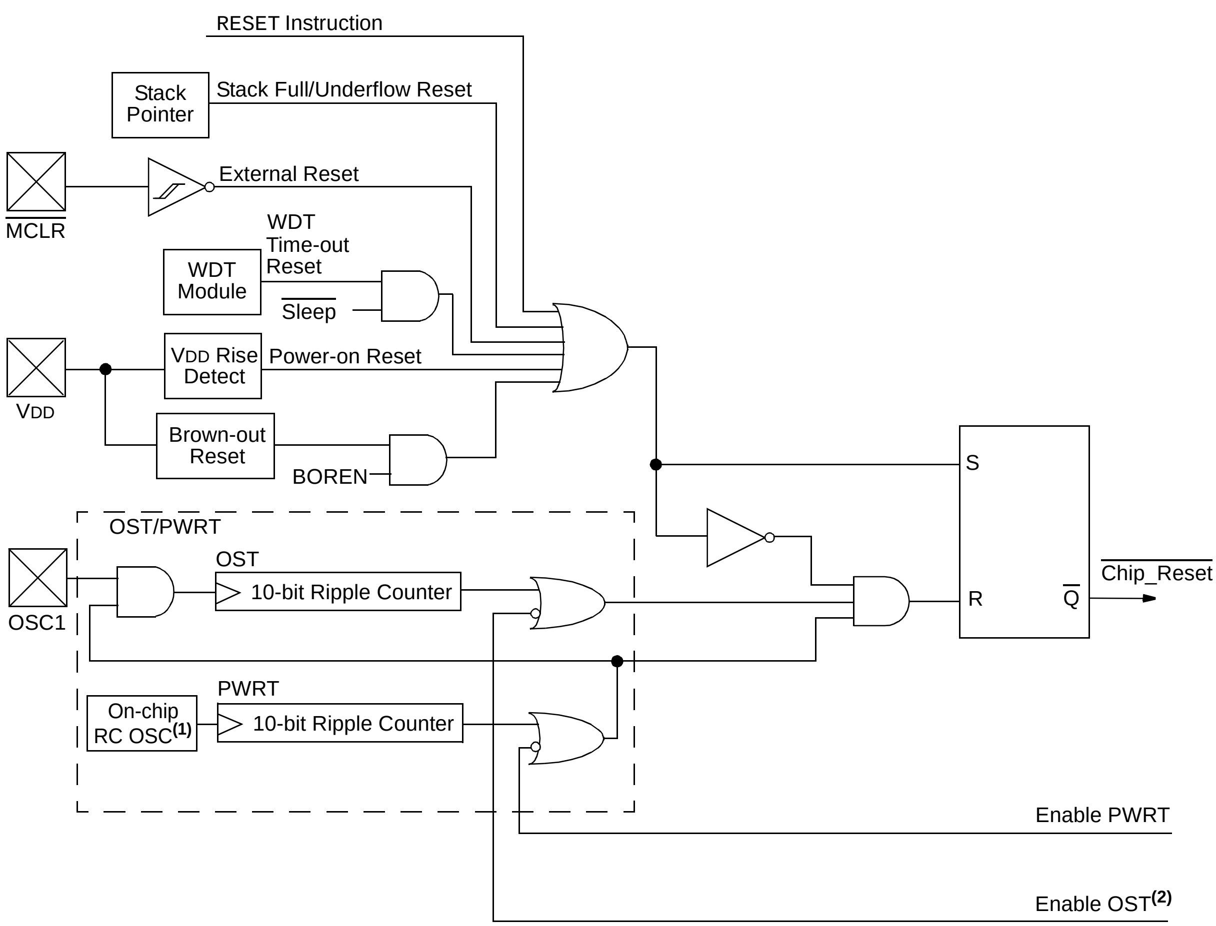
Most registers are unaffected by a Reset. Their status is unknown on POR and unchanged by all other Resets. The other registers are forced to a “Reset state” on Power-on Reset, $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$, WDT Reset, Brown-out Reset, $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset during Sleep and by the RESET instruction.

Most registers are not affected by a WDT wake-up, since this is viewed as the resumption of normal operation. Status bits from the RCON register, $\overline{\text{RI}}$, $\overline{\text{TO}}$, $\overline{\text{PD}}$, $\overline{\text{POR}}$ and $\overline{\text{BOR}}$, are set or cleared differently in different Reset situations, as indicated in Table 3-2. These bits are used in software to determine the nature of the Reset. See Table 3-3 for a full description of the Reset states of all registers.

A simplified block diagram of the On-Chip Reset Circuit is shown in Figure 3-1.

The Enhanced MCU devices have a $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ noise filter in the $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset path. The filter will detect and ignore small pulses. The $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ pin is not driven low by any internal Resets, including the WDT.

FIGURE 3-1: SIMPLIFIED BLOCK DIAGRAM OF ON-CHIP RESET CIRCUIT



Note 1: This is a separate oscillator from the RC oscillator of the CLKI pin.

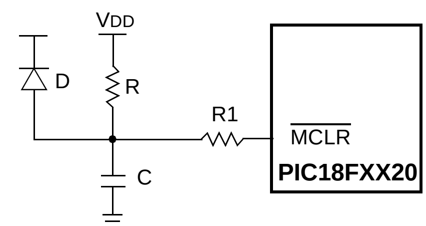
2: See Table 3-1 for time-out situations.

3.1 Power-on Reset (POR)

A Power-on Reset pulse is generated on-chip when VDD rise is detected. To take advantage of the POR circuitry, tie the $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ pin through a 1 kΩ to 10 kΩ resistor to VDD. This will eliminate external RC components usually needed to create a Power-on Reset delay. A minimum rise rate for VDD is specified (parameter D004). For a slow rise time, see Figure 3-2.

When the device starts normal operation (i.e., exits the Reset condition), device operating parameters (voltage, frequency, temperature, etc.) must be met to ensure operation. If these conditions are not met, the device must be held in Reset until the operating conditions are met.

FIGURE 3-2: EXTERNAL POWER-ON RESET CIRCUIT (FOR SLOW VDD POWER-UP)



Note 1: External Power-on Reset circuit is required only if the VDD power-up slope is too slow. The diode D helps discharge the capacitor quickly when VDD powers down.

2: R < 40 kΩ is recommended to make sure that the voltage drop across R does not violate the device's electrical specification.

3: R1 = 1 kΩ to 10 kΩ will limit any current flowing into $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ from external capacitor C, in the event of $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$/VPP pin breakdown due to Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) or Electrical Overstress (EOS).

3.2 Power-up Timer (PWRT)

The Power-up Timer provides a fixed nominal time-out (parameter #33) only on power-up from the POR. The Power-up Timer operates on an internal RC oscillator. The chip is kept in Reset as long as the PWRT is active. The PWRT's time delay allows VDD to rise to an acceptable level. A configuration bit is provided to enable/disable the PWRT.

The power-up time delay will vary from chip-to-chip due to VDD, temperature and process variation. See DC parameter #33 for details.

3.3 Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST)

The Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) provides 1024 oscillator cycles (from OSC1 input) delay after the PWRT delay is over (parameter #32). This ensures that the crystal oscillator or resonator has started and stabilized.

The OST time-out is invoked only for XT, LP and HS modes and only on Power-on Reset, or wake-up from Sleep.

3.4 PLL Lock Time-out

With the PLL enabled, the time-out sequence following a Power-on Reset is different from other oscillator modes. A portion of the Power-up Timer is used to provide a fixed time-out that is sufficient for the PLL to lock to the main oscillator frequency. This PLL lock time-out (TPLL) is typically 2 ms and follows the oscillator start-up time-out.

3.5 Brown-out Reset (BOR)

A configuration bit, BOREN, can disable (if clear/programmed), or enable (if set) the Brown-out Reset circuitry. If VDD falls below parameter D005 for greater than parameter #35, the brown-out situation will reset the chip. A Reset may not occur if VDD falls below parameter D005 for less than parameter #35. The chip will remain in Brown-out Reset until VDD rises above BVDD. If the Power-up Timer is enabled, it will be invoked after VDD rises above BVDD; it then will keep the chip in Reset for an additional time delay (parameter #33). If VDD drops below BVDD while the Power-up Timer is running, the chip will go back into a Brown-out Reset and the Power-up Timer will be initialized. Once VDD rises above BVDD, the Power-up Timer will execute the additional time delay.

3.6 Time-out Sequence

On power-up, the time-out sequence is as follows: First, PWRT time-out is invoked after the POR time delay has expired. Then, OST is activated. The total time-out will vary based on oscillator configuration and the status of the PWRT. For example, in RC mode with the PWRT disabled, there will be no time-out at all. Figures 3-3 through 3-7 depict time-out sequences on power-up.

Since the time-outs occur from the POR pulse, the time-outs will expire if $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ is kept low long enough. Bringing $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ high will begin execution immediately (Figure 3-5). This is useful for testing purposes, or to synchronize more than one PIC18FXX20 device operating in parallel.

Table 3-2 shows the Reset conditions for some Special Function Registers, while Table 3-3 shows the Reset conditions for all of the registers.

TABLE 3-1: TIME-OUT IN VARIOUS SITUATIONS

Oscillator Configuration	Power-up(2)		Brown-out	Wake-up from Sleep or Oscillator Switch
	$\overline{\text{PWRTE}}$ = 0	$\overline{\text{PWRTE}}$ = 1		
HS with PLL enabled(1)	72 ms + 1024 Tosc + 2ms	1024 Tosc + 2 ms	72 ms(2) + 1024 Tosc + 2 ms	1024 Tosc + 2 ms
HS, XT, LP	72 ms + 1024 Tosc	1024 Tosc	72 ms(2) + 1024 Tosc	1024 Tosc
EC	72 ms	1.5 μs	72 ms(2)	1.5 μs(3)
External RC	72 ms	—	72 ms(2)	—

Note 1: 2 ms is the nominal time required for the 4xPLL to lock.
2: 72 ms is the nominal power-up timer delay, if implemented.
3: 1.5 μs is the recovery time from Sleep. There is no recovery time from oscillator switch.

REGISTER 3-1: RCON REGISTER BITS AND POSITIONS

R/W-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
IPEN	—	—	$\overline{\text{RI}}$	$\overline{\text{TO}}$	$\overline{\text{PD}}$	$\overline{\text{POR}}$	$\overline{\text{BOR}}$
bit 7							bit 0

Note 1: Refer to **Section 4.14 "RCON Register"** for bit definitions.

TABLE 3-2: STATUS BITS, THEIR SIGNIFICANCE AND THE INITIALIZATION CONDITION FOR RCON REGISTER

Condition	Program Counter	RCON Register	$\overline{\text{RI}}$	$\overline{\text{TO}}$	$\overline{\text{PD}}$	$\overline{\text{POR}}$	$\overline{\text{BOR}}$	STKFUL	STKUNF
Power-on Reset	0000h	`0--1 1100`	1	1	1	0	0	u	u
$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset during normal operation	0000h	`0--u uuuu`	u	u	u	u	u	u	u
Software Reset during normal operation	0000h	`0--0 uuuu`	0	u	u	u	u	u	u
Stack Full Reset during normal operation	0000h	`0--u uu11`	u	u	u	u	u	u	1
Stack Underflow Reset during normal operation	0000h	`0--u uu11`	u	u	u	u	u	1	u
$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset during Sleep	0000h	`0--u 10uu`	u	1	0	u	u	u	u
WDT Reset	0000h	`0--u 01uu`	1	0	1	u	u	u	u
WDT Wake-up	PC + 2	`u--u 00uu`	u	0	0	u	u	u	u
Brown-out Reset	0000h	`0--1 11u0`	1	1	1	1	0	u	u
Interrupt wake-up from Sleep	PC + 2(1)	`u--u 00uu`	u	1	0	u	u	u	u

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, – = unimplemented bit, read as '0'
Note 1: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEH or GIEL bits are set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0x000008h or 0x000018h).

TABLE 3-3: INITIALIZATION CONDITIONS FOR ALL REGISTERS

Register	Applicable Devices		Power-on Reset, Brown-out Reset	$\overline{MCLR}$ Resets WDT Reset RESET Instruction Stack Resets	Wake-up via WDT or Interrupt
TOSU	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	---0 0000	---0 0000	---0 uuuu(3)
TOSH	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu(3)
TOSL	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu(3)
STKPTR	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	00-0 0000	uu-0 0000	uu-u uuuu(3)
PCLATU	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	---0 0000	---0 0000	---u uuuu
PCLATH	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PCL	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 0000	0000 0000	PC + 2(2)
TBLPTRU	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
TBLPTRH	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TBLPTRL	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TABLAT	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PRODH	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PRODL	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
INTCON	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 000x	0000 000u	uuuu uuuu(1)
INTCON2	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu(1)
INTCON3	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	1100 0000	1100 0000	uuuu uuuu(1)
INDF0	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	N/A	N/A	N/A
POSTINC0	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	N/A	N/A	N/A
POSTDEC0	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	N/A	N/A	N/A
PREINC0	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	N/A	N/A	N/A
PLUSW0	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	N/A	N/A	N/A
FSR0H	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	---- xxxx	---- uuuu	---- uuuu
FSR0L	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
WREG	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
INDF1	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	N/A	N/A	N/A
POSTINC1	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	N/A	N/A	N/A
POSTDEC1	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	N/A	N/A	N/A
PREINC1	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	N/A	N/A	N/A
PLUSW1	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	N/A	N/A	N/A

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, read as '0', q = value depends on condition. Shaded cells indicate conditions do not apply for the designated device.

Note 1: One or more bits in the INTCONx or PIRx registers will be affected (to cause wake-up).

2: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0008h or 0018h).

3: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the TOSU, TOSH and TOSL are updated with the current value of the PC. The STKPTR is modified to point to the next location in the hardware stack.

4: See Table 3-2 for Reset value for specific condition.

5: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA and TRISA are enabled in ECIO and RCIO Oscillator modes only. In all other oscillator modes, they are disabled and read '0'.

6: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA and TRISA are not available on all devices. When unimplemented, they are read '0'.

TABLE 3-3: INITIALIZATION CONDITIONS FOR ALL REGISTERS (CONTINUED)

Register	Applicable Devices		Power-on Reset, Brown-out Reset	$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Resets WDT Reset RESET Instruction Stack Resets	Wake-up via WDT or Interrupt
FSR1H	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	---- xxxx	---- uuuu	---- uuuu
FSR1L	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
BSR	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- uuuu
INDF2	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	N/A	N/A	N/A
POSTINC2	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	N/A	N/A	N/A
POSTDEC2	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	N/A	N/A	N/A
PREINC2	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	N/A	N/A	N/A
PLUSW2	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	N/A	N/A	N/A
FSR2H	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	---- xxxx	---- uuuu	---- uuuu
FSR2L	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
STATUS	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	---x xxxx	---u uuuu	---u uuuu
TMR0H	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TMR0L	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
T0CON	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
OSCCON	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	---- ---0	---- ---0	---- ---u
LVDCON	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	--00 0101	--00 0101	--uu uuuu
WDTCON	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	---- ---0	---- ---0	---- ---u
RCON(4)	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0--q 11qq	0--q qquu	u--u qquu
TMR1H	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TMR1L	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
T1CON	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0-00 0000	u-uu uuuu	u-uu uuuu
TMR2	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PR2	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	1111 1111	1111 1111	1111 1111
T2CON	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	-000 0000	-000 0000	-uuu uuuu
SSPBUF	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
SSPADD	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
SSPSTAT	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
SSPCON1	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
SSPCON2	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, read as '0', q = value depends on condition. Shaded cells indicate conditions do not apply for the designated device.

Note 1: One or more bits in the INTCONx or PIRx registers will be affected (to cause wake-up).

2: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0008h or 0018h).

3: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the TOSU, TOSH and TOSL are updated with the current value of the PC. The STKPTR is modified to point to the next location in the hardware stack.

4: See Table 3-2 for Reset value for specific condition.

5: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA and TRISA are enabled in ECIO and RCIO Oscillator modes only. In all other oscillator modes, they are disabled and read '0'.

6: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA and TRISA are not available on all devices. When unimplemented, they are read '0'.

TABLE 3-3: INITIALIZATION CONDITIONS FOR ALL REGISTERS (CONTINUED)

Register	Applicable Devices		Power-on Reset, Brown-out Reset	$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Resets WDT Reset RESET Instruction Stack Resets	Wake-up via WDT or Interrupt
ADRESH	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
ADRESL	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
ADCON0	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
ADCON1	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
ADCON2	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0--- -000	0--- -000	u--- -uuu
CCPR1H	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
CCPR1L	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
CCP1CON	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
CCPR2H	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
CCPR2L	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
CCP2CON	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
CCPR3H	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
CCPR3L	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
CCP3CON	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CVRCON	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CMCON	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TMR3H	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TMR3L	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
T3CON	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PSPCON	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 ----	0000 ----	uuuu ----
SPBRG1	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
RCREG1	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TXREG1	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TXSTA1	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 -010	0000 -010	uuuu -uuu
RCSTA1	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 000x	0000 000x	uuuu uuuu
EEADRH	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
EEADR	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
EEDATA	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
EECON2	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	---- ----	---- ----	---- ----
EECON1	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	xx-0 x000	uu-0 u000	uu-0 u000

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, read as '0', q = value depends on condition. Shaded cells indicate conditions do not apply for the designated device.

Note 1: One or more bits in the INTCONx or PIRx registers will be affected (to cause wake-up).

2: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0008h or 0018h).

3: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the TOSU, TOSH and TOSL are updated with the current value of the PC. The STKPTR is modified to point to the next location in the hardware stack.

4: See Table 3-2 for Reset value for specific condition.

5: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA and TRISA are enabled in ECIO and RCIO Oscillator modes only. In all other oscillator modes, they are disabled and read '0'.

6: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA and TRISA are not available on all devices. When unimplemented, they are read '0'.

TABLE 3-3: INITIALIZATION CONDITIONS FOR ALL REGISTERS (CONTINUED)

Register	Applicable Devices		Power-on Reset, Brown-out Reset	$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Resets WDT Reset `RESET` Instruction Stack Resets	Wake-up via WDT or Interrupt
IPR3	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	`--11 1111`	`--11 1111`	`--uu uuuu`
PIR3	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	`--00 0000`	`--00 0000`	`--uu uuuu`
PIE3	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	`--00 0000`	`--00 0000`	`--uu uuuu`
IPR2	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	`-1-1 1111`	`-1-1 1111`	`-u-u uuuu`
PIR2	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	`-0-0 0000`	`-0-0 0000`	`-u-u uuuu`(1)
PIE2	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	`-0-0 0000`	`-0-0 0000`	`-u-u uuuu`
IPR1	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	`0111 1111`	`0111 1111`	`uuuu uuuu`
PIR1	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	`0000 0000`	`0000 0000`	`uuuu uuuu`(1)
PIE1	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	`0000 0000`	`0000 0000`	`uuuu uuuu`
MEMCON	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	`0-00 --00`	`0-00 --00`	`u-uu --uu`
TRISJ	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	`1111 1111`	`1111 1111`	`uuuu uuuu`
TRISH	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	`1111 1111`	`1111 1111`	`uuuu uuuu`
TRISG	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	`---1 1111`	`---1 1111`	`---u uuuu`
TRISF	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	`1111 1111`	`1111 1111`	`uuuu uuuu`
TRISE	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	`1111 1111`	`1111 1111`	`uuuu uuuu`
TRISD	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	`1111 1111`	`1111 1111`	`uuuu uuuu`
TRISC	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	`1111 1111`	`1111 1111`	`uuuu uuuu`
TRISB	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	`1111 1111`	`1111 1111`	`uuuu uuuu`
TRISA(5,6)	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	`-111 1111`(5)	`-111 1111`(5)	`-uuu uuuu`(5)
LATJ	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	`xxxx xxxx`	`uuuu uuuu`	`uuuu uuuu`
LATH	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	`xxxx xxxx`	`uuuu uuuu`	`uuuu uuuu`
LATG	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	`---x xxxx`	`---u uuuu`	`---u uuuu`
LATF	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	`xxxx xxxx`	`uuuu uuuu`	`uuuu uuuu`
LATE	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	`xxxx xxxx`	`uuuu uuuu`	`uuuu uuuu`
LATD	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	`xxxx xxxx`	`uuuu uuuu`	`uuuu uuuu`
LATC	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	`xxxx xxxx`	`uuuu uuuu`	`uuuu uuuu`
LATB	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	`xxxx xxxx`	`uuuu uuuu`	`uuuu uuuu`
LATA(5,6)	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	`-xxx xxxx`(5)	`-uuu uuuu`(5)	`-uuu uuuu`(5)

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, read as '0', q = value depends on condition. Shaded cells indicate conditions do not apply for the designated device.

Note 1: One or more bits in the INTCONx or PIRx registers will be affected (to cause wake-up).

2: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0008h or 0018h).

3: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the TOSU, TOSH and TOSL are updated with the current value of the PC. The STKPTR is modified to point to the next location in the hardware stack.

4: See Table 3-2 for Reset value for specific condition.

5: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA and TRISA are enabled in ECIO and RCIO Oscillator modes only. In all other oscillator modes, they are disabled and read '0'.

6: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA and TRISA are not available on all devices. When unimplemented, they are read '0'.

TABLE 3-3: INITIALIZATION CONDITIONS FOR ALL REGISTERS (CONTINUED)

Register	Applicable Devices		Power-on Reset, Brown-out Reset	MCLR Resets WDT Reset RESET Instruction Stack Resets	Wake-up via WDT or Interrupt
PORTJ	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PORTH	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 xxxx	0000 uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PORTG	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	---x xxxx	uuuu uuuu	---u uuuu
PORTF	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	x000 0000	u000 0000	u000 0000
PORTE	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PORTD	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PORTC	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PORTB	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PORTA(5,6)	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	-x0x 0000(5)	-u0u 0000(5)	-uuu uuuu(5)
TMR4	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PR4	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
T4CON	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	-000 0000	-000 0000	-uuu uuuu
CCPR4H	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
CCPR4L	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
CCP4CON	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CCPR5H	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
CCPR5L	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
CCP5CON	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
SPBRG2	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
RCREG2	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TXREG2	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TXSTA2	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 -010	0000 -010	uuuu -uuu
RCSTA2	PIC18F6X20	PIC18F8X20	0000 000x	0000 000x	uuuu uuuu

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’, q = value depends on condition. Shaded cells indicate conditions do not apply for the designated device.

Note 1: One or more bits in the INTCONx or PIRx registers will be affected (to cause wake-up).

2: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0008h or 0018h).

3: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the TOSU, TOSH and TOSL are updated with the current value of the PC. The STKPTR is modified to point to the next location in the hardware stack.

4: See Table 3-2 for Reset value for specific condition.

5: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA and TRISA are enabled in ECIO and RCIO Oscillator modes only. In all other oscillator modes, they are disabled and read ‘0’.

6: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA and TRISA are not available on all devices. When unimplemented, they are read ‘0’.

FIGURE 3-3: TIME-OUT SEQUENCE ON POWER-UP ($\overline{MCLR}$ TIED TO V_{DD} VIA 1 kΩ RESISTOR)

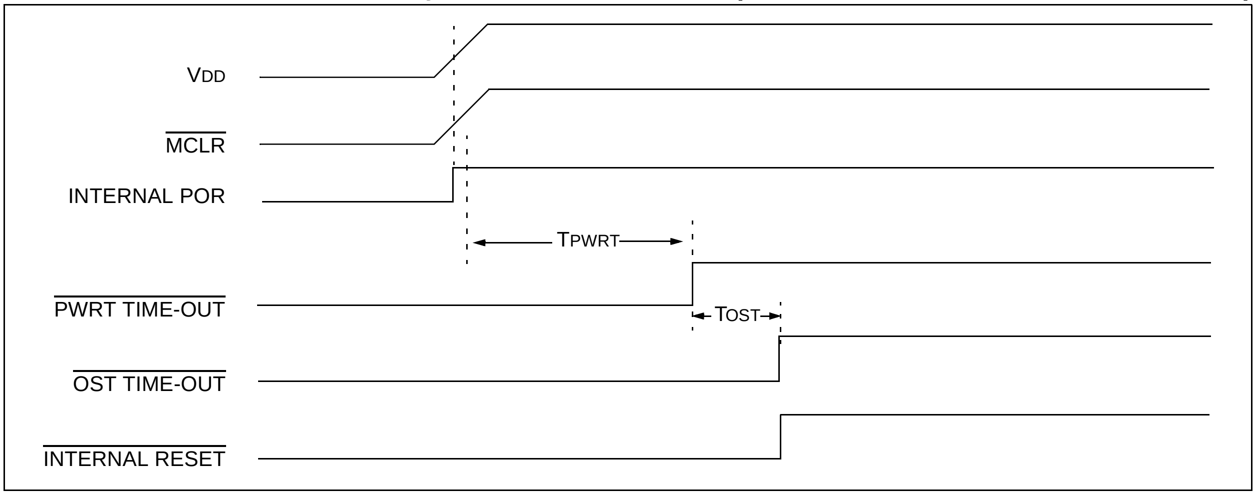


FIGURE 3-4: TIME-OUT SEQUENCE ON POWER-UP ($\overline{MCLR}$ NOT TIED TO V_{DD}): CASE 1

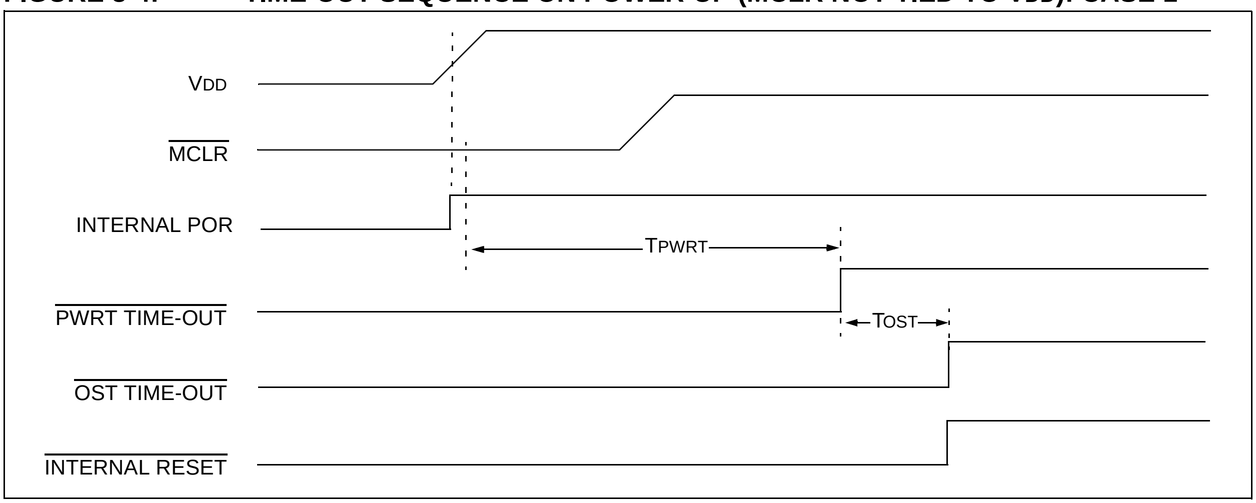


FIGURE 3-5: TIME-OUT SEQUENCE ON POWER-UP ($\overline{MCLR}$ NOT TIED TO V_{DD}): CASE 2

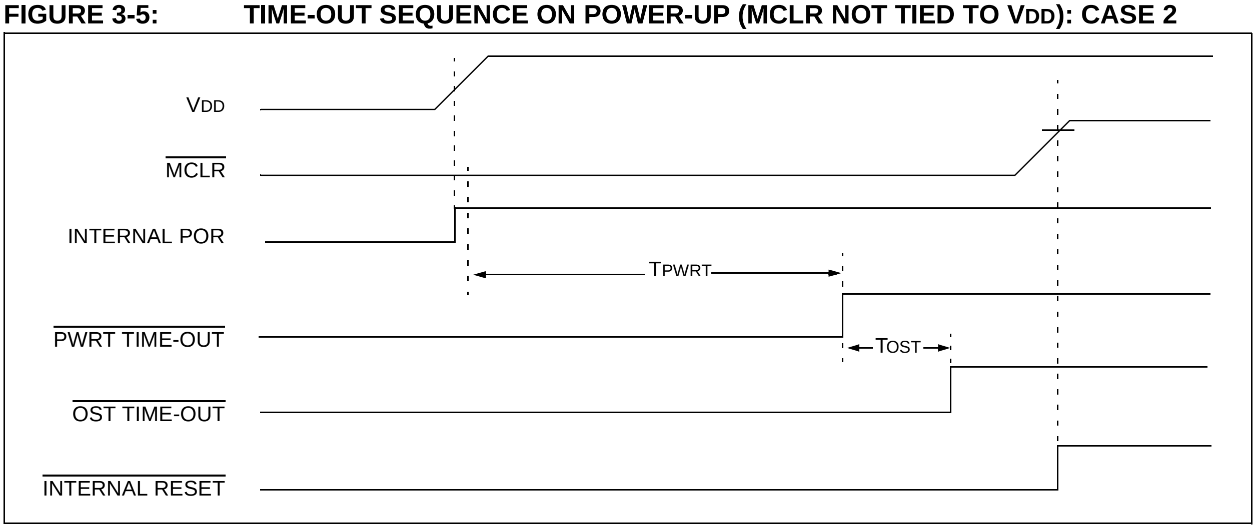


FIGURE 3-6: SLOW RISE TIME ($\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ TIED TO VDD VIA 1 kΩ RESISTOR)

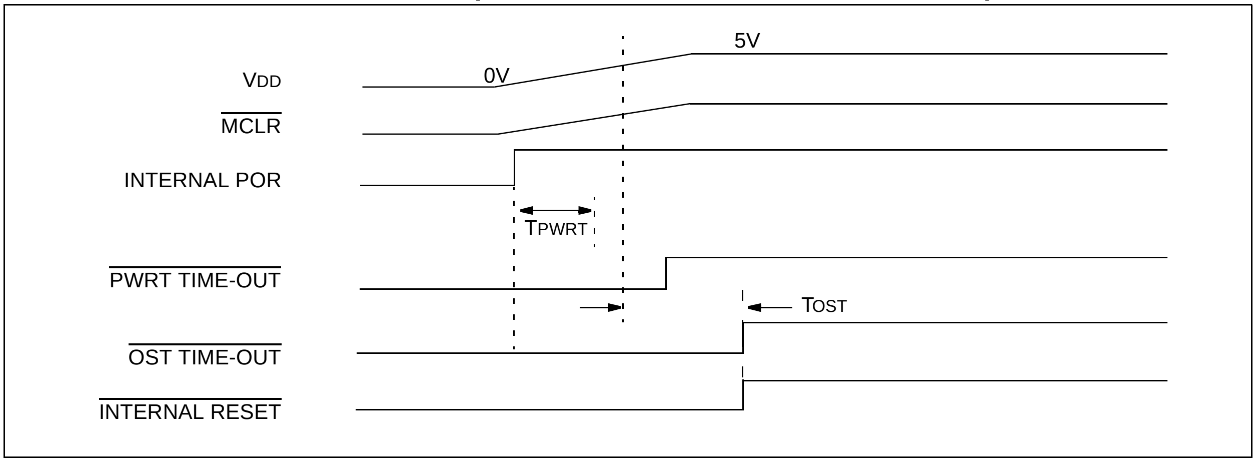
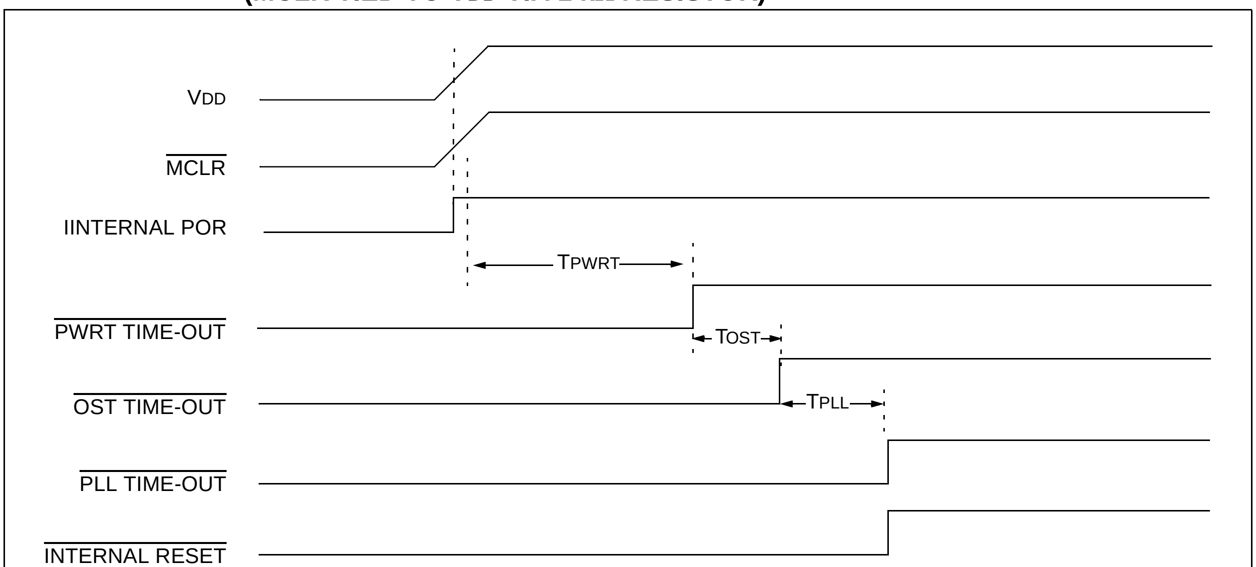


FIGURE 3-7: TIME-OUT SEQUENCE ON POR W/PLL ENABLED ($\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ TIED TO VDD VIA 1 kΩ RESISTOR)



Note: TOST = 1024 clock cycles.
TPLL ≈ 2 ms max. First three stages of the PWRT timer.

4.0 MEMORY ORGANIZATION

There are three memory blocks in PIC18FXX20 devices. They are:

- Program Memory
- Data RAM
- Data EEPROM

Data and program memory use separate busses, which allows for concurrent access of these blocks. Additional detailed information for Flash program memory and data EEPROM is provided in **Section 5.0 "Flash Program Memory"** and **Section 7.0 "Data EEPROM Memory"**, respectively.

In addition to on-chip Flash, the PIC18F8X20 devices are also capable of accessing external program memory through an external memory bus. Depending on the selected operating mode (discussed in **Section 4.1.1 "PIC18F8X20 Program Memory Modes"**), the controllers may access either internal or external program memory exclusively, or both internal and external memory in selected blocks. Additional information on the External Memory Interface is provided in **Section 6.0 "External Memory Interface"**.

4.1 Program Memory Organization

A 21-bit program counter is capable of addressing the 2-Mbyte program memory space. Accessing a location between the physically implemented memory and the 2-Mbyte address will cause a read of all '`0`'s (a `NOP` instruction).

Devices in the PIC18FXX20 family can be divided into three groups, based on program memory size. The PIC18FX520 devices (PIC18F6520 and PIC18F8520) have 32 Kbytes of on-chip Flash memory, equivalent to 16,384 single-word instructions. The PIC18FX620 devices (PIC18F6620 and PIC18F8620) have 64 Kbytes of on-chip Flash memory, equivalent to 32,768 single-word instructions. Finally, the PIC18FX720 devices (PIC18F6720 and PIC18F8720) have 128 Kbytes of on-chip Flash memory, equivalent to 65,536 single-word instructions.

For all devices, the Reset vector address is at 0000h and the interrupt vector addresses are at 0008h and 0018h.

The program memory maps for all of the PIC18FXX20 devices are compared in Figure 4-1.

4.1.1 PIC18F8X20 PROGRAM MEMORY MODES

PIC18F8X20 devices differ significantly from their PIC18 predecessors in their utilization of program memory. In addition to available on-chip Flash program memory, these controllers can also address up to 2 Mbytes of external program memory through the External Memory Interface. There are four distinct operating modes available to the controllers:

- Microprocessor (MP)
- Microprocessor with Boot Block (MPBB)
- Extended Microcontroller (EMC)
- Microcontroller (MC)

The Program Memory mode is determined by setting the two Least Significant bits of the CONFIG3L configuration byte, as shown in Register 4-1. (See also **Section 23.1 "Configuration Bits"** for additional details on the device configuration bits.)

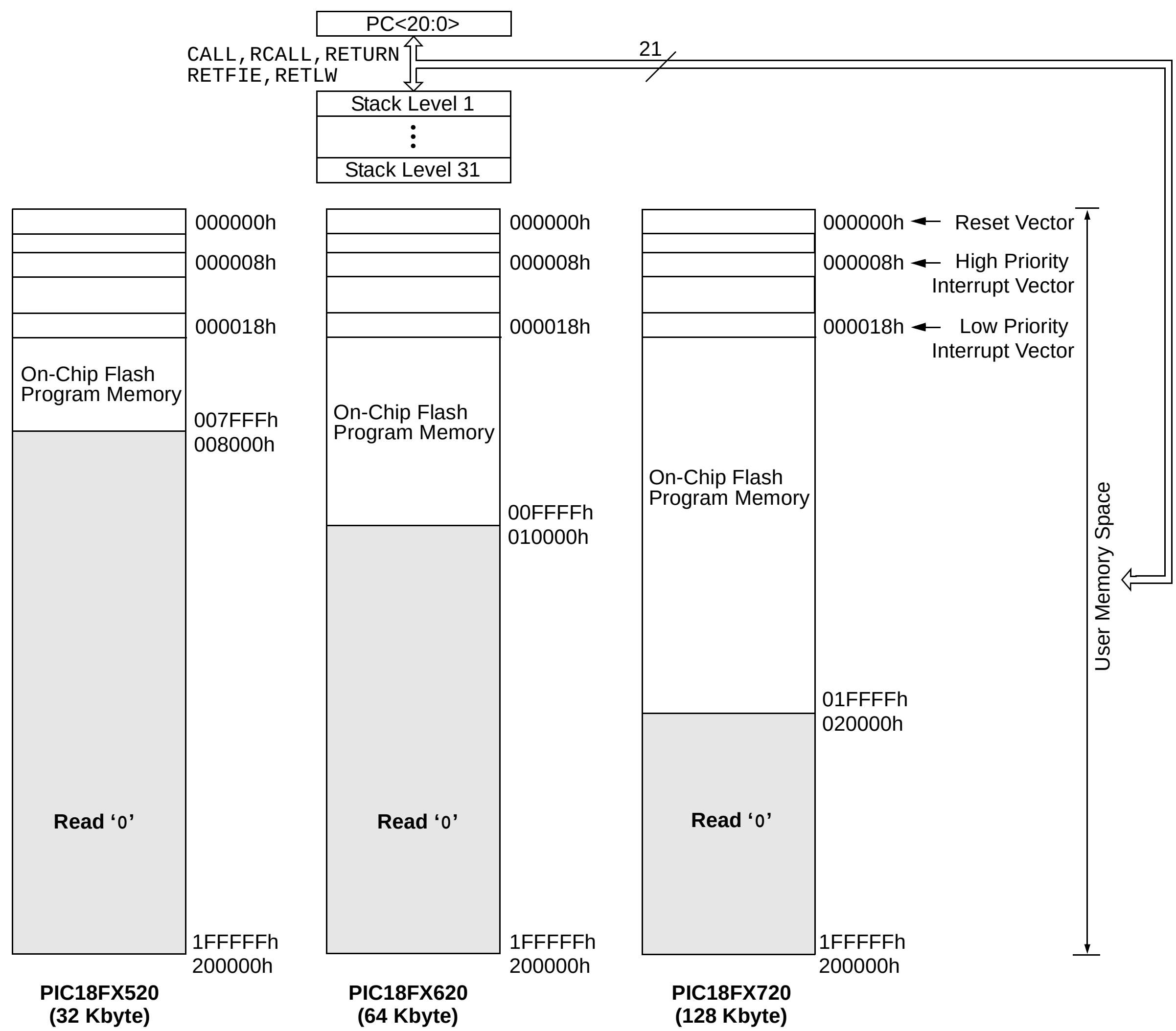
The Program Memory modes operate as follows:

- The **Microprocessor Mode** permits access only to external program memory; the contents of the on-chip Flash memory are ignored. The 21-bit program counter permits access to a 2-Mbyte linear program memory space.
- The **Microprocessor with Boot Block Mode** accesses on-chip Flash memory from addresses 000000h to 0007FFh for PIC18F8520 devices and from 000000h to 0001FFh for PIC18F8620 and PIC18F8720 devices. Above this, external program memory is accessed all the way up to the 2-Mbyte limit. Program execution automatically switches between the two memories, as required.
- The **Microcontroller Mode** accesses only on-chip Flash memory. Attempts to read above the physical limit of the on-chip Flash (7FFFh for the PIC18F8520, 0FFFFh for the PIC18F8620, 1FFFFh for the PIC18F8720) causes a read of all '`0`'s (a `NOP` instruction). The Microcontroller mode is also the only operating mode available to PIC18F6X20 devices.
- The **Extended Microcontroller Mode** allows access to both internal and external program memories as a single block. The device can access its entire on-chip Flash memory; above this, the device accesses external program memory up to the 2-Mbyte program space limit. As with Boot Block mode, execution automatically switches between the two memories, as required.

In all modes, the microcontroller has complete access to data RAM and EEPROM.

Figure 4-2 compares the memory maps of the different Program Memory modes. The differences between on-chip and external memory access limitations are more fully explained in Table 4-1.

FIGURE 4-1: INTERNAL PROGRAM MEMORY MAP AND STACK FOR PIC18FXX20 DEVICES



Note: Size of memory regions not to scale.

TABLE 4-1: MEMORY ACCESS FOR PIC18F8X20 PROGRAM MEMORY MODES

Operating Mode	Internal Program Memory			External Program Memory		
	Execution From	Table Read From	Table Write To	Execution From	Table Read From	Table Write To
Microprocessor	No Access	No Access	No Access	Yes	Yes	Yes
Microprocessor with Boot Block	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Microcontroller	Yes	Yes	Yes	No Access	No Access	No Access
Extended Microcontroller	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

REGISTER 4-1: CONFIG3L CONFIGURATION BYTE

R/P-1	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/P-1	R/P-1
WAIT	—	—	—	—	—	PM1	PM0
bit 7							bit 0

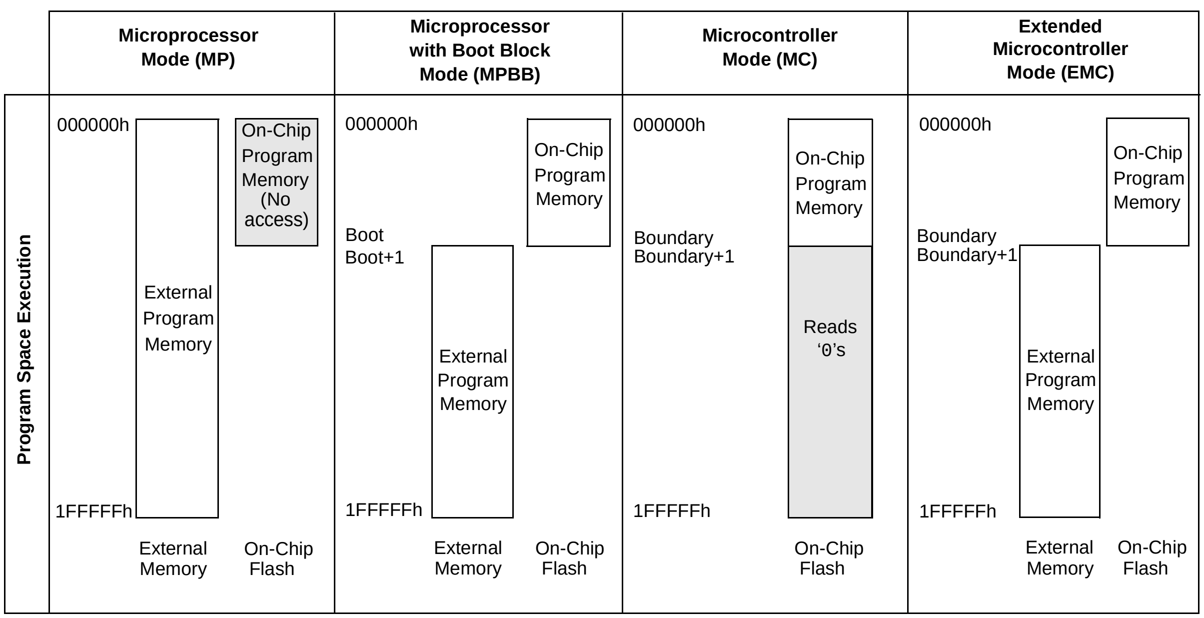
bit 7 **WAIT:** External Bus Data Wait Enable bit
1 = Wait selections unavailable, device will not wait
0 = Wait programmed by WAIT1 and WAIT0 bits of MEMCOM register (MEMCOM<5:4>)

bit 6-2 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 1-0 **PM1:PM0:** Processor Data Memory Mode Select bits
11 = Microcontroller mode
10 = Microprocessor mode
01 = Microcontroller with Boot Block mode
00 = Extended Microcontroller mode

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value after erase	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

FIGURE 4-2: MEMORY MAPS FOR PIC18F8X20 PROGRAM MEMORY MODES



Boundary Values for Microprocessor with Boot Block, Microcontroller and Extended Microcontroller modes[1]

Device	Boot	Boot+1	Boundary	Boundary+1	Available Memory Mode(s)
PIC18F6520	0007FFh	000800h	007FFFh	008000h	MC
PIC18F6620	0001FFh	000200h	00FFFFh	010000h	MC
PIC18F6720	0001FFh	000200h	01FFFFh	020000h	MC
PIC18F8520	0007FFh	000800h	007FFFh	008000h	MP, MPBB, MC, EMC
PIC18F8620	0001FFh	000200h	00FFFFh	010000h	MP, MPBB, MC, EMC
PIC18F8720	0001FFh	000200h	01FFFFh	020000h	MP, MPBB, MC, EMC

Note 1: PIC18F6X20 devices are included here for completeness, to show the boundaries of their Boot Blocks and program memory spaces.

4.2 Return Address Stack

The return address stack allows any combination of up to 31 program calls and interrupts to occur. The PC (Program Counter) is pushed onto the stack when a `CALL` or `RCALL` instruction is executed, or an interrupt is Acknowledged. The PC value is pulled off the stack on a `RETURN`, `RETLW` or a `RETFIE` instruction. PCLATU and PCLATH are not affected by any of the `RETURN` or `CALL` instructions.

The stack operates as a 31-word by 21-bit RAM and a 5-bit stack pointer, with the stack pointer initialized to 00000b after all Resets. There is no RAM associated with stack pointer 00000b. This is only a Reset value. During a `CALL` type instruction, causing a push onto the stack, the stack pointer is first incremented and the RAM location pointed to by the stack pointer is written with the contents of the PC. During a `RETURN` type instruction, causing a pop from the stack, the contents of the RAM location pointed to by the STKPTR are transferred to the PC and then the stack pointer is decremented.

The stack space is not part of either program or data space. The stack pointer is readable and writable and the address on the top of the stack is readable and writable through SFR registers. Data can also be pushed to, or popped from the stack using the top-of-stack SFRs. Status bits indicate if the stack pointer is at, or beyond the 31 levels provided.

4.2.1 TOP-OF-STACK ACCESS

The top of the stack is readable and writable. Three register locations, TOSU, TOSH and TOSL, hold the contents of the stack location pointed to by the STKPTR register. This allows users to implement a software stack if necessary. After a `CALL`, `RCALL` or interrupt, the software can read the pushed value by reading the TOSU, TOSH and TOSL registers. These values can be placed on a user defined software stack. At return time, the software can replace the TOSU, TOSH and TOSL and do a return.

The user must disable the global interrupt enable bits during this time to prevent inadvertent stack operations.

4.2.2 RETURN STACK POINTER (STKPTR)

The STKPTR register contains the stack pointer value, the STKFUL (Stack Full) status bit and the STKUNF (Stack Underflow) status bits. Register 4-2 shows the STKPTR register. The value of the stack pointer can be 0 through 31. The stack pointer increments when values are pushed onto the stack and decrements when values are popped off the stack. At Reset, the stack pointer value will be '`0`'. The user may read and write the stack pointer value. This feature can be used by a Real-Time Operating System for return stack maintenance.

After the PC is pushed onto the stack 31 times (without popping any values off the stack), the STKFUL bit is set. The STKFUL bit can only be cleared in software or by a POR.

The action that takes place when the stack becomes full, depends on the state of the STVREN (Stack Overflow Reset Enable) configuration bit. Refer to **Section 24.0 "Instruction Set Summary"** for a description of the device configuration bits. If STVREN is set (default), the 31st push will push the (PC + 2) value onto the stack, set the STKFUL bit and reset the device. The STKFUL bit will remain set and the stack pointer will be set to '`0`'.

If STVREN is cleared, the STKFUL bit will be set on the 31st push and the stack pointer will increment to 31. Any additional pushes will not overwrite the 31st push and STKPTR will remain at 31.

When the stack has been popped enough times to unload the stack, the next pop will return a value of zero to the PC and sets the STKUNF bit, while the stack pointer remains at '`0`'. The STKUNF bit will remain set until cleared in software or a POR occurs.

Note:	Returning a value of zero to the PC on an underflow has the effect of vectoring the program to the Reset vector, where the stack conditions can be verified and appropriate actions can be taken.

REGISTER 4-2: STKPTR REGISTER

R/C-0	R/C-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
STKFUL[(1)]	STKUNF[(1)]	—	SP4	SP3	SP2	SP1	SP0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **STKFUL:** Stack Full Flag bit
`1` = Stack became full or overflowed
`0` = Stack has not become full or overflowed

bit 6 **STKUNF:** Stack Underflow Flag bit
`1` = Stack underflow occurred
`0` = Stack underflow did not occur

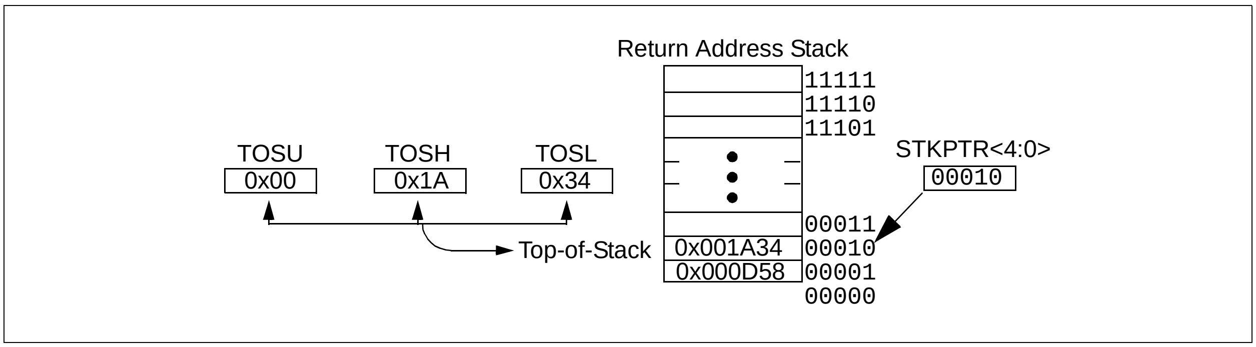
bit 5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '`0`'

bit 4-0 **SP4:SP0:** Stack Pointer Location bits

Note 1: Bit 7 and bit 6 can only be cleared in user software or by a POR.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

FIGURE 4-3: RETURN ADDRESS STACK AND ASSOCIATED REGISTERS



4.2.3 PUSH AND POP INSTRUCTIONS

Since the Top-of-Stack (TOS) is readable and writable, the ability to push values onto the stack and pull values off the stack, without disturbing normal program execution, is a desirable option. To push the current PC value onto the stack, a `PUSH` instruction can be executed. This will increment the stack pointer and load the current PC value onto the stack. TOSU, TOSH and TOSL can then be modified to place a return address on the stack.

The ability to pull the TOS value off of the stack and replace it with the value that was previously pushed onto the stack, without disturbing normal execution, is achieved by using the `POP` instruction. The `POP` instruction discards the current TOS by decrementing the stack pointer. The previous value pushed onto the stack then becomes the TOS value.

4.2.4 STACK FULL/UNDERFLOW RESETS

These Resets are enabled by programming the STVREN configuration bit. When the STVREN bit is disabled, a full or underflow condition will set the appropriate STKFUL or STKUNF bit, but not cause a device Reset. When the STVREN bit is enabled, a full or underflow condition will set the appropriate STKFUL or STKUNF bit and then cause a device Reset. The STKFUL or STKUNF bits are only cleared by the user software or a POR Reset.

4.3 Fast Register Stack

A "fast interrupt return" option is available for interrupts. A Fast Register Stack is provided for the Status, WREG and BSR registers and is only one in depth. The stack is not readable or writable and is loaded with the current value of the corresponding register when the processor vectors for an interrupt. The values in the registers are then loaded back into the working registers, if the `FAST RETURN` instruction is used to return from the interrupt.

A low or high priority interrupt source will push values into the stack registers. If both low and high priority interrupts are enabled, the stack registers cannot be used reliably for low priority interrupts. If a high priority interrupt occurs while servicing a low priority interrupt, the stack register values stored by the low priority interrupt will be overwritten.

If high priority interrupts are not disabled during low priority interrupts, users must save the key registers in software during a low priority interrupt.

If no interrupts are used, the fast register stack can be used to restore the Status, WREG and BSR registers at the end of a subroutine call. To use the fast register stack for a subroutine call, a `FAST CALL` instruction must be executed.

Example 4-1 shows a source code example that uses the fast register stack.

EXAMPLE 4-1: FAST REGISTER STACK CODE EXAMPLE

```
CALL SUB1, FAST     ;STATUS, WREG, BSR
                    ;SAVED IN FAST REGISTER
                    ;STACK
        •
        •

SUB1    •
        •
        •
    RETURN FAST     ;RESTORE VALUES SAVED
                    ;IN FAST REGISTER STACK
```

4.4 PCL, PCLATH and PCLATU

The program counter (PC) specifies the address of the instruction to fetch for execution. The PC is 21 bits wide. The low byte is called the PCL register; this register is readable and writable. The high byte is called the PCH register. This register contains the PC<15:8> bits and is not directly readable or writable; updates to the PCH register may be performed through the PCLATH register. The upper byte is called PCU. This register contains the PC<20:16> bits and is not directly readable or writable; updates to the PCU register may be performed through the PCLATU register.

The PC addresses bytes in the program memory. To prevent the PC from becoming misaligned with word instructions, the LSB of the PCL is fixed to a value of '`0`'. The PC increments by 2 to address sequential instructions in the program memory.

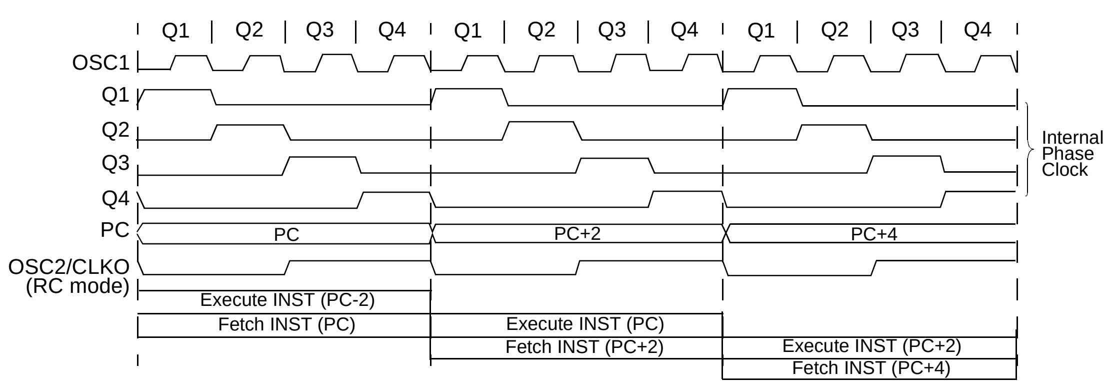
The `CALL`, `RCALL`, `GOTO` and program branch instructions write to the program counter directly. For these instructions, the contents of PCLATH and PCLATU are not transferred to the program counter.

The contents of PCLATH and PCLATU will be transferred to the program counter by an operation that writes PCL. Similarly, the upper two bytes of the program counter will be transferred to PCLATH and PCLATU by an operation that reads PCL. This is useful for computed offsets to the PC (see **Section 4.8.1 "Computed GOTO"**).

4.5 Clocking Scheme/Instruction Cycle

The clock input (from OSC1) is internally divided by four to generate four non-overlapping quadrature clocks, namely Q1, Q2, Q3 and Q4. Internally, the program counter (PC) is incremented every Q1, the instruction is fetched from the program memory and latched into the instruction register in Q4. The instruction is decoded and executed during the following Q1 through Q4. The clocks and instruction execution flow are shown in Figure 4-4.

FIGURE 4-4: CLOCK/INSTRUCTION CYCLE



4.6 Instruction Flow/Pipelining

An “Instruction Cycle” consists of four Q cycles (Q1,

4.7.1 TWO-WORD INSTRUCTIONS

The PIC18FXX20 devices have four two-word instructions: MOVFF, CALL, GOTO and LFSR. The second word of these instructions has the 4 MSBs set to '1's and is a special kind of NOP instruction. The lower 12 bits of the second word contain data to be used by the instruction. If the first word of the instruction is executed, the data in the second word is accessed. If the second word of the instruction is executed by itself (first word was skipped), it will execute as a NOP. This action is necessary when the two-word instruction is preceded by a conditional instruction that changes the PC. A program example that demonstrates this concept is shown in Example 4-3. Refer to **Section 24.0 "Instruction Set Summary"** for further details of the instruction set.

EXAMPLE 4-3: TWO-WORD INSTRUCTIONS

CASE 1:			
Object Code	**Source Code**		
0110 0110 0000 0000	TSTFSZ	REG1	; is RAM location 0?
1100 0001 0010 0011	MOVFF	REG1, REG2	; No, execute 2-word instruction
1111 0100 0101 0110			; 2nd operand holds address of REG2
0010 0100 0000 0000	ADDWF	REG3	; continue code
CASE 2:			
Object Code	**Source Code**		
0110 0110 0000 0000	TSTFSZ	REG1	; is RAM location 0?
1100 0001 0010 0011	MOVFF	REG1, REG2	; Yes
1111 0100 0101 0110			; 2nd operand becomes NOP
0010 0100 0000 0000	ADDWF	REG3	; continue code

4.8 Look-up Tables

Look-up tables are implemented two ways. These are:

- Computed GOTO
- Table Reads

4.8.1 COMPUTED GOTO

A computed GOTO is accomplished by adding an offset to the program counter (ADDWF PCL).

A look-up table can be formed with an ADDWF PCL instruction and a group of RETLW 0xnn instructions. WREG is loaded with an offset into the table before executing a call to that table. The first instruction of the called routine is the ADDWF PCL instruction. The next instruction executed will be one of the RETLW 0xnn instructions, that returns the value 0xnn to the calling function.

The offset value (value in WREG) specifies the number of bytes that the program counter should advance.

In this method, only one data byte may be stored in each instruction location and room on the return address stack is required.

4.8.2 TABLE READS/TABLE WRITES

A better method of storing data in program memory allows 2 bytes of data to be stored in each instruction location.

Look-up table data may be stored 2 bytes per program word by using table reads and writes. The Table Pointer (TBLPTR) specifies the byte address and the Table Latch (TABLAT) contains the data that is read from, or written to program memory. Data is transferred to/from program memory, one byte at a time.

A description of the table read/table write operation is shown in **Section 5.0 "Flash Program Memory"**.

4.9 Data Memory Organization

The data memory is implemented as static RAM. Each register in the data memory has a 12-bit address, allowing up to 4096 bytes of data memory. The data memory map is in turn divided into 16 banks of 256 bytes each. The lower 4 bits of the Bank Select Register (BSR<3:0>) select which bank will be accessed. The upper 4 bits of the BSR are not implemented.

The data memory space contains both Special Function Registers (SFR) and General Purpose Registers (GPR). The SFRs are used for control and status of the controller and peripheral functions, while GPRs are used for data storage and scratch pad operations in the user's application. The SFRs start at the last location of Bank 15 (0FFFh) and extend downwards. Any remaining space beyond the SFRs in the Bank may be implemented as GPRs. GPRs start at the first location of Bank 0 and grow upwards. Any read of an unimplemented location will read as '`0`'s.

PIC18FX520 devices have 2048 bytes of data RAM, extending from Bank 0 to Bank 7 (000h through 7FFh). PIC18FX620 and PIC18FX720 devices have 3840 bytes of data RAM, extending from Bank 0 to Bank 14 (000h through EFFh). The organization of the data memory space for these devices is shown in Figure 4-6 and Figure 4-7.

The entire data memory may be accessed directly or indirectly. Direct addressing may require the use of the BSR register. Indirect addressing requires the use of a File Select Register (FSRn) and a corresponding Indirect File Operand (INDFn). Each FSR holds a 12-bit address value that can be used to access any location in the data memory map without banking.

The instruction set and architecture allow operations across all banks. This may be accomplished by indirect addressing, or by the use of the `MOVFF` instruction. The `MOVFF` instruction is a two-word/two-cycle instruction that moves a value from one register to another.

To ensure that commonly used registers (SFRs and select GPRs) can be accessed in a single cycle, regardless of the current BSR values, an Access Bank is implemented. A segment of Bank 0 and a segment of Bank 15 comprise the Access RAM. **Section 4.10 "Access Bank"** provides a detailed description of the Access RAM.

4.9.1 GENERAL PURPOSE REGISTER FILE

The register file can be accessed either directly or indirectly. Indirect addressing operates using a File Select Register and corresponding Indirect File Operand. The operation of indirect addressing is shown in **Section 4.12 "Indirect Addressing, INDF and FSR Registers"**.

Enhanced MCU devices may have banked memory in the GPR area. GPRs are not initialized by a Power-on Reset and are unchanged on all other Resets.

Data RAM is available for use as General Purpose Registers by all instructions. The top section of Bank 15 (F60h to FFFh) contains SFRs. All other banks of data memory contain GPR registers, starting with Bank 0.

4.9.2 SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTERS

The Special Function Registers (SFRs) are registers used by the CPU and peripheral modules for controlling

FIGURE 4-6: DATA MEMORY MAP FOR PIC18FX520 DEVICES

FIGURE 4-7: DATA MEMORY MAP FOR PIC18FX620 AND PIC18FX720 DEVICES

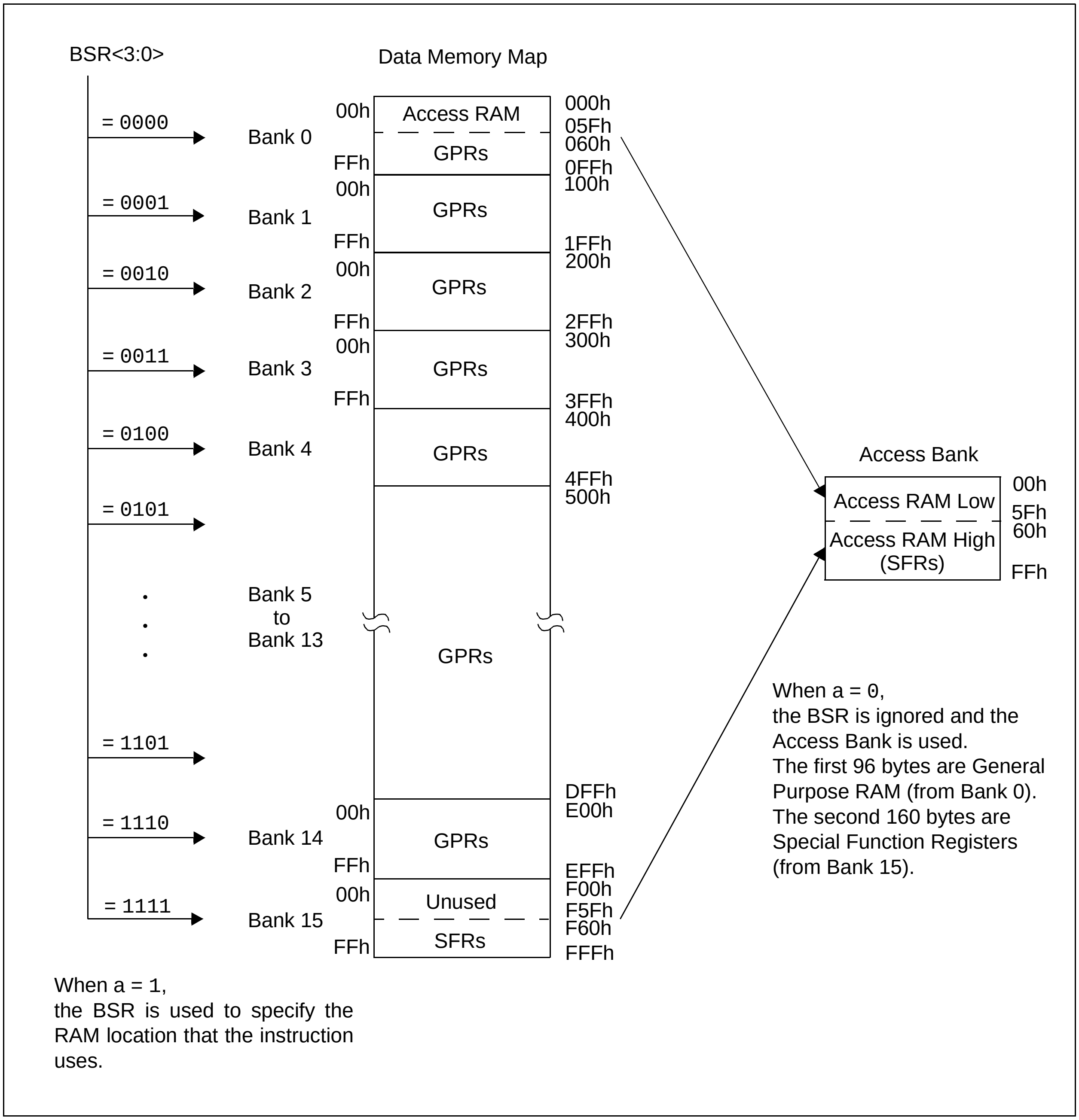


TABLE 4-2: SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTER MAP

Address	Name	Address	Name	Address	Name	Address	Name
FFFh	TOSU	FDFh	INDF2(3)	FBFh	CCPR1H	F9Fh	IPR1
FFEh	TOSH	FDEh	POSTINC2(3)	FBEh	CCPR1L	F9Eh	PIR1
FFDh	TOSL	FDDh	POSTDEC2(3)	FBDh	CCP1CON	F9Dh	PIE1
FFCh	STKPTR	FDCh	PREINC2(3)	FBCh	CCPR2H	F9Ch	MEMCON(2)
FFBh	PCLATU	FDBh	PLUSW2(3)	FBBh	CCPR2L	F9Bh	—(1)
FFAh	PCLATH	FDAh	FSR2H	FBAh	CCP2CON	F9Ah	TRISJ
FF9h	PCL	FD9h	FSR2L	FB9h	CCPR3H	F99h	TRISH
FF8h	TBLPTRU	FD8h	STATUS	FB8h	CCPR3L	F98h	TRISG
FF7h	TBLPTRH	FD7h	TMR0H	FB7h	CCP3CON	F97h	TRISF
FF6h	TBLPTRL	FD6h	TMR0L	FB6h	—(1)	F96h	TRISE
FF5h	TABLAT	FD5h	T0CON	FB5h	CVRCON	F95h	TRISD
FF4h	PRODH	FD4h	—(1)	FB4h	CMCON	F94h	TRISC
FF3h	PRODL	FD3h	OSCCON	FB3h	TMR3H	F93h	TRISB
FF2h	INTCON	FD2h	LVDCON	FB2h	TMR3L	F92h	TRISA
FF1h	INTCON2	FD1h	WDTCON	FB1h	T3CON	F91h	LATJ
FF0h	INTCON3	FD0h	RCON	FB0h	PSPCON	F90h	LATH
FEFh	INDF0(3)	FCFh	TMR1H	FAFh	SPBRG1	F8Fh	LATG
FEEh	POSTINC0(3)	FCEh	TMR1L	FAEh	RCREG1	F8Eh	LATF
FEDh	POSTDEC0(3)	FCDh	T1CON	FADh	TXREG1	F8Dh	LATE
FECh	PREINC0(3)	FCCh	TMR2	FACh	TXSTA1	F8Ch	LATD
FEBh	PLUSW0(3)	FCBh	PR2	FABh	RCSTA1	F8Bh	LATC
FEAh	FSR0H	FCAh	T2CON	FAAh	EEADRH	F8Ah	LATB
FE9h	FSR0L	FC9h	SSPBUF	FA9h	EEADR	F89h	LATA
FE8h	WREG	FC8h	SSPADD	FA8h	EEDATA	F88h	PORTJ
FE7h	INDF1(3)	FC7h	SSPSTAT	FA7h	EECON2	F87h	PORTH
FE6h	POSTINC1(3)	FC6h	SSPCON1	FA6h	EECON1	F86h	PORTG
FE5h	POSTDEC1(3)	FC5h	SSPCON2	FA5h	IPR3	F85h	PORTF
FE4h	PREINC1(3)	FC4h	ADRESH	FA4h	PIR3	F84h	PORTE
FE3h	PLUSW1(3)	FC3h	ADRESL	FA3h	PIE3	F83h	PORTD
FE2h	FSR1H	FC2h	ADCON0	FA2h	IPR2	F82h	PORTC
FE1h	FSR1L	FC1h	ADCON1	FA1h	PIR2	F81h	PORTB
FE0h	BSR	FC0h	ADCON2	FA0h	PIE2	F80h	PORTA

Note 1: Unimplemented registers are read as ‘0’.
2: This register is unused on PIC18F6X20 devices. Always maintain this register clear.
3: This is not a physical register.

TABLE 4-2: SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTER MAP (CONTINUED)

Address	Name	Address	Name	Address	Name	Address	Name
F7Fh	—(1)	F5Fh	—(1)	F3Fh	—(1)	F1Fh	—(1)
F7Eh	—(1)	F5Eh	—(1)	F3Eh	—(1)	F1Eh	—(1)
F7Dh	—(1)	F5Dh	—(1)	F3Dh	—(1)	F1Dh	—(1)
F7Ch	—(1)	F5Ch	—(1)	F3Ch	—(1)	F1Ch	—(1)
F7Bh	—(1)	F5Bh	—(1)	F3Bh	—(1)	F1Bh	—(1)
F7Ah	—(1)	F5Ah	—(1)	F3Ah	—(1)	F1Ah	—(1)
F79h	—(1)	F59h	—(1)	F39h	—(1)	F19h	—(1)
F78h	TMR4	F58h	—(1)	F38h	—(1)	F18h	—(1)
F77h	PR4	F57h	—(1)	F37h	—(1)	F17h	—(1)
F76h	T4CON	F56h	—(1)	F36h	—(1)	F16h	—(1)
F75h	CCPR4H	F55h	—(1)	F35h	—(1)	F15h	—(1)
F74h	CCPR4L	F54h	—(1)	F34h	—(1)	F14h	—(1)
F73h	CCP4CON	F53h	—(1)	F33h	—(1)	F13h	—(1)
F72h	CCPR5H	F52h	—(1)	F32h	—(1)	F12h	—(1)
F71h	CCPR5L	F51h	—(1)	F31h	—(1)	F11h	—(1)
F70h	CCP5CON	F50h	—(1)	F30h	—(1)	F10h	—(1)
F6Fh	SPBRG2	F4Fh	—(1)	F2Fh	—(1)	F0Fh	—(1)
F6Eh	RCREG2	F4Eh	—(1)	F2Eh	—(1)	F0Eh	—(1)
F6Dh	TXREG2	F4Dh	—(1)	F2Dh	—(1)	F0Dh	—(1)
F6Ch	TXSTA2	F4Ch	—(1)	F2Ch	—(1)	F0Ch	—(1)
F6Bh	RCSTA2	F4Bh	—(1)	F2Bh	—(1)	F0Bh	—(1)
F6Ah	—(1)	F4Ah	—(1)	F2Ah	—(1)	F0Ah	—(1)
F69h	—(1)	F49h	—(1)	F29h	—(1)	F09h	—(1)
F68h	—(1)	F48h	—(1)	F28h	—(1)	F08h	—(1)
F67h	—(1)	F47h	—(1)	F27h	—(1)	F07h	—(1)
F66h	—(1)	F46h	—(1)	F26h	—(1)	F06h	—(1)
F65h	—(1)	F45h	—(1)	F25h	—(1)	F05h	—(1)
F64h	—(1)	F44h	—(1)	F24h	—(1)	F04h	—(1)
F63h	—(1)	F43h	—(1)	F23h	—(1)	F03h	—(1)
F62h	—(1)	F42h	—(1)	F22h	—(1)	F02h	—(1)
F61h	—(1)	F41h	—(1)	F21h	—(1)	F01h	—(1)
F60h	—(1)	F40h	—(1)	F20h	—(1)	F00h	—(1)

Note 1: Unimplemented registers are read as '0'.
2: This register is not available on PIC18F6X20 devices.
3: This is not a physical register.

TABLE 4-3: REGISTER FILE SUMMARY

File Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Details on page:
TOSU	—	—	—	Top-of-Stack Upper Byte (TOS<20:16>)					---0 0000	32, 42
TOSH	Top-of-Stack High Byte (TOS<15:8>)								0000 0000	32, 42
TOSL	Top-of-Stack Low Byte (TOS<7:0>)								0000 0000	32, 42
STKPTR	STKFUL	STKUNF	—	Return Stack Pointer					00-0 0000	32, 43
PCLATU	—	—	bit 21	Holding Register for PC<20:16>					--10 0000	32, 44
PCLATH	Holding Register for PC<15:8>								0000 0000	32, 44
PCL	PC Low Byte (PC<7:0>)								0000 0000	32, 44
TBLPTRU	—	—	bit 21[2]	Program Memory Table Pointer Upper Byte (TBLPTR<20:16>)					--00 0000	32, 64
TBLPTRH	Program Memory Table Pointer High Byte (TBLPTR<15:8>)								0000 0000	32, 64
TBLPTRL	Program Memory Table Pointer Low Byte (TBLPTR<7:0>)								0000 0000	32, 64
TABLAT	Program Memory Table Latch								0000 0000	32, 64
PRODH	Product Register High Byte								xxxx xxxx	32, 85
PRODL	Product Register Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	32, 85
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 0000	32, 89
INTCON2	RBPU	INTEDG0	INTEDG1	INTEDG2	INTEDG3	TMR0IP	INT3IP	RBIP	1111 1111	32, 90
INTCON3	INT2IP	INT1IP	INT3IE	INT2IE	INT1IE	INT3IF	INT2IF	INT1IF	1100 0000	32, 91
INDF0	Uses contents of FSR0 to address data memory – value of FSR0 not changed (not a physical register)								n/a	57
POSTINC0	Uses contents of FSR0 to address data memory – value of FSR0 post-incremented (not a physical register)								n/a	57
POSTDEC0	Uses contents of FSR0 to address data memory – value of FSR0 post-decremented (not a physical register)								n/a	57
PREINC0	Uses contents of FSR0 to address data memory – value of FSR0 pre-incremented (not a physical register)								n/a	57
PLUSW0	Uses contents of FSR0 to address data memory – value of FSR0 pre-incremented (not a physical register) – value of FSR0 offset by value in WREG								n/a	57
FSR0H	—	—	—	—	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer 0 High Byte				---- 0000	32, 57
FSR0L	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer 0 Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	32, 57
WREG	Working Register								xxxx xxxx	32
INDF1	Uses contents of FSR1 to address data memory – value of FSR1 not changed (not a physical register)								n/a	57
POSTINC1	Uses contents of FSR1 to address data memory – value of FSR1 post-incremented (not a physical register)								n/a	57
POSTDEC1	Uses contents of FSR1 to address data memory – value of FSR1 post-decremented (not a physical register)								n/a	57
PREINC1	Uses contents of FSR1 to address data memory – value of FSR1 pre-incremented (not a physical register)								n/a	57
PLUSW1	Uses contents of FSR1 to address data memory – value of FSR1 pre-incremented (not a physical register) – value of FSR1 offset by value in WREG								n/a	57
FSR1H	—	—	—	—	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer 1 High Byte				---- 0000	33, 57
FSR1L	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer 1 Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	33, 57
BSR	—	—	—	—	Bank Select Register				---- 0000	33, 56
INDF2	Uses contents of FSR2 to address data memory – value of FSR2 not changed (not a physical register)								n/a	57
POSTINC2	Uses contents of FSR2 to address data memory – value of FSR2 post-incremented (not a physical register)								n/a	57
POSTDEC2	Uses contents of FSR2 to address data memory – value of FSR2 post-decremented (not a physical register)								n/a	57

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, – = unimplemented, q = value depends on condition

Note 1: RA6 and associated bits are configured as port pins in RCIO and ECIO Oscillator modes only and read '0' in all other oscillator modes.

2: Bit 21 of the TBLPTRU allows access to the device configuration bits.

3: These registers are unused on PIC18F6X20 devices; always maintain these clear.

TABLE 4-3: REGISTER FILE SUMMARY (CONTINUED)

File Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Details on page:
PREINC2	Uses contents of FSR2 to address data memory – value of FSR2 pre-incremented (not a physical register)								n/a	57
PLUSW2	Uses contents of FSR2 to address data memory – value of FSR2 pre-incremented (not a physical register) – value of FSR2 offset by value in WREG								n/a	57
FSR2H	—	—	—	—	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer 2 High Byte				`---- 0000`	33, 57
FSR2L	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer 2 Low Byte								`xxxx xxxx`	33, 57
STATUS	—	—	—	N	OV	Z	DC	C	`---x xxxx`	33, 59
TMR0H	Timer0 Register High Byte								`0000 0000`	33, 133
TMR0L	Timer0 Register Low Byte								`xxxx xxxx`	33, 133
T0CON	TMR0ON	T08BIT	T0CS	T0SE	PSA	T0PS2	T0PS1	T0PS0	`1111 1111`	33, 131
OSCCON	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SCS	`---- ---0`	25, 33
LVDCON	—	—	IRVST	LVDEN	LVDL3	LVDL2	LVDL1	LVDL0	`--00 0101`	33, 235
WDTCON	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SWDTE	`---- ---0`	33, 250
RCON	IPEN	—	—	$\overline{\text{RI}}$	$\overline{\text{TO}}$	$\overline{\text{PD}}$	$\overline{\text{POR}}$	$\overline{\text{BOR}}$	`0--1 11qq`	33, 60, 101
TMR1H	Timer1 Register High Byte								`xxxx xxxx`	33, 135
TMR1L	Timer1 Register Low Byte								`xxxx xxxx`	33, 135
T1CON	RD16	—	T1CKPS1	T1CKPS0	T1OSCEN	$\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$	TMR1CS	TMR1ON	`0-00 0000`	33, 135
TMR2	Timer2 Register								`0000 0000`	33, 141
PR2	Timer2 Period Register								`1111 1111`	33, 142
T2CON	—	T2OUTPS3	T2OUTPS2	T2OUTPS1	T2OUTPS0	TMR2ON	T2CKPS1	T2CKPS0	`-000 0000`	33, 141
SSPBUF	SSP Receive Buffer/Transmit Register								`xxxx xxxx`	33, 157
SSPADD	SSP Address Register in I^2C Slave mode. SSP Baud Rate Reload Register in I^2C Master mode.								`0000 0000`	33, 166
SSPSTAT	SMP	CKE	D/$\overline{\text{A}}$	P	S	R/$\overline{\text{W}}$	UA	BF	`0000 0000`	33, 158
SSPCON1	WCOL	SSPOV	SSPEN	CKP	SSPM3	SSPM2	SSPM1	SSPM0	`0000 0000`	33, 168
SSPCON2	GCEN	ACKSTAT	ACKDT	ACKEN	RCEN	PEN	RSEN	SEN	`0000 0000`	33, 169
ADRESH	A/D Result Register High Byte								`xxxx xxxx`	34, 215
ADRESL	A/D Result Register Low Byte								`xxxx xxxx`	34, 215
ADCON0	—	—	CHS3	CHS2	CHS1	CHS0	GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$	ADON	`--00 0000`	34, 213
ADCON1	—	—	VCFG1	VCFG0	PCFG3	PCFG2	PCFG1	PCFG0	`--00 0000`	34, 214
ADCON2	ADFM	—	—	—	—	ADCS2	ADCS1	ADCS0	`0--- -000`	34, 215
CCPR1H	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 1 High Byte								`xxxx xxxx`	34, 151, 152
CCPR1L	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 1 Low Byte								`xxxx xxxx`	34, 151, 152
CCP1CON	—	—	DC1B1	DC1B0	CCP1M3	CCP1M2	CCP1M1	CCP1M0	`--00 0000`	34, 149
CCPR2H	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 2 High Byte								`xxxx xxxx`	34, 151, 152
CCPR2L	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 2 Low Byte								`xxxx xxxx`	34, 151, 152
CCP2CON	—	—	DC2B1	DC2B0	CCP2M3	CCP2M2	CCP2M1	CCP2M0	`--00 0000`	34, 149

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, – = unimplemented, q = value depends on condition

Note 1: RA6 and associated bits are configured as port pins in RCIO and ECIO Oscillator modes only and read '`0`' in all other oscillator modes.

2: Bit 21 of the TBLPTRU allows access to the device configuration bits.

3: These registers are unused on PIC18F6X20 devices; always maintain these clear.

TABLE 4-3: REGISTER FILE SUMMARY (CONTINUED)

File Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Details on page:
CCPR3H	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 3 High Byte								xxxx xxxx	34, 151, 152
CCPR3L	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 3 Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	34, 151, 152
CCP3CON	—	—	DC3B1	DC3B0	CCP3M3	CCP3M2	CCP3M1	CCP3M0	--00 0000	34, 149
CVRCON	CVREN	CVROE	CVRR	CVRSS	CVR3	CVR2	CVR1	CVR0	0000 0000	34, 229
CMCON	C2OUT	C1OUT	C2INV	C1INV	CIS	CM2	CM1	CM0	0000 0000	34, 223
TMR3H	Timer3 Register High Byte								xxxx xxxx	34, 143
TMR3L	Timer3 Register Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	34, 143
T3CON	RD16	T3CCP2	T3CKPS1	T3CKPS0	T3CCP1	$\overline{\text{T3SYNC}}$	TMR3CS	TMR3ON	0000 0000	34, 143
PSPCON	IBF	OBF	IBOV	PSPMODE	—	—	—	—	0000 ----	34, 129
SPBRG1	USART1 Baud Rate Generator								0000 0000	34, 205
RCREG1	USART1 Receive Register								0000 0000	34, 206
TXREG1	USART1 Transmit Register								0000 0000	34, 204
TXSTA1	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 -010	34, 198
RCSTA1	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 000x	34, 199
EEADRH	—	—	—	—	—	—	EE Adr Register High		---- --00	34, 79
EEADR	Data EEPROM Address Register								0000 0000	34, 79
EEDATA	Data EEPROM Data Register								0000 0000	34, 79
EECON2	Data EEPROM Control Register 2 (not a physical register)								---- ----	34, 79
EECON1	EEPGD	CFGS	—	FREE	WRERR	WREN	WR	RD	xx-0 x000	34, 80
IPR3	—	—	RC2IP	TX2IP	TMR4IP	CCP5IP	CCP4IP	CCP3IP	--11 1111	35, 100
PIR3	—	—	RC2IF	TX2IF	TMR4IF	CCP5IF	CCP4IF	CCP3IF	--00 0000	35, 94
PIE3	—	—	RC2IE	TX2IE	TMR4IE	CCP5IE	CCP4IE	CCP3IE	--00 0000	35, 97
IPR2	—	CMIP	—	EEIP	BCLIP	LVDIP	TMR3IP	CCP2IP	-1-1 1111	35, 99
PIR2	—	CMIF	—	EEIF	BCLIF	LVDIF	TMR3IF	CCP2IF	-0-0 0000	35, 93
PIE2	—	CMIE	—	EEIE	BCLIE	LVDIE	TMR3IE	CCP2IE	-0-0 0000	35, 96
IPR1	PSPIP	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0111 1111	35, 98
PIR1	PSPIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	35, 92
PIE1	PSPIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	35, 95
MEMCON(3)	EBDIS	—	WAIT1	WAIT0	—	—	WM1	WM0	0-00 --00	35, 71
TRISJ(3)	Data Direction Control Register for PORTJ								1111 1111	35, 125
TRISH(3)	Data Direction Control Register for PORTH								1111 1111	35, 122
TRISG	—	—	—	Data Direction Control Register for PORTG					---1 1111	35, 120
TRISF	Data Direction Control Register for PORTF								1111 1111	35, 117
TRISE	Data Direction Control Register for PORTE								1111 1111	35, 114
TRISD	Data Direction Control Register for PORTD								1111 1111	35, 111
TRISC	Data Direction Control Register for PORTC								1111 1111	35, 109
TRISB	Data Direction Control Register for PORTB								1111 1111	35, 106
TRISA	—	TRISA6(1)	Data Direction Control Register for PORTA						-111 1111	35, 103

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, – = unimplemented, q = value depends on condition

Note 1: RA6 and associated bits are configured as port pins in RCIO and ECIO Oscillator modes only and read '0' in all other oscillator modes.

2: Bit 21 of the TBLPTRU allows access to the device configuration bits.

3: These registers are unused on PIC18F6X20 devices; always maintain these clear.

LATJ[3]	Read PORTJ Data Latch, Write PORTJ Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	35, 125
LATH[3]	Read PORTH Data Latch, Write PORTH Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	35, 122
LATG	—	—	—	Read PORTG Data Latch, Write PORTG Data Latch					---x xxxx	35, 120
LATF	Read PORTF Data Latch, Write PORTF Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	35, 117
LATE	Read PORTE Data Latch, Write PORTE Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	35, 114
LATD	Read PORTD Data Latch, Write PORTD Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	35, 111
LATC	Read PORTC Data Latch, Write PORTC Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	35, 109
LATB	Read PORTB Data Latch, Write PORTB Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	35, 106
LATA	—	LATA6[1]	Read PORTA Data Latch, Write PORTA Data Latch[1]						-xxx xxxx	35, 103
PORTJ[3]	Read PORTJ pins, Write PORTJ Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	36, 125
PORTH[3]	Read PORTH pins, Write PORTH Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	36, 122
PORTG	—	—	—	Read PORTG pins, Write PORTG Data Latch					---x xxxx	36, 120
PORTF	Read PORTF pins, Write PORTF Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	36, 117
PORTE	Read PORTE pins, Write PORTE Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	36, 114
PORTD	Read PORTD pins, Write PORTD Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	36, 111
PORTC	Read PORTC pins, Write PORTC Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	36, 109
PORTB	Read PORTB pins, Write PORTB Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	36, 106
PORTA	—	RA6[1]	Read PORTA pins, Write PORTA Data Latch[1]						-x0x 0000	36, 103
TMR4	Timer4 Register								0000 0000	36, 148
PR4	Timer4 Period Register								1111 1111	36, 148
T4CON	—	T4OUTPS3	T4OUTPS2	T4OUTPS1	T4OUTPS0	TMR4ON	T4CKPS1	T4CKPS0	-000 0000	36, 147
CCPR4H	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 4 High Byte								xxxx xxxx	36, 151, 152
CCPR4L	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 4 Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	36, 151, 152
CCP4CON	—	—	DC4B1	DC4B0	CCP4M3	CCP4M2	CCP4M1	CCP4M0	0000 0000	36, 149
CCPR5H	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 5 High Byte								xxxx xxxx	36, 151, 152
CCPR5L	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 5 Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	36, 151, 152
CCP5CON	—	—	DC5B1	DC5B0	CCP5M3	CCP5M2	CCP5M1	CCP5M0	0000 0000	36, 149
SPBRG2	USART2 Baud Rate Generator								0000 0000	36, 205

—CCP5MCCCC TD6j29,—X1(-1.)9,—(C)0te...X1.6()14.6(U)-9.1(T)8.9(P)0.4(SC(M3()]TJ/F1 2(0 06(M3P5M15.2(0 3U)-72185

4.10 Access Bank

The Access Bank is an architectural enhancement, which is very useful for C compiler code optimization. The techniques used by the C compiler may also be useful for programs written in assembly.

This data memory region can be used for:

- Intermediate computational values
- Local variables of subroutines
- Faster context saving/switching of variables
- Common variables
- Faster evaluation/control of SFRs (no banking)

The Access Bank is comprised of the upper 160 bytes in Bank 15 (SFRs) and the lower 96 bytes in Bank 0. These two sections will be referred to as Access RAM High and Access RAM Low, respectively. Figure 4-7 indicates the Access RAM areas.

A bit in the instruction word specifies if the operation is to occur in the bank specified by the BSR register or in the Access Bank. This bit is denoted by the 'a' bit (for access bit).

When forced in the Access Bank (a = `0`), the last address in Access RAM Low is followed by the first address in Access RAM High. Access RAM High maps the Special Function Registers, so that these registers can be accessed without any software overhead. This is useful for testing status flags and modifying control bits.

4.11 Bank Select Register (BSR)

The need for a large general purpose memory space dictates a RAM banking scheme. The data memory is partitioned into sixteen banks. When using direct addressing, the BSR should be configured for the desired bank.

BSR<3:0> holds the upper 4 bits of the 12-bit RAM address. The BSR<7:4> bits will always read '`0`'s and writes will have no effect.

A `MOVLB` instruction has been provided in the instruction set to assist in selecting banks.

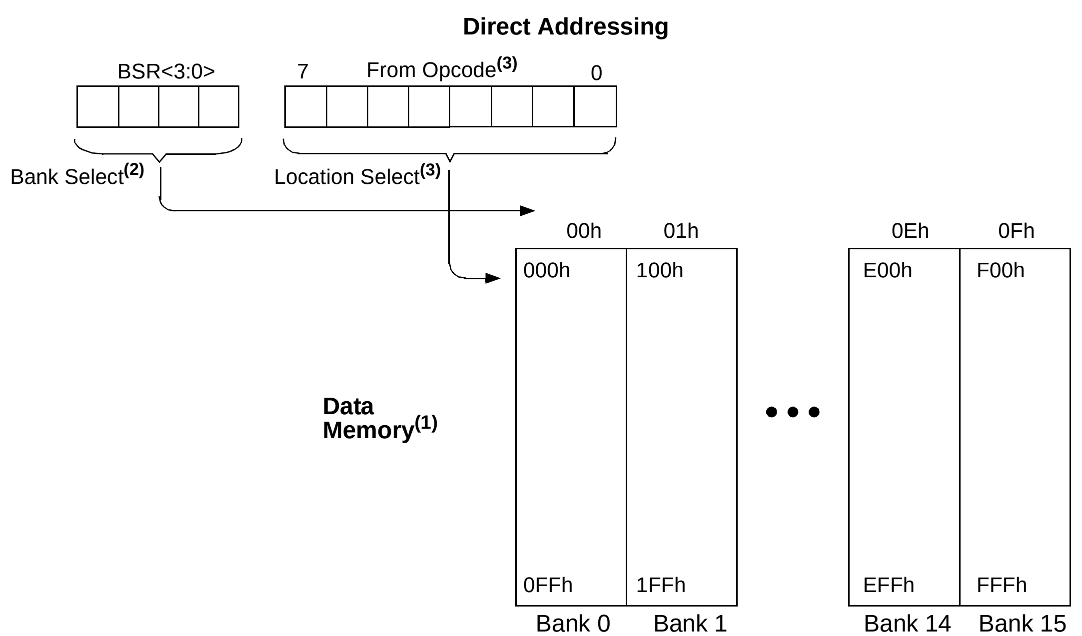
If the currently selected bank is not implemented, any read will return all '`0`'s and all writes are ignored. The Status register bits will be set/cleared as appropriate for the instruction performed.

Each Bank extends up to FFh (256 bytes). All data memory is implemented as static RAM.

A `MOVFF` instruction ignores the BSR, since the 12-bit addresses are embedded into the instruction word.

Section 4.12 "Indirect Addressing, INDF and FSR Registers" provides a description of indirect addressing, which allows linear addressing of the entire RAM space.

FIGURE 4-8: DIRECT ADDRESSING



Note 1: For register file map detail, see Table 4-2.

2: The access bit of the instruction can be used to force an override of the selected bank (BSR<3:0>) to the registers of the Access Bank.

3: The `MOVFF` instruction embeds the entire 12-bit address in the instruction.

4.12 Indirect Addressing, INDF and FSR Registers

Indirect addressing is a mode of addressing data memory, where the data memory address in the instruction is not fixed. An FSR register is used as a pointer to the data memory location that is to be read or written. Since this pointer is in RAM, the contents can be modified by the program. This can be useful for data tables in the data memory and for software stacks. Figure 4-9 shows the operation of indirect addressing. This shows the moving of the value to the data memory address, specified by the value of the FSR register.

Indirect addressing is possible by using one of the INDF registers. Any instruction using the INDF register actually accesses the register pointed to by the File Select Register, FSR. Reading the INDF register itself, indirectly (FSR = `0`), will read 00h. Writing to the INDF register indirectly, results in a no operation. The FSR register contains a 12-bit address, which is shown in Figure 4-10.

The INDFn register is not a physical register. Addressing INDFn actually addresses the register whose address is contained in the FSRn register (FSRn is a pointer). This is indirect addressing.

Example 4-4 shows a simple use of indirect addressing to clear the RAM in Bank 1 (locations 100h-1FFh) in a minimum number of instructions.

EXAMPLE 4-4: HOW TO CLEAR RAM (BANK 1) USING INDIRECT ADDRESSING

```
        LFSR  FSR0 ,0x100  ;
NEXT    CLRF  POSTINC0     ; Clear INDF
                           ; register and
                           ; inc pointer
        BTFSS FSR0H, 1     ; All done with
                           ; Bank 1?
        GOTO  NEXT         ; NO, clear next
CONTINUE                   ; YES, continue
```

There are three indirect addressing registers. To address the entire data memory space (4096 bytes), these registers are 12 bits wide. To store the 12 bits of addressing information, two 8-bit registers are required. These indirect addressing registers are:

1. FSR0: composed of FSR0H:FSR0L
2. FSR1: composed of FSR1H:FSR1L
3. FSR2: composed of FSR2H:FSR2L

In addition, there are registers INDF0, INDF1 and INDF2, which are not physically implemented. Reading or writing to these registers activates indirect addressing, with the value in the corresponding FSR register being the address of the data. If an instruction writes a value to INDF0, the value will be written to the address pointed to by FSR0H:FSR0L. A read from INDF1 reads the data from the address pointed to by FSR1H:FSR1L. INDFn can be used in code anywhere an operand can be used.

If INDF0, INDF1 or INDF2 are read indirectly via an FSR, all '`0`'s are read (zero bit is set). Similarly, if INDF0, INDF1 or INDF2 are written to indirectly, the operation will be equivalent to a `NOP` instruction and the Status bits are not affected.

4.12.1 INDIRECT ADDRESSING OPERATION

Each FSR register has an INDF register associated with it, plus four additional register addresses. Performing an operation on one of these five registers determines how the FSR will be modified during indirect addressing.

When data access is done to one of the five INDFn locations, the address selected will configure the FSRn register to:

- Do nothing to FSRn after an indirect access (no change) – INDFn.
- Auto-decrement FSRn after an indirect access (post-decrement) – POSTDECn.
- Auto-increment FSRn after an indirect access (post-increment) – POSTINCn.
- Auto-increment FSRn before an indirect access (pre-increment) – PREINCn.
- Use the value in the WREG register as an offset to FSRn. Do not modify the value of the WREG or the FSRn register after an indirect access (no change) – PLUSWn.

When using the auto-increment or auto-decrement features, the effect on the FSR is not reflected in the Status register. For example, if the indirect address causes the FSR to equal '`0`', the Z bit will not be set.

Incrementing or decrementing an FSR affects all 12 bits. That is, when FSRnL overflows from an increment, FSRnH will be incremented automatically.

Adding these features allows the FSRn to be used as a stack pointer, in addition to its uses for table operations in data memory.

Each FSR has an address associated with it that performs an indexed indirect access. When a data access to this INDFn location (PLUSWn) occurs, the FSRn is configured to add the signed value in the WREG register and the value in FSR to form the address before an indirect access. The FSR value is not changed.

If an FSR register contains a value that points to one of the INDFn, an indirect read will read 00h (zero bit is set), while an indirect write will be equivalent to a `NOP` (Status bits are not affected).

If an indirect addressing operation is done where the target address is an FSRnH or FSRnL register, the write operation will dominate over the pre- or post-increment/decrement functions.

FIGURE 4-9: INDIRECT ADDRESSING OPERATION

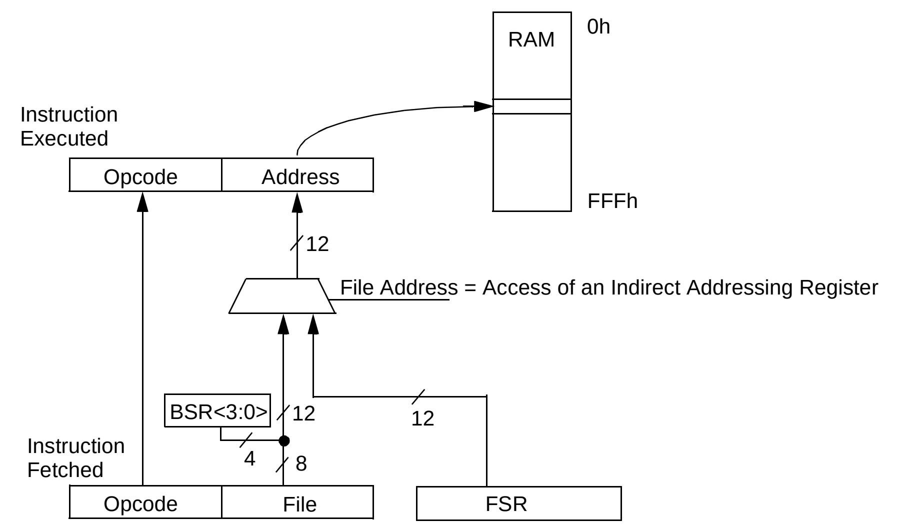
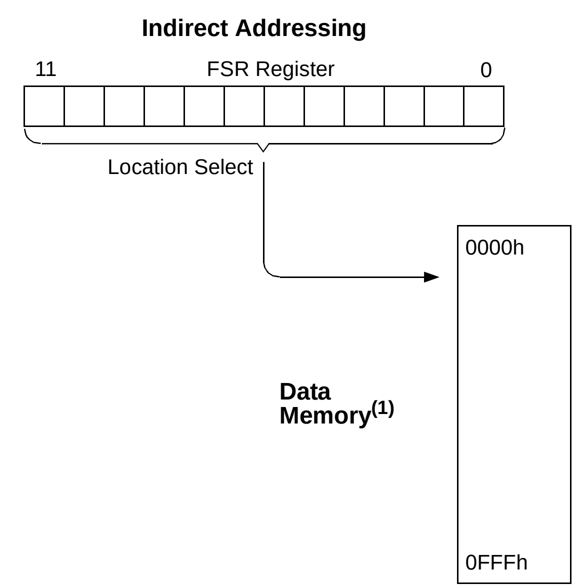


FIGURE 4-10: INDIRECT ADDRESSING



Note 1: For register file map detail, see Table 4-2.

4.13 Status Register

The Status register, shown in Register 4-3, contains the arithmetic status of the ALU. The Status register can be the destination for any instruction, as with any other register. If the Status register is the destination for an instruction that affects the Z, DC, C, OV or N bits, then the write to these five bits is disabled. These bits are set or cleared according to the device logic. Therefore, the result of an instruction with the Status register as destination may be different than intended.

For example, `CLRF STATUS` will clear the upper three bits and set the Z bit. This leaves the Status register as `000u u1uu` (where u = unchanged).

It is recommended, therefore, that only `BCF`, `BSF`, `SWAPF`, `MOVFF` and `MOVWF` instructions are used to alter the Status register, because these instructions do not affect the Z, C, DC, OV or N bits from the Status register. For other instructions not affecting any status bits, see Table 24-1.

Note:	The C and DC bits operate as a $\overline{\text{borrow}}$ and $\overline{\text{digit borrow}}$ bit respectively, in subtraction.

REGISTER 4-3: STATUS REGISTER

U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x
—	—	—	N	OV	Z	DC	C
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4 **N:** Negative bit
This bit is used for signed arithmetic (2's complement). It indicates whether the result was negative (ALU MSB = 1).
1 = Result was negative
0 = Result was positive

bit 3 **OV:** Overflow bit
This bit is used for signed arithmetic (2's complement). It indicates an overflow of the 7-bit magnitude, which causes the sign bit (bit 7) to change state.
1 = Overflow occurred for signed arithmetic (in this arithmetic operation)
0 = No overflow occurred

bit 2 **Z:** Zero bit
1 = The result of an arithmetic or logic operation is zero
0 = The result of an arithmetic or logic operation is not zero

bit 1 **DC:** Digit carry/$\overline{\text{borrow}}$ bit
For `ADDWF`, `ADDLW`, `SUBLW` and `SUBWF` instructions:
1 = A carry-out from the 4th low-order bit of the result occurred
0 = No carry-out from the 4th low-order bit of the result

Note: For $\overline{\text{borrow}}$, the polarity is reversed. A subtraction is executed by adding the 2's complement of the second operand. For rotate (`RRF`, `RLF`) instructions, this bit is loaded with either bit 4 or bit 3 of the source register.

bit 0 **C:** Carry/$\overline{\text{borrow}}$ bit
For `ADDWF`, `ADDLW`, `SUBLW` and `SUBWF` instructions:
1 = A carry-out from the Most Significant bit of the result occurred
0 = No carry-out from the Most Significant bit of the result occurred

Note: For $\overline{\text{borrow}}$, the polarity is reversed. A subtraction is executed by adding the 2's complement of the second operand. For rotate (`RRF`, `RLF`) instructions, this bit is loaded with either the high or low-order bit of the source register.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

4.14 RCON Register

The Reset Control (RCON) register contains flag bits that allow differentiation between the sources of a device Reset. These flags include the $\overline{TO}$, $\overline{PD}$, $\overline{POR}$, $\overline{BOR}$ and $\overline{RI}$ bits. This register is readable and writable.

> **Note 1:** If the BOREN configuration bit is set (Brown-out Reset enabled), the $\overline{BOR}$ bit is '1' on a Power-on Reset. After a Brown-out Reset has occurred, the BOR bit will be cleared and must be set by firmware to indicate the occurrence of the next Brown-out Reset.
>
> **2:** It is recommended that the $\overline{POR}$ bit be set after a Power-on Reset has been detected, so that subsequent Power-on Resets may be detected.

REGISTER 4-4: RCON REGISTER

R/W-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-0	R/W-0
IPEN	—	—	$\overline{RI}$	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	$\overline{POR}$	$\overline{BOR}$
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **IPEN:** Interrupt Priority Enable bit
- 1 = Enable priority levels on interrupts
- 0 = Disable priority levels on interrupts (PIC16CXXX Compatibility mode)

bit 6-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4 **$\overline{RI}$:** RESET Instruction Flag bit
- 1 = The RESET instruction was not executed
- 0 = The RESET instruction was executed causing a device Reset (must be set in software after a Brown-out Reset occurs)

bit 3 **$\overline{TO}$:** Watchdog Time-out Flag bit
- 1 = After power-up, CLRWDT instruction, or SLEEP instruction
- 0 = A WDT time-out occurred

bit 2 **$\overline{PD}$:** Power-down Detection Flag bit
- 1 = After power-up or by the CLRWDT instruction
- 0 = By execution of the SLEEP instruction

bit 1 **$\overline{POR}$:** Power-on Reset Status bit
- 1 = A Power-on Reset has not occurred
- 0 = A Power-on Reset occurred (must be set in software after a Power-on Reset occurs)

bit 0 **$\overline{BOR}$:** Brown-out Reset Status bit
- 1 = A Brown-out Reset has not occurred
- 0 = A Brown-out Reset occurred (must be set in software after a Brown-out Reset occurs)

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

5.0 FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY

The Flash program memory is readable, writable and erasable, during normal operation over the entire VDD range.

A read from program memory is executed on one byte at a time. A write to program memory is executed on blocks of 8 bytes at a time. Program memory is erased in blocks of 64 bytes at a time. A bulk erase operation may not be issued from user code.

Writing or erasing program memory will cease instruction fetches until the operation is complete. The program memory cannot be accessed during the write or erase, therefore, code cannot execute. An internal programming timer terminates program memory writes and erases.

A value written to program memory does not need to be a valid instruction. Executing a program memory location that forms an invalid instruction results in a NOP.

5.1 Table Reads and Table Writes

In order to read and write program memory, there are two operations that allow the processor to move bytes between the program memory space and the data RAM:

- Table Read (TBLRD)
- Table Write (TBLWT)

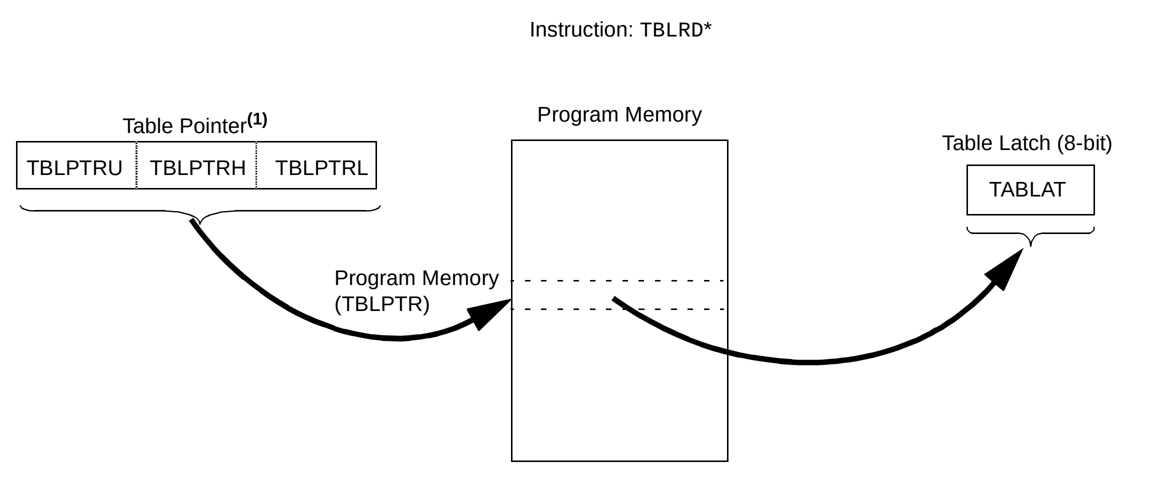
The program memory space is 16 bits wide, while the data RAM space is 8 bits wide. Table reads and table writes move data between these two memory spaces through an 8-bit register (TABLAT).

Table read operations retrieve data from program memory and place it into the data RAM space. Figure 5-1 shows the operation of a table read with program memory and data RAM.

Table write operations store data from the data memory space into holding registers in program memory. The procedure to write the contents of the holding registers into program memory is detailed in **Section 5.5 “Writing to Flash Program Memory”**. Figure 5-2 shows the operation of a table write with program memory and data RAM.

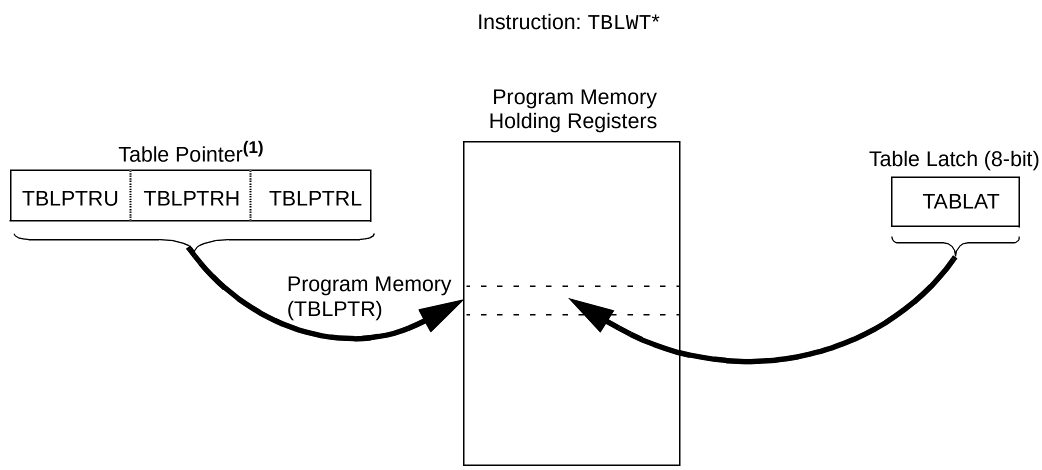
Table operations work with byte entities. A table block containing data, rather than program instructions, is not required to be word aligned. Therefore, a table block can start and end at any byte address. If a table write is being used to write executable code into program memory, program instructions will need to be word aligned.

FIGURE 5-1: TABLE READ OPERATION



Note 1: Table Pointer points to a byte in program memory.

FIGURE 5-2: TABLE WRITE OPERATION



Note 1: Table Pointer actually points to one of eight holding registers, the address of which is determined by TBLPTRL<2:0>. The process for physically writing data to the Program Memory Array is discussed in **Section 5.5 "Writing to Flash Program Memory"**.

5.2 Control Registers

Several control registers are used in conjunction with the TBLRD and TBLWT instructions. These include the:

- EECON1 register
- EECON2 register
- TABLAT register
- TBLPTR registers

5.2.1 EECON1 AND EECON2 REGISTERS

EECON1 is the control register for memory accesses.

EECON2 is not a physical register. Reading EECON2 will read all '0's. The EECON2 register is used exclusively in the memory write and erase sequences.

Control bit EEPGD determines if the access will be a program or data EEPROM memory access. When clear, any subsequent operations will operate on the data EEPROM memory. When set, any subsequent operations will operate on the program memory.

Control bit CFGS determines if the access will be to the configuration/calibration registers, or to program memory/data EEPROM memory. When set, subsequent operations will operate on configuration registers, regardless of EEPGD (see **Section 23.0 "Special Features of the CPU"**). When clear, memory selection access is determined by EEPGD.

The FREE bit, when set, will allow a program memory erase operation. When the FREE bit is set, the erase operation is initiated on the next WR command. When FREE is clear, only writes are enabled.

The WREN bit, when set, will allow a write operation. On power-up, the WREN bit is clear. The WRERR bit is set when a write operation is interrupted by a $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset, or a WDT Time-out Reset during normal operation. In these situations, the user can check the WRERR bit and rewrite the location. It is necessary to reload the data and address registers (EEDATA and EEADR), due to Reset values of zero.

The WR control bit, initiates write operations. The bit cannot be cleared, only set, in software; it is cleared in hardware at the completion of the write operation. The inability to clear the WR bit in software prevents the accidental or premature termination of a write operation.

Note:	Interrupt flag bit, EEIF in the PIR2 register, is set when the write is complete. It must be cleared in software.

REGISTER 5-1: EECON1 REGISTER (ADDRESS FA6h)

R/W-x	R/W-x	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-x	R/W-0	R/S-0	R/S-0
EEPGD	CFGS	—	FREE	WRERR	WREN	WR	RD
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **EEPGD:** Flash Program or Data EEPROM Memory Select bit
1 = Access Flash program memory
0 = Access data EEPROM memory

bit 6 **CFGS:** Flash Program/Data EEPROM or Configuration Select bit
1 = Access configuration registers
0 = Access Flash program or data EEPROM memory

bit 5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4 **FREE:** Flash Row Erase Enable bit
1 = Erase the program memory row addressed by TBLPTR on the next WR command (cleared by completion of erase operation)
0 = Perform write only

bit 3 **WRERR:** Flash Program/Data EEPROM Error Flag bit
1 = A write operation is prematurely terminated (any Reset during self-timed programming in normal operation)
0 = The write operation completed

Note: When a WRERR occurs, the EEPGD and CFGS bits are not cleared. This allows tracing of the error condition.

bit 2 **WREN:** Flash Program/Data EEPROM Write Enable bit
1 = Allows write cycles to Flash program/data EEPROM
0 = Inhibits write cycles to Flash program/data EEPROM

bit 1 **WR:** Write Control bit
1 = Initiates a data EEPROM erase/write cycle or a program memory erase cycle or write cycle. (The operation is self-timed and the bit is cleared by hardware once write is complete. The WR bit can only be set (not cleared) in software.)
0 = Write cycle to the EEPROM is complete

bit 0 **RD:** Read Control bit
1 = Initiates an EEPROM read (Read takes one cycle. RD is cleared in hardware. The RD bit can only be set (not cleared) in software. RD bit cannot be set when EEPGD = 1.)
0 = Does not initiate an EEPROM read

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

5.2.2 TABLAT – TABLE LATCH REGISTER

The Table Latch (TABLAT) is an 8-bit register mapped into the SFR space. The Table Latch is used to hold 8-bit data during data transfers between program memory and data RAM.

5.2.3 TBLPTR – TABLE POINTER REGISTER

The Table Pointer (TBLPTR) addresses a byte within the program memory. The TBLPTR is comprised of three SFR registers: Table Pointer Upper Byte, Table Pointer High Byte and Table Pointer Low Byte (TBLPTRU:TBLPTRH:TBLPTRL). These three registers join to form a 22-bit wide pointer. The low-order 21 bits allow the device to address up to 2 Mbytes of program memory space. The 22nd bit allows access to the Device ID, the User ID and the configuration bits.

The Table Pointer, TBLPTR, is used by the `TBLRD` and `TBLWT` instructions. These instructions can update the TBLPTR in one of four ways, based on the table operation. These operations are shown in Table 5-1. These operations on the TBLPTR only affect the low-order 21 bits.

5.2.4 TABLE POINTER BOUNDARIES

TBLPTR is used in reads, writes and erases of the Flash program memory.

When a `TBLRD` is executed, all 22 bits of the Table Pointer determine which byte is read from program memory into TABLAT.

When a `TBLWT` is executed, the three LSbs of the Table Pointer (TBLPTR<2:0>) determine which of the eight program memory holding registers is written to. When the timed write to program memory (long write) begins, the 19 MSbs of the Table Pointer, TBLPTR (TBLPTR<21:3>), will determine which program memory block of 8 bytes is written to. For more detail, see **Section 5.5 "Writing to Flash Program Memory"**.

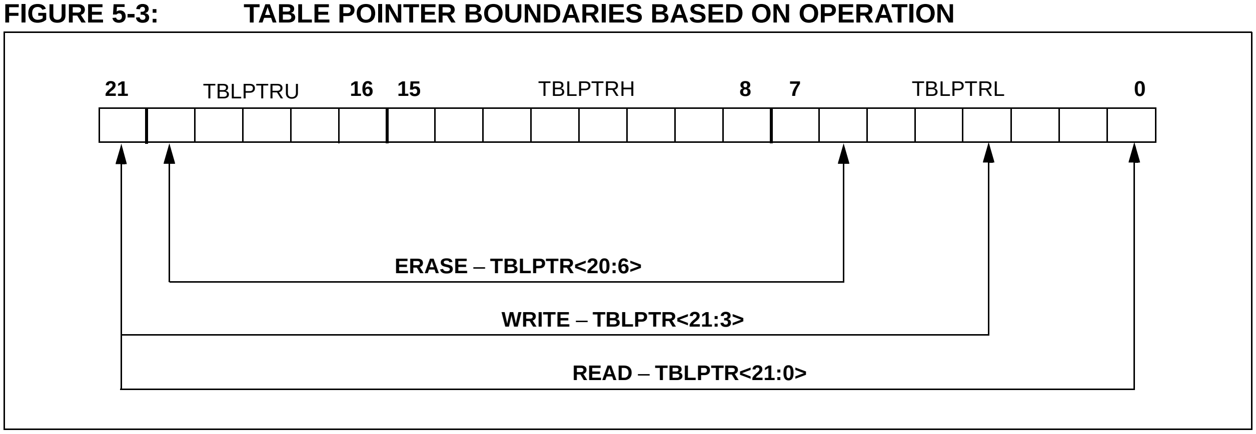
When an erase of program memory is executed, the 16 MSbs of the Table Pointer (TBLPTR<21:6>) point to the 64-byte block that will be erased. The Least Significant bits (TBLPTR<5:0>) are ignored.

Figure 5-3 describes the relevant boundaries of TBLPTR based on Flash program memory operations.

TABLE 5-1: TABLE POINTER OPERATIONS WITH `TBLRD` AND `TBLWT` INSTRUCTIONS

Example	Operation on Table Pointer
`TBLRD*` `TBLWT*`	TBLPTR is not modified
`TBLRD*+` `TBLWT*+`	TBLPTR is incremented after the read/write
`TBLRD*-` `TBLWT*-`	TBLPTR is decremented after the read/write
`TBLRD+*` `TBLWT+*`	TBLPTR is incremented before the read/write

FIGURE 5-3: TABLE POINTER BOUNDARIES BASED ON OPERATION



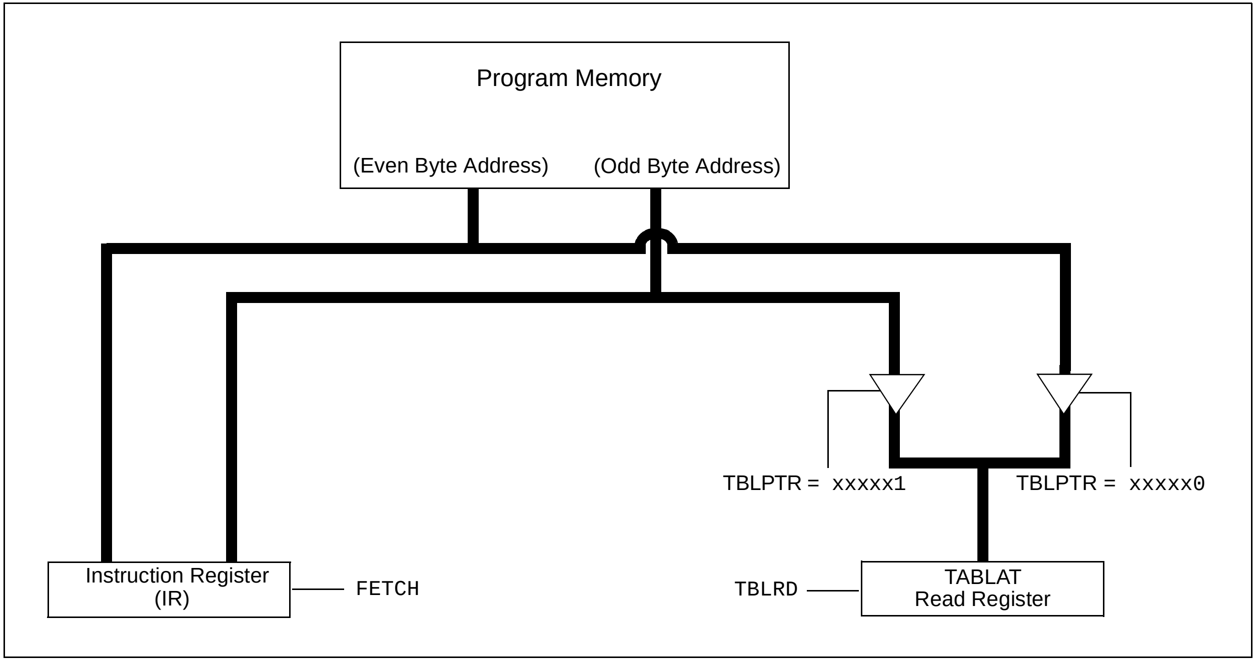
5.3 Reading the Flash Program Memory

The TBLRD instruction is used to retrieve data from program memory and places it into data RAM. Table reads from program memory are performed one byte at a time.

TBLPTR points to a byte address in program space. Executing TBLRD places the byte pointed to into TABLAT. In addition, TBLPTR can be modified automatically for the next table read operation.

The internal program memory is typically organized by words. The Least Significant bit of the address selects between the high and low bytes of the word. Figure 5-4 shows the interface between the internal program memory and the TABLAT.

FIGURE 5-4: READS FROM FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY



EXAMPLE 5-1: READING A FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY WORD

```
            MOVLW   CODE_ADDR_UPPER          ; Load TBLPTR with the base
            MOVWF   TBLPTRU                  ; address of the word
            MOVLW   CODE_ADDR_HIGH
            MOVWF   TBLPTRH
            MOVLW   CODE_ADDR_LOW
            MOVWF   TBLPTRL
READ_WORD
            TBLRD*+                          ; read into TABLAT and increment
            MOVF    TABLAT, W                ; get data
            MOVWF   WORD_EVEN
            TBLRD*+                          ; read into TABLAT and increment
            MOVFW   TABLAT, W                ; get data
            MOVWF   WORD_ODD
```


5.4 Erasing Flash Program Memory

The minimum erase block is 32 words or 64 bytes. Only through the use of an external programmer, or through ICSP control, can larger blocks of program memory be bulk erased. Word erase in the Flash array is not supported.

When initiating an erase sequence from the microcontroller itself, a block of 64 bytes of program memory is erased. The Most Significant 16 bits of the TBLPTR<21:6> point to the block being erased. TBLPTR<5:0> are ignored.

The EECON1 register commands the erase operation. The EEPGD bit must be set to point to the Flash program memory. The WREN bit must be set to enable write operations. The FREE bit is set to select an erase operation.

For protection, the write initiate sequence for EECON2 must be used.

A long write is necessary for erasing the internal Flash. Instruction execution is halted while in a long write cycle. The long write will be terminated by the internal programming timer.

5.4.1 FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY ERASE SEQUENCE

The sequence of events for erasing a block of internal program memory location is:

1. Load Table Pointer with address of row being erased.
2. Set the EECON1 register for the erase operation:
    - set EEPGD bit to point to program memory;
    - clear the CFGS bit to access program memory;
    - set WREN bit to enable writes;
    - set FREE bit to enable the erase.
3. Disable interrupts.
4. Write 55h to EECON2.
5. Write AAh to EECON2.
6. Set the WR bit. This will begin the row erase cycle.
7. The CPU will stall for duration of the erase (about 2 ms using internal timer).
8. Execute a `NOP`.
9. Re-enable interrupts.

EXAMPLE 5-2: ERASING A FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY ROW

```
                MOVLW   CODE_ADDR_UPPER     ; load TBLPTR with the base
                MOVWF   TBLPTRU             ; address of the memory block
                MOVLW   CODE_ADDR_HIGH
                MOVWF   TBLPTRH
                MOVLW   CODE_ADDR_LOW
                MOVWF   TBLPTRL
      ERASE_ROW
                BSF     EECON1, EEPGD       ; point to Flash program memory
                BCF     EECON1, CFGS        ; access Flash program memory
                BSF     EECON1, WREN        ; enable write to memory
                BSF     EECON1, FREE        ; enable Row Erase operation
                BCF     INTCON, GIE         ; disable interrupts
                MOVLW   55h
                MOVWF   EECON2              ; write 55H
   Required     MOVLW   AAh
   Sequence     MOVWF   EECON2              ; write AAH
                BSF     EECON1, WR          ; start erase (CPU stall)
                NOP
                BSF     INTCON, GIE         ; re-enable interrupts
```


5.5 Writing to Flash Program Memory

The minimum programming block is 4 words or 8 bytes. Word or byte programming is not supported.

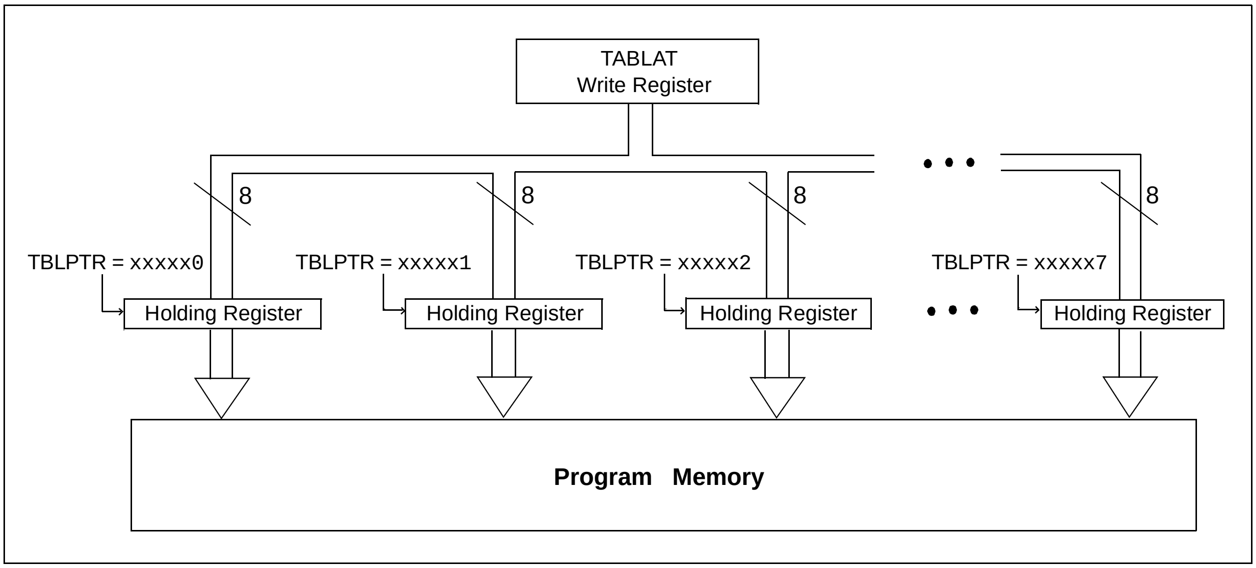
Table writes are used internally to load the holding registers needed to program the Flash memory. There are 8 holding registers used by the table writes for programming.

Since the Table Latch (TABLAT) is only a single byte, the TBLWT instruction has to be executed 8 times for each programming operation. All of the table write operations will essentially be short writes, because only the holding registers are written. At the end of updating 8 registers, the EECON1 register must be written to, to start the programming operation with a long write.

The long write is necessary for programming the internal Flash. Instruction execution is halted while in a long write cycle. The long write will be terminated by the internal programming timer.

The EEPROM on-chip timer controls the write time. The write/erase voltages are generated by an on-chip charge pump, rated to operate over the voltage range of the device for byte or word operations.

FIGURE 5-5: TABLE WRITES TO FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY



5.5.1 FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY WRITE SEQUENCE

The sequence of events for programming an internal program memory location should be:

1. Read 64 bytes into RAM.
2. Update data values in RAM as necessary.
3. Load Table Pointer with address being erased.
4. Do the row erase procedure.
5. Load Table Pointer with address of first byte being written.
6. Write the first 8 bytes into the holding registers with auto-increment.
7. Set the EECON1 register for the write operation:
   - set EEPGD bit to point to program memory
   - clear the CFGS bit to access program memory
   - set WREN to enable byte writes
8. Disable interrupts.
9. Write 55h to EECON2.
10. Write AAh to EECON2.
11. Set the WR bit. This will begin the write cycle.
12. The CPU will stall for duration of the write (about 2 ms using internal timer).
13. Execute a NOP.
14. Re-enable interrupts.
15. Repeat steps 6-14 seven times, to write 64 bytes.
16. Verify the memory (table read).

This procedure will require about 18 ms to update one row of 64 bytes of memory. An example of the required code is given in Example 5-3.

Note:	Before setting the WR bit, the Table Pointer address needs to be within the intended address range of the eight bytes in the holding register.

EXAMPLE 5-3: WRITING TO FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY

```
                MOVLW   D'64                      ; number of bytes in erase block
                MOVWF   COUNTER
                MOVLW   BUFFER_ADDR_HIGH          ; point to buffer
                MOVWF   FSR0H
                MOVLW   BUFFER_ADDR_LOW
                MOVWF   FSR0L
                MOVLW   CODE_ADDR_UPPER           ; Load TBLPTR with the base
                MOVWF   TBLPTRU                   ; address of the memory block
                MOVLW   CODE_ADDR_HIGH
                MOVWF   TBLPTRH
                MOVLW   CODE_ADDR_LOW
                MOVWF   TBLPTRL
READ_BLOCK
                TBLRD*+                           ; read into TABLAT, and inc
                MOVF    TABLAT, W                 ; get data
                MOVWF   POSTINC0                  ; store data
                DECFSZ  COUNTER                   ; done?
                BRA     READ_BLOCK                ; repeat
MODIFY_WORD
                MOVLW   DATA_ADDR_HIGH            ; point to buffer
                MOVWF   FSR0H
                MOVLW   DATA_ADDR_LOW
                MOVWF   FSR0L
                MOVLW   NEW_DATA_LOW              ; update buffer word
                MOVWF   POSTINC0
                MOVLW   NEW_DATA_HIGH
                MOVWF   INDF0
ERASE_BLOCK
                MOVLW   CODE_ADDR_UPPER           ; load TBLPTR with the base
                MOVWF   TBLPTRU                   ; address of the memory block
                MOVLW   CODE_ADDR_HIGH
                MOVWF   TBLPTRH
                MOVLW   CODE_ADDR_LOW
                MOVWF   TBLPTRL
                BSF     EECON1, EEPGD             ; point to Flash program memory
                BCF     EECON1, CFGS              ; access Flash program memory
                BSF     EECON1, WREN              ; enable write to memory
                BSF     EECON1, FREE              ; enable Row Erase operation
                BCF     INTCON, GIE               ; disable interrupts
                MOVLW   55h
                MOVWF   EECON2                    ; write 55H
    Required    MOVLW   AAh
    Sequence    MOVWF   EECON2                    ; write AAH
                BSF     EECON1, WR                ; start erase (CPU stall)
                NOP
                BSF     INTCON, GIE               ; re-enable interrupts
                TBLRD*-                           ; dummy read decrement
WRITE_BUFFER_BACK
                MOVLW   8                         ; number of write buffer groups of 8 bytes
                MOVWF   COUNTER_HI
                MOVLW   BUFFER_ADDR_HIGH          ; point to buffer
                MOVWF   FSR0H
                MOVLW   BUFFER_ADDR_LOW
                MOVWF   FSR0L
PROGRAM_LOOP
                MOVLW   8                         ; number of bytes in holding register
                MOVWF   COUNTER
WRITE_WORD_TO_HREGS
                MOVFF   POSTINC0, WREG            ; get low byte of buffer data
                                                  ; present data to table latch
                TBLWT+*                           ; write data, perform a short write
                                                  ; to internal TBLWT holding register.
                DECFSZ  COUNTER                   ; loop until buffers are full
                BRA     WRITE_WORD_TO_HREGS
```

EXAMPLE 5-3: WRITING TO FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY (CONTINUED)

```
PROGRAM_MEMORY
               BSF     EECON1, EEPGD        ; point to Flash program memory
               BCF     EECON1, CFGS         ; access Flash program memory
               BSF     EECON1, WREN         ; enable write to memory
               BCF     INTCON, GIE          ; disable interrupts
               MOVLW   55h
               MOVWF   EECON2               ; write 55H
    Required   MOVLW   AAh
    Sequence   MOVWF   EECON2               ; write AAH
               BSF     EECON1, WR           ; start program (CPU stall)
               NOP
               BSF     INTCON, GIE          ; re-enable interrupts
               DECFSZ  COUNTER_HI           ; loop until done
               BRA     PROGRAM_LOOP
               BCF     EECON1, WREN         ; disable write to memory
```

5.5.2 WRITE VERIFY

Depending on the application, good programming practice may dictate that the value written to the memory should be verified against the original value. This should be used in applications where excessive writes can stress bits near the specification limit.

5.5.3 UNEXPECTED TERMINATION OF WRITE OPERATION

If a write is terminated by an unplanned event, such as loss of power or an unexpected Reset, the memory location just programmed should be verified and reprogrammed if needed. The WRERR bit is set when a write operation is interrupted by a $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset, or a WDT Time-out Reset during normal operation. In these situations, users can check the WRERR bit and rewrite the location.

5.5.4 PROTECTION AGAINST SPURIOUS WRITES

To protect against spurious writes to Flash program memory, the write initiate sequence must also be followed. See **Section 23.0 "Special Features of the CPU"** for more detail.

5.6 Flash Program Operation During Code Protection

See **Section 23.0 "Special Features of the CPU"** for details on code protection of Flash program memory.

TABLE 5-2: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PROGRAM FLASH MEMORY

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
TBLPTRU	—	—	bit 21	Program Memory Table Pointer Upper Byte (TBLPTR<20:16>)					--00 0000	--00 0000
TBPLTRH	Program Memory Table Pointer High Byte (TBLPTR<15:8>)								0000 0000	0000 0000
TBLPTRL	Program Memory Table Pointer High Byte (TBLPTR<7:0>)								0000 0000	0000 0000
TABLAT	Program Memory Table Latch								0000 0000	0000 0000
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INTE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INTF	RBIF	0000 0000	0000 0000
EECON2	EEPROM Control Register 2 (not a physical register)								—	—
EECON1	EEPGD	CFGS	—	FREE	WRERR	WREN	WR	RD	xx-0 x000	uu-0 u000
IPR2	—	CMIP	—	EEIP	BCLIP	LVDIP	TMR3IP	CCP2IP		

NOTES:

6.0 EXTERNAL MEMORY INTERFACE

Note:	The External Memory Interface is not implemented on PIC18F6X20 (64-pin) devices.

The External Memory Interface is a feature of the PIC18F8X20 devices that allows the controller to access external memory devices (such as Flash, EPROM, SRAM, etc.) as program or data memory.

The physical implementation of the interface uses 27 pins. These pins are reserved for external address/data bus functions; they are multiplexed with I/O port pins on four ports. Three I/O ports are multiplexed with the address/data bus, while the fourth port is multiplexed with the bus control signals. The I/O port functions are enabled when the EBDIS bit in the MEMCON register is set (see Register 6-1). A list of the multiplexed pins and their functions is provided in Table 6-1.

As implemented in the PIC18F8X20 devices, the interface operates in a similar manner to the external memory interface introduced on PIC18C601/801 microcontrollers. The most notable difference is that the interface on PIC18F8X20 devices only operates in 16-bit modes. The 8-bit mode is not supported.

For a more complete discussion of the operating modes that use the external memory interface, refer to **Section 4.1.1 "PIC18F8X20 Program Memory Modes"**.

6.1 Program Memory Modes and the External Memory Interface

As previously noted, PIC18F8X20 controllers are capable of operating in any one of four program memory modes, using combinations of on-chip and external program memory. The functions of the multiplexed port pins depend on the program memory mode selected, as well as the setting of the EBDIS bit.

In **Microprocessor Mode**, the external bus is always active and the port pins have only the external bus function.

In **Microcontroller Mode,** the bus is not active and the pins have their port functions only. Writes to the MEMCOM register are not permitted.

In **Microprocessor with Boot Block** or **Extended Microcontroller Mode,** the external program memory bus shares I/O port functions on the pins. When the device is fetching or doing table read/table write operations on the external program memory space, the pins will have the external bus function. If the device is fetching and accessing internal program memory locations only, the EBDIS control bit will change the pins from external memory to I/O port functions. When EBDIS = `0`, the pins function as the external bus. When EBDIS = `1`, the pins function as I/O ports.

Note:	Maximum FOSC for the PIC18FX520 is limited to 25 MHz when using the external memory interface.

REGISTER 6-1: MEMCON REGISTER

R/W-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
EBDIS	—	WAIT1	WAIT0	—	—	WM1	WM0
bit7							bit0

bit 7 **EBDIS:** External Bus Disable bit
`1` = External system bus disabled, all external bus drivers are mapped as I/O ports
`0` = External system bus enabled and I/O ports are disabled

bit 6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '`0`'

bit 5-4 **WAIT<1:0>:** Table Reads and Writes Bus Cycle Wait Count bits
`11` = Table reads and writes will wait 0 TCY
`10` = Table reads and writes will wait 1 TCY
`01` = Table reads and writes will wait 2 TCY
`00` = Table reads and writes will wait 3 TCY

bit 3-2 **Unimplemented:** Read as '`0`'

bit 1-0 **WM<1:0>:** `TBLWRT` Operation with 16-bit Bus bits
`1x` = Word Write mode: TABLAT<0> and TABLAT<1> word output, $\overline{\text{WRH}}$ active when TABLAT<1> written
`01` = Byte Select mode: TABLAT data copied on both MSB and LSB, $\overline{\text{WRH}}$ and ($\overline{\text{UB}}$ or $\overline{\text{LB}}$) will activate
`00` = Byte Write mode: TABLAT data copied on both MSB and LSB, $\overline{\text{WRH}}$ or $\overline{\text{WRL}}$ will activate

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

If the device fetches or accesses external memory while EBDIS = 1, the pins will switch to external bus. If the EBDIS bit is set by a program executing from external memory, the action of setting the bit will be delayed until the program branches into the internal memory. At that time, the pins will change from external bus to I/O ports.

When the device is executing out of internal memory (EBDIS = 0) in Microprocessor with Boot Block mode, or Extended Microcontroller mode, the control signals will NOT be active. They will go to a state where the AD<15:0> and A<19:16> are tri-state; the $\overline{\text{CE}}$, $\overline{\text{OE}}$, $\overline{\text{WRH}}$, $\overline{\text{WRL}}$, $\overline{\text{UB}}$ and $\overline{\text{LB}}$ signals are '1' and ALE and BA0 are '0'.

TABLE 6-1: PIC18F8X20 EXTERNAL BUS – I/O PORT FUNCTIONS

Name	Port	Bit	Function
RD0/AD0	PORTD	bit 0	Input/Output or System Bus Address bit 0 or Data bit 0.
RD1/AD1	PORTD	bit 1	Input/Output or System Bus Address bit 1 or Data bit 1.
RD2/AD2	PORTD	bit 2	Input/Output or System Bus Address bit 2 or Data bit 2.
RD3/AD3	PORTD	bit 3	Input/Output or System Bus Address bit 3 or Data bit 3.
RD4/AD4	PORTD	bit 4	Input/Output or System Bus Address bit 4 or Data bit 4.
RD5/AD5	PORTD	bit 5	Input/Output or System Bus Address bit 5 or Data bit 5.
RD6/AD6	PORTD	bit 6	Input/Output or System Bus Address bit 6 or Data bit 6.
RD7/AD7	PORTD	bit 7	Input/Output or System Bus Address bit 7 or Data bit 7.
RE0/AD8	PORTE	bit 0	Input/Output or System Bus Address bit 8 or Data bit 8.
RE1/AD9	PORTE	bit 1	Input/Output or System Bus Address bit 9 or Data bit 9.
RE2/AD10	PORTE	bit 2	Input/Output or System Bus Address bit 10 or Data bit 10.
RE3/AD11	PORTE	bit 3	Input/Output or System Bus Address bit 11 or Data bit 11.
RE4/AD12	PORTE	bit 4	Input/Output or System Bus Address bit 12 or Data bit 12.
RE5/AD13	PORTE	bit 5	Input/Output or System Bus Address bit 13 or Data bit 13.
RE6/AD14	PORTE	bit 6	Input/Output or System Bus Address bit 14 or Data bit 14.
RE7/AD15	PORTE	bit 7	Input/Output or System Bus Address bit 15 or Data bit 15.
RH0/A16	PORTH	bit 0	Input/Output or System Bus Address bit 16.
RH1/A17	PORTH	bit 1	Input/Output or System Bus Address bit 17.
RH2/A18	PORTH	bit 2	Input/Output or System Bus Address bit 18.
RH3/A19	PORTH	bit 3	Input/Output or System Bus Address bit 19.
RJ0/ALE	PORTJ	bit 0	Input/Output or System Bus Address Latch Enable (ALE) Control pin.
RJ1/$\overline{\text{OE}}$	PORTJ	bit 1	Input/Output or System Bus Output Enable ($\overline{\text{OE}}$) Control pin.
RJ2/$\overline{\text{WRL}}$	PORTJ	bit 2	Input/Output or System Bus Write Low ($\overline{\text{WRL}}$) Control pin.
RJ3/$\overline{\text{WRH}}$	PORTJ	bit 3	Input/Output or System Bus Write High ($\overline{\text{WRH}}$) Control pin.
RJ4/BA0	PORTJ	bit 4	Input/Output or System Bus Byte Address bit 0.
RJ5/$\overline{\text{CE}}$	PORTJ	bit 5	Input/Output or System Bus Chip Enable ($\overline{\text{CE}}$) Control pin.
RJ6/$\overline{\text{LB}}$	PORTJ	bit 6	Input/Output or System Bus Lower Byte Enable ($\overline{\text{LB}}$) Control pin.
RJ7/$\overline{\text{UB}}$	PORTJ	bit 7	Input/Output or System Bus Upper Byte Enable ($\overline{\text{UB}}$) Control pin.

6.2 16-bit Mode

The External Memory Interface implemented in PIC18F8X20 devices operates only in 16-bit mode. The mode selection is not software configurable, but is programmed via the configuration bits.

The WM<1:0> bits in the MEMCON register determine three types of connections in 16-bit mode. They are referred to as:

- 16-bit Byte Write
- 16-bit Word Write
- 16-bit Byte Select

These three different configurations allow the designer maximum flexibility in using 8-bit and 16-bit memory devices.

For all 16-bit modes, the Address Latch Enable (ALE) pin indicates that the address bits A<15:0> are available on the External Memory Interface bus. Following the address latch, the Output Enable signal ($\overline{\text{OE}}$) will enable both bytes of program memory at once to form a 16-bit instruction word. The Chip Enable signal ($\overline{\text{CE}}$) is active at any time that the microcontroller accesses external memory, whether reading or writing; it is inactive (asserted high) whenever the device is in Sleep mode.

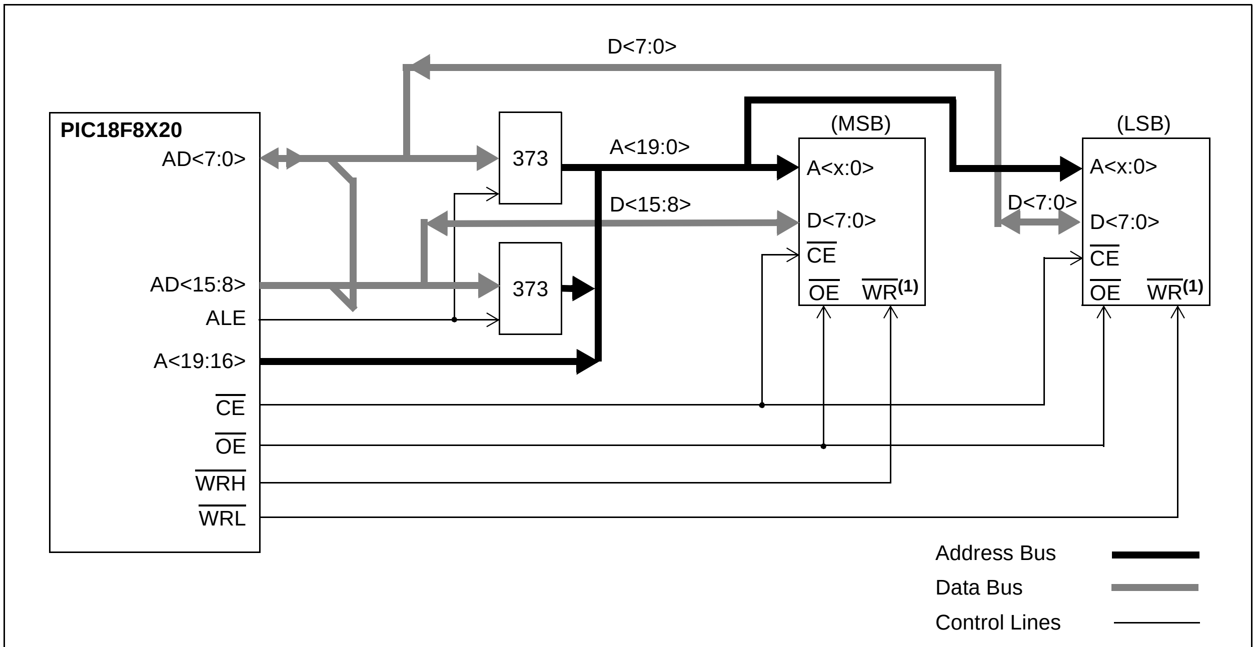
In Byte Select mode, JEDEC standard Flash memories will require BA0 for the byte address line and one I/O line to select between Byte and Word mode. The other 16-bit modes do not need BA0. JEDEC standard static RAM memories will use the $\overline{\text{UB}}$ or $\overline{\text{LB}}$ signals for byte selection.

6.2.1 16-BIT BYTE WRITE MODE

Figure 6-1 shows an example of 16-bit Byte Write mode for PIC18F8X20 devices. This mode is used for two separate 8-bit memories connected for 16-bit operation. This generally includes basic EPROM and Flash devices. It allows table writes to byte-wide external memories.

During a TBLWT instruction cycle, the TABLAT data is presented on the upper and lower bytes of the AD15:AD0 bus. The appropriate $\overline{\text{WRH}}$ or $\overline{\text{WRL}}$ control line is strobed on the LSb of the TBLPTR.

FIGURE 6-1: 16-BIT BYTE WRITE MODE EXAMPLE



Note 1: This signal only applies to table writes. See **Section 5.1 "Table Reads and Table Writes"**.

6.2.2 16-BIT WORD WRITE MODE

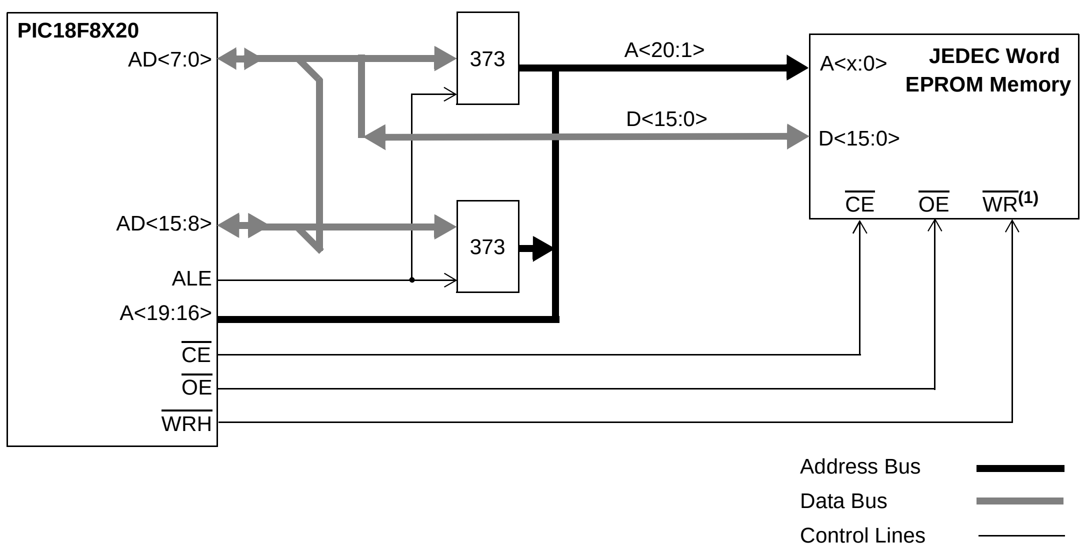
Figure 6-2 shows an example of 16-bit Word Write mode for PIC18F8X20 devices. This mode is used for word-wide memories, which includes some of the EPROM and Flash type memories. This mode allows opcode fetches and table reads from all forms of 16-bit memory and table writes to any type of word-wide external memories. This method makes a distinction between `TBLWT` cycles to even or odd addresses.

During a `TBLWT` cycle to an even address (TBLPTR<0> = `0`), the TABLAT data is transferred to a holding latch and the external address data bus is tri-stated for the data portion of the bus cycle. No write signals are activated.

During a `TBLWT` cycle to an odd address (TBLPTR<0> = `1`), the TABLAT data is presented on the upper byte of the AD15:AD0 bus. The contents of the holding latch are presented on the lower byte of the AD15:AD0 bus.

The $\overline{\text{WRH}}$ signal is strobed for each write cycle; the $\overline{\text{WRL}}$ pin is unused. The signal on the BA0 pin indicates the LSb of TBLPTR, but it is left unconnected. Instead, the $\overline{\text{UB}}$ and $\overline{\text{LB}}$ signals are active to select both bytes. The obvious limitation to this method is that the table write must be done in pairs on a specific word boundary to correctly write a word location.

FIGURE 6-2: 16-BIT WORD WRITE MODE EXAMPLE



Note 1: This signal only applies to table writes. See **Section 5.1 “Table Reads and Table Writes”**.

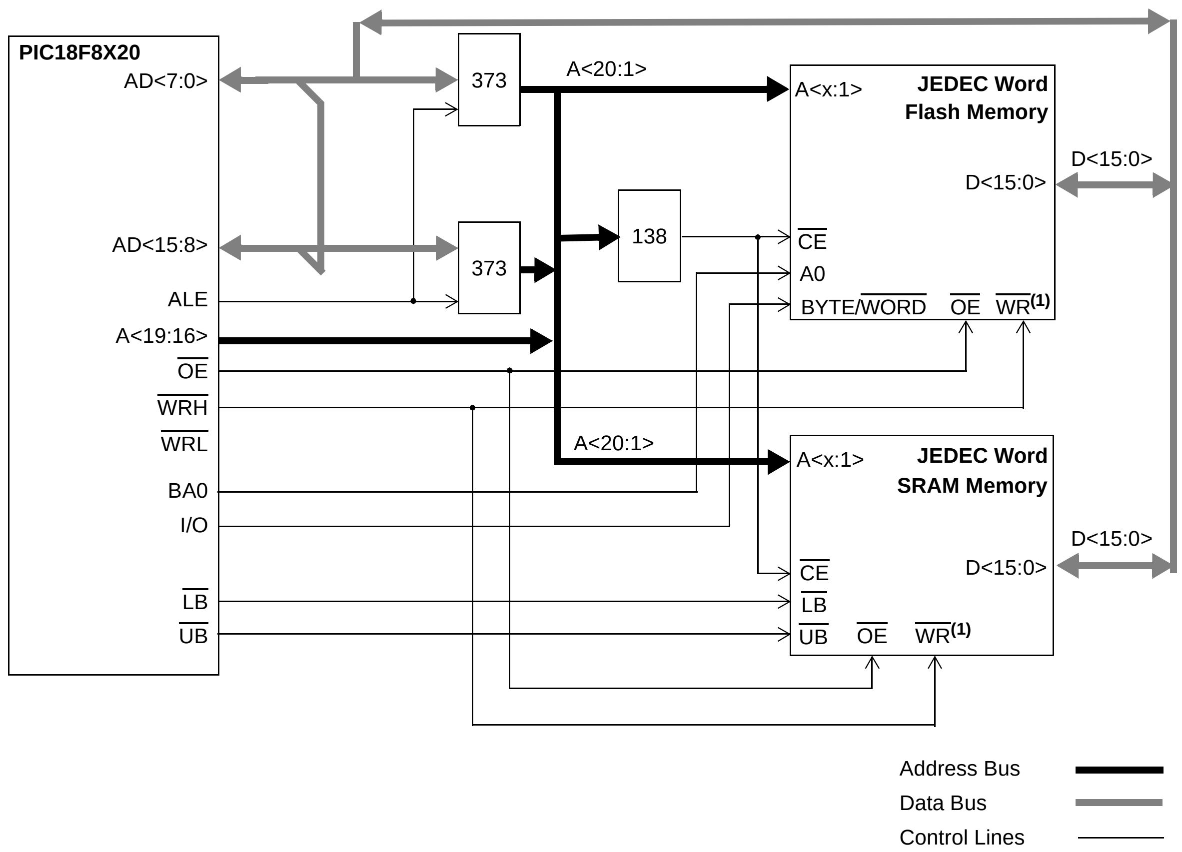
6.2.3 16-BIT BYTE SELECT MODE

Figure 6-3 shows an example of 16-bit Byte Select mode for PIC18F8X20 devices. This mode allows table write operations to word-wide external memories with byte selection capability. This generally includes both word-wide Flash and SRAM devices.

During a `TBLWT` cycle, the TABLAT data is presented on the upper and lower byte of the AD15:AD0 bus. The $\overline{\text{WRH}}$ signal is strobed for each write cycle; the $\overline{\text{WRL}}$ pin is not used. The BA0 or $\overline{\text{UB}}$/$\overline{\text{LB}}$ signals are used to select the byte to be written, based on the Least Significant bit of the TBLPTR register.

Flash and SRAM devices use different control signal combinations to implement Byte Select mode. JEDEC standard Flash memories require that a controller I/O port pin be connected to the memory's BYTE/$\overline{\text{WORD}}$ pin to provide the select signal. They also use the BA0 signal from the controller as a byte address. JEDEC standard static RAM memories, on the other hand, use the $\overline{\text{UB}}$ or $\overline{\text{LB}}$ signals to select the byte.

FIGURE 6-3: 16-BIT BYTE SELECT MODE EXAMPLE



Note 1: This signal only applies to table writes. See **Section 5.1 "Table Reads and Table Writes"**.

6.2.4 16-BIT MODE TIMING

The presentation of control signals on the external memory bus is different for the various operating modes. Typical signal timing diagrams are shown in Figure 6-4 through Figure 6-6.

FIGURE 6-4: EXTERNAL MEMORY BUS TIMING FOR `TBLRD` (MICROPROCESSOR MODE)

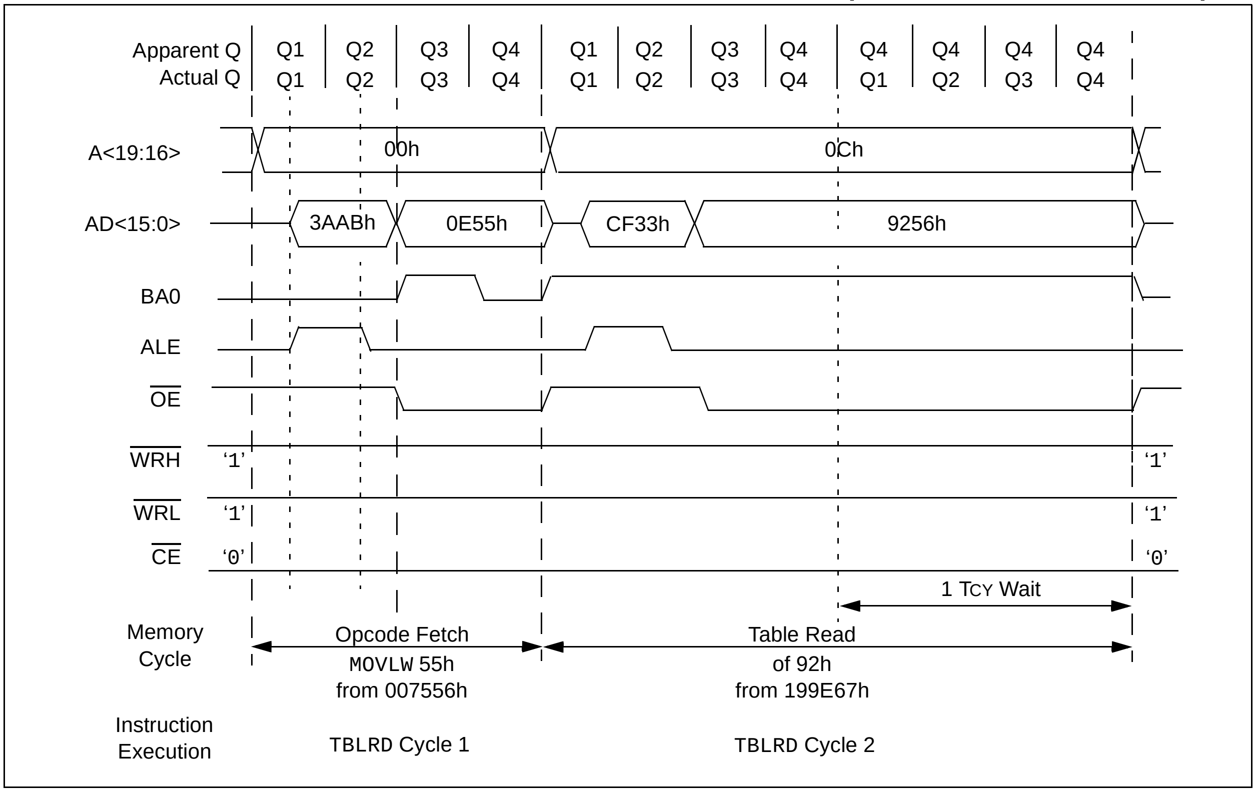


FIGURE 6-5: EXTERNAL MEMORY BUS TIMING FOR `TBLRD` (EXTENDED MICROCONTROLLER MODE)

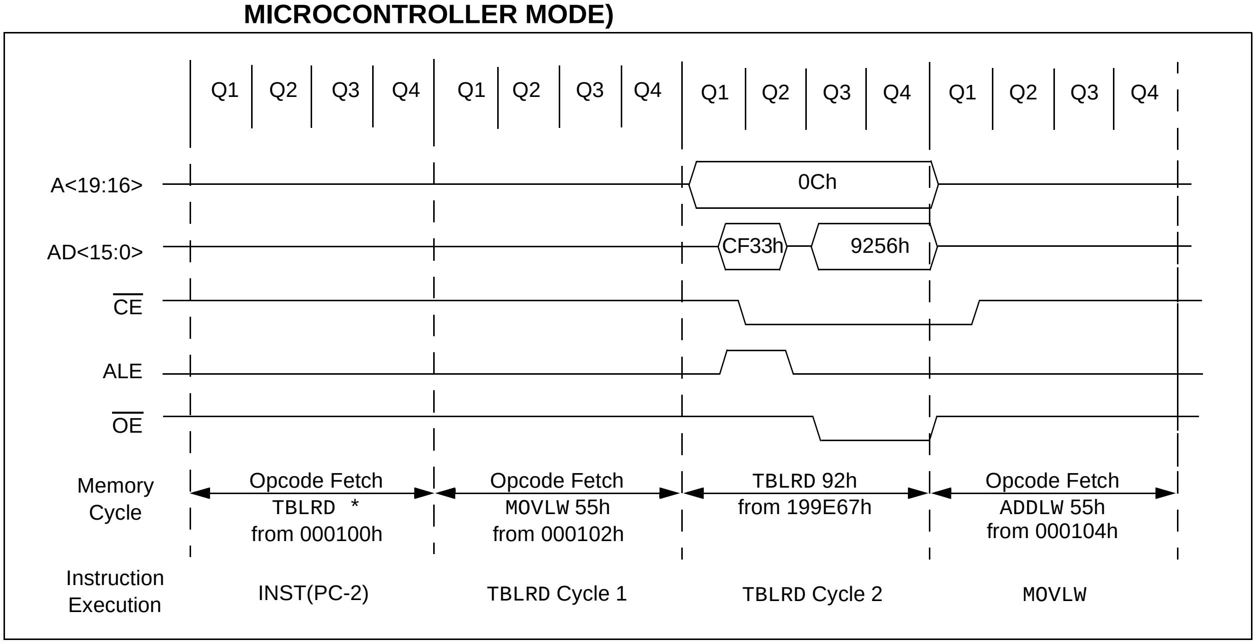
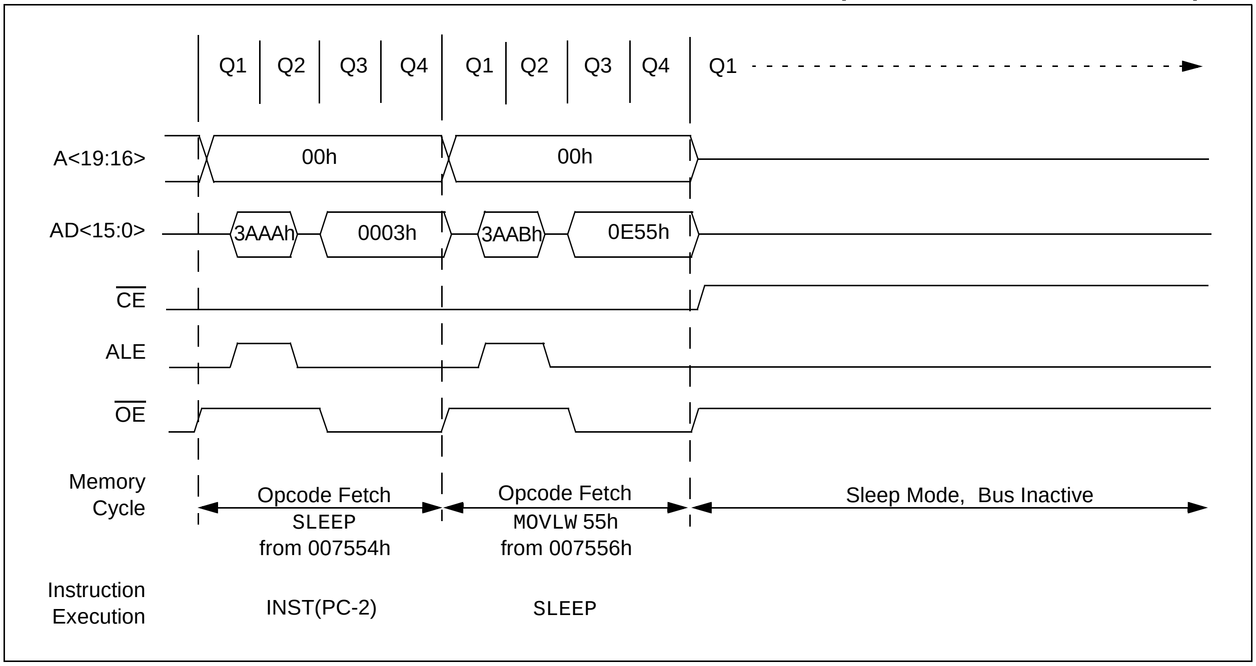


FIGURE 6-6: EXTERNAL MEMORY BUS TIMING FOR `SLEEP` (MICROPROCESSOR MODE)



NOTES:

7.0 DATA EEPROM MEMORY

The data EEPROM is readable and writable during normal operation over the entire VDD range. The data memory is not directly mapped in the register file space. Instead, it is indirectly addressed through the Special Function Registers (SFR).

There are five SFRs used to read and write the program and data EEPROM memory. These registers are:

- EECON1
- EECON2
- EEDATA
- EEADRH
- EEADR

The EEPROM data memory allows byte read and write. When interfacing to the data memory block, EEDATA holds the 8-bit data for read/write. EEADR and EEADRH hold the address of the EEPROM location being accessed. These devices have 1024 bytes of data EEPROM with an address range from 00h to 3FFh.

The EEPROM data memory is rated for high erase/write cycles. A byte write automatically erases the location and writes the new data (erase-before-write). The write time is controlled by an on-chip timer. The write time will vary with voltage and temperature, as well as from chip to chip. Please refer to parameter D122 (see **Section 26.0 "Electrical Characteristics"**) for exact limits.

7.1 EEADR and EEADRH

The address register pair can address up to a maximum of 1024 bytes of data EEPROM. The two Most Significant bits of the address are stored in EEADRH, while the remaining eight Least Significant bits are stored in EEADR. The six Most Significant bits of EEADRH are unused and are read as '0'.

7.2 EECON1 and EECON2 Registers

EECON1 is the control register for EEPROM memory accesses.

EECON2 is not a physical register. Reading EECON2 will read all '0's. The EECON2 register is used exclusively in the EEPROM write sequence.

Control bits, RD and WR, initiate read and write operations, respectively. These bits cannot be cleared, only set, in software. They are cleared in hardware at the completion of the read or write operation. The inability to clear the WR bit in software prevents the accidental or premature termination of a write operation.

The WREN bit, when set, will allow a write operation. On power-up, the WREN bit is clear. The WRERR bit is set when a write operation is interrupted by a $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset or a WDT Time-out Reset during normal operation. In these situations, the user can check the WRERR bit and rewrite the location. It is necessary to reload the data and address registers (EEDATA and EEADR) due to the Reset condition forcing the contents of the registers to zero.

Note:	Interrupt flag bit, EEIF in the PIR2 register, is set when write is complete. It must be cleared in software.

REGISTER 7-1: EECON1 REGISTER (ADDRESS FA6h)

R/W-x	R/W-x	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-x	R/W-0	R/S-0	R/S-0
EEPGD	CFGS	—	FREE	WRERR	WREN	WR	RD
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **EEPGD:** Flash Program/Data EEPROM Memory Select bit
1 = Access Flash program memory
0 = Access data EEPROM memory

bit 6 **CFGS:** Flash Program/Data EEPROM or Configuration Select bit
1 = Access configuration or calibration registers
0 = Access Flash program or data EEPROM memory

bit 5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4 **FREE:** Flash Row Erase Enable bit
1 = Erase the program memory row addressed by TBLPTR on the next WR command (cleared by completion of erase operation)
0 = Perform write only

bit 3 **WRERR:** Flash Program/Data EEPROM Error Flag bit
1 = A write operation is prematurely terminated (any $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ or any WDT Reset during self-timed programming in normal operation)
0 = The write operation completed

Note: When a WRERR occurs, the EEPGD or FREE bits are not cleared. This allows tracing of the error condition.

bit 2 **WREN:** Flash Program/Data EEPROM Write Enable bit
1 = Allows write cycles to Flash program/data EEPROM
0 = Inhibits write cycles to Flash program/data EEPROM

bit 1 **WR:** Write Control bit
1 = Initiates a data EEPROM erase/write cycle, or a program memory erase cycle or write cycle. (The operation is self-timed and the bit is cleared by hardware once write is complete. The WR bit can only be set (not cleared) in software.)
0 = Write cycle to the EEPROM is complete

bit 0 **RD:** Read Control bit
1 = Initiates an EEPROM read. (Read takes one cycle. RD is cleared in hardware. The RD bit can only be set (not cleared) in software. RD bit cannot be set when EEPGD = 1.)
0 = Does not initiate an EEPROM read

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

7.3 Reading the Data EEPROM Memory

To read a data memory location, the user must write the address to the EEADRH:EEADR register pair, clear the EEPGD control bit (EECON1<7>), clear the CFGS control bit (EECON1<6>) and then set the RD control bit (EECON1<0>). The data is available for the very next instruction cycle; therefore, the EEDATA register can be read by the next instruction. EEDATA will hold this value until another read operation, or until it is written to by the user (during a write operation).

EXAMPLE 7-1: DATA EEPROM READ

```
MOVLW   DATA_EE_ADDRH  ;
MOVWF   EEADRH         ; Upper bits of Data Memory Address to read
MOVLW   DATA_EE_ADDR   ;
MOVWF   EEADR          ; Lower bits of Data Memory Address to read
BCF     EECON1, EEPGD  ; Point to DATA memory
BCF     EECON1, CFGS   ; Access EEPROM
BSF     EECON1, RD     ; EEPROM Read
MOVF    EEDATA, W      ; W = EEDATA
```

7.4 Writing to the Data EEPROM Memory

To write an EEPROM data location, the address must first be written to the EEADRH:EEADR register pair and the data written to the EEDATA register. Then the sequence in Example 7-2 must be followed to initiate the write cycle.

The write will not initiate if the above sequence is not exactly followed (write 55h to EECON2, write AAh to EECON2, then set WR bit) for each byte. It is strongly recommended that interrupts be disabled during this code segment.

Additionally, the WREN bit in EECON1 must be set to enable writes. This mechanism prevents accidental writes to data EEPROM due to unexpected code execution (i.e., runaway programs). The WREN bit should be kept clear at all times, except when updating the EEPROM. The WREN bit is not cleared by hardware

After a write sequence has been initiated, EECON1, EEADRH, EEADR and EEDATA cannot be modified. The WR bit will be inhibited from being set unless the WREN bit is set. Both WR and WREN cannot be set with the same instruction.

At the completion of the write cycle, the WR bit is cleared in hardware and the EEPROM Write Complete Interrupt Flag bit (EEIF) is set. The user may either enable this interrupt, or poll this bit. EEIF must be cleared by software.

EXAMPLE 7-2: DATA EEPROM WRITE

```
           MOVLW   DATA_EE_ADDRH     ;
           MOVWF   EEADRH            ; Upper bits of Data Memory Address to write
           MOVLW   DATA_EE_ADDR      ;
           MOVWF   EEADR             ; Lower bits of Data Memory Address to write
           MOVLW   DATA_EE_DATA      ;
           MOVWF   EEDATA            ; Data Memory Value to write
           BCF     EECON1, EEPGD     ; Point to DATA memory
           BCF     EECON1, CFGS      ; Access EEPROM
           BSF     EECON1, WREN      ; Enable writes

           BCF     INTCON, GIE       ; Disable Interrupts
           MOVLW   55h               ;
Required   MOVWF   EECON2            ; Write 55h
Sequence   MOVLW   AAh               ;
           MOVWF   EECON2            ; Write AAh
           BSF     EECON1, WR        ; Set WR bit to begin write
           BSF     INTCON, GIE       ; Enable Interrupts

                                     ; User code execution
           BCF     EECON1, WREN      ; Disable writes on write complete (EEIF set)
```

7.5 Write Verify

Depending on the application, good programming practice may dictate that the value written to the memory should be verified against the original value. This should be used in applications where excessive writes can stress bits near the specification limit.

7.6 Protection Against Spurious Write

There are conditions when the user may not want to write to the data EEPROM memory. To protect against spurious EEPROM writes, various mechanisms have been built-in. On power-up, the WREN bit is cleared. Also, the Power-up Timer (72 ms duration) prevents EEPROM write.

The write initiate sequence and the WREN bit together help prevent an accidental write during brown-out, power glitch, or software malfunction.

7.7 Operation During Code-Protect

Data EEPROM memory has its own code-protect mechanism. External read and write operations are disabled if either of these mechanisms are enabled.

The microcontroller itself can both read and write to the internal data EEPROM, regardless of the state of the code-protect configuration bit. Refer to **Section 23.0 "Special Features of the CPU"** for additional information.

7.8 Using the Data EEPROM

The data EEPROM is a high endurance, byte addressable array that has been optimized for the storage of frequently changing information (e.g., program variables or other data that are updated often). Frequently changing values will typically be updated more often than specification D124. If this is not the case, an array refresh must be performed. For this reason, variables that change infrequently (such as constants, IDs, calibration, etc.) should be stored in Flash program memory.

A simple data EEPROM refresh routine is shown in Example 7-3.

Note:	If data EEPROM is only used to store constants and/or data that changes rarely, an array refresh is likely not required. See specification D124.

EXAMPLE 7-3: DATA EEPROM REFRESH ROUTINE

```
        CLRF    EEADR                ; Start at address 0
        CLRF    EEADRH               ;
        BCF     EECON1, CFGS         ; Set for memory
        BCF     EECON1, EEPGD        ; Set for Data EEPROM
        BCF     INTCON, GIE          ; Disable interrupts
        BSF     EECON1, WREN         ; Enable writes
Loop                                 ; Loop to refresh array
        BSF     EECON1, RD           ; Read current address
        MOVLW   55h                  ;
        MOVWF   EECON2               ; Write 55h
        MOVLW   AAh                  ;
        MOVWF   EECON2               ; Write AAh
        BSF     EECON1, WR           ; Set WR bit to begin write
        BTFSC   EECON1, WR           ; Wait for write to complete
        BRA     $-2
        INCFSZ  EEADR, F             ; Increment address
        BRA     Loop                 ; Not zero, do it again
        INCFSZ  EEADRH, F            ; Increment the high address
        BRA     Loop                 ; Not zero, do it again

        BCF     EECON1, WREN         ; Disable writes
        BSF     INTCON, GIE          ; Enable interrupts
```


TABLE 7-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH DATA EEPROM MEMORY

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 0000	0000 0000
EEADRH	—	—	—	—	—	—	EE Addr Register High		---- --00	---- --00
EEADR	EEPROM Address Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
EEDATA	EEPROM Data Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
EECON2	EEPROM Control Register 2 (not a physical register)								---- ----	---- ----
EECON1	EEPGD	CFGS	—	FREE	WRERR	WREN	WR	RD	xx-0 x000	uu-0 u000
IPR2	—	CMIP	—	EEIP	BCLIP	LVDIP	TMR3IP	CCP2IP	---1 1111	---1 1111
PIR2	—	CMIF	—	EEIF	BCLIF	LVDIF	TMR3IF	CCP2IF	---0 0000	---0 0000
PIE2	—	CMIE	—	EEIE	BCLIE	LVDIE	TMR3IE	CCP2IE	---0 0000	---0 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, r = reserved, – = unimplemented, read as '0'.
Shaded cells are not used during Flash/EEPROM access.

NOTES:

8.0 8 X 8 HARDWARE MULTIPLIER

8.1 Introduction

An 8 x 8 hardware multiplier is included in the ALU of the PIC18FXX20 devices. By making the multiply a hardware operation, it completes in a single instruction cycle. This is an unsigned multiply that gives a 16-bit result. The result is stored in the 16-bit product register pair (PRODH:PRODL). The multiplier does not affect any flags in the ALUSTA register.

Making the 8 x 8 multiplier execute in a single cycle gives the following advantages:

- Higher computational throughput
- Reduces code size requirements for multiply algorithms

The performance increase allows the device to be used in applications previously reserved for Digital Signal Processors.

Table 8-1 shows a performance comparison between enhanced devices using the single-cycle hardware multiply and performing the same function without the hardware multiply.

8.2 Operation

Example 8-1 shows the sequence to do an 8 x 8 unsigned multiply. Only one instruction is required when one argument of the multiply is already loaded in the WREG register.

Example 8-2 shows the sequence to do an 8 x 8 signed multiply. To account for the sign bits of the arguments, each argument's Most Significant bit (MSb) is tested and the appropriate subtractions are done.

EXAMPLE 8-1: 8 x 8 UNSIGNED MULTIPLY ROUTINE

```
MOVF    ARG1, W     ;
MULWF   ARG2        ; ARG1 * ARG2 ->
                    ; PRODH:PRODL
```

EXAMPLE 8-2: 8 x 8 SIGNED MULTIPLY ROUTINE

```
MOVF    ARG1, W     ;
MULWF   ARG2        ; ARG1 * ARG2 ->
                    ; PRODH:PRODL
BTFSC   ARG2, SB    ; Test Sign Bit
SUBWF   PRODH, F    ; PRODH = PRODH
                    ;       - ARG1
MOVF    ARG2, W     ;
BTFSC   ARG1, SB    ; Test Sign Bit
SUBWF   PRODH, F    ; PRODH = PRODH
                    ;       - ARG2
```

TABLE 8-1: PERFORMANCE COMPARISON

Routine	Multiply Method	Program Memory (Words)	Cycles (Max)	Time		
				@ 40 MHz	@ 10 MHz	@ 4 MHz
8 x 8 unsigned	Without hardware multiply	13	69	6.9 μs	27.6 μs	69 μs
	Hardware multiply	1	1	100 ns	400 ns	1 μs
8 x 8 signed	Without hardware multiply	33	91	9.1 μs	36.4 μs	91 μs
	Hardware multiply	6	6	600 ns	2.4 μs	6 μs
16 x 16 unsigned	Without hardware multiply	21	242	24.2 μs	96.8 μs	242 μs
	Hardware multiply	28	28	2.8 μs	11.2 μs	28 μs
16 x 16 signed	Without hardware multiply	52	254	25.4 μs	102.6 μs	254 μs
	Hardware multiply	35	40	4.0 μs	16.0 μs	40 μs

Example 8-3 shows the sequence to do a 16 x 16 unsigned multiply. Equation 8-1 shows the algorithm that is used. The 32-bit result is stored in four registers, RES3:RES0.

EQUATION 8-1: 16 x 16 UNSIGNED MULTIPLICATION ALGORITHM

$$
\begin{aligned}
RES3{:}RES0 &= ARG1H{:}ARG1L \bullet ARG2H{:}ARG2L \\
&= (ARG1H \bullet ARG2H \bullet 2^{16}) + \\
&\quad (ARG1H \bullet ARG2L \bullet 2^{8}) + \\
&\quad (ARG1L \bullet ARG2H \bullet 2^{8}) + \\
&\quad (ARG1L \bullet ARG2L)
\end{aligned}
$$

EXAMPLE 8-3: 16 x 16 UNSIGNED MULTIPLY ROUTINE

```
    MOVF    ARG1L, W
    MULWF   ARG2L           ; ARG1L * ARG2L ->
                            ; PRODH:PRODL
    MOVFF   PRODH, RES1     ;
    MOVFF   PRODL, RES0     ;
;
    MOVF    ARG1H, W
    MULWF   ARG2H           ; ARG1H * ARG2H ->
                            ; PRODH:PRODL
    MOVFF   PRODH, RES3     ;
    MOVFF   PRODL, RES2     ;
;
    MOVF    ARG1L, W
    MULWF   ARG2H           ; ARG1L * ARG2H ->
                            ; PRODH:PRODL
    MOVF    PRODL,  W       ;
    ADDWF   RES1, F         ; Add cross
    MOVF    PRODH, W        ; products
    ADDWFC  RES2, F         ;
    CLRF    WREG            ;
    ADDWFC  RES3, F         ;
;
    MOVF    ARG1H, W        ;
    MULWF   ARG2L           ; ARG1H * ARG2L ->
                            ; PRODH:PRODL
    MOVF    PRODL, W        ;
    ADDWF   RES1, F         ; Add cross
    MOVF    PRODH, W        ; products
    ADDWFC  RES2, F         ;
    CLRF    WREG            ;
    ADDWFC  RES3, F         ;
```

Example 8-4 shows the sequence to do a 16 x 16 signed multiply. Equation 8-2 shows the algorithm used. The 32-bit result is stored in four registers, RES3:RES0. To account for the sign bits of the arguments, each argument pairs' Most Significant bit (MSb) is tested and the appropriate subtractions are done.

EQUATION 8-2: 16 x 16 SIGNED MULTIPLICATION ALGORITHM

$$
\begin{aligned}
&RES3{:}RES0 \\
&\quad = ARG1H{:}ARG1L \bullet ARG2H{:}ARG2L \\
&\quad = (ARG1H \bullet ARG2H \bullet 2^{16}) + \\
&\qquad (ARG1H \bullet ARG2L \bullet 2^{8}) + \\
&\qquad (ARG1L \bullet ARG2H \bullet 2^{8}) + \\
&\qquad (ARG1L \bullet ARG2L) + \\
&\qquad (-1 \bullet ARG2H<7> \bullet ARG1H{:}ARG1L \bullet 2^{16}) + \\
&\qquad (-1 \bullet ARG1H<7> \bullet ARG2H{:}ARG2L \bullet 2^{16})
\end{aligned}
$$

EXAMPLE 8-4: 16 x 16 SIGNED MULTIPLY ROUTINE

```
    MOVF    ARG1L, W
    MULWF   ARG2L           ; ARG1L * ARG2L ->
                            ; PRODH:PRODL
    MOVFF   PRODH, RES1     ;
    MOVFF   PRODL, RES0     ;
;
    MOVF    ARG1H, W
    MULWF   ARG2H           ; ARG1H * ARG2H ->
                            ; PRODH:PRODL
    MOVFF   PRODH, RES3     ;
    MOVFF   PRODL, RES2     ;
;
    MOVF    ARG1L, W
    MULWF   ARG2H           ; ARG1L * ARG2H ->
                            ; PRODH:PRODL
    MOVF    PRODL, W        ;
    ADDWF   RES1, F         ; Add cross
    MOVF    PRODH, W        ; products
    ADDWFC  RES2, F         ;
    CLRF    WREG            ;
    ADDWFC  RES3, F         ;
;
    MOVF    ARG1H, W        ;
    MULWF   ARG2L           ; ARG1H * ARG2L ->
                            ; PRODH:PRODL
    MOVF    PRODL, W        ;
    ADDWF   RES1, F         ; Add cross
    MOVF    PRODH, W        ; products
    ADDWFC  RES2, F         ;
    CLRF    WREG            ;
    ADDWFC  RES3, F         ;
;
    BTFSS   ARG2H, 7        ; ARG2H:ARG2L neg?
    BRA     SIGN_ARG1       ; no, check ARG1
    MOVF    ARG1L, W        ;
    SUBWF   RES2            ;
    MOVF    ARG1H, W        ;
    SUBWFB  RES3
;
SIGN_ARG1
    BTFSS   ARG1H, 7        ; ARG1H:ARG1L neg?
    BRA     CONT_CODE       ; no, done
    MOVF    ARG2L, W        ;
    SUBWF   RES2            ;
    MOVF    ARG2H, W        ;
    SUBWFB  RES3
;
CONT_CODE
      :
```

9.0 INTERRUPTS

The PIC18FXX20 devices have multiple interrupt sources and an interrupt priority feature that allows each interrupt source to be assigned a high or a low priority level. The high priority interrupt vector is at 000008h, while the low priority interrupt vector is at 000018h. High priority interrupt events will override any low priority interrupts that may be in progress.

There are thirteen registers which are used to control interrupt operation. They are:

- RCON
- INTCON
- INTCON2
- INTCON3
- PIR1, PIR2, PIR3
- PIE1, PIE2, PIE3
- IPR1, IPR2, IPR3

It is recommended that the Microchip header files, supplied with MPLAB® IDE, be used for the symbolic bit names in these registers. This allows the assembler/compiler to automatically take care of the placement of these bits within the specified register.

Each interrupt source has three bits to control its operation. The functions of these bits are:

- Flag bit to indicate that an interrupt event occurred
- Enable bit that allows program execution to branch to the interrupt vector address when the flag bit is set
- Priority bit to select high priority or low priority

The interrupt priority feature is enabled by setting the IPEN bit (RCON<7>). When interrupt priority is enabled, there are two bits which enable interrupts globally. Setting the GIEH bit (INTCON<7>) enables all interrupts that have the priority bit set. Setting the GIEL bit (INTCON<6>) enables all interrupts that have the priority bit cleared. When the interrupt flag, enable bit and appropriate global interrupt enable bit are set, the interrupt will vector immediately to address 000008h or 000018h, depending on the priority level. Individual interrupts can be disabled through their corresponding enable bits.

When the IPEN bit is cleared (default state), the interrupt priority feature is disabled and interrupts are compatible with PICmicro® mid-range devices. In Compatibility mode, the interrupt priority bits for each source have no effect. INTCON<6> is the PEIE bit, which enables/disables all peripheral interrupt sources. INTCON<7> is the GIE bit, which enables/disables all interrupt sources. All interrupts branch to address 000008h in Compatibility mode.

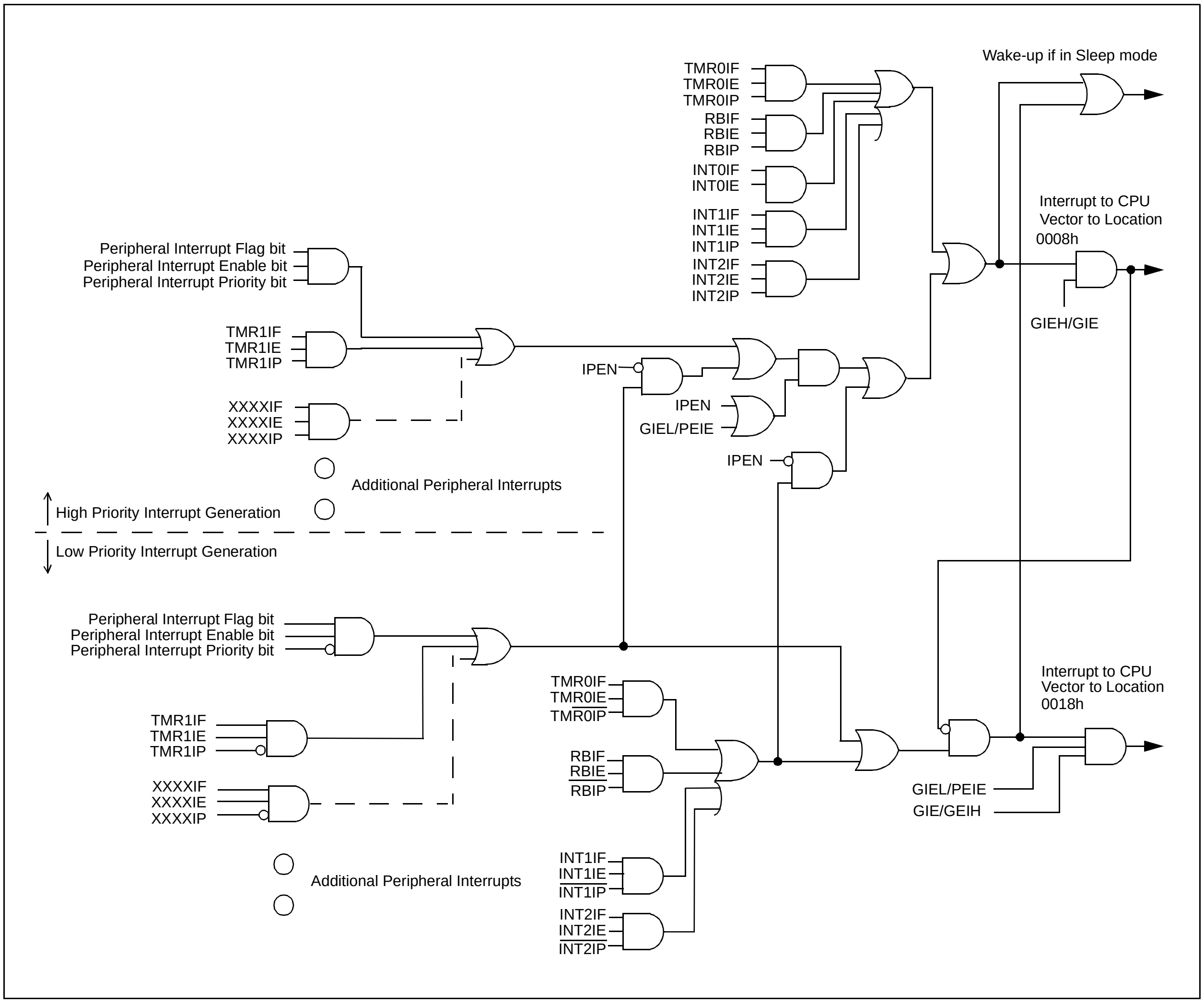
When an interrupt is responded to, the Global Interrupt Enable bit is cleared to disable further interrupts. If the IPEN bit is cleared, this is the GIE bit. If interrupt priority levels are used, this will be either the GIEH or GIEL bit. High priority interrupt sources can interrupt a low priority interrupt.

The return address is pushed onto the stack and the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector address (000008h or 000018h). Once in the Interrupt Service Routine, the source(s) of the interrupt can be determined by polling the interrupt flag bits. The interrupt flag bits must be cleared in software before re-enabling interrupts to avoid recursive interrupts.

The "return from interrupt" instruction, `RETFIE`, exits the interrupt routine and sets the GIE bit (GIEH or GIEL if priority levels are used), which re-enables interrupts.

For external interrupt events, such as the INT pins or the PORTB input change interrupt, the interrupt latency will be three to four instruction cycles. The exact latency is the same for one or two-cycle instructions. Individual interrupt flag bits are set, regardless of the status of their corresponding enable bit or the GIE bit.

FIGURE 9-1: INTERRUPT LOGIC



9.1 INTCON Registers

The INTCON registers are readable and writable registers, which contain various enable, priority and flag bits.

Note:	Interrupt flag bits are set when an interrupt condition occurs, regardless of the state of its corresponding enable bit or the global enable bit. User software should ensure the appropriate interrupt flag bits are clear prior to enabling an interrupt. This feature allows for software polling.

REGISTER 9-1: INTCON REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-x
GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **GIE/GIEH:** Global Interrupt Enable bit

When IPEN (RCON<7>) = 0:
1 = Enables all unmasked interrupts
0 = Disables all interrupts

When IPEN (RCON<7>) = 1:
1 = Enables all high priority interrupts
0 = Disables all interrupts

bit 6 **PEIE/GIEL:** Peripheral Interrupt Enable bit

When IPEN (RCON<7>) = 0:
1 = Enables all unmasked peripheral interrupts
0 = Disables all peripheral interrupts

When IPEN (RCON<7>) = 1:
1 = Enables all low priority peripheral interrupts
0 = Disables all low priority peripheral interrupts

bit 5 **TMR0IE:** TMR0 Overflow Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the TMR0 overflow interrupt
0 = Disables the TMR0 overflow interrupt

bit 4 **INT0IE:** INT0 External Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the INT0 external interrupt
0 = Disables the INT0 external interrupt

bit 3 **RBIE:** RB Port Change Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the RB port change interrupt
0 = Disables the RB port change interrupt

bit 2 **TMR0IF:** TMR0 Overflow Interrupt Flag bit
1 = TMR0 register has overflowed (must be cleared in software)
0 = TMR0 register did not overflow

bit 1 **INT0IF:** INT0 External Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The INT0 external interrupt occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = The INT0 external interrupt did not occur

bit 0 **RBIF:** RB Port Change Interrupt Flag bit
1 = At least one of the RB7:RB4 pins changed state (must be cleared in software)
0 = None of the RB7:RB4 pins have changed state

Note: A mismatch condition will continue to set this bit. Reading PORTB will end the mismatch condition and allow the bit to be cleared.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 9-2: INTCON2 REGISTER

R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
$\overline{\text{RBPU}}$	INTEDG0	INTEDG1	INTEDG2	INTEDG3	TMR0IP	INT3IP	RBIP
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **$\overline{\text{RBPU}}$:** PORTB Pull-up Enable bit
1 = All PORTB pull-ups are disabled
0 = PORTB pull-ups are enabled by individual port latch values

bit 6 **INTEDG0:** External Interrupt 0 Edge Select bit
1 = Interrupt on rising edge
0 = Interrupt on falling edge

bit 5 **INTEDG1:** External Interrupt 1 Edge Select bit
1 = Interrupt on rising edge
0 = Interrupt on falling edge

bit 4 **INTEDG2:** External Interrupt 2 Edge Select bit
1 = Interrupt on rising edge
0 = Interrupt on falling edge

bit 3 **INTEDG3:** External Interrupt 3 Edge Select bit
1 = Interrupt on rising edge
0 = Interrupt on falling edge

bit 2 **TMR0IP:** TMR0 Overflow Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 1 **INT3IP:** INT3 External Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 0 **RBIP:** RB Port Change Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

Note:	Interrupt flag bits are set when an interrupt condition occurs, regardless of the state of its corresponding enable bit or the global enable bit. User software should ensure the appropriate interrupt flag bits are clear prior to enabling an interrupt. This feature allows for software polling.

REGISTER 9-3: INTCON3 REGISTER

R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
INT2IP	INT1IP	INT3IE	INT2IE	INT1IE	INT3IF	INT2IF	INT1IF
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **INT2IP:** INT2 External Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 6 **INT1IP:** INT1 External Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 5 **INT3IE:** INT3 External Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the INT3 external interrupt
0 = Disables the INT3 external interrupt

bit 4 **INT2IE:** INT2 External Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the INT2 external interrupt
0 = Disables the INT2 external interrupt

bit 3 **INT1IE:** INT1 External Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the INT1 external interrupt
0 = Disables the INT1 external interrupt

bit 2 **INT3IF:** INT3 External Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The INT3 external interrupt occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = The INT3 external interrupt did not occur

bit 1 **INT2IF:** INT2 External Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The INT2 external interrupt occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = The INT2 external interrupt did not occur

bit 0 **INT1IF:** INT1 External Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The INT1 external interrupt occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = The INT1 external interrupt did not occur

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

Note: Interrupt flag bits are set when an interrupt condition occurs, regardless of the state of its corresponding enable bit or the global enable bit. User software should ensure the appropriate interrupt flag bits are clear prior to enabling an interrupt. This feature allows for software polling.

9.2 PIR Registers

The PIR registers contain the individual flag bits for the peripheral interrupts. Due to the number of peripheral interrupt sources, there are three Peripheral Interrupt Flag Registers (PIR1, PIR2 and PIR3).

> **Note 1:** Interrupt flag bits are set when an interrupt condition occurs, regardless of the state of its corresponding enable bit or the global enable bit, GIE (INTCON<7>).
>
> **2:** User software should ensure the appropriate interrupt flag bits are cleared prior to enabling an interrupt and after servicing that interrupt.

REGISTER 9-4: PIR1: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REQUEST (FLAG) REGISTER 1

R/W-0	R/W-0	R-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
PSPIF[(1)]	ADIF	RC1IF	TX1IF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **PSPIF:** Parallel Slave Port Read/Write Interrupt Flag bit[(1)]
1 = A read or a write operation has taken place (must be cleared in software)
0 = No read or write has occurred

bit 6 **ADIF:** A/D Converter Interrupt Flag bit
1 = An A/D conversion completed (must be cleared in software)
0 = The A/D conversion is not complete

bit 5 **RC1IF:** USART1 Receive Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The USART1 receive buffer, RCREG, is full (cleared when RCREG is read)
0 = The USART1 receive buffer is empty

bit 4 **TX1IF:** USART Transmit Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The USART1 transmit buffer, TXREG, is empty (cleared when TXREG is written)
0 = The USART1 transmit buffer is full

bit 3 **SSPIF:** Master Synchronous Serial Port Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The transmission/reception is complete (must be cleared in software)
0 = Waiting to transmit/receive

bit 2 **CCP1IF:** CCP1 Interrupt Flag bit
<u>Capture mode:</u>
1 = A TMR1 register capture occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = No TMR1 register capture occurred
<u>Compare mode:</u>
1 = A TMR1 register compare match occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = No TMR1 register compare match occurred
<u>PWM mode:</u>
Unused in this mode.

bit 1 **TMR2IF:** TMR2 to PR2 Match Interrupt Flag bit
1 = TMR2 to PR2 match occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = No TMR2 to PR2 match occurred

bit 0 **TMR1IF:** TMR1 Overflow Interrupt Flag bit
1 = TMR1 register overflowed (must be cleared in software)
0 = TMR1 register did not overflow

Note 1: Enabled only in Microcontroller mode for PIC18F8X20 devices.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 9-5: PIR2: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REQUEST (FLAG) REGISTER 2

U-0	R/W-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	CMIF	—	EEIF	BCLIF	LVDIF	TMR3IF	CCP2IF
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6 **CMIF:** Comparator Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The comparator input has changed (must be cleared in software)
0 = The comparator input has not changed

bit 5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4 **EEIF:** Data EEPROM/Flash Write Operation Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The write operation is complete (must be cleared in software)
0 = The write operation is not complete, or has not been started

bit 3 **BCLIF:** Bus Collision Interrupt Flag bit
1 = A bus collision occurred while the SSP module (configured in I^2C Master mode) was transmitting (must be cleared in software)
0 = No bus collision occurred

bit 2 **LVDIF:** Low-Voltage Detect Interrupt Flag bit
1 = A low-voltage condition occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = The device voltage is above the Low-Voltage Detect trip point

bit 1 **TMR3IF:** TMR3 Overflow Interrupt Flag bit
1 = TMR3 register overflowed (must be cleared in software)
0 = TMR3 register did not overflow

bit 0 **CCP2IF:** CCP2 Interrupt Flag bit
Capture mode:
1 = A TMR1 or TMR3 register capture occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = No TMR1 or TMR3 register capture occurred
Compare mode:
1 = A TMR1 or TMR3 register compare match occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = No TMR1 or TMR3 register compare match occurred
PWM mode:
Unused in this mode.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 9-6: PIR3: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REQUEST (FLAG) REGISTER 3

U-0	U-0	R-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	—	RC2IF	TX2IF	TMR4IF	CCP5IF	CCP4IF	CCP3IF
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7- 6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5 **RC2IF:** USART2 Receive Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The USART2 receive buffer, RCREG, is full (cleared when RCREG is read)
0 = The USART2 receive buffer is empty

bit 4 **TX2IF:** USART2 Transmit Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The USART2 transmit buffer, TXREG, is empty (cleared when TXREG is written)
0 = The USART2 transmit buffer is full

bit 3 **TMR4IF:** TMR3 Overflow Interrupt Flag bit
1 = TMR4 register overflowed (must be cleared in software)
0 = TMR4 register did not overflow

bit 2-0 **CCPxIF:** CCPx Interrupt Flag bit (CCP Modules 3, 4 and 5)
Capture mode:
1 = A TMR1 or TMR3 register capture occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = No TMR1 or TMR3 register capture occurred
Compare mode:
1 = A TMR1 or TMR3 register compare match occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = No TMR1 or TMR3 register compare match occurred
PWM mode:
Unused in this mode.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

9.3 PIE Registers

The PIE registers contain the individual enable bits for the peripheral interrupts. Due to the number of peripheral interrupt sources, there are three Peripheral Interrupt Enable registers (PIE1, PIE2 and PIE3). When the IPEN bit (RCON<7>) is '0', the PEIE bit must be set to enable any of these peripheral interrupts.

REGISTER 9-7: PIE1: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT ENABLE REGISTER 1

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
PSPIE(1)	ADIE	RC1IE	TX1IE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **PSPIE:** Parallel Slave Port Read/Write Interrupt Enable bit(1)
1 = Enables the PSP read/write interrupt
0 = Disables the PSP read/write interrupt

bit 6 **ADIE:** A/D Converter Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the A/D interrupt
0 = Disables the A/D interrupt

bit 5 **RC1IE:** USART1 Receive Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the USART1 receive interrupt
0 = Disables the USART1 receive interrupt

bit 4 **TX1IE:** USART1 Transmit Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the USART1 transmit interrupt
0 = Disables the USART1 transmit interrupt

bit 3 **SSPIE:** Master Synchronous Serial Port Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the MSSP interrupt
0 = Disables the MSSP interrupt

bit 2 **CCP1IE:** CCP1 Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the CCP1 interrupt
0 = Disables the CCP1 interrupt

bit 1 **TMR2IE:** TMR2 to PR2 Match Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the TMR2 to PR2 match interrupt
0 = Disables the TMR2 to PR2 match interrupt

bit 0 **TMR1IE:** TMR1 Overflow Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the TMR1 overflow interrupt
0 = Disables the TMR1 overflow interrupt

Note 1: Enabled only in Microcontroller mode for PIC18F8X20 devices.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 9-8: PIE2: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT ENABLE REGISTER 2

U-0	R/W-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	CMIE	—	EEIE	BCLIE	LVDIE	TMR3IE	CCP2IE
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6 **CMIE:** Comparator Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the comparator interrupt
0 = Disables the comparator interrupt

bit 5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4 **EEIE:** Data EEPROM/Flash Write Operation Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the write operation interrupt
0 = Disables the write operation interrupt

bit 3 **BCLIE:** Bus Collision Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the bus collision interrupt
0 = Disables the bus collision interrupt

bit 2 **LVDIE:** Low-Voltage Detect Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the Low-Voltage Detect interrupt
0 = Disables the Low-Voltage Detect interrupt

bit 1 **TMR3IE:** TMR3 Overflow Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the TMR3 overflow interrupt
0 = Disables the TMR3 overflow interrupt

bit 0 **CCP2IE:** CCP2 Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the CCP2 interrupt
0 = Disables the CCP2 interrupt

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 9-9: PIE3: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT ENABLE REGISTER 3

U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	—	RC2IE	TX2IE	TMR4IE	CCP5IE	CCP4IE	CCP3IE
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5 **RC2IE:** USART2 Receive Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the USART2 receive interrupt
0 = Disables the USART2 receive interrupt

bit 4 **TX2IE:** USART2 Transmit Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the USART2 transmit interrupt
0 = Disables the USART2 transmit interrupt

bit 3 **TMR4IE:** TMR4 to PR4 Match Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the TMR4 to PR4 match interrupt
0 = Disables the TMR4 to PR4 match interrupt

bit 2-0 **CCPxIE:** CCPx Interrupt Enable bit (CCP Modules 3, 4 and 5)
1 = Enables the CCPx interrupt
0 = Disables the CCPx interrupt

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

9.4 IPR Registers

The IPR registers contain the individual priority bits for the peripheral interrupts. Due to the number of peripheral interrupt sources, there are three Peripheral Interrupt Priority Registers (IPR1, IPR2 and IPR3). The operation of the priority bits requires that the Interrupt Priority Enable (IPEN) bit be set.

REGISTER 9-10: IPR1: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT PRIORITY REGISTER 1

R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
PSPIP(1)	ADIP	RC1IP	TX1IP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **PSPIP:** Parallel Slave Port Read/Write Interrupt Priority bit(1)
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 6 **ADIP:** A/D Converter Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 5 **RC1IP:** USART1 Receive Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 4 **TX1IP:** USART1 Transmit Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 3 **SSPIP:** Master Synchronous Serial Port Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 2 **CCP1IP:** CCP1 Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 1 **TMR2IP:** TMR2 to PR2 Match Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 0 **TMR1IP:** TMR1 Overflow Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

Note 1: Enabled only in Microcontroller mode for PIC18F8X20 devices.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 9-11: IPR2: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT PRIORITY REGISTER 2

U-0	R/W-1	U-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
—	CMIP	—	EEIP	BCLIP	LVDIP	TMR3IP	CCP2IP
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 6 **CMIP:** Comparator Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 5 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 4 **EEIP:** Data EEPROM/Flash Write Operation Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 3 **BCLIP:** Bus Collision Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 2 **LVDIP:** Low-Voltage Detect Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 1 **TMR3IP:** TMR3 Overflow Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 0 **CCP2IP:** CCP2 Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 9-12: IPR3: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT PRIORITY REGISTER 3

U-0	U-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
—	—	RC2IP	TX2IP	TMR4IP	CCP5IP	CCP4IP	CCP3IP
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 5 **RC2IP:** USART2 Receive Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0

9.5 RCON Register

The RCON register contains the IPEN bit, which is used to enable prioritized interrupts. The functions of the other bits in this register are discussed in more detail in **Section 4.14 "RCON Register"**.

REGISTER 9-13: RCON REGISTER

R/W-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-1	R-1	R-1	R/W-0	R/W-0
IPEN	—	—	$\overline{\text{RI}}$	$\overline{\text{TO}}$	$\overline{\text{PD}}$	$\overline{\text{POR}}$	$\overline{\text{BOR}}$
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **IPEN:** Interrupt Priority Enable bit
1 = Enable priority levels on interrupts
0 = Disable priority levels on interrupts (PIC16 Compatibility mode)

bit 6-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4 **$\overline{\text{RI}}$:** RESET Instruction Flag bit
For details of bit operation, see Register 4-4.

bit 3 **$\overline{\text{TO}}$:** Watchdog Time-out Flag bit
For details of bit operation, see Register 4-4.

bit 2 **$\overline{\text{PD}}$:** Power-Down Detection Flag bit
For details of bit operation, see Register 4-4.

bit 1 **$\overline{\text{POR}}$:** Power-on Reset Status bit
For details of bit operation, see Register 4-4.

bit 0 **$\overline{\text{BOR}}$:** Brown-out Reset Status bit
For details of bit operation, see Register 4-4.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

9.6 INT0 Interrupt

External interrupts on the RB0/INT0, RB1/INT1, RB2/INT2 and RB3/INT3 pins are edge-triggered: either rising, if the corresponding INTEDGx bit is set in the INTCON2 register, or falling, if the INTEDGx bit is clear. When a valid edge appears on the RBx/INTx pin, the corresponding flag bit, INTxF, is set. This interrupt can be disabled by clearing the corresponding enable bit, INTxE. Flag bit, INTxF, must be cleared in software in the Interrupt Service Routine before re-enabling the interrupt. All external interrupts (INT0, INT1, INT2 and INT3) can wake-up the processor from Sleep if bit INTxIE was set prior to going into Sleep. If the Global Interrupt Enable bit, GIE, is set, the processor will branch to the interrupt vector following wake-up.

The interrupt priority for INT, INT2 and INT3 is determined by the value contained in the interrupt priority bits: INT1IP (INTCON3<6>), INT2IP (INTCON3<7>) and INT3IP (INTCON2<1>). There is no priority bit associated with INT0; it is always a high priority interrupt source.

9.7 TMR0 Interrupt

In 8-bit mode (which is the default), an overflow in the TMR0 register (FFh $\rightarrow$ 00h) will set flag bit TMR0IF. In 16-bit mode, an overflow in the TMR0H:TMR0L registers (FFFFh $\rightarrow$ 0000h) will set flag bit TMR0IF. The interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing enable bit, TMR0IE (INTCON<5>). Interrupt priority for Timer0 is determined by the value contained in the interrupt priority bit, TMR0IP (INTCON2<2>). See **Section 11.0 "Timer0 Module"** for further details on the Timer0 module.

9.8 PORTB Interrupt-on-Change

An input change on PORTB<7:4> sets flag bit, RBIF (INTCON<0>). The interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing enable bit, RBIE (INTCON<3>). Interrupt priority for PORTB interrupt-on-change is determined by the value contained in the interrupt priority bit, RBIP (INTCON2<0>).

9.9 Context Saving During Interrupts

During an interrupt, the return PC value is saved on the stack. Additionally, the WREG, Status and BSR registers are saved on the fast return stack. If a fast return from interrupt is not used (see **Section 4.3 "Fast Register Stack"**), the user may need to save the WREG, Status and BSR registers in software. Depending on the user's application, other registers may also need to be saved. Example 9-1 saves and restores the WREG, Status and BSR registers during an Interrupt Service Routine.

EXAMPLE 9-1: SAVING STATUS, WREG AND BSR REGISTERS IN RAM

```
MOVWF   W_TEMP                     ; W_TEMP is in virtual bank
MOVFF   STATUS, STATUS_TEMP        ; STATUS_TEMP located anywhere
MOVFF   BSR, BSR_TEMP              ; BSR located anywhere
;
; USER ISR CODE
;
MOVFF   BSR_TEMP, BSR              ; Restore BSR
MOVF    W_TEMP, W                  ; Restore WREG
MOVFF   STATUS_TEMP, STATUS        ; Restore STATUS
```

10.0 I/O PORTS

Depending on the device selected, there are either seven or nine I/O ports available on PIC18FXX20 devices. Some of their pins are multiplexed with one or more alternate functions from the other peripheral features on the device. In general, when a peripheral is enabled, that pin may not be used as a general purpose I/O pin.

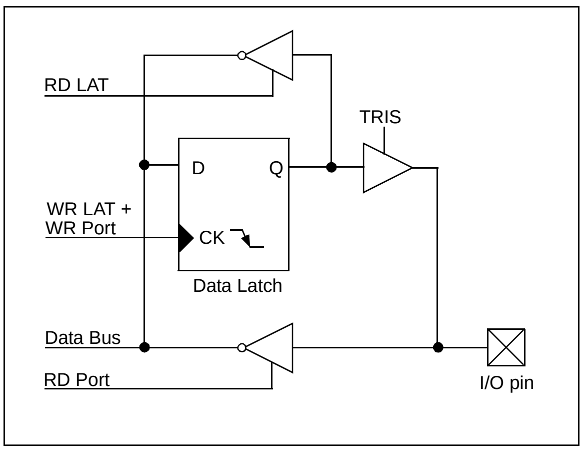
Each port has three registers for its operation. These registers are:

- TRIS register (data direction register)
- PORT register (reads the levels on the pins of the device)
- LAT register (output latch)

The Data Latch (LAT register) is useful for read-modify-write operations on the value that the I/O pins are driving.

A simplified version of a generic I/O port and its operation is shown in Figure 10-1.

FIGURE 10-1: SIMPLIFIED BLOCK DIAGRAM OF PORT/LAT/TRIS OPERATION



10.1 PORTA, TRISA and LATA Registers

PORTA is a 7-bit wide, bidirectional port. The corresponding data direction register is TRISA. Setting a TRISA bit (= 1) will make the corresponding PORTA pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a high-impedance mode). Clearing a TRISA bit (= 0) will make the corresponding PORTA pin an output (i.e., put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin).

Reading the PORTA register reads the status of the pins, whereas writing to it will write to the port latch.

The Data Latch register (LATA) is also memory mapped. Read-modify-write operations on the LATA register, read and write the latched output value for PORTA.

The RA4 pin is multiplexed with the Timer0 module clock input to become the RA4/T0CKI pin. The RA4/T0CKI pin is a Schmitt Trigger input and an open-drain output. All other RA port pins have TTL input levels and full CMOS output drivers.

The RA6 pin is only enabled as a general I/O pin in ECIO and RCIO Oscillator modes.

The other PORTA pins are multiplexed with analog inputs and the analog VREF+ and VREF- inputs. The operation of each pin is selected by clearing/setting the control bits in the ADCON1 register (A/D Control Register 1).

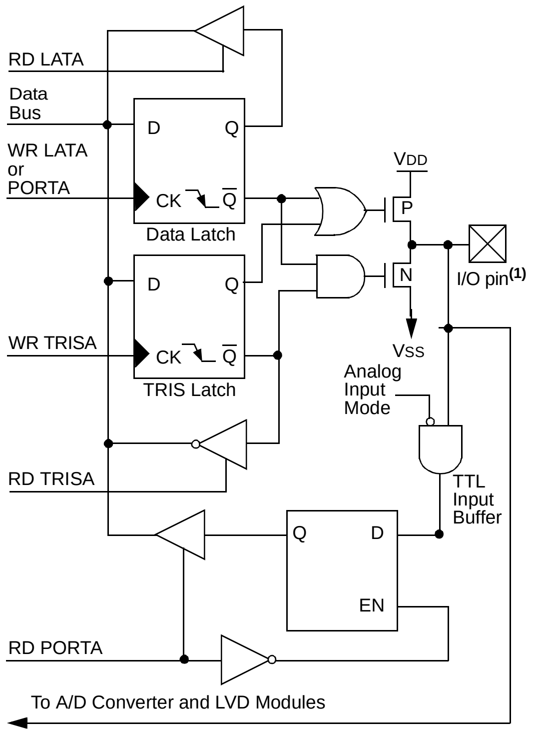
Note:	On a Power-on Reset, RA5 and RA3:RA0 are configured as analog inputs and read as '0'. RA6 and RA4 are configured as digital inputs.

The TRISA register controls the direction of the RA pins, even when they are being used as analog inputs. The user must ensure the bits in the TRISA register are maintained set when using them as analog inputs.

EXAMPLE 10-1: INITIALIZING PORTA

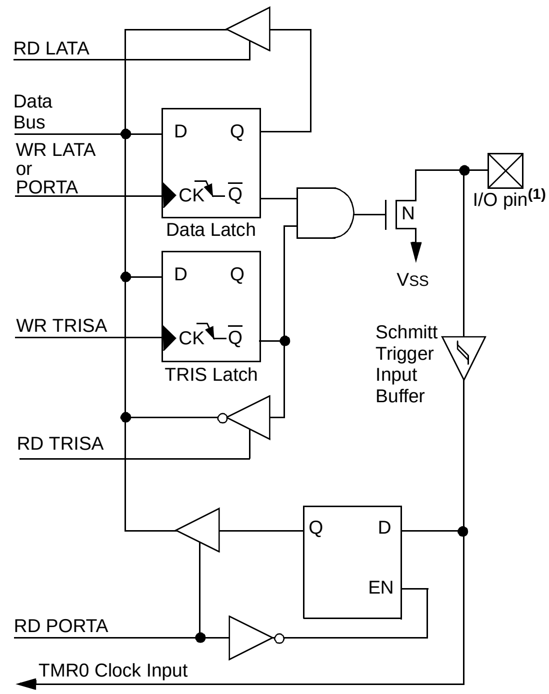
```
CLRF    PORTA   ; Initialize PORTA by
                ; clearing output
                ; data latches
CLRF    LATA    ; Alternate method
                ; to clear output
                ; data latches
MOVLW   0x0F    ; Configure A/D
MOVWF   ADCON1  ; for digital inputs
MOVLW   0xCF    ; Value used to
                ; initialize data
                ; direction
MOVWF   TRISA   ; Set RA<3:0> as inputs
                ; RA<5:4> as outputs
```


FIGURE 10-2: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RA3:RA0 AND RA5 PINS



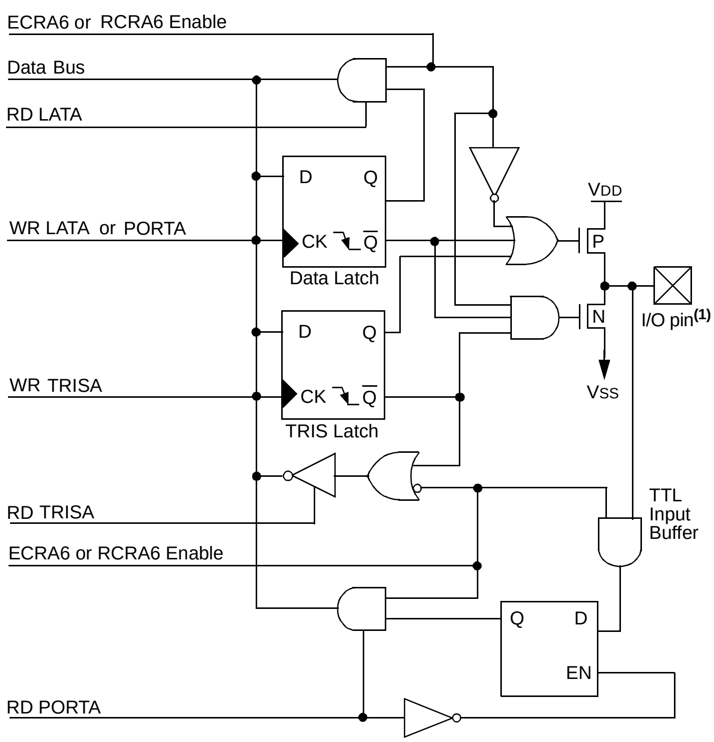
Note 1: I/O pins have protection diodes to VDD and VSS.

FIGURE 10-3: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RA4/T0CKI PIN



Note 1: I/O pins have protection diodes to VDD and VSS.

FIGURE 10-4: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RA6 PIN (WHEN ENABLED AS I/O)



Note 1: I/O pins have protection diodes to VDD and VSS.

TABLE 10-1: PORTA FUNCTIONS

Name	Bit#	Buffer	Function
RA0/AN0	bit 0	TTL	Input/output or analog input.
RA1/AN1	bit 1	TTL	Input/output or analog input.
RA2/AN2/VREF-	bit 2	TTL	Input/output or analog input or VREF-.
RA3/AN3/VREF+	bit 3	TTL	Input/output or analog input or VREF+.
RA4/T0CKI	bit 4	ST	Input/output or external clock input for Timer0. Output is open-drain type.
RA5/AN4/LVDIN	bit 5	TTL	Input/output or slave select input for synchronous serial port or analog input, or Low-Voltage Detect input.
OSC2/CLKO/RA6	bit 6	TTL	OSC2 or clock output, or I/O pin.

Legend: TTL = TTL input, ST = Schmitt Trigger input

TABLE 10-2: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTA

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
PORTA	—	RA6	RA5	RA4	RA3	RA2	RA1	RA0	-x0x 0000	-u0u 0000
LATA	—	LATA Data Output Register							-xxx xxxx	-uuu uuuu
TRISA	—	PORTA Data Direction Register							-111 1111	-111 1111
ADCON1	—	—	VCFG1	VCFG0	PCFG3	PCFG2	PCFG1	PCFG0	--00 0000	--00 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, – = unimplemented locations read as ‘0’.
Shaded cells are not used by PORTA.

10.2 PORTB, TRISB and LATB Registers

PORTB is an 8-bit wide, bidirectional port. The corresponding data direction register is TRISB. Setting a TRISB bit (= `1`) will make the corresponding PORTB pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a high-impedance mode). Clearing a TRISB bit (= `0`) will make the corresponding PORTB pin an output (i.e., put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin).

The Data Latch register (LATB) is also memory mapped. Read-modify-write operations on the LATB register, read and write the latched output value for PORTB.

EXAMPLE 10-2: INITIALIZING PORTB

```
CLRF    PORTB   ; Initialize PORTB by
                ; clearing output
                ; data latches
CLRF    LATB    ; Alternate method
                ; to clear output
                ; data latches
MOVLW   0xCF    ; Value used to
                ; initialize data
                ; direction
MOVWF   TRISB   ; Set RB<3:0> as inputs
                ; RB<5:4> as outputs
                ; RB<7:6> as inputs
```

Each of the PORTB pins has a weak internal pull-up. A single control bit can turn on all the pull-ups. This is performed by clearing bit $\overline{\text{RBPU}}$ (INTCON2<7>). The weak pull-up is automatically turned off when the port pin is configured as an output. The pull-ups are disabled on a Power-on Reset.

Note:	On a Power-on Reset, these pins are configured as digital inputs.

Four of the PORTB pins (RB3:RB0) are the external interrupt pins, INT3 through INT0. In order to use these pins as external interrupts, the corresponding TRISB bit must be set to '`1`'.

The other four PORTB pins (RB7:RB4) have an interrupt-on-change feature. Only pins configured as inputs can cause this interrupt to occur (i.e., any RB7:RB4 pin configured as an output is excluded from the interrupt-on-change comparison). The input pins (of RB7:RB4) are compared with the old value latched on the last read of PORTB. The "mismatch" outputs of RB7:RB4 are OR'ed together to generate the RB Port Change Interrupt with Flag bit, RBIF (INTCON<0>).

This interrupt can wake the device from Sleep. The user, in the Interrupt Service Routine, can clear the interrupt in the following manner:

a) Any read or write of PORTB (except with the `MOVFF` instruction). This will end the mismatch condition.

b) Clear flag bit RBIF.

A mismatch condition will continue to set flag bit, RBIF. Reading PORTB will end the mismatch condition and allow flag bit RBIF to be cleared.

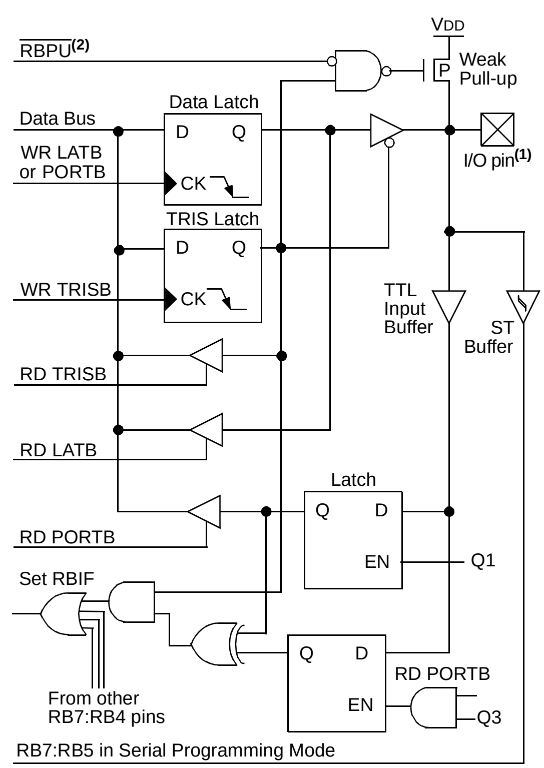
The interrupt-on-change feature is recommended for wake-up on key depression operation and operations where PORTB is only used for the interrupt-on-change feature. Polling of PORTB is not recommended while using the interrupt-on-change feature.

RB3 can be configured by the configuration bit CCP2MX, as the alternate peripheral pin for the CCP2 module. This is only available when the device is configured in Microprocessor, Microprocessor with Boot Block, or Extended Microcontroller operating modes.

The RB5 pin is used as the LVP programming pin. When the LVP configuration bit is programmed, this pin loses the I/O function and become a programming test function.

Note:	When LVP is enabled, the weak pull-up on RB5 is disabled.

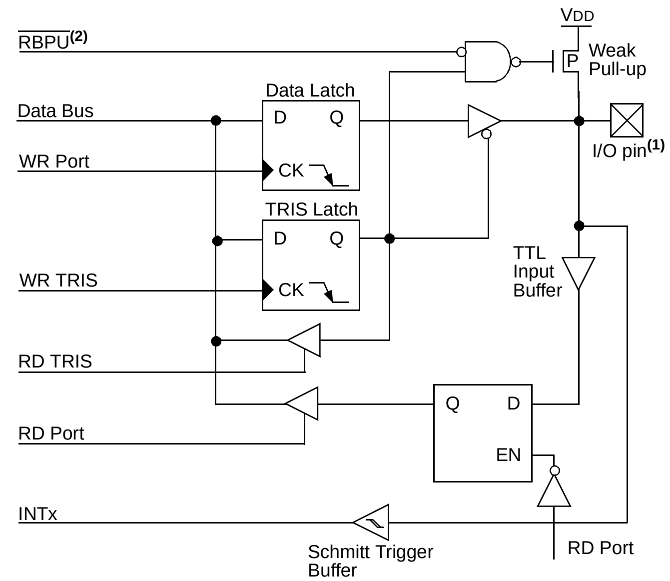
FIGURE 10-5: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RB7:RB4 PINS



Note 1: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

2: To enable weak pull-ups, set the appropriate TRIS bit(s) and clear the $\overline{\text{RBPU}}$ bit (INTCON2<7>).

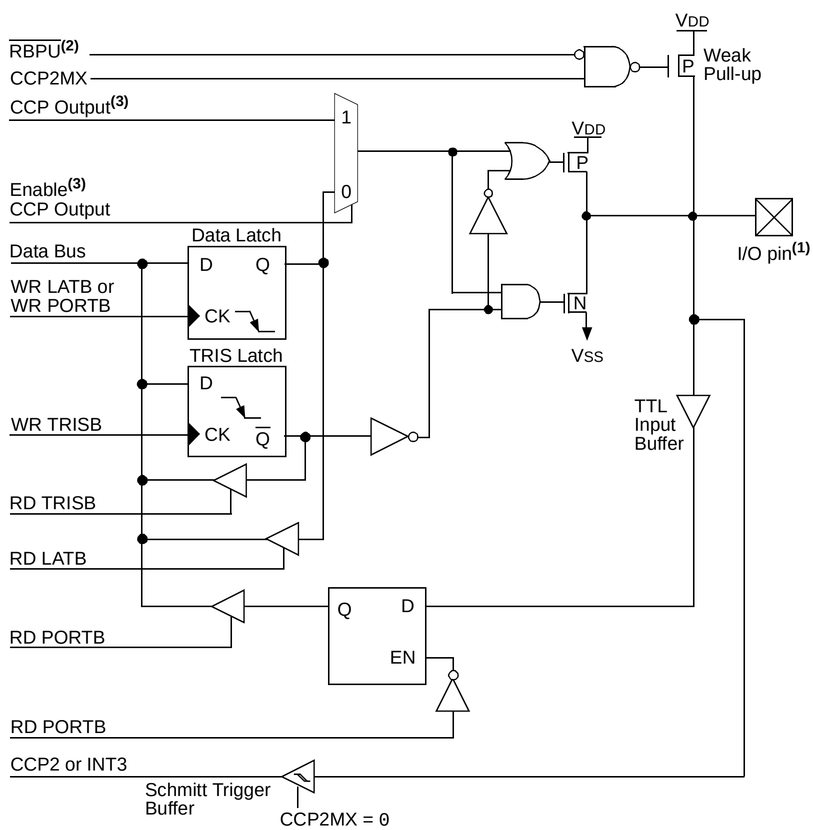
FIGURE 10-6: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RB2:RB0 PINS



Note 1: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

2: To enable weak pull-ups, set the appropriate TRIS bit(s) and clear the $\overline{\text{RBPU}}$ bit (OPTION_REG<7>).

FIGURE 10-7: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RB3 PIN



Note 1: I/O pin has diode protection to VDD and VSS.

2: To enable weak pull-ups, set the appropriate TRIS bit(s) and clear the $\overline{\text{RBPU}}$ bit (INTCON2<7>).

3: The CCP2 input/output is multiplexed with RB3 if the CCP2MX bit is enabled (= 0) in the Configuration register and the device is operating in Microprocessor, Microprocessor with Boot Block or Extended Microcontroller mode.

TABLE 10-3: PORTB FUNCTIONS

Name	Bit#	Buffer	Function
RB0/INT0	bit 0	TTL/ST(1)	Input/output pin or external interrupt input 0. Internal software programmable weak pull-up.
RB1/INT1	bit 1	TTL/ST(1)	Input/output pin or external interrupt input 1. Internal software programmable weak pull-up.
RB2/INT2	bit 2	TTL/ST(1)	Input/output pin or external interrupt input 2. Internal software programmable weak pull-up.
RB3/INT3/CCP2(3)	bit 3	TTL/ST(4)	Input/output pin or external interrupt input 3. Capture2 input/Compare2 output/PWM output (when CCP2MX configuration bit is enabled, all PIC18F8X20 operating modes except Microcontroller mode). Internal software programmable weak pull-up.
RB4/KBI0	bit 4	TTL	Input/output pin (with interrupt-on-change). Internal software programmable weak pull-up.
RB5/KBI1/PGM	bit 5	TTL/ST(2)	Input/output pin (with interrupt-on-change). Internal software programmable weak pull-up. Low-voltage ICSP enable pin.
RB6/KBI2/PGC	bit 6	TTL/ST(2)	Input/output pin (with interrupt-on-change). Internal software programmable weak pull-up. Serial programming clock.
RB7/KBI3/PGD	bit 7	TTL/ST(2)	Input/output pin (with interrupt-on-change). Internal software programmable weak pull-up. Serial programming data.

Legend: TTL = TTL input, ST = Schmitt Trigger input

Note 1: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when configured as the external interrupt.

2: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when used in Serial Programming mode.

3: RC1 is the alternate assignment for CCP2 when CCP2MX is not set (all operating modes except Microcontroller mode).

4: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when configured as the CCP2 input.

TABLE 10-4: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTB

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
PORTB	RB7	RB6	RB5	RB4	RB3	RB2	RB1	RB0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
LATB	LATB Data Output Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TRISB	PORTB Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
INTCON	GIE/ GIEH	PEIE/ GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 0000	0000 0000
INTCON2	RBPU	INTEDG0	INTEDG1	INTEDG2	INTEDG3	TMR0IP	INT3IP	RBIP	1111 1111	1111 1111
INTCON3	INT2IP	INT1IP	INT3IE	INT2IE	INT1IE	INT3IF	INT2IF	INT1IF	1100 0000	1100 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged. Shaded cells are not used by PORTB.

10.3 PORTC, TRISC and LATC Registers

PORTC is an 8-bit wide, bidirectional port. The corresponding data direction register is TRISC. Setting a TRISC bit (= 1) will make the corresponding PORTC pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a high-impedance mode). Clearing a TRISC bit (= 0) will make the corresponding PORTC pin an output (i.e., put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin).

The Data Latch register (LATC) is also memory mapped. Read-modify-write operations on the LATC register, read and write the latched output value for PORTC.

PORTC is multiplexed with several peripheral functions (Table 10-5). PORTC pins have Schmitt Trigger input buffers.

When enabling peripheral functions, care should be taken in defining TRIS bits for each PORTC pin. Some peripherals override the TRIS bit to make a pin an output, while other peripherals override the TRIS bit to make a pin an input. The user should refer to the corresponding peripheral section for the correct TRIS bit settings.

Note:	On a Power-on Reset, these pins are configured as digital inputs.

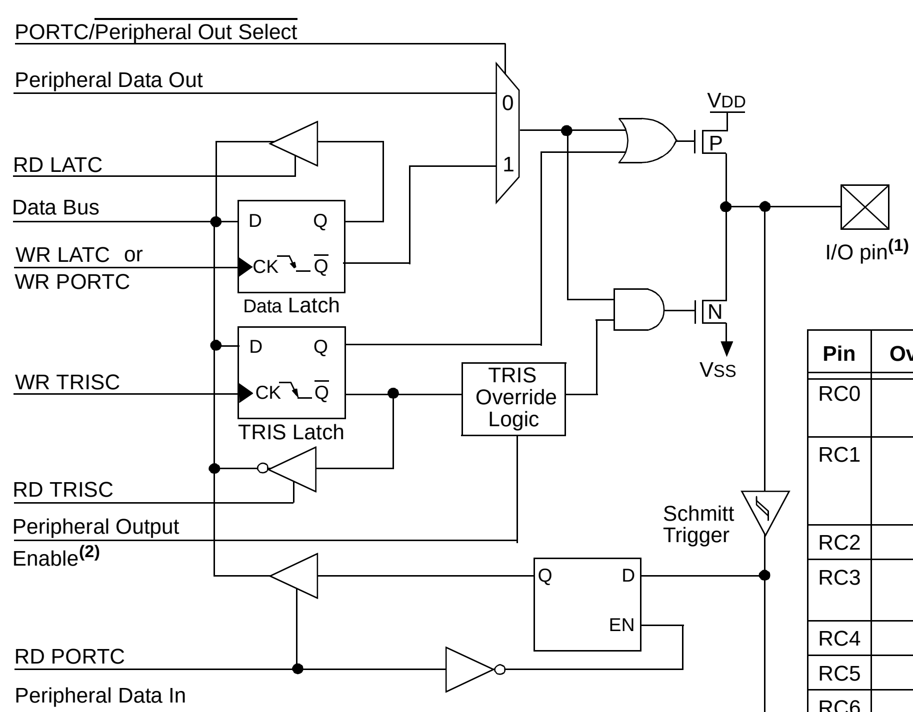
The pin override value is not loaded into the TRIS register. This allows read-modify-write of the TRIS register, without concern due to peripheral overrides.

RC1 is normally configured by configuration bit, CCP2MX, as the default peripheral pin of the CCP2 module (default/erased state, CCP2MX = 1).

EXAMPLE 10-3: INITIALIZING PORTC

```
CLRF    PORTC   ; Initialize PORTC by
                ; clearing output
                ; data latches
CLRF    LATC    ; Alternate method
                ; to clear output
                ; data latches
MOVLW   0xCF    ; Value used to
                ; initialize data
                ; direction
MOVWF   TRISC   ; Set RC<3:0> as inputs
                ; RC<5:4> as outputs
                ; RC<7:6> as inputs
```

FIGURE 10-8: PORTC BLOCK DIAGRAM (PERIPHERAL OUTPUT OVERRIDE)



TRIS OVERRIDE

Pin	Override	Peripheral
RC0	Yes	Timer1 Osc for Timer1/Timer3
RC1	Yes	Timer1 Osc for Timer1/Timer3, CCP2 I/O
RC2	Yes	CCP1 I/O
RC3	Yes	SPI/I^{2}C Master Clock
RC4	Yes	I^{2}C Data Out
RC5	Yes	SPI Data Out
RC6	Yes	USART1 Async Xmit, Sync Clock
RC7	Yes	USART1 Sync Data Out

Note 1: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

2: Peripheral Output Enable is only active if Peripheral Select is active.

TABLE 10-5: PORTC FUNCTIONS

Name	Bit#	Buffer Type	Function
RC0/T1OSO/T13CKI	bit 0	ST	Input/output port pin, Timer1 oscillator output or Timer1/Timer3 clock input.
RC1/T1OSI/CCP2(1)	bit 1	ST	Input/output port pin, Timer1 oscillator input or Capture2 input/ Compare2 output/PWM output (when CCP2MX configuration bit is disabled).
RC2/CCP1	bit 2	ST	Input/output port pin or Capture1 input/Compare1 output/ PWM1 output.
RC3/SCK/SCL	bit 3	ST	RC3 can also be the synchronous serial clock for both SPI and I^2C modes.
RC4/SDI/SDA	bit 4	ST	RC4 can also be the SPI data in (SPI mode) or data I/O (I^2C mode).
RC5/SDO	bit 5	ST	Input/output port pin or synchronous serial port data output.
RC6/TX1/CK1	bit 6	ST	Input/output port pin, addressable USART1 asynchronous transmit or addressable USART1 synchronous clock.
RC7/RX1/DT1	bit 7	ST	Input/output port pin, addressable USART1 asynchronous receive or addressable USART1 synchronous data.

Legend: ST = Schmitt Trigger input

Note 1: RB3 is the alternate assignment for CCP2 when CCP2MX is set.

TABLE 10-6: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTC

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
PORTC	RC7	RC6	RC5	RC4	RC3	RC2	RC1	RC0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
LATC	LATC Data Output Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TRISC	PORTC Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged

10.4 PORTD, TRISD and LATD Registers

PORTD is an 8-bit wide, bidirectional port. The corresponding data direction register is TRISD. Setting a TRISD bit (= 1) will make the corresponding PORTD pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a high-impedance mode). Clearing a TRISD bit (= 0) will make the corresponding PORTD pin an output (i.e., put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin).

The Data Latch register (LATD) is also memory mapped. Read-modify-write operations on the LATD register, read and write the latched output value for PORTD.

PORTD is an 8-bit port with Schmitt Trigger input buffers. Each pin is individually configurable as an input or output.

Note:	On a Power-on Reset, these pins are configured as digital inputs.

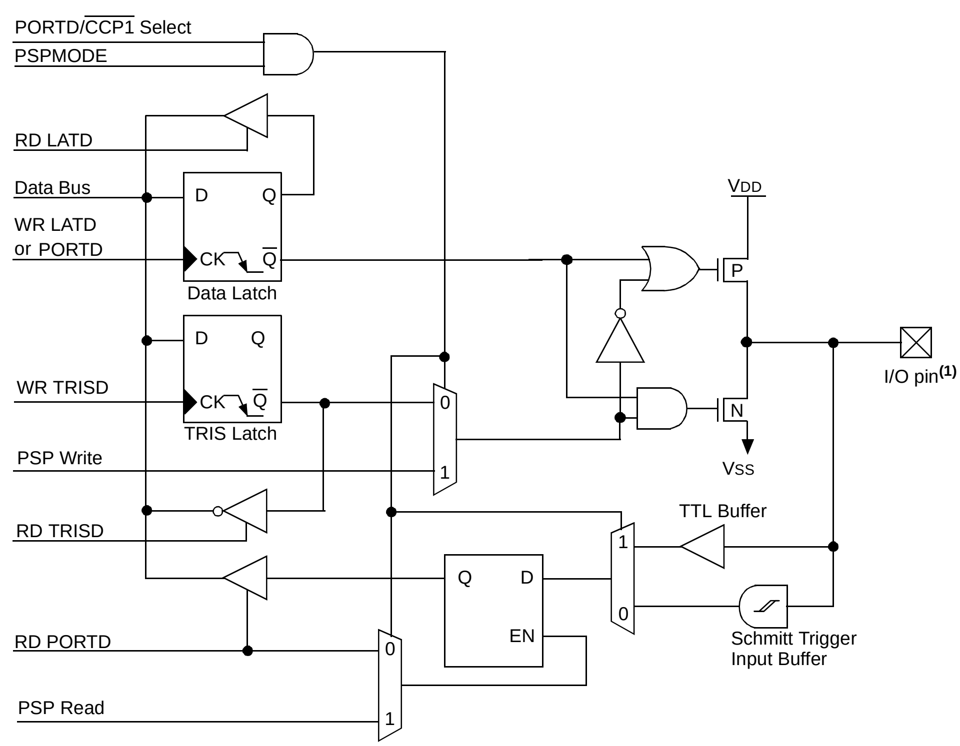
PORTD is multiplexed with the system bus as the external memory interface; I/O port functions are only available when the system bus is disabled, by setting the EBDIS bit in the MEMCOM register (MEMCON<7>). When operating as the external memory interface, PORTD is the low-order byte of the multiplexed address/data bus (AD7:AD0).

PORTD can also be configured as an 8-bit wide microprocessor port (Parallel Slave Port) by setting control bit PSPMODE (TRISE<4>). In this mode, the input buffers are TTL. See **Section 10.10 "Parallel Slave Port"** for additional information on the Parallel Slave Port (PSP).

EXAMPLE 10-4: INITIALIZING PORTD

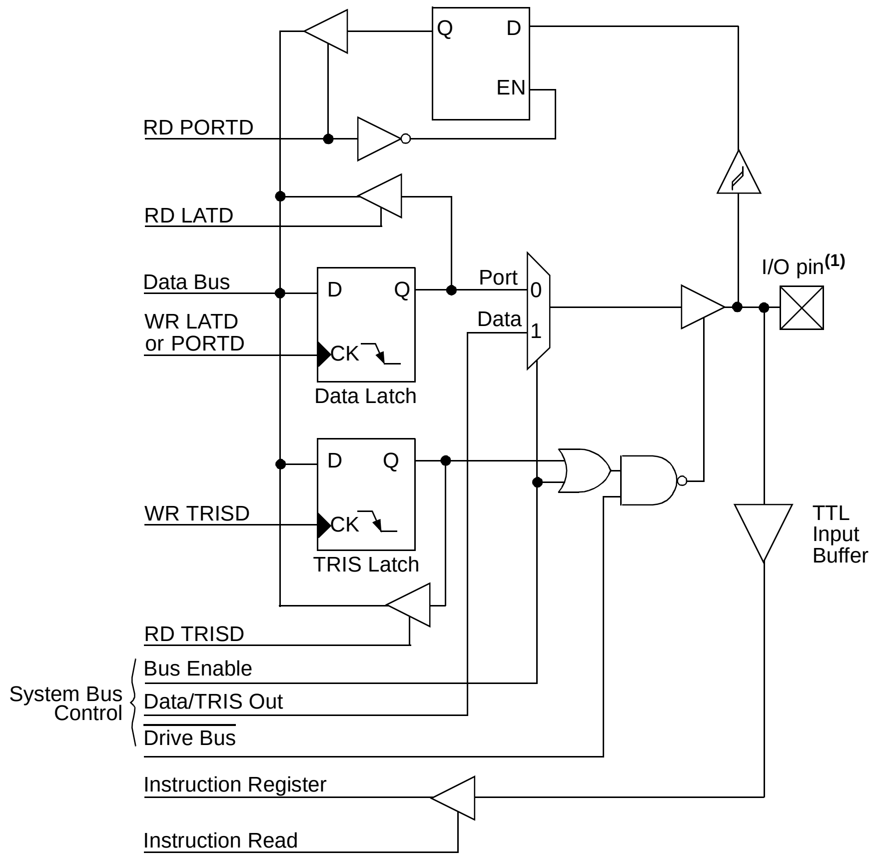
```
CLRF    PORTD   ; Initialize PORTD by
                ; clearing output
                ; data latches
CLRF    LATD    ; Alternate method
                ; to clear output
                ; data latches
MOVLW   0xCF    ; Value used to
                ; initialize data
                ; direction
MOVWF   TRISD   ; Set RD<3:0> as inputs
                ; RD<5:4> as outputs
                ; RD<7:6> as inputs
```

FIGURE 10-9: PORTD BLOCK DIAGRAM IN I/O PORT MODE



Note 1: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

FIGURE 10-10: PORTD BLOCK DIAGRAM IN SYSTEM BUS MODE



Note 1: I/O pins have protection diodes to VDD and VSS.

TABLE 10-7: PORTD FUNCTIONS

Name	Bit#	Buffer Type	Function
RD0/PSP0/AD0	bit 0	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin, Parallel Slave Port bit 0 or address/data bus bit 0.
RD1/PSP1/AD1	bit 1	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin, Parallel Slave Port bit 1 or address/data bus bit 1.
RD2/PSP2/AD2	bit 2	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin, Parallel Slave Port bit 2 or address/data bus bit 2.
RD3/PSP3/AD3	bit 3	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin, Parallel Slave Port bit 3 or address/data bus bit 3.
RD4/PSP4/AD4	bit 4	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin, Parallel Slave Port bit 4 or address/data bus bit 4.
RD5/PSP5/AD5	bit 5	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin, Parallel Slave Port bit 5 or address/data bus bit 5.
RD6/PSP6/AD6	bit 6	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin, Parallel Slave Port bit 6 or address/data bus bit 6.
RD7/PSP7/AD7	bit 7	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin, Parallel Slave Port bit 7 or address/data bus bit 7.

Legend: ST = Schmitt Trigger input, TTL = TTL input

Note 1: Input buffers are Schmitt Triggers when in I/O mode and TTL buffers when in System Bus or Parallel Slave Port mode.

TABLE 10-8: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTD

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
PORTD	RD7	RD6	RD5	RD4	RD3	RD2	RD1	RD0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
LATD	LATD Data Output Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TRISD	PORTD Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
PSPCON	IBF	OBF	IBOV	PSPMODE	—	—	—	—	0000 ----	0000 ----
MEMCON	EBDIS	—	WAIT1	WAIT0	—	—	WM1	WM0	0-00 --00	0-00 --00

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, – = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by PORTD.

10.5 PORTE, TRISE and LATE Registers

PORTE is an 8-bit wide, bidirectional port. The corresponding data direction register is TRISE. Setting a TRISE bit (= `1`) will make the corresponding PORTE pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a high-impedance mode). Clearing a TRISE bit (= `0`) will make the corresponding PORTE pin an output (i.e., put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin).

Read-modify-write operations on the LATE register, read and write the latched output value for PORTE.

PORTE is an 8-bit port with Schmitt Trigger input buffers. Each pin is individually configurable as an input or output. PORTE is multiplexed with the CCP module (Table 10-9).

On PIC18F8X20 devices, PORTE is also multiplexed with the system bus as the external memory interface; the I/O bus is available only when the system bus is disabled, by setting the EBDIS bit in the MEMCON register (MEMCON<7>). If the device is configured in Microprocessor or Extended Microcontroller mode, then the PORTE<7:0> becomes the high byte of the address/data bus for the external program memory interface. In Microcontroller mode, the PORTE<2:0> pins become the control inputs for the Parallel Slave Port when bit PSPMODE (PSPCON<4>) is set. (Refer to **Section 4.1.1 "PIC18F8X20 Program Memory Modes"** for more information on program memory modes.)

When the Parallel Slave Port is active, three PORTE pins (RE0/$\overline{RD}$/AD8, RE1/$\overline{WR}$/AD9 and RE2/$\overline{CS}$/AD10) function as its control inputs. This automatically occurs when the PSPMODE bit (PSPCON<4>) is set. Users must also make certain that bits TRISE<2:0> are set to configure the pins as digital inputs and the ADCON1 register is configured for digital I/O. The PORTE PSP control functions are summarized in Table 10-9.

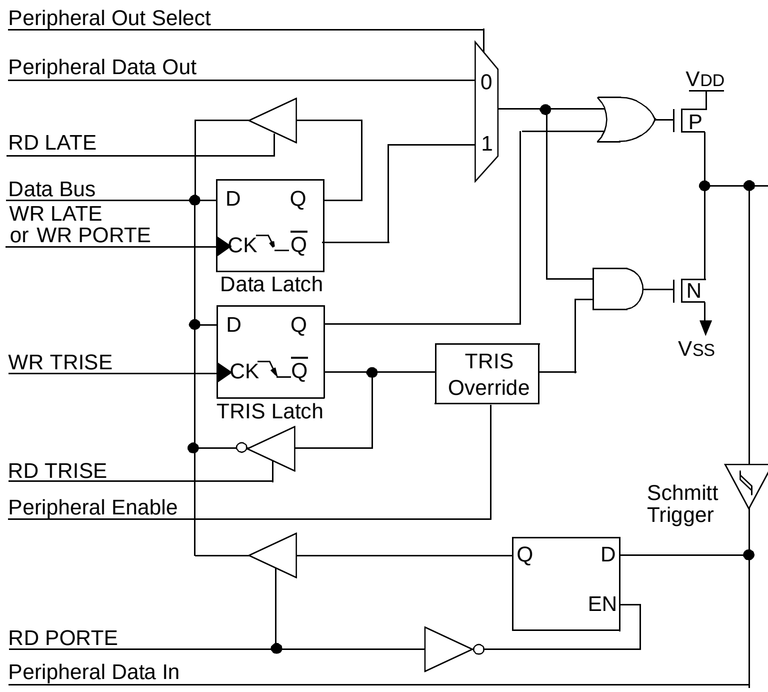
Pin RE7 can be configured as the alternate peripheral pin for CCP module 2 when the device is operating in Microcontroller mode. This is done by clearing the configuration bit, CCP2MX, in configuration register, CONFIG3H (CONFIG3H<0>).

Note:	For PIC18F8X20 (80-pin) devices operating in Extended Microcontroller mode, PORTE defaults to the system bus on Power-on Reset.

EXAMPLE 10-5: INITIALIZING PORTE

```
CLRF    PORTE   ; Initialize PORTE by
                ; clearing output
                ; data latches
CLRF    LATE    ; Alternate method
                ; to clear output
                ; data latches
MOVLW   0x03    ; Value used to
                ; initialize data
                ; direction
MOVWF   TRISE   ; Set RE1:RE0 as inputs
                ; RE7:RE2 as outputs
```

FIGURE 10-11: PORTE BLOCK DIAGRAM IN I/O MODE

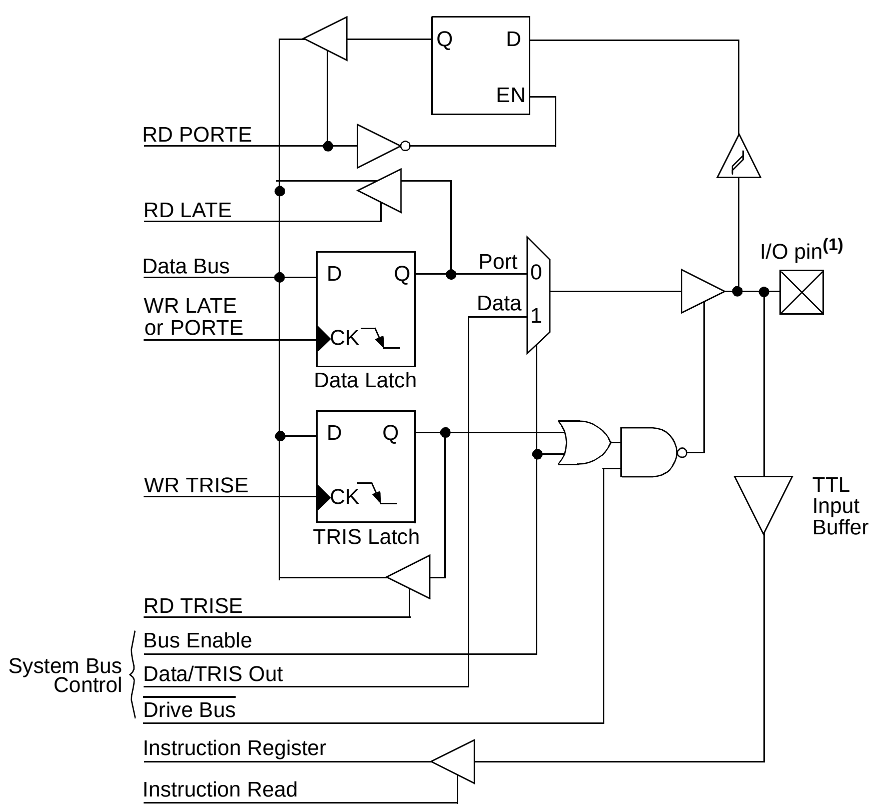


TRIS OVERRIDE

Pin	Override	Peripheral
RE0	Yes	External Bus
RE1	Yes	External Bus
RE2	Yes	External Bus
RE3	Yes	External Bus
RE4	Yes	External Bus
RE5	Yes	External Bus
RE6	Yes	External Bus
RE7	Yes	External Bus

Note 1: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

FIGURE 10-12: PORTE BLOCK DIAGRAM IN SYSTEM BUS MODE



Note 1: I/O pins have protection diodes to VDD and VSS.

TABLE 10-9: PORTE FUNCTIONS

Name	Bit#	Buffer Type	Function
RE0/$\overline{RD}$/AD8	bit 0	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin, read control for Parallel Slave Port or address/data bit 8 For $\overline{RD}$ (PSP Control mode): 1 = Not a read operation 0 = Read operation, reads PORTD register (if chip selected)
RE1/$\overline{WR}$/AD9	bit 1	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin, write control for Parallel Slave Port or address/data bit 9 For $\overline{WR}$ (PSP Control mode): 1 = Not a write operation 0 = Write operation, writes PORTD register (if chip selected)
RE2/$\overline{CS}$/AD10	bit 2	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin, chip select control for Parallel Slave Port or address/data bit 10 For $\overline{CS}$ (PSP Control mode): 1 = Device is not selected 0 = Device is selected
RE3/AD11	bit 3	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or address/data bit 11.
RE4/AD12	bit 4	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or address/data bit 12.
RE5/AD13	bit 5	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or address/data bit 13.
RE6/AD14	bit 6	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or address/data bit 14.
RE7/CCP2/AD15	bit 7	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin, Capture2 input/Compare2 output/PWM output (PIC18F8X20 devices in Microcontroller mode only) or address/data bit 15.

Legend: ST = Schmitt Trigger input, TTL = TTL input

Note 1: Input buffers are Schmitt Triggers when in I/O or CCP mode and TTL buffers when in System Bus or PSP Control mode.

TABLE 10-10: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTE

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
TRISE	PORTE Data Direction Control Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
PORTE	Read PORTE pin/Write PORTE Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
LATE	Read PORTE Data Latch/Write PORTE Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
MEMCON	EBDIS	—	WAIT1	WAIT0	—	—	WM1	WM0	0-00 --00	0000 --00
PSPCON	IBF	OBF	IBOV	PSPMODE	—	—	—	—	0000 ----	0000 ----

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged. Shaded cells are not used by PORTE.

10.6 PORTF, LATF and TRISF Registers

PORTF is an 8-bit wide, bidirectional port. The corresponding data direction register is TRISF. Setting a TRISF bit (= 1) will make the corresponding PORTF pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a high-impedance mode). Clearing a TRISF bit (= 0) will make the corresponding PORTF pin an output (i.e., put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin).

Read-modify-write operations on the LATF register, read and write the latched output value for PORTF.

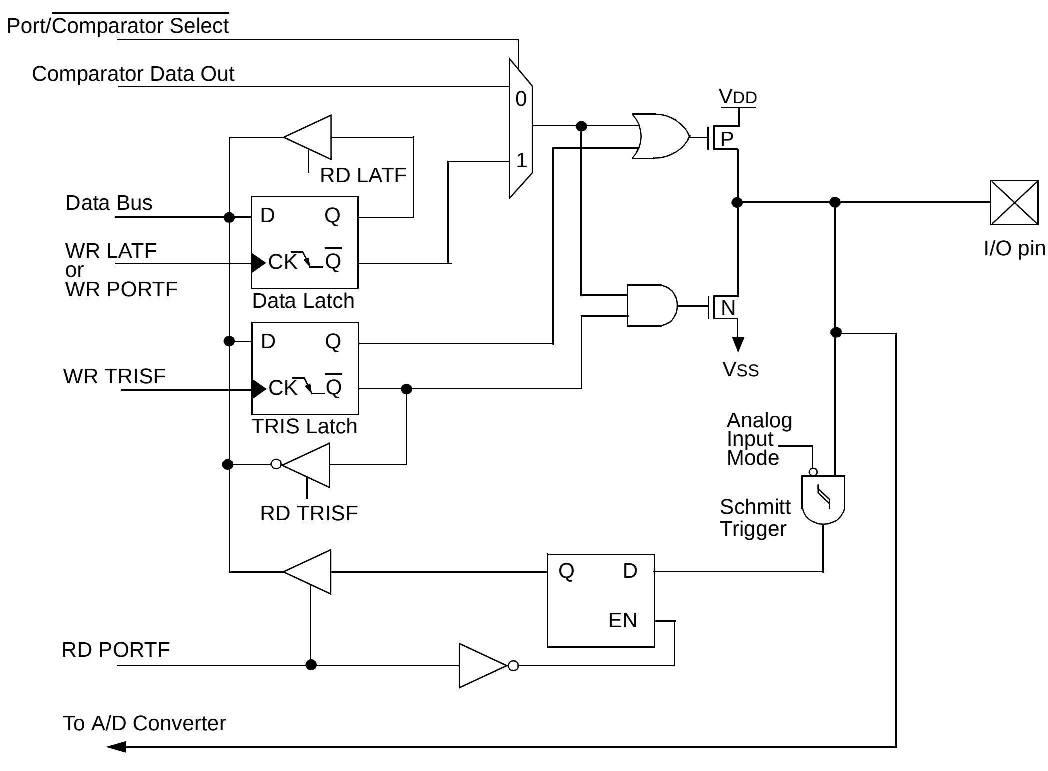
PORTF is multiplexed with several analog peripheral functions, including the A/D converter inputs and comparator inputs, outputs and voltage reference.

Note 1:	On a Power-on Reset, the RF6:RF0 pins are configured as inputs and read as '0'.
2:	To configure PORTF as digital I/O, turn off comparators and set ADCON1 value.

EXAMPLE 10-6: INITIALIZING PORTF

```
CLRF    PORTF    ; Initialize PORTF by
                 ; clearing output
                 ; data latches
CLRF    LATF     ; Alternate method
                 ; to clear output
                 ; data latches
MOVLW   0x07     ;
MOVWF   CMCON    ; Turn off comparators
MOVLW   0x0F     ;
MOVWF   ADCON1   ; Set PORTF as digital I/O
MOVLW   0xCF     ; Value used to
                 ; initialize data
                 ; direction
MOVWF   TRISF    ; Set RF3:RF0 as inputs
                 ; RF5:RF4 as outputs
                 ; RF7:RF6 as inputs
```

FIGURE 10-13: PORTF RF1/AN6/C2OUT, RF2/AN7/C1OUT PINS BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

FIGURE 10-14: RF6:RF3 AND RF0 PINS BLOCK DIAGRAM

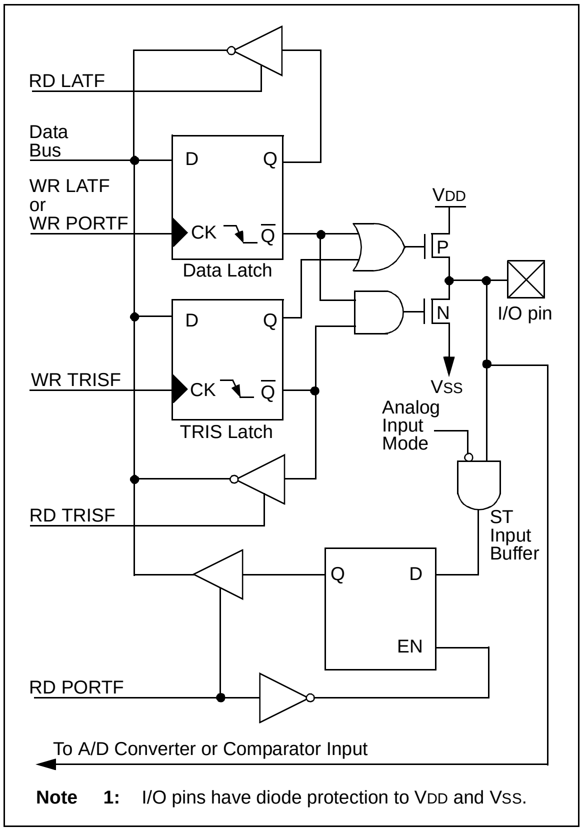


FIGURE 10-15: RF7 PIN BLOCK DIAGRAM

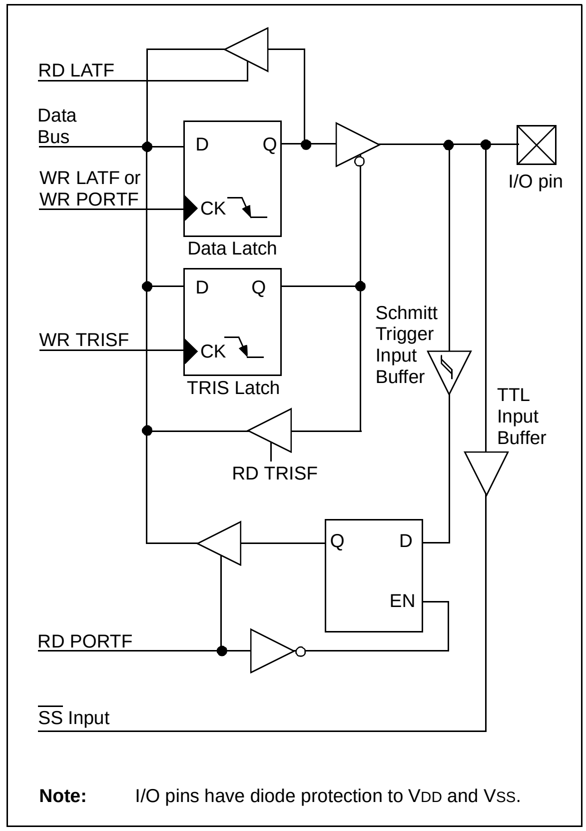


TABLE 10-11: PORTF FUNCTIONS

Name	Bit#	Buffer Type	Function
RF0/AN5	bit 0	ST	Input/output port pin or analog input.
RF1/AN6/C2OUT	bit 1	ST	Input/output port pin, analog input or comparator 2 output.
RF2/AN7/C1OUT	bit 2	ST	Input/output port pin, analog input or comparator 1 output.
RF3/AN8	bit 3	ST	Input/output port pin or analog input/comparator input.
RF4/AN9	bit 4	ST	Input/output port pin or analog input/comparator input.
RF5/AN10/CVREF	bit 5	ST	Input/output port pin, analog input/comparator input or comparator reference output.
RF6/AN11	bit 6	ST	Input/output port pin or analog input/comparator input.
RF7/$\overline{SS}$	bit 7	ST/TTL	Input/output port pin or slave select pin for synchronous serial port.

Legend: ST = Schmitt Trigger input, TTL = TTL input

TABLE 10-12: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTF

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
TRISF	PORTF Data Direction Control Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
PORTF	Read PORTF pin/Write PORTF Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
LATF	Read PORTF Data Latch/Write PORTF Data Latch								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
ADCON1	—	—	VCFG1	VCFG0	PCFG3	PCFG2	PCFG1	PCFG0	--00 0000	--00 0000
CMCON	C2OUT	C1OUT	C2INV	C1INV	CIS	CM2	CM1	CM0	0000 0000	0000 0000
CVRCON	CVREN	CVROE	CVRR	CVRSS	CVR3	CVR2	CVR1	CVR0	0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged. Shaded cells are not used by PORTF.

10.7 PORTG, TRISG and LATG Registers

PORTG is a 5-bit wide, bidirectional port. The corresponding data direction register is TRISG. Setting a TRISG bit (= 1) will make the corresponding PORTG pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a high-impedance mode). Clearing a TRISG bit (= 0) will make the corresponding PORTC pin an output (i.e., put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin).

The Data Latch register (LATG) is also memory mapped. Read-modify-write operations on the LATG register, read and write the latched output value for PORTG.

PORTG is multiplexed with both CCP and USART functions (Table 10-13). PORTG pins have Schmitt Trigger input buffers.

When enabling peripheral functions, care should be taken in defining TRIS bits for each PORTG pin. Some peripherals override the TRIS bit to make a pin an output, while other peripherals override the TRIS bit to make a pin an input. The user should refer to the corresponding peripheral section for the correct TRIS bit settings.

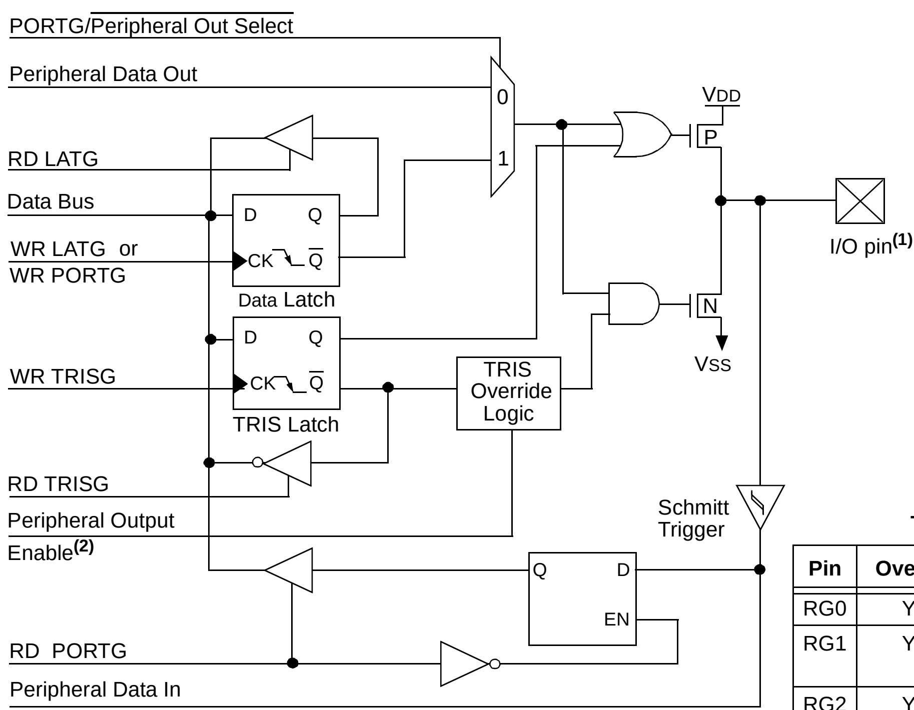
Note:	On a Power-on Reset, these pins are configured as digital inputs.

The pin override value is not loaded into the TRIS register. This allows read-modify-write of the TRIS register, without concern due to peripheral overrides.

EXAMPLE 10-7: INITIALIZING PORTG

```
CLRF    PORTG   ; Initialize PORTG by
                ; clearing output
                ; data latches
CLRF    LATG    ; Alternate method
                ; to clear output
                ; data latches
MOVLW   0x04    ; Value used to
                ; initialize data
                ; direction
MOVWF   TRISG   ; Set RG1:RG0 as outputs
                ; RG2 as input
                ; RG4:RG3 as inputs
```

FIGURE 10-16: PORTG BLOCK DIAGRAM (PERIPHERAL OUTPUT OVERRIDE)



TRIS OVERRIDE

Pin	Override	Peripheral
RG0	Yes	CCP3 I/O
RG1	Yes	USART1 Async Xmit, Sync Clock
RG2	Yes	USART1 Async Rcv, Sync Data Out
RG3	Yes	CCP4 I/O
RG4	Yes	CCP5 I/O

Note 1: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

2: Peripheral Output Enable is only active if Peripheral Select is active.

TABLE 10-13: PORTG FUNCTIONS

Name	Bit#	Buffer Type	Function
RG0/CCP3	bit 0	ST	Input/output port pin or Capture3 input/Compare3 output/PWM3 output.
RG1/TX2/CK2	bit 1	ST	Input/output port pin, addressable USART2 asynchronous transmit or addressable USART2 synchronous clock.
RG2/RX2/DT2	bit 2	ST	Input/output port pin, addressable USART2 asynchronous receive or addressable USART2 synchronous data.
RG3/CCP4	bit 3	ST	Input/output port pin or Capture4 input/Compare4 output/PWM4 output.
RG4/CCP5	bit 4	ST	Input/output port pin or Capture5 input/Compare5 output/PWM5 output.

Legend: ST = Schmitt Trigger input

TABLE 10-14: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTG

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
PORTG	—	—	—	Read PORTF pin/Write PORTF Data Latch					`---x xxxx`	`---u uuuu`
LATG	—	—	—	LATG Data Output Register					`---x xxxx`	`---u uuuu`
TRISG	—	—	—	Data Direction Control Register for PORTG					`---1 1111`	`---1 1111`

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged

10.8 PORTH, LATH and TRISH Registers

Note:	PORTH is available only on PIC18F8X20 devices.

PORTH is an 8-bit wide, bidirectional I/O port. The corresponding data direction register is TRISH. Setting a TRISH bit (= `1`) will make the corresponding PORTH pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a high-impedance mode). Clearing a TRISH bit (= `0`) will make the corresponding PORTH pin an output (i.e., put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin).

Read-modify-write operations on the LATH register, read and write the latched output value for PORTH.

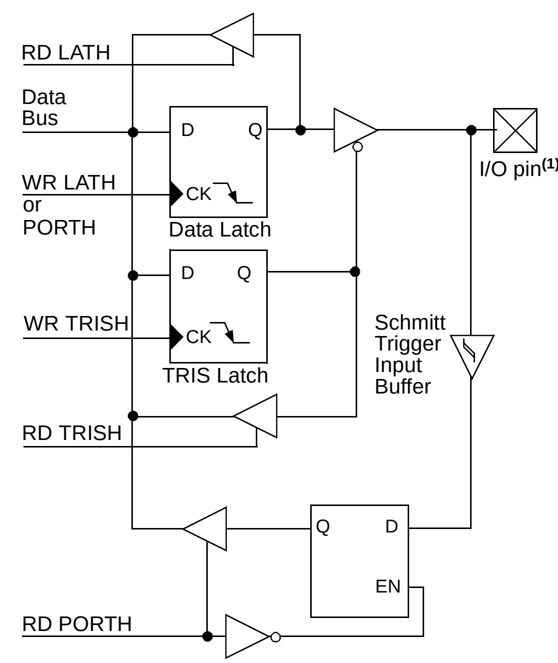
Pins RH7:RH4 are multiplexed with analog inputs AN15:AN12. Pins RH3:RH0 are multiplexed with the system bus as the external memory interface; they are the high-order address bits, A19:A16. By default, pins RH7:RH4 are enabled as A/D inputs and pins RH3:RH0 are enabled as the system address bus. Register ADCON1 configures RH7:RH4 as I/O or A/D inputs. Register MEMCON configures RH3:RH0 as I/O or system bus pins.

Note 1:	On Power-on Reset, PORTH pins RH7:RH4 default to A/D inputs and read as '`0`'.
2:	On Power-on Reset, PORTH pins RH3:RH0 default to system bus signals.

EXAMPLE 10-8: INITIALIZING PORTH

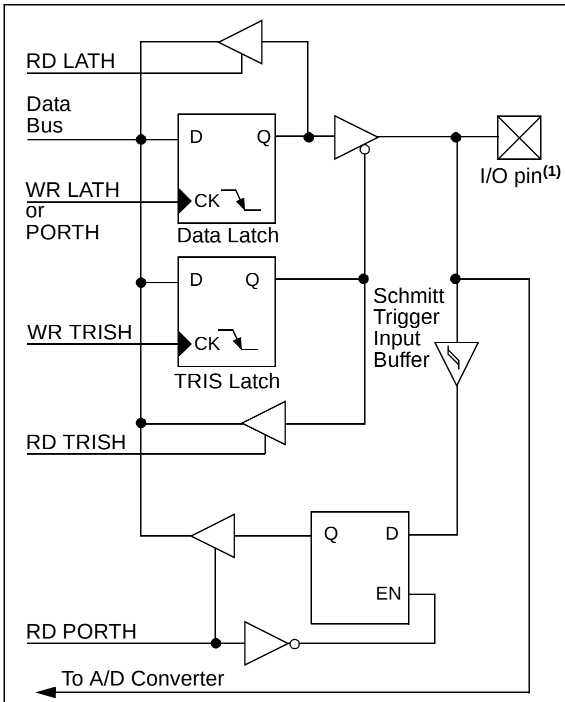
```
CLRF    PORTH    ; Initialize PORTH by
                 ; clearing output
                 ; data latches
CLRF    LATH     ; Alternate method
                 ; to clear output
                 ; data latches
MOVLW   0Fh      ;
MOVWF   ADCON1   ;
MOVLW   0CFh     ; Value used to
                 ; initialize data
                 ; direction
MOVWF   TRISH    ; Set RH3:RH0 as inputs
                 ; RH5:RH4 as outputs
                 ; RH7:RH6 as inputs
```

FIGURE 10-17: RH3:RH0 PINS BLOCK DIAGRAM IN I/O MODE



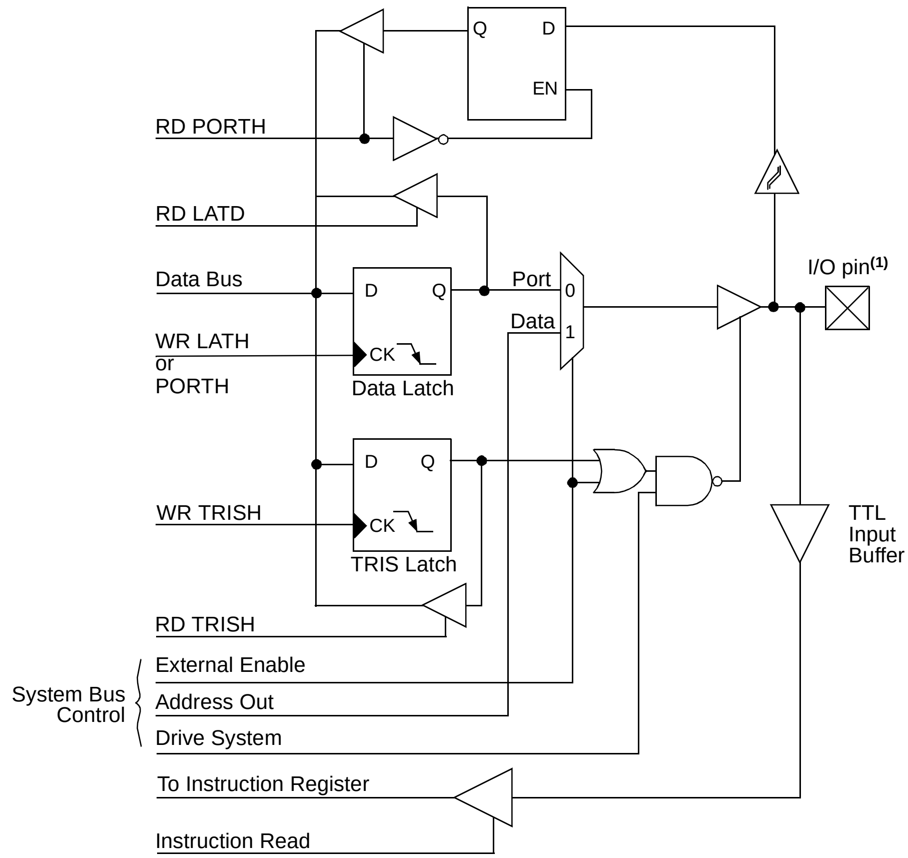
Note 1: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

FIGURE 10-18: RH7:RH4 PINS BLOCK DIAGRAM IN I/O MODE



Note 1: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

FIGURE 10-19: RH3:RH0 PINS BLOCK DIAGRAM IN SYSTEM BUS MODE



Note 1: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

TABLE 10-15: PORTH FUNCTIONS

Name	Bit#	Buffer Type	Function
RH0/A16	bit 0	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or address bit 16 for external memory interface.
RH1/A17	bit 1	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or address bit 17 for external memory interface.
RH2/A18	bit 2	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or address bit 18 for external memory interface.
RH3/A19	bit 3	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or address bit 19 for external memory interface.
RH4/AN12	bit 4	ST	Input/output port pin or analog input channel 12.
RH5/AN13	bit 5	ST	Input/output port pin or analog input channel 13.
RH6/AN14	bit 6	ST	Input/output port pin or analog input channel 14.
RH7/AN15	bit 7	ST	Input/output port pin or analog input channel 15.

Legend: ST = Schmitt Trigger input, TTL = TTL input

Note 1: Input buffers are Schmitt Triggers when in I/O mode and TTL buffers when in System Bus or Parallel Slave Port mode.

TABLE 10-16: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTH

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
TRISH	PORTH Data Direction Control Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
PORTH	Read PORTH pin/Write PORTH Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
LATH	Read PORTH Data Latch/Write PORTH Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
ADCON1	—	—	VCFG1	VCFG0	PCFG3	PCFG2	PCFG1	PCFG0	--00 0000	--00 0000
MEMCON	EBDIS	—	WAIT1	WAIT0	—	—	WM1	WM0	0-00 --00	0-00 --00

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, – = unimplemented. Shaded cells are not used by PORTH.

10.9 PORTJ, TRISJ and LATJ Registers

Note:	PORTJ is available only on PIC18F8X20 devices.

PORTJ is an 8-bit wide, bidirectional port. The corresponding data direction register is TRISJ. Setting a TRISJ bit (= 1) will make the corresponding PORTJ pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a high-impedance mode). Clearing a TRISJ bit (= 0) will make the corresponding PORTJ pin an output (i.e., put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin).

The Data Latch register (LATJ) is also memory mapped. Read-modify-write operations on the LATJ register, read and write the latched output value for PORTJ.

PORTJ is multiplexed with the system bus as the external memory interface; I/O port functions are only available when the system bus is disabled. When operating as the external memory interface, PORTJ provides the control signal to external memory devices. The RJ5 pin is not multiplexed with any system bus functions.

When enabling peripheral functions, care should be taken in defining TRIS bits for each PORTJ pin. Some peripherals override the TRIS bit to make a pin an output, while other peripherals override the TRIS bit to make a pin an input. The user should refer to the corresponding peripheral section for the correct TRIS bit settings.

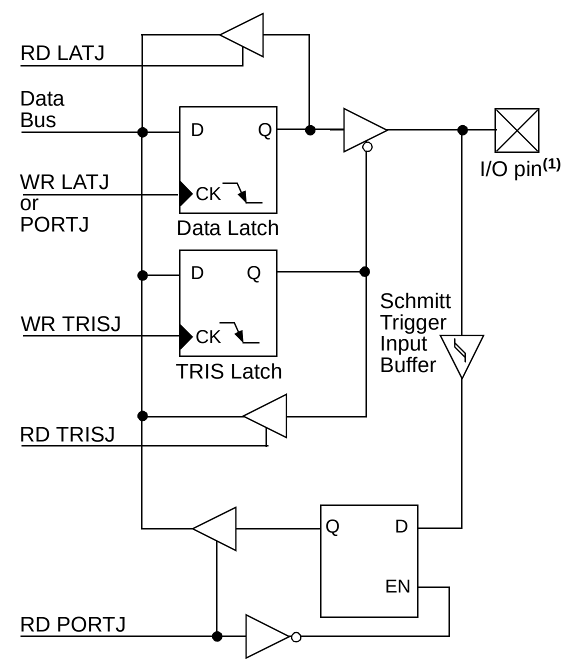
Note:	On a Power-on Reset, these pins are configured as digital inputs.

The pin override value is not loaded into the TRIS register. This allows read-modify-write of the TRIS register, without concern due to peripheral overrides.

EXAMPLE 10-9: INITIALIZING PORTJ

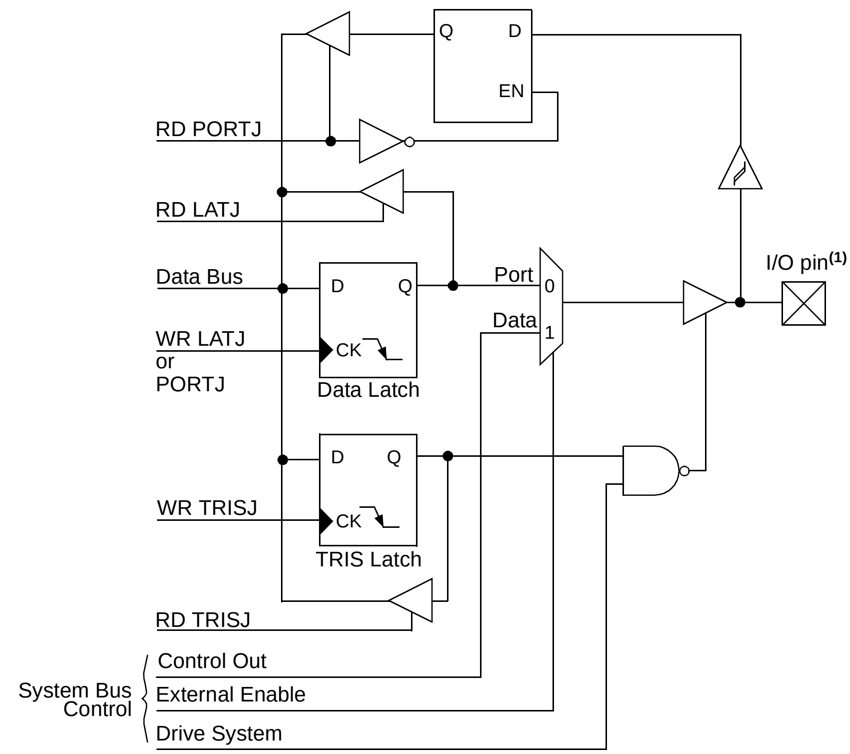
```
CLRF    PORTJ   ; Initialize PORTG by
                ; clearing output
                ; data latches
CLRF    LATJ    ; Alternate method
                ; to clear output
                ; data latches
MOVLW   0xCF    ; Value used to
                ; initialize data
                ; direction
MOVWF   TRISJ   ; Set RJ3:RJ0 as inputs
                ; RJ5:RJ4 as output
                ; RJ7:RJ6 as inputs
```

FIGURE 10-20: PORTJ BLOCK DIAGRAM IN I/O MODE



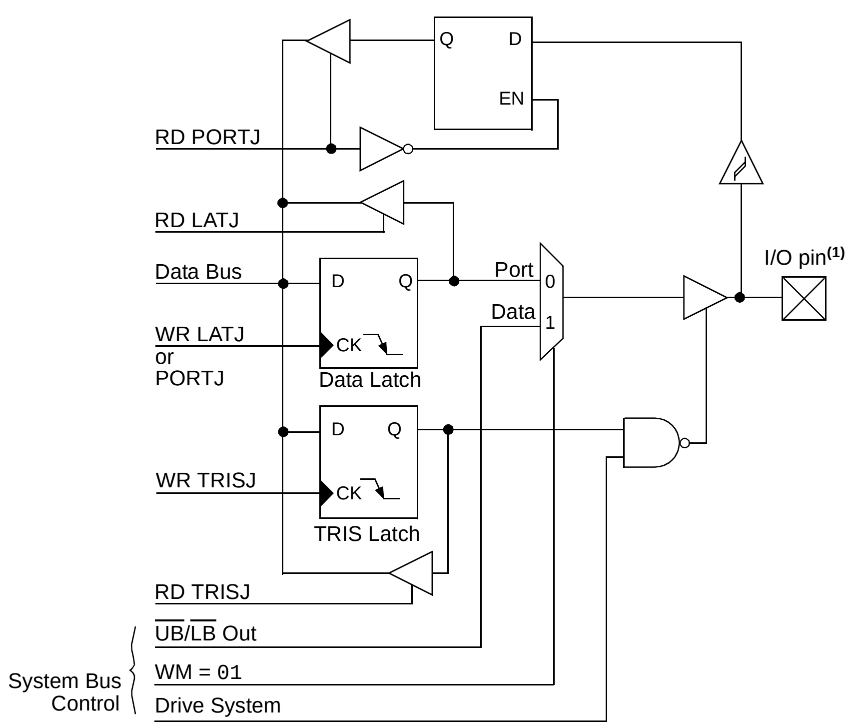
Note 1: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

FIGURE 10-21: RJ4:RJ0 PINS BLOCK DIAGRAM IN SYSTEM BUS MODE



Note 1: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

FIGURE 10-22: RJ7:RJ6 PINS BLOCK DIAGRAM IN SYSTEM BUS MODE



Note 1: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

TABLE 10-17: PORTJ FUNCTIONS

Name	Bit#	Buffer Type	Function
RJ0/ALE	bit 0	ST	Input/output port pin or address latch enable control for external memory interface.
RJ1/$\overline{\text{OE}}$	bit 1	ST	Input/output port pin or output enable control for external memory interface.
RJ2/$\overline{\text{WRL}}$	bit 2	ST	Input/output port pin or write low byte control for external memory interface.
RJ3/$\overline{\text{WRH}}$	bit 3	ST	Input/output port pin or write high byte control for external memory interface.
RJ4/BA0	bit 4	ST	Input/output port pin or byte address 0 control for external memory interface.
RJ5/$\overline{\text{CE}}$	bit 5	ST	Input/output port pin or chip enable control for external memory interface.
RJ6/$\overline{\text{LB}}$	bit 6	ST	Input/output port pin or lower byte select control for external memory interface.
RJ7/$\overline{\text{UB}}$	bit 7	ST	Input/output port pin or upper byte select control for external memory interface.

Legend: ST = Schmitt Trigger input

TABLE 10-18: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTJ

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
PORTJ	Read PORTJ pin/Write PORTJ Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
LATJ	LATJ Data Output Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TRISJ	Data Direction Control Register for PORTJ								1111 1111	1111 1111

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged

10.10 Parallel Slave Port

PORTD also operates as an 8-bit wide Parallel Slave Port, or microprocessor port, when control bit PSPMODE (PSPCON<4>) is set. It is asynchronously readable and writable by the external world through the $\overline{RD}$ control input pin, RE0/$\overline{RD}$/AD8 and the $\overline{WR}$ control input pin, RE1/$\overline{WR}$/AD9.

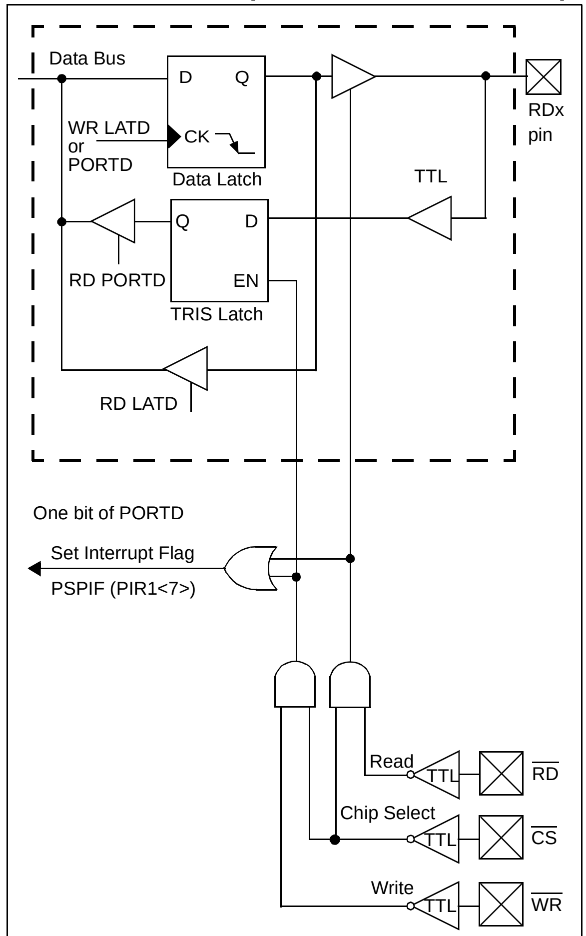
Note:	For PIC18F8X20 devices, the Parallel Slave Port is available only in Microcontroller mode.

The PSP can directly interface to an 8-bit microprocessor data bus. The external microprocessor can read or write the PORTD latch as an 8-bit latch. Setting bit PSPMODE enables port pin RE0/$\overline{RD}$/AD8 to be the $\overline{RD}$ input, RE1/$\overline{WR}$/AD9 to be the $\overline{WR}$ input and RE2/$\overline{CS}$/AD10 to be the $\overline{CS}$ (Chip Select) input. For this functionality, the corresponding data direction bits of the TRISE register (TRISE<2:0>) must be configured as inputs (set). The A/D port configuration bits, PCFG2:PCFG0 (ADCON1<2:0>), must be set which will configure pins RE2:RE0 as digital I/O.

A write to the PSP occurs when both the $\overline{CS}$ and $\overline{WR}$ lines are first detected low. A read from the PSP occurs when both the $\overline{CS}$ and $\overline{RD}$ lines are first detected low.

The PORTE I/O pins become control inputs for the microprocessor port when bit PSPMODE (PSPCON<4>) is set. In this mode, the user must make sure that the TRISE<2:0> bits are set (pins are configured as digital inputs) and the ADCON1 is configured for digital I/O. In this mode, the input buffers are TTL.

FIGURE 10-23: PORTD AND PORTE BLOCK DIAGRAM (PARALLEL SLAVE PORT)



Note: I/O pin has protection diodes to VDD and VSS.

REGISTER 10-1: PSPCON REGISTER

R-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0
IBF	OBF	IBOV	PSPMODE	—	—	—	—
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **IBF:** Input Buffer Full Status bit

1 = A word has been received and is waiting to be read by the CPU
0 = No word has been received

bit 6 **OBF:** Output Buffer Full Status bit

1 = The output buffer still holds a previously written word
0 = The output buffer has been read

bit 5 **IBOV:** Input Buffer Overflow Detect bit

1 = A write occurred when a previously input word has not been read (must be cleared in software)
0 = No overflow occurred

bit 4 **PSPMODE:** Parallel Slave Port Mode Select bit

1 = Parallel Slave Port mode
0 = General Purpose I/O mode

bit 3-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

FIGURE 10-24: PARALLEL SLAVE PORT WRITE WAVEFORMS

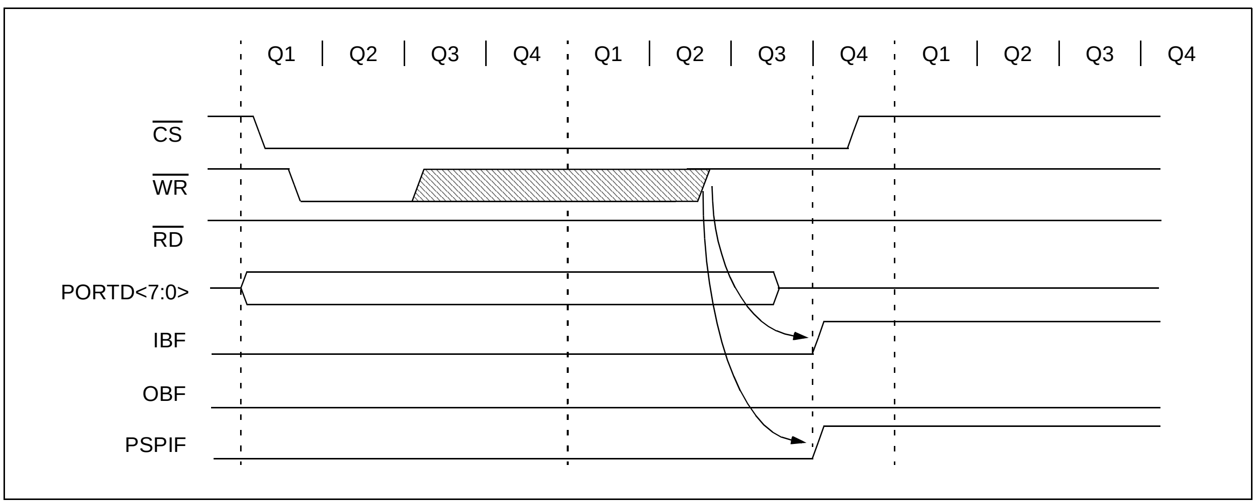


FIGURE 10-25: PARALLEL SLAVE PORT READ WAVEFORMS

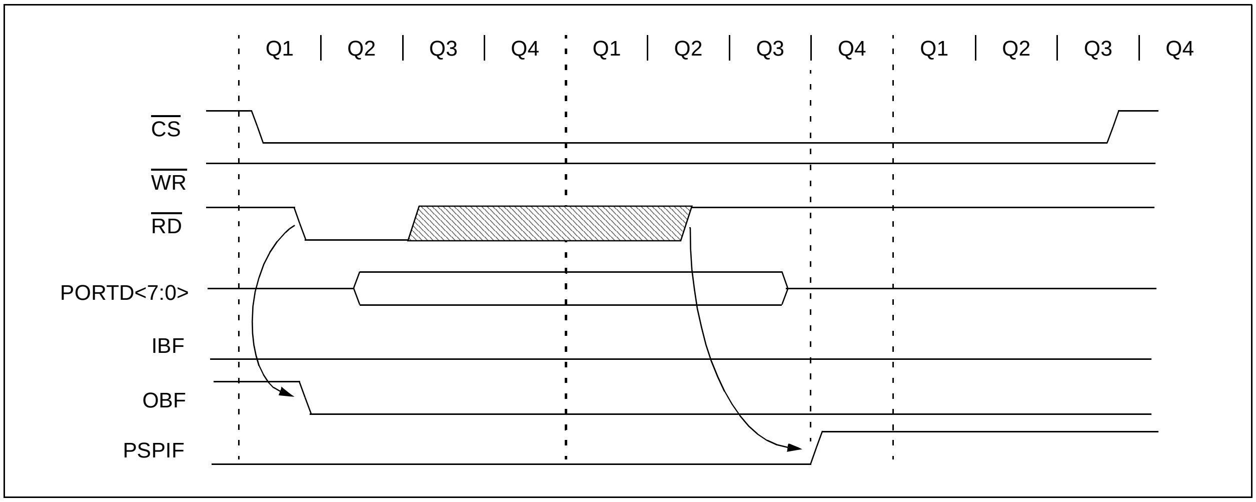


TABLE 10-19: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PARALLEL SLAVE PORT

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
PORTD	Port Data Latch when written; Port pins when read								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
LATD	LATD Data Output bits								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TRISD	PORTD Data Direction bits								1111 1111	1111 1111
PORTE	—	—	—	—	—	Read PORTE pin/ Write PORTE Data Latch			0000 0000	0000 0000
LATE	—	—	—	—	—	LATE Data Output bits			xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TRISE	—	—	—	—	—	PORTE Data Direction bits			1111 1111	1111 1111
PSPCON	IBF	OBF	IBOV	PSPMODE	—	—	—	—	0000 ----	0000 ----
INTCON	GIE/ GIEH	PEIE/ GIEL	TMR0IF	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIR1	PSPIF(1)	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE(1)	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP(1)	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0111 1111	0111 1111

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, – = unimplemented, read as ‘0’. Shaded cells are not used by the Parallel Slave Port.
Note 1: Enabled only in Microcontroller mode for PIC18F8X20 devices.

11.0 TIMER0 MODULE

The Timer0 module has the following features:

- Software selectable as an 8-bit or 16-bit timer/counter
- Readable and writable
- Dedicated 8-bit software programmable prescaler
- Clock source selectable to be external or internal
- Interrupt-on-overflow from FFh to 00h in 8-bit mode and FFFFh to 0000h in 16-bit mode
- Edge select for external clock

Figure 11-1 shows a simplified block diagram of the Timer0 module in 8-bit mode and Figure 11-2 shows a simplified block diagram of the Timer0 module in 16-bit mode.

The T0CON register (Register 11-1) is a readable and writable register that controls all the aspects of Timer0, including the prescale selection.

REGISTER 11-1: T0CON: TIMER0 CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
TMR0ON	T08BIT	T0CS	T0SE	PSA	T0PS2	T0PS1	T0PS0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **TMR0ON:** Timer0 On/Off Control bit
1 = Enables Timer0
0 = Stops Timer0

bit 6 **T08BIT:** Timer0 8-bit/16-bit Control bit
1 = Timer0 is configured as an 8-bit timer/counter
0 = Timer0 is configured as a 16-bit timer/counter

bit 5 **T0CS:** Timer0 Clock Source Select bit
1 = Transition on T0CKI pin
0 = Internal instruction cycle clock (CLKO)

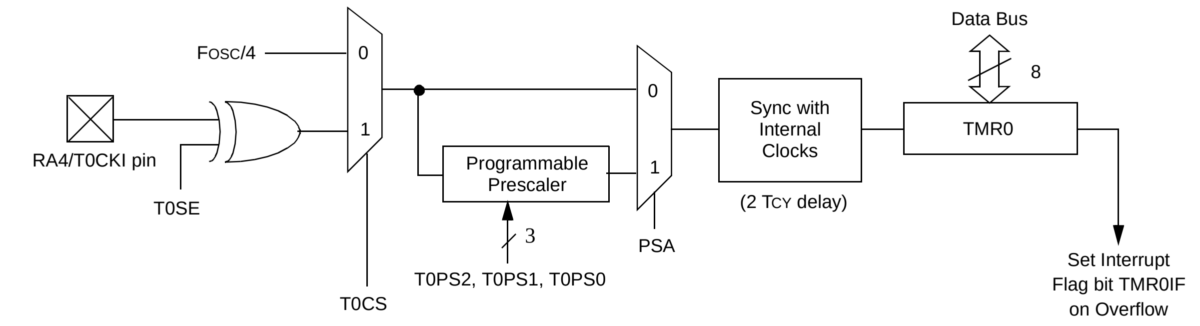
bit 4 **T0SE:** Timer0 Source Edge Select bit
1 = Increment on high-to-low transition on T0CKI pin
0 = Increment on low-to-high transition on T0CKI pin

bit 3 **PSA:** Timer0 Prescaler Assignment bit
1 = TImer0 prescaler is NOT assigned. Timer0 clock input bypasses prescaler.
0 = Timer0 prescaler is assigned. Timer0 clock input comes from prescaler output.

bit 2-0 **T0PS2:T0PS0:** Timer0 Prescaler Select bits
111 = 1:256 prescale value
110 = 1:128 prescale value
101 = 1:64 prescale value
100 = 1:32 prescale value
011 = 1:16 prescale value
010 = 1:8 prescale value
001 = 1:4 prescale value
000 = 1:2 prescale value

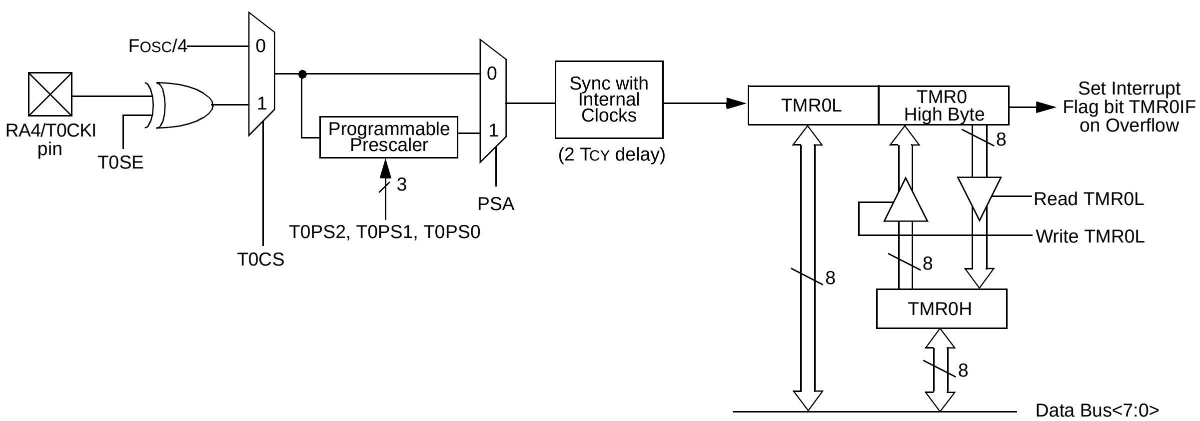
Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

FIGURE 11-1: TIMER0 BLOCK DIAGRAM IN 8-BIT MODE



Note: Upon Reset, Timer0 is enabled in 8-bit mode with clock input from T0CKI max. prescale.

FIGURE 11-2: TIMER0 BLOCK DIAGRAM IN 16-BIT MODE



Note: Upon Reset, Timer0 is enabled in 8-bit mode with clock input from T0CKI max. prescale.

11.1 Timer0 Operation

Timer0 can operate as a timer or as a counter.

Timer mode is selected by clearing the T0CS bit. In Timer mode, the Timer0 module will increment every instruction cycle (without prescaler). If the TMR0 register is written, the increment is inhibited for the following two instruction cycles. The user can work around this by writing an adjusted value to the TMR0 register.

Counter mode is selected by setting the T0CS bit. In Counter mode, Timer0 will increment, either on every rising or falling edge of pin RA4/T0CKI. The incrementing edge is determined by the Timer0 Source Edge Select bit (T0SE). Clearing the T0SE bit selects the rising edge. Restrictions on the external clock input are discussed below.

When an external clock input is used for Timer0, it must meet certain requirements. The requirements ensure the external clock can be synchronized with the internal phase clock (TOSC). Also, there is a delay in the actual incrementing of Timer0 after synchronization.

11.2 Prescaler

An 8-bit counter is available as a prescaler for the Timer0 module. The prescaler is not readable or writable.

The PSA and T0PS2:T0PS0 bits determine the prescaler assignment and prescale ratio.

Clearing bit PSA will assign the prescaler to the Timer0 module. When the prescaler is assigned to the Timer0 module, prescale values of 1:2, 1:4, ..., 1:256 are selectable.

When assigned to the Timer0 module, all instructions writing to the TMR0 register (e.g., `CLRF TMR0`, `MOVWF TMR0`, `BSF TMR0, x`, ..., etc.) will clear the prescaler count.

Note:	Writing to TMR0 when the prescaler is assigned to Timer0, will clear the prescaler count, but will not change the prescaler assignment.

11.2.1 SWITCHING PRESCALER ASSIGNMENT

The prescaler assignment is fully under software control, (i.e., it can be changed “on-the-fly” during program execution).

11.3 Timer0 Interrupt

The TMR0 interrupt is generated when the TMR0 register overflows from FFh to 00h in 8-bit mode, or FFFFh to 0000h in 16-bit mode. This overflow sets the TMR0IF bit. The interrupt can be masked by clearing the TMR0IE bit. The TMR0IF bit must be cleared in software by the Timer0 module Interrupt Service Routine before re-enabling this interrupt. The TMR0 interrupt cannot awaken the processor from Sleep, since the timer is shut-off during Sleep.

11.4 16-Bit Mode Timer Reads and Writes

TMR0H is not the high byte of the timer/counter in 16-bit mode, but is actually a buffered version of the high byte of Timer0 (refer to Figure 11-2). The high byte of the Timer0 counter/timer is not directly readable nor writable. TMR0H is updated with the contents of the high byte of Timer0 during a read of TMR0L. This provides the ability to read all 16 bits of Timer0 without having to verify that the read of the high and low byte were valid, due to a rollover between successive reads of the high and low byte.

A write to the high byte of Timer0 must also take place through the TMR0H Buffer register. Timer0 high byte is updated with the contents of TMR0H when a write occurs to TMR0L. This allows all 16 bits of Timer0 to be updated at once.

TABLE 11-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH TIMER0

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
TMR0L	Timer0 Module Low Byte Register								`xxxx xxxx`	`uuuu uuuu`
TMR0H	Timer0 Module High Byte Register								`0000 0000`	`0000 0000`
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	`0000 0000`	`0000 0000`
T0CON	TMR0ON	T08BIT	T0CS	T0SE	PSA	T0PS2	T0PS1	T0PS0	`1111 1111`	`1111 1111`
TRISA	—	PORTA Data Direction Register							`-111 1111`	`-111 1111`

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, – = unimplemented locations, read as ‘0’.
Shaded cells are not used by Timer0.

NOTES:

12.0 TIMER1 MODULE

The Timer1 module timer/counter has the following features:

- 16-bit timer/counter
(two 8-bit registers: TMR1H and TMR1L)
- Readable and writable (both registers)
- Internal or external clock select
- Interrupt-on-overflow from FFFFh to 0000h
- Reset from CCP module special event trigger

Figure 12-1 is a simplified block diagram of the Timer1 module.

Register 12-1 details the Timer1 Control register. This register controls the operating mode of the Timer1 module and contains the Timer1 Oscillator Enable bit (T1OSCEN). Timer1 can be enabled or disabled by setting or clearing control bit, TMR1ON (T1CON<0>).

Timer1 can also be used to provide Real-Time Clock (RTC) functionality to applications, with only a minimal addition of external components and code overhead.

REGISTER 12-1: T1CON: TIMER1 CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
RD16	—	T1CKPS1	T1CKPS0	T1OSCEN	$\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$	TMR1CS	TMR1ON
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **RD16:** 16-bit Read/Write Mode Enable bit
1 = Enables register read/write of Timer1 in one 16-bit operation
0 = Enables register read/write of Timer1 in two 8-bit operations

bit 6 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 5-4 **T1CKPS1:T1CKPS0**: Timer1 Input Clock Prescale Select bits
11 = 1:8 Prescale value
10 = 1:4 Prescale value
01 = 1:2 Prescale value
00 = 1:1 Prescale value

bit 3 **T1OSCEN:** Timer1 Oscillator Enable bit
1 = Timer1 oscillator is enabled
0 = Timer1 oscillator is shut off
The oscillator inverter and feedback resistor are turned off to eliminate power drain.

bit 2 **$\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$:** Timer1 External Clock Input Synchronization Select bit
When TMR1CS = 1:
1 = Do not synchronize external clock input
0 = Synchronize external clock input
When TMR1CS = 0:
This bit is ignored. Timer1 uses the internal clock when TMR1CS = 0.

bit 1 **TMR1CS:** Timer1 Clock Source Select bit
1 = External clock from pin RC0/T1OSO/T13CKI (on the rising edge)
0 = Internal clock (FOSC/4)

bit 0 **TMR1ON:** Timer1 On bit
1 = Enables Timer1
0 = Stops Timer1

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

12.1 Timer1 Operation

Timer1 can operate in one of these modes:

- As a timer
- As a synchronous counter
- As an asynchronous counter

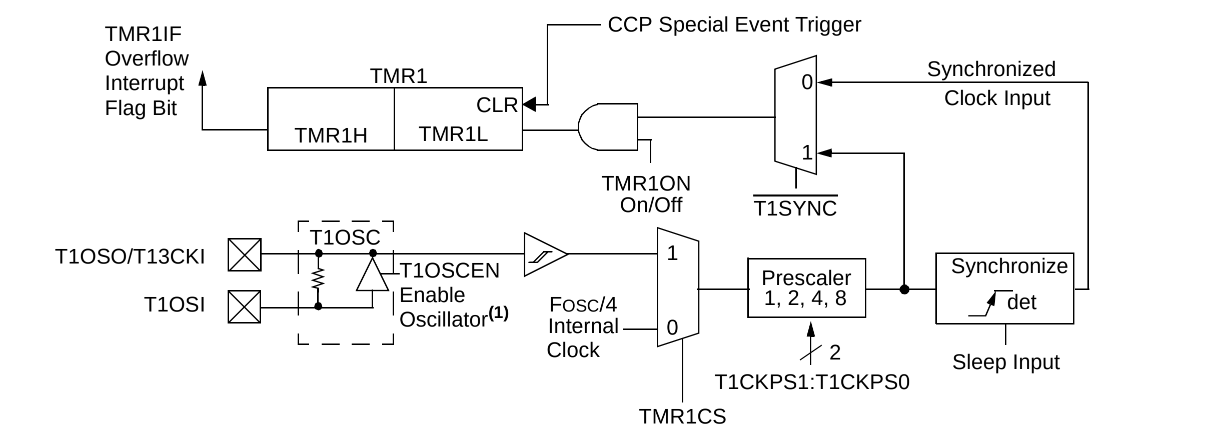
The operating mode is determined by the clock select bit, TMR1CS (T1CON<1>).

When TMR1CS = `0`, Timer1 increments every instruction cycle. When TMR1CS = `1`, Timer1 increments on every rising edge of the external clock input or the Timer1 oscillator, if enabled.

When the Timer1 oscillator is enabled (T1OSCEN is set), the RC1/T1OSI and RC0/T1OSO/T13CKI pins become inputs. That is, the TRISC<1:0> value is ignored and the pins are read as '`0`'.

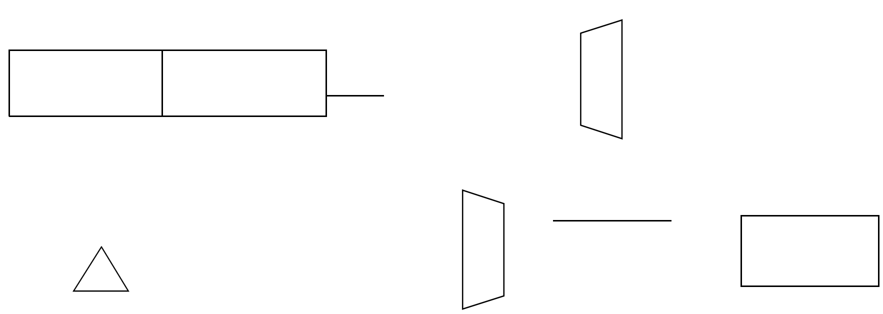
Timer1 also has an internal "Reset input". This Reset can be generated by the CCP module (see **Section 16.0 "Capture/Compare/PWM (CCP) Modules"**).

FIGURE 12-1: TIMER1 BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: When enable bit T1OSCEN is cleared, the inverter and feedback resistor are turned off. This eliminates power drain.

FIGURE 12-2: TIMER1 BLOCK DIAGRAM: 16-BIT READ/WRITE MODE

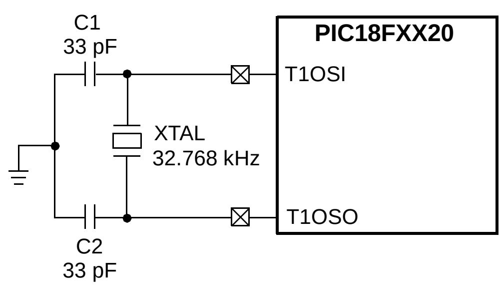


12.2 Timer1 Oscillator

A crystal oscillator circuit is built-in between pins T1OSI (input) and T1OSO (amplifier output). It is enabled by setting control bit, T1OSCEN (T1CON<3>). The oscillator is a low-power oscillator, rated up to 200 kHz. It will continue to run during Sleep. It is primarily intended for a 32 kHz crystal. The circuit for a typical LP oscillator is shown in Figure 12-3. Table 12-1 shows the capacitor selection for the Timer1 oscillator.

The user must provide a software time delay to ensure proper start-up of the Timer1 oscillator

FIGURE 12-3: EXTERNAL COMPONENTS FOR THE TIMER1 LP OSCILLATOR



Note: See the Notes with Table 12-1 for additional information about capacitor selection.

TABLE 12-1: CAPACITOR SELECTION FOR THE ALTERNATE OSCILLATOR

Osc Type	Freq	C1	C2
LP	32 kHz	TBD(1)	TBD(1)
Crystal to be Tested:			
32.768 kHz	Epson C-001R32.768K-A	± 20 PPM	

Note 1: Microchip suggests 33 pF as a starting point in validating the oscillator circuit.

2: Higher capacitance increases the stability of the oscillator, but also increases the start-up time.

3: Since each resonator/crystal has its own characteristics, the user should consult the resonator/crystal manufacturer for appropriate values of external components.

4: Capacitor values are for design guidance only.

12.2.1 LOW-POWER TIMER1 OPTION (PIC18FX520 DEVICES ONLY)

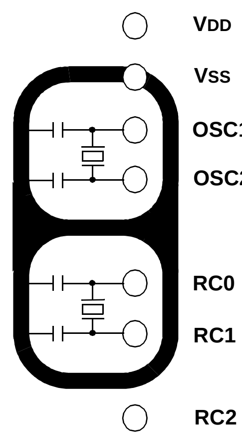
The Timer1 oscillator for PIC18LFX520 devices incorporates a low-power feature, which allows the oscillator to automatically reduce its power consumption when the microcontroller is in Sleep mode.

As high noise environments may cause excessive oscillator instability in Sleep mode, this option is best suited for low noise applications where power conservation is an important design consideration. Due to the low-power nature of the oscillator, it may also be sensitive to rapidly changing signals in close proximity.

The oscillator circuit, shown in Figure 12-3, should be located as close as possible to the microcontroller. There should be no circuits passing within the oscillator circuit boundaries other than VSS or VDD.

If a high-speed circuit must be located near the oscillator (such as the CCP1 pin in output compare or PWM mode, or the primary oscillator using the OSC2 pin), a grounded guard ring around the oscillator circuit, as shown in Figure 12-4, may be helpful when used on a single-sided PCB or in addition to a ground plane.

FIGURE 12-4: OSCILLATOR CIRCUIT WITH GROUNDED GUARD RING



Note: Not drawn to scale.

Note: PIC18FX620/X720 devices have the standard Timer1 oscillator permanently selected. PIC18LFX620/X720 devices have the low-power Timer1 oscillator permanently selected.

12.3 Timer1 Interrupt

The TMR1 register pair (TMR1H:TMR1L) increments from 0000h to FFFFh and rolls over to 0000h. The TMR1 interrupt, if enabled, is generated on overflow, which is latched in interrupt flag bit, TMR1IF (PIR1<0>). This interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing TMR1 Interrupt Enable bit, TMR1IE (PIE1<0>).

12.4 Resetting Timer1 Using a CCP Trigger Output

If the CCP module is configured in Compare mode to generate a "special event trigger" (CCP1M3:CCP1M0 = `1011`), this signal will reset Timer1 and start an A/D conversion (if the A/D module is enabled).

Note:	The special event triggers from the CCP1 module will not set interrupt flag bit TMR1IF (PIR1<0>).

Timer1 must be configured for either Timer or Synchronized Counter mode to take advantage of this feature. If Timer1 is running in Asynchronous Counter mode, this Reset operation may not work.

In the event that a write to Timer1 coincides with a special event trigger from CCP1, the write will take precedence.

In this mode of operation, the CCPR1H:CCPR1L register pair effectively becomes the period register for Timer1.

12.5 Timer1 16-Bit Read/Write Mode

Timer1 can be configured for 16-bit reads and writes (see Figure 12-2). When the RD16 control bit (T1CON<7>) is set, the address for TMR1H is mapped to a buffer register for the high byte of Timer1. A read from TMR1L will load the contents of the high byte of Timer1 into the Timer1 high byte buffer. This provides the user with the ability to accurately read all 16 bits of Timer1 without having to determine whether a read of the high byte, followed by a read of the low byte, is valid, due to a rollover between reads.

A write to the high byte of Timer1 must also take place through the TMR1H Buffer register. Timer1 high byte is updated with the contents of TMR1H when a write occurs to TMR1L. This allows a user to write all 16 bits to both the high and low bytes of Timer1 at once.

The high byte of Timer1 is not directly readable or writable in this mode. All reads and writes must take place through the Timer1 High Byte Buffer register. Writes to TMR1H do not clear the Timer1 prescaler. The prescaler is only cleared on writes to TMR1L.

12.6 Using Timer1 as a Real-Time Clock

Adding an external LP oscillator to Timer1 (such as the one described in **Section 12.2 "Timer1 Oscillator"**) gives users the option to include RTC functionality to their applications. This is accomplished with an inexpensive watch crystal to provide an accurate time base and several lines of application code to calculate the time. When operating in Sleep mode and using a battery or supercapacitor as a power source, it can completely eliminate the need for a separate RTC device and battery backup.

The application code routine, `RTCisr`, shown in Example 12-1, demonstrates a simple method to increment a counter at one-second intervals using an Interrupt Service Routine. Incrementing the TMR1 register pair to overflow, triggers the interrupt and calls the routine, which increments the seconds counter by one; additional counters for minutes and hours are incremented as the previous counter overflow.

Since the register pair is 16 bits wide, counting up to overflow the register directly from a 32.768 kHz clock would take 2 seconds. To force the overflow at the required one-second intervals, it is necessary to preload it; the simplest method is to set the MSb of TMR1H with a `BSF` instruction. Note that the TMR1L register is never preloaded or altered; doing so may introduce cumulative error over many cycles.

For this method to be accurate, Timer1 must operate in Asynchronous mode and the Timer1 overflow interrupt must be enabled (PIE1<0> = `1`), as shown in the routine, `RTCinit`. The Timer1 oscillator must also be enabled and running at all times.

EXAMPLE 12-1: IMPLEMENTING A REAL-TIME CLOCK USING A TIMER1 INTERRUPT SERVICE

```
RTCinit
            MOVLW   0x80            ; Preload TMR1 register pair
            MOVWF   TMR1H           ; for 1 second overflow
            CLRF    TMR1L
            MOVLW   b'00001111'     ; Configure for external clock,
            MOVWF   T1OSC           ; Asynchronous operation, external oscillator
            CLRF    secs            ; Initialize timekeeping registers
            CLRF    mins            ;
            MOVLW   .12
            MOVWF   hours
            BSF     PIE1, TMR1IE    ; Enable Timer1 interrupt
            RETURN
RTCisr
            BSF     TMR1H, 7        ; Preload for 1 sec overflow
            BCF     PIR1, TMR1IF    ; Clear interrupt flag
            INCF    secs, F         ; Increment seconds
            MOVLW   .59             ; 60 seconds elapsed?
            CPFSGT  secs
            RETURN                  ; No, done
            CLRF    secs            ; Clear seconds
            INCF    mins, F         ; Increment minutes
            MOVLW   .59             ; 60 minutes elapsed?
            CPFSGT  mins
            RETURN                  ; No, done
            CLRF    mins            ; clear minutes
            INCF    hours, F        ; Increment hours
            MOVLW   .23             ; 24 hours elapsed?
            CPFSGT  hours
            RETURN                  ; No, done
            MOVLW   .01             ; Reset hours to 1
            MOVWF   hours
            RETURN                  ; Done
```

TABLE 12-2: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH TIMER1 AS A TIMER/COUNTER

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIR1	PSPIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0111 1111	0111 1111
TMR1L	Holding Register for the Least Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TMR1H	Holding Register for the Most Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
T1CON	RD16	—	T1CKPS1	T1CKPS0	T1OSCEN	T1SYNC	TMR1CS	TMR1ON	0-00 0000	u-uu uuuu

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, – = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the Timer1 module.

NOTES:

13.0 TIMER2 MODULE

The Timer2 module timer has the following features:

- 8-bit timer (TMR2 register)
- 8-bit period register (PR2)
- Readable and writable (both registers)
- Software programmable prescaler (1:1, 1:4, 1:16)
- Software programmable postscaler (1:1 to 1:16)
- Interrupt on TMR2 match of PR2
- SSP module optional use of TMR2 output to generate clock shift

Timer2 has a control register shown in Register 13-1. Timer2 can be shut-off by clearing control bit, TMR2ON (T2CON<2>), to minimize power consumption. Figure 13-1 is a simplified block diagram of the Timer2 module. Register 13-1 shows the Timer2 Control register. The prescaler and postscaler selection of Timer2 are controlled by this register.

13.1 Timer2 Operation

Timer2 can be used as the PWM time base for the PWM mode of the CCP module. The TMR2 register is readable and writable and is cleared on any device Reset. The input clock (FOSC/4) has a prescale option of 1:1, 1:4 or 1:16, selected by control bits, T2CKPS1:T2CKPS0 (T2CON<1:0>). The match output of TMR2 goes through a 4-bit postscaler (which gives a 1:1 to 1:16 scaling inclusive) to generate a TMR2 interrupt (latched in flag bit, TMR2IF (PIR1<1>)).

The prescaler and postscaler counters are cleared when any of the following occurs:

- a write to the TMR2 register
- a write to the T2CON register
- any device Reset (Power-on Reset, $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset, Watchdog Timer Reset or Brown-out Reset)

TMR2 is not cleared when T2CON is written.

REGISTER 13-1: T2CON: TIMER2 CONTROL REGISTER

U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	T2OUTPS3	T2OUTPS2	T2OUTPS1	T2OUTPS0	TMR2ON	T2CKPS1	T2CKPS0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6-3 **T2OUTPS3:T2OUTPS0:** Timer2 Output Postscale Select bits
`0000` = 1:1 Postscale
`0001` = 1:2 Postscale
•
•
•
`1111` = 1:16 Postscale

bit 2 **TMR2ON:** Timer2 On bit
`1` = Timer2 is on
`0` = Timer2 is off

bit 1-0 **T2CKPS1:T2CKPS0:** Timer2 Clock Prescale Select bits
`00` = Prescaler is 1
`01` = Prescaler is 4
`1x` = Prescaler is 16

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

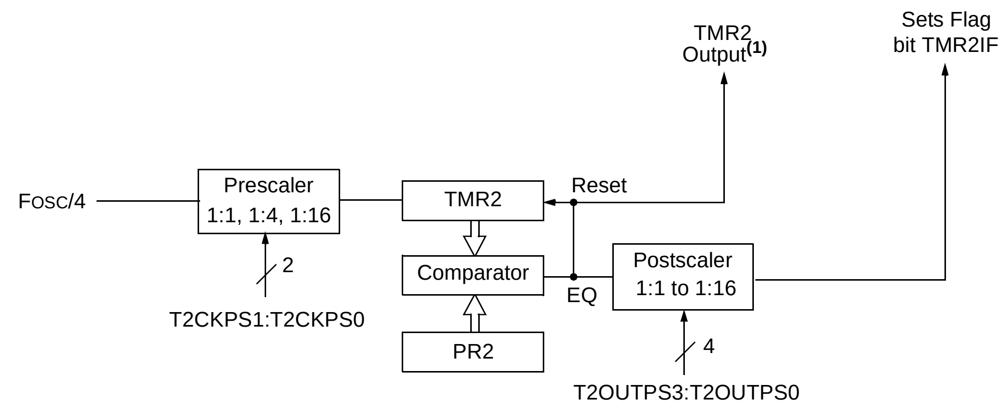
13.2 Timer2 Interrupt

The Timer2 module has an 8-bit period register, PR2. Timer2 increments from 00h until it matches PR2 and then resets to 00h on the next increment cycle. PR2 is a readable and writable register. The PR2 register is initialized to FFh upon Reset.

13.3 Output of TMR2

The output of TMR2 (before the postscaler) is fed to the synchronous serial port module, which optionally uses it to generate the shift clock.

FIGURE 13-1: TIMER2 BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: TMR2 register output can be software selected by the SSP module as a baud clock.

TABLE 13-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH TIMER2 AS A TIMER/COUNTER

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIR1	PSPIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0111 1111	0111 1111
TMR2	Timer2 Module Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
T2CON	—	T2OUTPS3	T2OUTPS2	T2OUTPS1	T2OUTPS0	TMR2ON	T2CKPS1	T2CKPS0	-000 0000	-000 0000
PR2	Timer2 Period Register								1111 1111	1111 1111

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, – = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the Timer2 module.

14.0 TIMER3 MODULE

The Timer3 module timer/counter has the following features:

- 16-bit timer/counter (two 8-bit registers; TMR3H and TMR3L)
- Readable and writable (both registers)
- Internal or external clock select
- Interrupt-on-overflow from FFFFh to 0000h
- Reset from CCP module trigger

Figure 14-1 is a simplified block diagram of the Timer3 module.

Register 14-1 shows the Timer3 Control register. This register controls the operating mode of the Timer3 module and sets the CCP clock source.

Register 12-1 shows the Timer1 Control register. This register controls the operating mode of the Timer1 module, as well as contains the Timer1 Oscillator Enable bit (T1OSCEN), which can be a clock source for Timer3.

REGISTER 14-1: T3CON: TIMER3 CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
RD16	T3CCP2	T3CKPS1	T3CKPS0	T3CCP1	$\overline{\text{T3SYNC}}$	TMR3CS	TMR3ON
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **RD16:** 16-bit Read/Write Mode Enable bit
1 = Enables register read/write of Timer3 in one 16-bit operation
0 = Enables register read/write of Timer3 in two 8-bit operations

bit 6, 3 **T3CCP2:T3CCP1:** Timer3 and Timer1 to CCPx Enable bits
11 = Timer3 and Timer4 are the clock sources for CCP1 through CCP5
10 = Timer3 and Timer4 are the clock sources for CCP3 through CCP5; Timer1 and Timer2 are the clock sources for CCP1 and CCP2
01 = Timer3 and Timer4 are the clock sources for CCP2 through CCP5; Timer1 and Timer2 are the clock sources for CCP1
00 = Timer1 and Timer2 are the clock sources for CCP1 through CCP5

bit 5-4 **T3CKPS1:T3CKPS0:** Timer3 Input Clock Prescale Select bits
11 = 1:8 Prescale value
10 = 1:4 Prescale value
01 = 1:2 Prescale value
00 = 1:1 Prescale value

bit 2 **$\overline{\text{T3SYNC}}$:** Timer3 External Clock Input Synchronization Control bit
(Not usable if the system clock comes from Timer1/Timer3.)
When TMR3CS = 1:
1 = Do not synchronize external clock input
0 = Synchronize external clock input
When TMR3CS = 0:
This bit is ignored. Timer3 uses the internal clock when TMR3CS = 0.

bit 1 **TMR3CS:** Timer3 Clock Source Select bit
1 = External clock input from Timer1 oscillator or T13CKI (on the rising edge after the first falling edge)
0 = Internal clock (FOSC/4)

bit 0 **TMR3ON:** Timer3 On bit
1 = Enables Timer3
0 = Stops Timer3

Legend:
R = Readable bit W = Writable bit U = Unimplemented bit,endi /4) 339.P

14.1 Timer3 Operation

Timer3 can operate in one of these modes:

- As a timer
- As a synchronous counter
- As an asynchronous counter

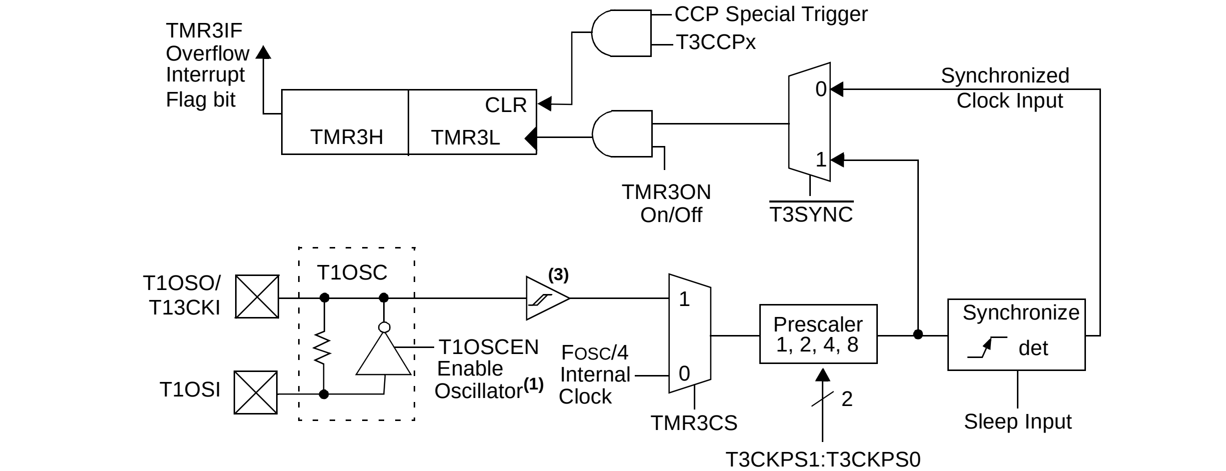
The operating mode is determined by the clock select bit, TMR3CS (T3CON<1>).

When TMR3CS = 0, Timer3 increments every instruction cycle. When TMR3CS = 1, Timer3 increments on every rising edge of the Timer1 external clock input or the Timer1 oscillator, if enabled.

When the Timer1 oscillator is enabled (T1OSCEN is set), the RC1/T1OSI and RC0/T1OSO/T13CKI pins become inputs. That is, the TRISC<1:0> value is ignored and the pins are read as '0'.

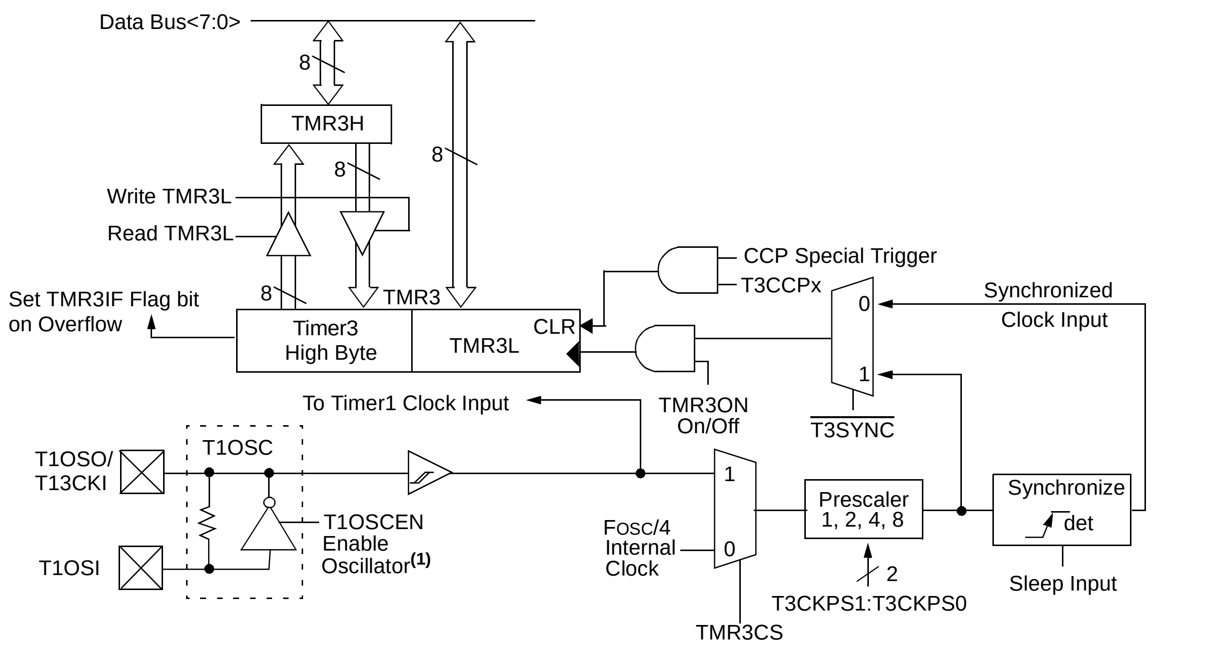
Timer3 also has an internal "Reset input". This Reset can be generated by the CCP module (see **Section 14.0 "Timer3 Module"**).

FIGURE 14-1: TIMER3 BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: When enable bit T1OSCEN is cleared, the inverter and feedback resistor are turned off. This eliminates power drain.

FIGURE 14-2: TIMER3 BLOCK DIAGRAM CONFIGURED IN 16-BIT READ/WRITE MODE



Note 1: When the T1OSCEN bit is cleared, the inverter and feedback resistor are turned off. This eliminates power drain.

14.2 Timer1 Oscillator

The Timer1 oscillator may be used as the clock source for Timer3. The Timer1 oscillator is enabled by setting the T1OSCEN (T1CON<3>) bit. The oscillator is a low-power oscillator rated up to 200 kHz. See **Section 12.0 "Timer1 Module"** for further details.

14.3 Timer3 Interrupt

The TMR3 register pair (TMR3H:TMR3L) increments from 0000h to FFFFh and rolls over to 0000h. The TMR3 interrupt, if enabled, is generated on overflow,

NOTES:

15.0 TIMER4 MODULE

The Timer4 module timer has the following features:

- 8-bit timer (TMR4 register)
- 8-bit period register (PR4)
- Readable and writable (both registers)
- Software programmable prescaler (1:1, 1:4, 1:16)
- Software programmable postscaler (1:1 to 1:16)
- Interrupt on TMR4 match of PR4

Timer4 has a control register shown in Register 15-1. Timer4 can be shut-off by clearing control bit, TMR4ON (T4CON<2>), to minimize power consumption. The prescaler and postscaler selection of Timer4 are also controlled by this register. Figure 15-1 is a simplified block diagram of the Timer4 module.

15.1 Timer4 Operation

Timer4 can be used as the PWM time base for the PWM mode of the CCP module. The TMR4 register is readable and writable and is cleared on any device Reset. The input clock (FOSC/4) has a prescale option of 1:1, 1:4 or 1:16, selected by control bits T4CKPS1:T4CKPS0 (T4CON<1:0>). The match output of TMR4 goes through a 4-bit postscaler (which gives a 1:1 to 1:16 scaling inclusive) to generate a TMR4 interrupt, latched in flag bit, TMR4IF (PIR3<3>).

The prescaler and postscaler counters are cleared when any of the following occurs:

- a write to the TMR4 register
- a write to the T4CON register
- any device Reset (Power-on Reset, $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset, Watchdog Timer Reset or Brown-out Reset)

TMR4 is not cleared when T4CON is written.

REGISTER 15-1: T4CON: TIMER4 CONTROL REGISTER

U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	T4OUTPS3	T4OUTPS2	T4OUTPS1	T4OUTPS0	TMR4ON	T4CKPS1	T4CKPS0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 6-3 **T4OUTPS3:T4OUTPS0:** Timer4 Output Postscale Select bits
`0000` = 1:1 Postscale
`0001` = 1:2 Postscale
•
•
•
`1111` = 1:16 Postscale

bit 2 **TMR4ON:** Timer4 On bit
`1` = Timer4 is on
`0` = Timer4 is off

bit 1-0 **T4CKPS1:T4CKPS0:** Timer4 Clock Prescale Select bits
`00` = Prescaler is 1
`01` = Prescaler is 4
`1x` = Prescaler is 16

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

15.2 Timer4 Interrupt

The Timer4 module has an 8-bit period register, PR4, which is both readable and writable. Timer4 increments from 00h until it matches PR4 and then resets to 00h on the next increment cycle. The PR4 register is initialized to FFh upon Reset.

15.3 Output of TMR4

The output of TMR4 (before the postscaler) is used only as a PWM time base for the CCP modules. It is not used as a baud rate clock for the MSSP, as is the Timer2 output.

FIGURE 15-1: TIMER4 BLOCK DIAGRAM

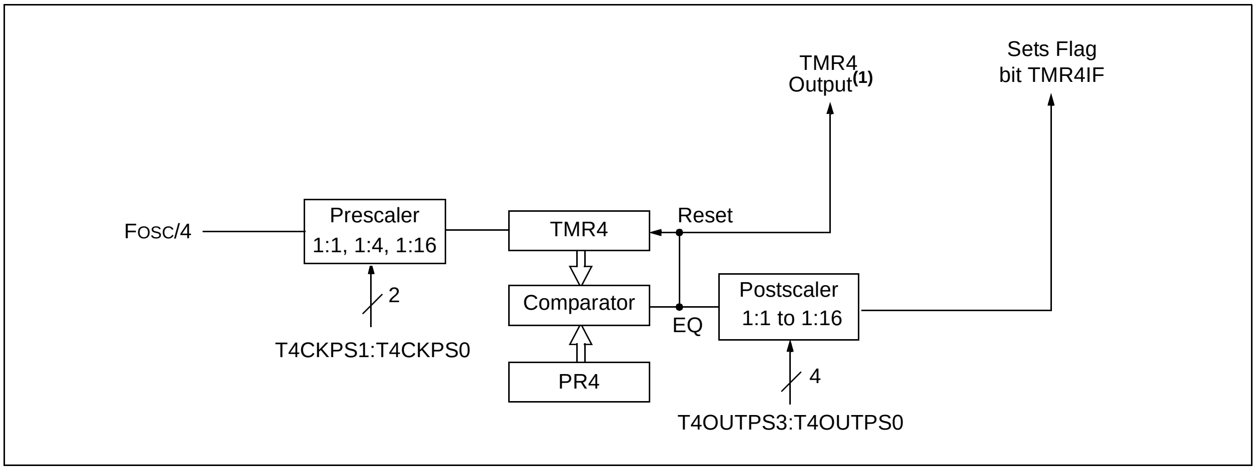


TABLE 15-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH TIMER4 AS A TIMER/COUNTER

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR3	—	—	RC2IP	TX2IP	TMR4IP	CCP5IP	CCP4IP	CCP3IP	--11 1111	--00 0000
PIR3	—	—	RC2IF	TX2IF	TMR4IF	CCP5IF	CCP4IF	CCP3IF	--00 0000	--00 0000
PIE3	—	—	RC2IE	TX2IE	TMR4IE	CCP5IE	CCP4IE	CCP3IE	--00 0000	--00 0000
TMR4	Timer4 Module Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
T4CON	—	T4OUTPS3	T4OUTPS2	T4OUTPS1	T4OUTPS0	TMR4ON	T4CKPS1	T4CKPS0	-000 0000	-000 0000
PR4	Timer4 Period Register								1111 1111	1111 1111

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, – = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the Timer4 module.

16.0 CAPTURE/COMPARE/PWM (CCP) MODULES

The PIC18FXX20 devices all have five CCP (Capture/Compare/PWM) modules. Each module contains a 16-bit register, which can operate as a 16-bit Capture register, a 16-bit Compare register or a Pulse Width Modulation (PWM) Master/Slave Duty Cycle register. Table 16-1 shows the timer resources of the CCP module modes.

The operation of all CCP modules are identical, with the exception of the special event trigger present on CCP1 and CCP2.

For the sake of clarity, CCP module operation in the following sections is described with respect to CCP1. The descriptions can be applied (with the exception of the special event triggers) to any of the modules.

Note:	Throughout this section, references to register and bit names that may be associated with a specific CCP module are referred to generically by the use of 'x' or 'y' in place of the specific module number. Thus, "CCPxCON" might refer to the control register for CCP1, CCP2, CCP3, CCP4 or CCP5.

REGISTER 16-1: CCPxCON REGISTER

U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	—	DCxB1	DCxB0	CCPxM3	CCPxM2	CCPxM1	CCPxM0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-4 **DCxB1:DCxB0:** PWM Duty Cycle bit 1 and bit 0 for CCP Module x

Capture mode:
Unused.

Compare mode:
Unused.

PWM mode:
These bits are the two Least Significant bits (bit 1 and bit 0) of the 10-bit PWM duty cycle. The eight Most Significant bits (DCx9:DCx2) of the duty cycle are found in CCPRxL.

bit 3-0 **CCPxM3:CCPxM0:** CCP Module x Mode Select bits

0000 = Capture/Compare/PWM disabled (resets CCPx module)
0001 = Reserved
0010 = Compare mode, toggle output on match (CCPxIF bit is set)
0011 = Reserved
0100 = Capture mode, every falling edge
0101 = Capture mode, every rising edge
0110 = Capture mode, every 4th rising edge
0111 = Capture mode, every 16th rising edge
1000 = Compare mode, Initialize CCP pin Low; on compare match, force CCP pin High (CCPIF bit is set)
1001 = Compare mode, Initialize CCP pin High; on compare match, force CCP pin Low (CCPIF bit is set)
1010 = Compare mode, Generate software interrupt on compare match (CCPIF bit is set, (CCP pin is unaffected)
1011 = Compare mode, trigger special event (CCPIF bit is set):
For CCP1 and CCP2:
Timer1 or Timer3 is reset on event.
For all other modules:
CCPx pin is unaffected and is configured as an I/O port
(same as CCPxM<3:0> = 1010, above).
11xx = PWM mode

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

16.1 CCP Module Configuration

Each Capture/Compare/PWM module is associated with a control register (generically, CCPxCON) and a data register (CCPRx). The data register, in turn, is comprised of two 8-bit registers: CCPRxL (low byte) and CCPRxH (high byte). All registers are both readable and writable.

16.1.1 CCP MODULES AND TIMER RESOURCES

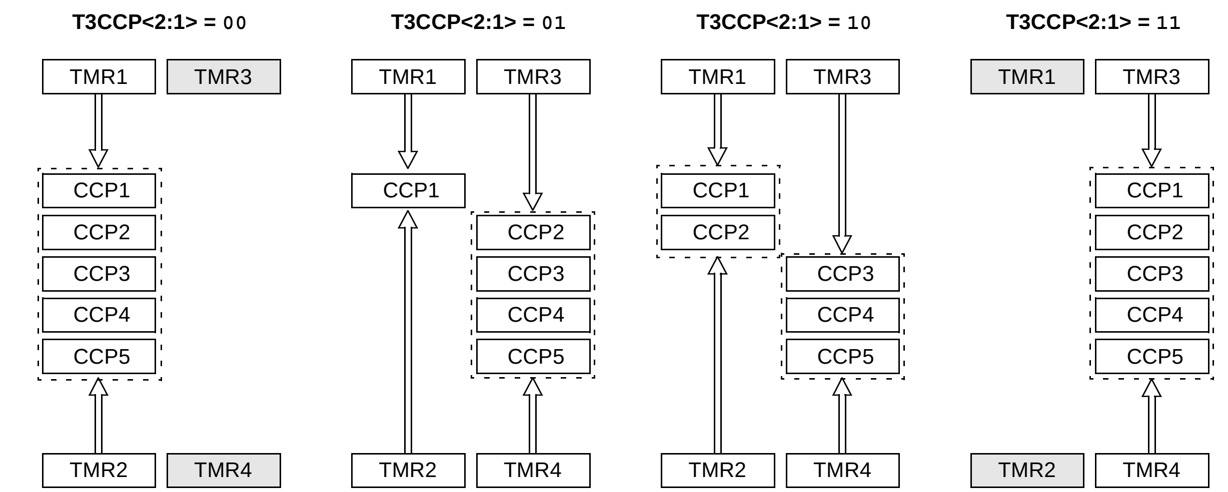
The CCP modules utilize Timers 1, 2, 3 or 4, depending on the mode selected. Timer1 and Timer3 are available to modules in Capture or Compare modes, while Timer2 and Timer4 are available for modules in PWM mode.

TABLE 16-1: CCP MODE – TIMER RESOURCE

CCP Mode	Timer Resource
Capture	Timer1 or Timer3
Compare	Timer1 or Timer3
PWM	Timer2 or Timer4

The assignment of a particular timer to a module is determined by the Timer-to-CCP Enable bits in the T3CON register (Register 14-1). Depending on the configuration selected, up to four timers may be active at once, with modules in the same configuration (Capture/Compare or PWM) sharing timer resources. The possible configurations are shown in Figure 16-1.

FIGURE 16-1: CCP AND TIMER INTERCONNECT CONFIGURATIONS



Timer1 is used for all Capture and Compare operations for all CCP modules. Timer2 is used for PWM operations for all CCP modules. Modules may share either timer resource as a common time base.

Timer3 and Timer4 are not available.

Timer1 and Timer2 are used for Capture and Compare or PWM operations for CCP1 only (depending on selected mode).

All other modules use either Timer3 or Timer4. Modules may share either timer resource as a common time base, if they are in Capture/Compare or PWM modes.

Timer1 and Timer2 are used for Capture and Compare or PWM operations for CCP1 and CCP2 only (depending on the mode selected for each module). Both modules may use a timer as a common time base if they are both in Capture/Compare or PWM modes.

The other modules use either Timer3 or Timer4. Modules may share either timer resource as a common time base if they are in Capture/Compare or PWM modes.

Timer3 is used for all Capture and Compare operations for all CCP modules. Timer4 is used for PWM operations for all CCP modules. Modules may share either timer resource as a common time base.

Timer1 and Timer2 are not available.

16.2 Capture Mode

In Capture mode, CCPR1H:CCPR1L captures the 16-bit value of the TMR1 or TMR3 registers when an event occurs on pin RC2/CCP1. An event is defined as one of the following:

- every falling edge
- every rising edge
- every 4th rising edge
- every 16th rising edge

The event is selected by control bits, CCP1M3:CCP1M0 (CCP1CON<3:0>). When a capture is made, the interrupt request flag bit, CCP1IF (PIR1<2>), is set; it must be cleared in software. If another capture occurs before the value in register CCPR1 is read, the old captured value is overwritten by the new captured value.

16.2.1 CCP PIN CONFIGURATION

In Capture mode, the RC2/CCP1 pin should be configured as an input by setting the TRISC<2> bit.

Note:	If the RC2/CCP1 is configured as an output, a write to the port can cause a capture condition.

16.2.2 TIMER1/TIMER3 MODE SELECTION

The timers that are to be used with the capture feature (Timer1 and/or Timer3) must be running in Timer mode, or Synchronized Counter mode. In Asynchronous Counter mode, the capture operation may not work. The timer to be used with each CCP module is selected in the T3CON register (see **Section 16.1.1 "CCP Modules and Timer Resources"**).

16.2.3 SOFTWARE INTERRUPT

When the Capture mode is changed, a false capture interrupt may be generated. The user should keep bit CCP1IE (PIE1<2>) clear to avoid false interrupts and should clear the flag bit, CCP1IF, following any such change in operating mode.

16.2.4 CCP PRESCALER

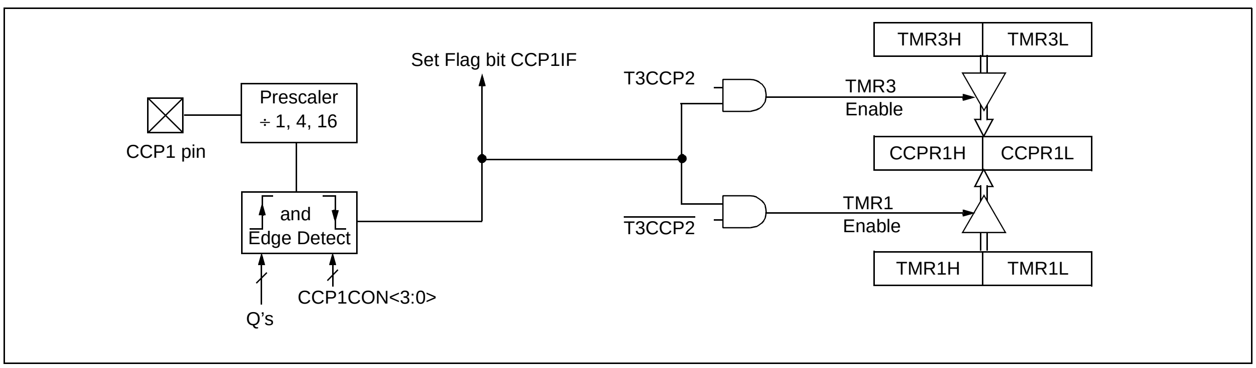
There are four prescaler settings, specified by bits CCP1M3:CCP1M0. Whenever the CCP module is turned off or the CCP module is not in Capture mode, the prescaler counter is cleared. This means that any Reset will clear the prescaler counter.

Switching from one capture prescaler to another may generate an interrupt. Also, the prescaler counter will not be cleared, therefore, the first capture may be from a non-zero prescaler. Example 16-1 shows the recommended method for switching between capture prescalers. This example also clears the prescaler counter and will not generate the "false" interrupt.

EXAMPLE 16-1: CHANGING BETWEEN CAPTURE PRESCALERS

```
CLRF   CCP1CON, F  ; Turn CCP module off
MOVLW  NEW_CAPT_PS ; Load WREG with the
                   ; new prescaler mode
                   ; value and CCP ON
MOVWF  CCP1CON     ; Load CCP1CON with
                   ; this value
```

FIGURE 16-2: CAPTURE MODE OPERATION BLOCK DIAGRAM



16.3 Compare Mode

In Compare mode, the 16-bit CCPR1 register value is constantly compared against either the TMR1 register pair value or the TMR3 register pair value. When a match occurs, the CCP1 pin:

- is driven High
- is driven Low
- toggles output (high-to-low or low-to-high)
- remains unchanged

The action on the pin is based on the value of control bits, CCP1M3:CCP1M0. At the same time, interrupt flag bit CCP1IF (CCP2IF) is set.

16.3.1 CCP PIN CONFIGURATION

The user must configure the CCPx pin as an output by clearing the appropriate TRIS bit.

Note:	Clearing the CCP1CON register will force the RC2/CCP1 compare output latch to the default low level. This is not the PORTC I/O data latch.

16.3.2 TIMER1/TIMER3 MODE SELECTION

Timer1 and/or Timer3 must be running in Timer mode, or Synchronized Counter mode, if the CCP module is using the compare feature. In Asynchronous Counter mode, the compare operation may not work.

16.3.3 SOFTWARE INTERRUPT MODE

When generate software interrupt is chosen, the CCP1 pin is not affected. Only a CCP interrupt is generated (if enabled).

16.3.4 SPECIAL EVENT TRIGGER

In this mode, an internal hardware trigger is generated, which may be used to initiate an action.

The special event trigger output of either CCP1 or CCP2, resets the TMR1 or TMR3 register pair, depending on which timer resource is currently selected. This allows the CCPR1 register to effectively be a 16-bit programmable period register for Timer1 or Timer3.

The CCP2 Special Event Trigger will also start an A/D conversion if the A/D module is enabled.

Note:	The special event trigger from the CCP2 module will not set the Timer1 or Timer3 interrupt flag bits.

FIGURE 16-3: COMPARE MODE OPERATION BLOCK DIAGRAM

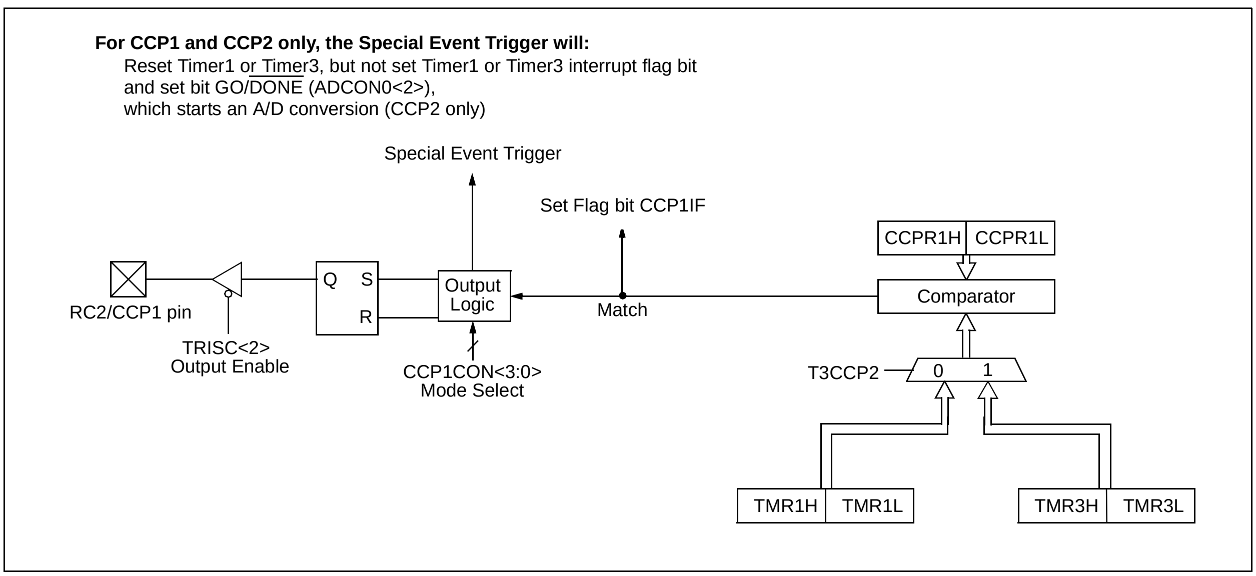


TABLE 16-2: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH CAPTURE, COMPARE, TIMER1 AND TIMER3

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 0000	0000 0000
RCON	IPEN	—	—	$\overline{\text{RI}}$	$\overline{\text{TO}}$	$\overline{\text{PD}}$	$\overline{\text{POR}}$	$\overline{\text{BOR}}$	0--1 11qq	0--q qquu
PIR1	PSPIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0111 1111	0111 1111
PIR2	—	CMIE	—	EEIE	BCLIF	LVDIF	TMR3IF	CCP2IF	-0-0 0000	---0 0000
PIE2	—	CMIF	—	EEIF	BCLIE	LVDIE	TMR3IE	CCP2IE	-0-0 0000	---0 0000
IPR2	—	CMIP	—	EEIP	BCLIP	LVDIP	TMR3IP	CCP2IP	-1-1 1111	---1 1111
PIR3	—	—	RC2IF	TX2IF	TMR4IF	CCP5IF	CCP4IF	CCP3IF	--00 0000	--00 0000
PIE3	—	—	RC2IE	TX2IE	TMR4IE	CCP5IE	CCP4IE	CCP3IE	--00 0000	--00 0000
IPR3	—	—	RC2IP	TX2IP	TMR4IP	CCP5IP	CCP4IP	CCP3IP	--11 1111	--11 1111
TRISC	PORTC Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
TMR1L	Holding Register for the Least Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TMR1H	Holding Register for the Most Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
T1CON	RD16	—	T1CKPS1	T1CKPS0	T1OSCEN	$\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$	TMR1CS	TMR1ON	0-00 0000	u-uu uuuu
TMR3H	Timer3 Register High Byte								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TMR3L	Timer3 Register Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
T3CON	RD16	T3CCP2	T3CKPS1	T3CKPS0	T3CCP1	$\overline{\text{T3SYNC}}$	TMR3CS	TMR3ON	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CCPRxL(1)	Capture/Compare/PWM Register x (LSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
CCPRxH(1)	Capture/Compare/PWM Register x (MSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
CCPxCON(1)	—	—	DCxB1	DCxB0	CCPxM3	CCPxM2	CCPxM1	CCPxM0	--00 0000	--00 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, – = unimplemented, read as ‘0’.
Shaded cells are not used by Capture and Compare, Timer1 or Timer3.

Note 1: Generic term for all of the identical registers of this name for all CCP modules, where ‘x’ identifies the individual module (CCP1 through CCP5). Bit assignments and Reset values for all registers of the same generic name are identical.

16.4 PWM Mode

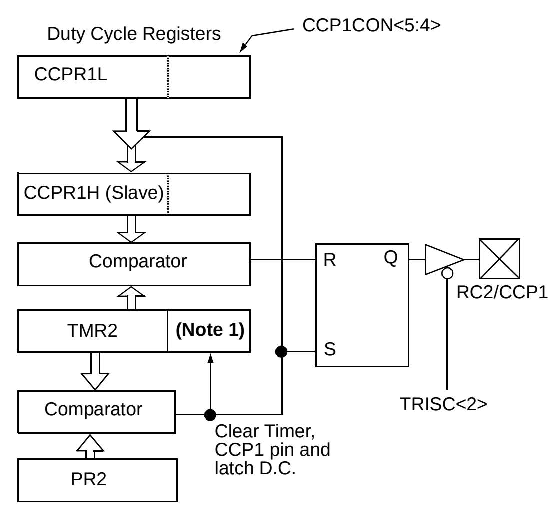
In Pulse Width Modulation (PWM) mode, the CCP1 pin produces up to a 10-bit resolution PWM output. Since the CCP1 pin is multiplexed with the PORTC data latch, the TRISC<2> bit must be cleared to make the CCP1 pin an output.

Note:	Clearing the CCP1CON register will force the CCP1 PWM output latch to the default low level. This is not the PORTC I/O data latch.

Figure 16-4 shows a simplified block diagram of the CCP module in PWM mode.

For a step-by-step procedure on how to set up the CCP module for PWM operation, see **Section 16.4.3 “Setup for PWM Operation”**.

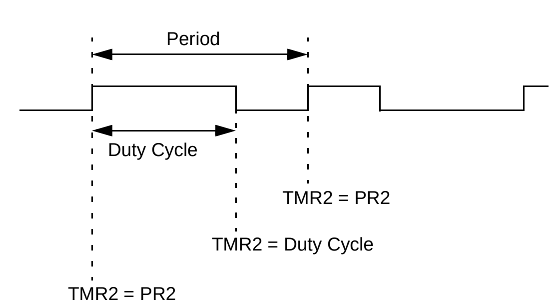
FIGURE 16-4: SIMPLIFIED PWM BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: 8-bit timer is concatenated with 2-bit internal Q clock or 2 bits of the prescaler to create 10-bit time base.

A PWM output (Figure 16-5) has a time base (period) and a time that the output stays high (duty cycle). The frequency of the PWM is the inverse of the period (1/period).

FIGURE 16-5: PWM OUTPUT



16.4.1 PWM PERIOD

The PWM period is specified by writing to the PR2 register. The PWM period can be calculated using the following formula:

EQUATION 16-1:

$$\text{PWM Period} = [(PR2) + 1] \cdot 4 \cdot T_{OSC} \cdot (\text{TMR2 Prescale Value})$$

PWM frequency is defined as 1/[PWM period].

When TMR2 is equal to PR2, the following three events occur on the next increment cycle:

- TMR2 is cleared
- The CCP1 pin is set (exception: if PWM duty cycle = 0%, the CCP1 pin will not be set)
- The PWM duty cycle is latched from CCPR1L into CCPR1H

Note:	The Timer2 and Timer4 postscalers (see **Section 13.0 “Timer2 Module”**) are not used in the determination of the PWM frequency. The postscaler could be used to have a servo update rate at a different frequency than the PWM output.

16.4.2 PWM DUTY CYCLE

The PWM duty cycle is specified by writing to the CCPR1L register and to the CCP1CON<5:4> bits. Up to 10-bit resolution is available. The CCPR1L contains the eight MSbs and the CCP1CON<5:4> contains the two LSbs. This 10-bit value is represented by CCPR1L:CCP1CON<5:4>. The following equation is used to calculate the PWM duty cycle in time:

EQUATION 16-2:

$$\text{PWM Duty Cycle} = (\text{CCPR1L:CCP1CON<5:4>}) \cdot T_{OSC} \cdot (\text{TMR2 Prescale Value})$$

CCPR1L and CCP1CON<5:4> can be written to at any time, but the duty cycle value is not latched into CCPR1H until after a match between PR2 and TMR2 occurs (i.e., the period is complete). In PWM mode, CCPR1H is a read-only register.

The CCPR1H register and a 2-bit internal latch are used to double-buffer the PWM duty cycle. This doublebuffering is essential for glitchless PWM operation.

When the CCPR1H and 2-bit latch match TMR2, concatenated with an internal 2-bit Q clock or 2 bits of the TMR2 prescaler, the CCP1 pin is cleared.

The maximum PWM resolution (bits) for a given PWM frequency is given by the equation:

EQUATION 16-3:

Note:

16.4.3 SETUP FOR PWM OPERATION

The following steps should be taken when configuring the CCP module for PWM operation:

1. Set the PWM period by writing to the PR2 register.
2. Set the PWM duty cycle by writing to the CCPR1L register and CCP1CON<5:4> bits.
3. Make the CCP1 pin an output by clearing the TRISC<2> bit.
4. Set the TMR2 prescale value and enable Timer2 by writing to T2CON.
5. Configure the CCP1 module for PWM operation.

TABLE 16-3: EXAMPLE PWM FREQUENCIES AND RESOLUTIONS AT 40 MHz

TABLE 16-4: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PWM, TIMER2 AND TIMER4

NOTES:

17.0 MASTER SYNCHRONOUS SERIAL PORT (MSSP) MODULE

17.1 Master SSP (MSSP) Module Overview

The Master Synchronous Serial Port (MSSP) module is a serial interface, useful for communicating with other peripheral or microcontroller devices. These peripheral devices may be serial EEPROMs, shift registers, display drivers, A/D converters, etc. The MSSP module can operate in one of two modes:

- Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI)
- Inter-Integrated Circuit (I^2C)
  - Full Master mode
  - Slave mode (with general address call)

The I^2C interface supports the following modes in hardware:

- Master mode
- Multi-Master mode
- Slave mode

17.2 Control Registers

The MSSP module has three associated registers. These include a status register (SSPSTAT) and two control registers (SSPCON1 and SSPCON2). The use of these registers and their individual configuration bits differ significantly, depending on whether the MSSP module is operated in SPI or I^2C mode.

Additional details are provided under the individual sections.

17.3 SPI Mode

The SPI mode allows 8 bits of data to be synchronously transmitted and received simultaneously. All four modes of SPI are supported. To accomplish communication, typically three pins are used:

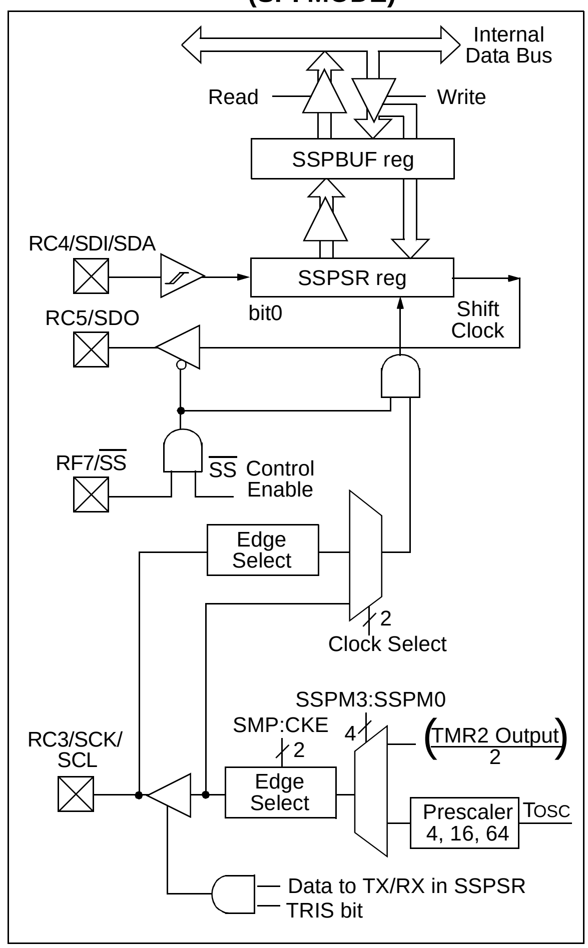
- Serial Data Out (SDO) – RC5/SDO
- Serial Data In (SDI) – RC4/SDI/SDA
- Serial Clock (SCK) – RC3/SCK/SCL

Additionally, a fourth pin may be used when in a Slave mode of operation:

- Slave Select ($\overline{SS}$) – RF7/$\overline{SS}$

Figure 17-1 shows the block diagram of the MSSP module when operating in SPI mode.

FIGURE 17-1: MSSP BLOCK DIAGRAM (SPI MODE)



17.3.1 REGISTERS

The MSSP module has four registers for SPI mode operation. These are:

- MSSP Control Register 1 (SSPCON1)
- MSSP Status Register (SSPSTAT)
- Serial Receive/Transmit Buffer (SSPBUF)
- MSSP Shift Register (SSPSR) – Not directly accessible

SSPCON1 and SSPSTAT are the control and status registers in SPI mode operation. The SSPCON1 register is readable and writable. The lower 6 bits of the SSPSTAT are read-only. The upper two bits of the SSPSTAT are read/write.

SSPSR is the shift register used for shifting data in or out. SSPBUF is the buffer register to which data bytes are written to or read from.

In receive operations, SSPSR and SSPBUF together create a double-buffered receiver. When SSPSR receives a complete byte, it is transferred to SSPBUF and the SSPIF interrupt is set.

During transmission, the SSPBUF is not double-buffered. A write to SSPBUF will write to both SSPBUF and SSPSR.

REGISTER 17-1: SSPSTAT: MSSP STATUS REGISTER (SPI MODE)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0
SMP	CKE	D/$\overline{\text{A}}$	P	S	R/$\overline{\text{W}}$	UA	BF
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **SMP:** Sample bit

<u>SPI Master mode:</u>
`1` = Input data sampled at end of data output time
`0` = Input data sampled at middle of data output time
<u>SPI Slave mode:</u>
SMP must be cleared when SPI is used in Slave mode.

bit 6 **CKE:** SPI Clock Select bit

`1` = Transmit occurs on transition from active to Idle clock state
`0` = Transmit occurs on transition from Idle to active clock state

Note: Polarity of clock state is set by the CKP bit (SSPCON1<4>).

bit 5 **D/$\overline{\text{A}}$:** Data/$\overline{\text{Address}}$ bit
Used in I^2C mode only.

bit 4 **P:** Stop bit
Used in I^2C mode only. This bit is cleared when the MSSP module is disabled, SSPEN is cleared.

bit 3 **S:** Start bit
Used in I^2C mode only.

bit 2 **R/$\overline{\text{W}}$:** Read/$\overline{\text{Write}}$ bit information
Used in I^2C mode only.

bit 1 **UA:** Update Address bit
Used in I^2C mode only.

bit 0 **BF:** Buffer Full Status bit (Receive mode only)

`1` = Receive complete, SSPBUF is full
`0` = Receive not complete, SSPBUF is empty

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 17-2: SSPCON1: MSSP CONTROL REGISTER1 (SPI MODE)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
WCOL	SSPOV	SSPEN	CKP	SSPM3	SSPM2	SSPM1	SSPM0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **WCOL:** Write Collision Detect bit (Transmit mode only)

`1` = The SSPBUF register is written while it is still transmitting the previous word (must be cleared in software)
`0` = No collision

bit 6 **SSPOV:** Receive Overflow Indicator bit

<u>SPI Slave mode:</u>

`1` = A new byte is received while the SSPBUF register is still holding the previous data. In case of overflow, the data in SSPSR is lost. Overflow can only occur in Slave mode. The user must read the SSPBUF, even if only transmitting data, to avoid setting overflow (must be cleared in software).
`0` = No overflow

Note: In Master mode, the overflow bit is not set, since each new reception (and transmission) is initiated by writing to the SSPBUF register.

bit 5 **SSPEN:** Synchronous Serial Port Enable bit

`1` = Enables serial port and configures SCK, SDO, SDI and $\overline{\text{SS}}$ as serial port pins
`0` = Disables serial port and configures these pins as I/O port pins

Note: When enabled, these pins must be properly configured as input or output.

bit 4 **CKP:** Clock Polarity Select bit

`1` = Idle state for clock is a high level
`0` = Idle state for clock is a low level

bit 3-0 **SSPM3:SSPM0:** Synchronous Serial Port Mode Select bits

`0101` = SPI Slave mode, clock = SCK pin, $\overline{\text{SS}}$ pin control disabled, $\overline{\text{SS}}$ can be used as I/O pin
`0100` = SPI Slave mode, clock = SCK pin, $\overline{\text{SS}}$ pin control enabled
`0011` = SPI Master mode, clock = TMR2 output/2
`0010` = SPI Master mode, clock = FOSC/64
`0001` = SPI Master mode, clock = FOSC/16
`0000` = SPI Master mode, clock = FOSC/4

Note: Bit combinations not specifically listed here are either reserved, or implemented in I^2C mode only.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

17.3.2 OPERATION

When initializing the SPI, several options need to be specified. This is done by programming the appropriate control bits (SSPCON1<5:0> and SSPSTAT<7:6>). These control bits allow the following to be specified:

- Master mode (SCK is the clock output)
- Slave mode (SCK is the clock input)
- Clock Polarity (Idle state of SCK)
- Data input sample phase (middle or end of data output time)
- Clock edge (output data on rising/falling edge of SCK)
- Clock Rate (Master mode only)
- Slave Select mode (Slave mode only)

The MSSP consists of a Transmit/Receive Shift Register (SSPSR) and a Buffer register (SSPBUF). The SSPSR shifts the data in and out of the device, MSb first. The SSPBUF holds the data that was written to the SSPSR until the received data is ready. Once the 8 bits of data have been received, that byte is moved to the SSPBUF register. Then, the Buffer Full detect bit, BF (SSPSTAT<0>) and the interrupt flag bit, SSPIF, are set. This double-buffering of the received data (SSPBUF) allows the next byte to start reception before reading the data that was just received. Any write to the SSPBUF register during transmission/reception of data will be ignored and the Write Collision detect bit, WCOL (SSPCON1<7>), will be set. User software must clear the WCOL bit so that it can be determined if the following write(s) to the SSPBUF register completed successfully.

When the application software is expecting to receive valid data, the SSPBUF should be read before the next byte of data to transfer is written to the SSPBUF. Buffer Full bit, BF (SSPSTAT<0>), indicates when SSPBUF has been loaded with the received data (transmission is complete). When the SSPBUF is read, the BF bit is cleared. This data may be irrelevant if the SPI is only a transmitter. Generally, the MSSP interrupt is used to determine when the transmission/reception has completed. The SSPBUF must be read and/or written. If the interrupt method is not going to be used, then software polling can be done to ensure that a write collision does not occur. Example 17-1 shows the loading of the SSPBUF (SSPSR) for data transmission.

The SSPSR is not directly readable or writable and can only be accessed by addressing the SSPBUF register. Additionally, the MSSP Status register (SSPSTAT) indicates the various status conditions.

EQUATION 17-1: LOADING THE SSPBUF (SSPSR) REGISTER

```
LOOP BTFSS SSPSTAT, BF    ;Has data been received (transmit complete)?
     BRA   LOOP           ;No
     MOVF  SSPBUF, W      ;WREG reg = contents of SSPBUF
     MOVWF RXDATA         ;Save in user RAM, if data is meaningful
     MOVF  TXDATA, W      ;W reg = contents of TXDATA
     MOVWF SSPBUF         ;New data to transmit
```

17.3.3 ENABLING SPI I/O

To enable the serial port, SSP Enable bit, SSPEN (SSPCON1<5>), must be set. To reset or reconfigure SPI mode, clear the SSPEN bit, reinitialize the SSPCON registers and then set the SSPEN bit. This configures the SDI, SDO, SCK and $\overline{\text{SS}}$ pins as serial port pins. For the pins to behave as the serial port function, some must have their data direction bits (in the TRIS register) appropriately programmed as follows:

- SDI is automatically controlled by the SPI module
- SDO must have TRISC<5> bit cleared
- SCK (Master mode) must have TRISC<3> bit cleared
- SCK (Slave mode) must have TRISC<3> bit set
- $\overline{\text{SS}}$ must have TRISF<7> bit set

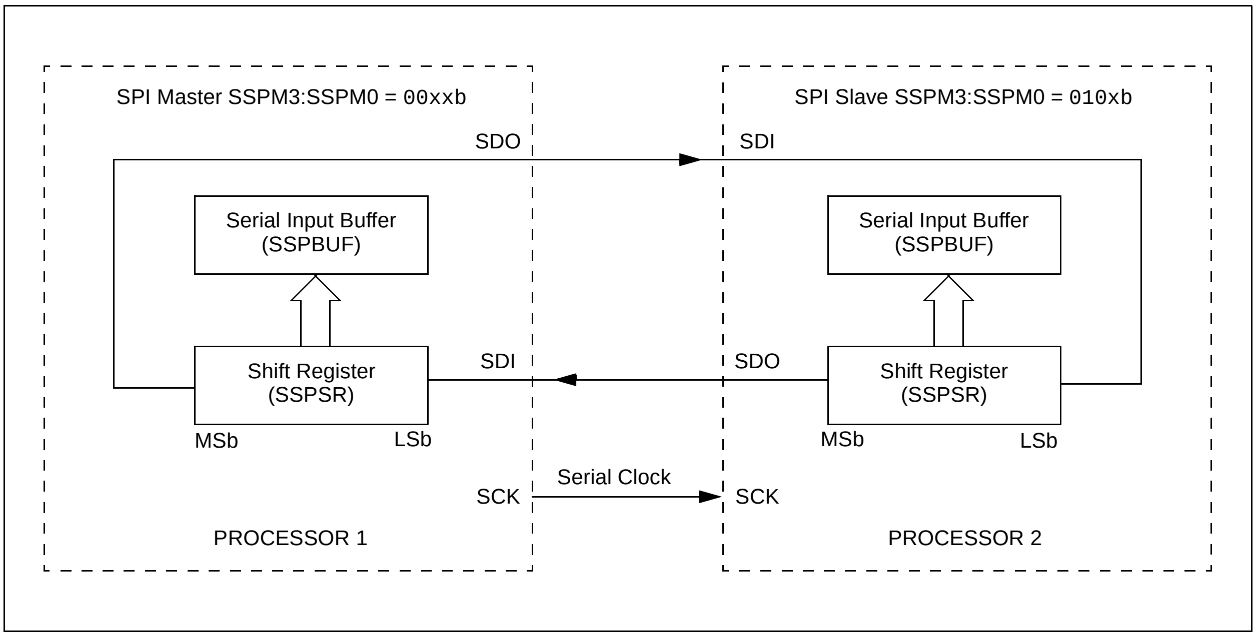
Any serial port function that is not desired may be overridden by programming the corresponding data direction (TRIS) register to the opposite value.

17.3.4 TYPICAL CONNECTION

Figure 17-2 shows a typical connection between two microcontrollers. The master controller (Processor 1) initiates the data transfer by sending the SCK signal. Data is shifted out of both shift registers on their programmed clock edge and latched on the opposite edge of the clock. Both processors should be programmed to the same Clock Polarity (CKP), then both controllers would send and receive data at the same time. Whether the data is meaningful (or dummy data) depends on the application software. This leads to three scenarios for data transmission:

- Master sends data – Slave sends dummy data
- Master sends data – Slave sends data
- Master sends dummy data – Slave sends data

FIGURE 17-2: SPI MASTER/SLAVE CONNECTION



17.3.5 MASTER MODE

The master can initiate the data transfer at any time because it controls the SCK. The master determines when the slave (Processor 2, Figure 17-2) is to broadcast data by the software protocol.

In Master mode, the data is transmitted/received as soon as the SSPBUF register is written to. If the SPI is only going to receive, the SDO output could be disabled (programmed as an input). The SSPSR register will continue to shift in the signal present on the SDI pin at the programmed clock rate. As each byte is received, it will be loaded into the SSPBUF register as if a normal received byte (interrupts and status bits appropriately set). This could be useful in receiver applications as a “Line Activity Monitor” mode.

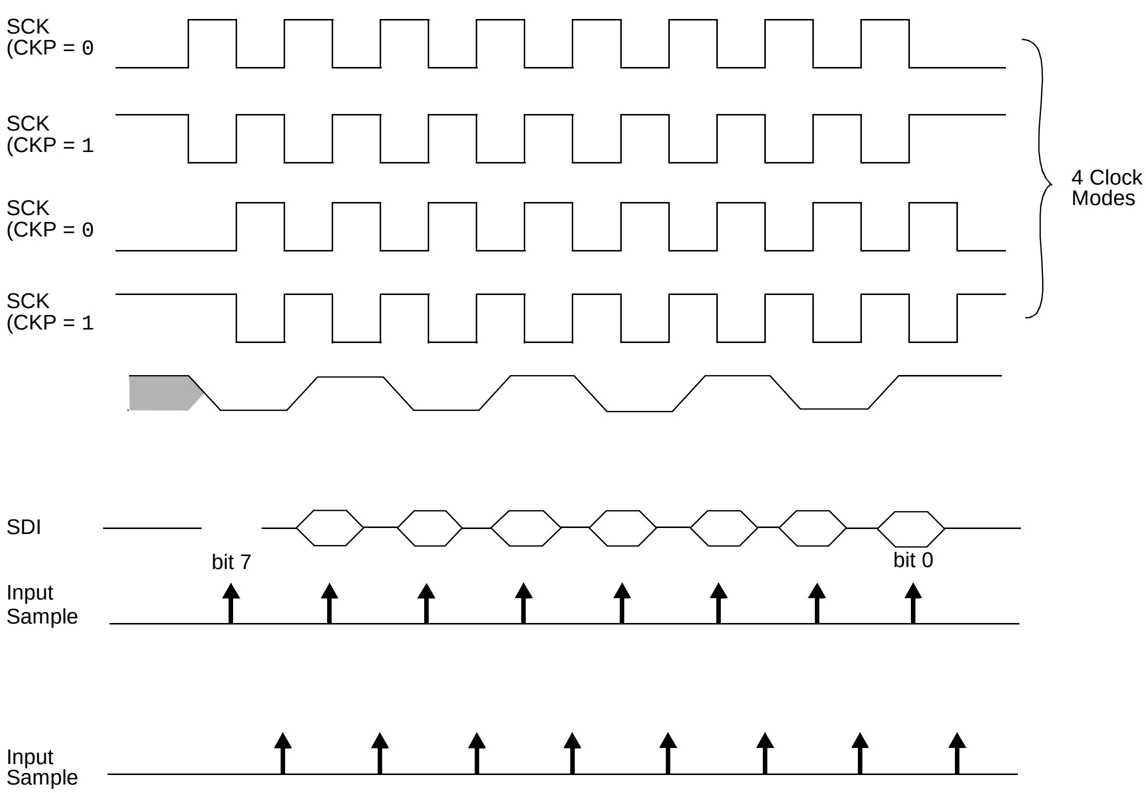
The clock polarity is selected by appropriately programming the CKP bit (SSPCON1<4>). This then, would give waveforms for SPI communication, as shown in Figure 17-3, Figure 17-5 and Figure 17-6, where the MSB is transmitted first. In Master mode, the SPI clock rate (bit rate) is user-programmable to be one of the following:

- F_{OSC}/4 (or T_{CY})
- F_{OSC}/16 (or 4 • T_{CY})
- F_{OSC}/64 (or 16 • T_{CY})
- Timer2 output/2

This allows a maximum data rate (at 40 MHz) of 10.00 Mbps.

Figure 17-3 shows the waveforms for Master mode. When the CKE bit is set, the SDO data is valid before there is a clock edge on SCK. The change of the input sample is shown based on the state of the SMP bit. The time when the SSPBUF is loaded with the received data is shown.

FIGURE 17-3: SPI MODE WAVEFORM (MASTER MODE)



17.3.6 SLAVE MODE

In Slave mode, the data is transmitted and received as the external clock pulses appear on SCK. When the last bit is latched, the SSPIF interrupt flag bit is set.

While in Slave mode, the external clock is supplied by the external clock source on the SCK pin. This external clock must meet the minimum high and low times as specified in the electrical specifications.

While in Sleep mode, the slave can transmit/receive data. When a byte is received, the device will wake-up from Sleep.

17.3.7 SLAVE SELECT SYNCHRONIZATION

The $\overline{SS}$ pin allows a Synchronous Slave mode. The SPI must be in Slave mode with $\overline{SS}$ pin control enabled (SSPCON1<3:0> = 04h). The pin must not be driven low for the $\overline{SS}$ pin to function as an input. The Data Latch must be high. When the $\overline{SS}$ pin is low, transmission and reception are enabled and the SDO pin is driven. When the $\overline{SS}$ pin goes high, the SDO pin is no longer driven, even if in the middle of a transmitted byte and becomes a floating output. External pull-up/pull-down resistors may be desirable, depending on the application.

> **Note 1:** When the SPI is in Slave mode with $\overline{SS}$ pin control enabled (SSPCON<3:0> = `0100`), the SPI module will reset if the $\overline{SS}$ pin is set to VDD.
>
> **2:** If the SPI is used in Slave mode with CKE set, then the $\overline{SS}$ pin control must be enabled.

When the SPI module resets, the bit counter is forced to '`0`'. This can be done by either forcing the $\overline{SS}$ pin to a high level or clearing the SSPEN bit.

To emulate two-wire communication, the SDO pin can be connected to the SDI pin. When the SPI needs to operate as a receiver, the SDO pin can be configured as an input. This disables transmissions from the SDO. The SDI can always be left as an input (SDI function), since it cannot create a bus conflict.

FIGURE 17-4: SLAVE SYNCHRONIZATION WAVEFORM

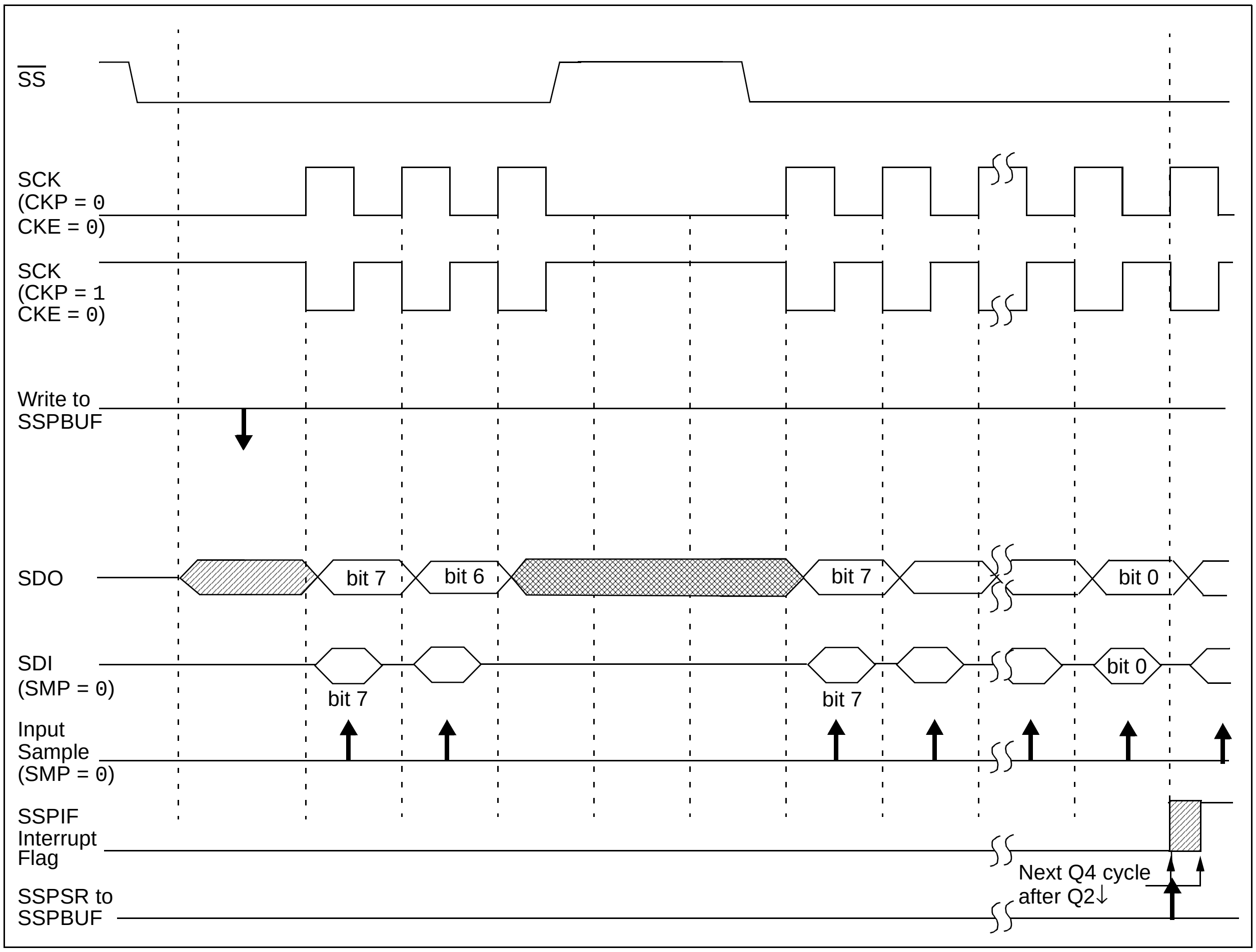


FIGURE 17-5: SPI MODE WAVEFORM (SLAVE MODE WITH CKE = 0)

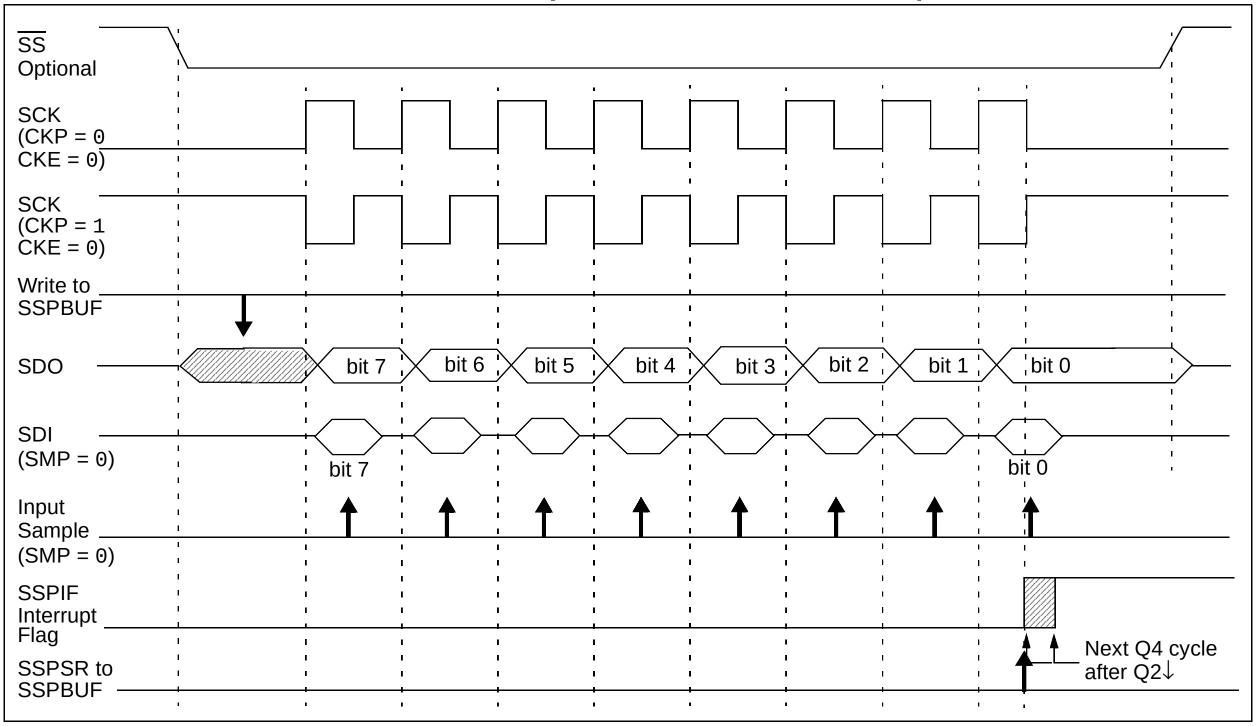
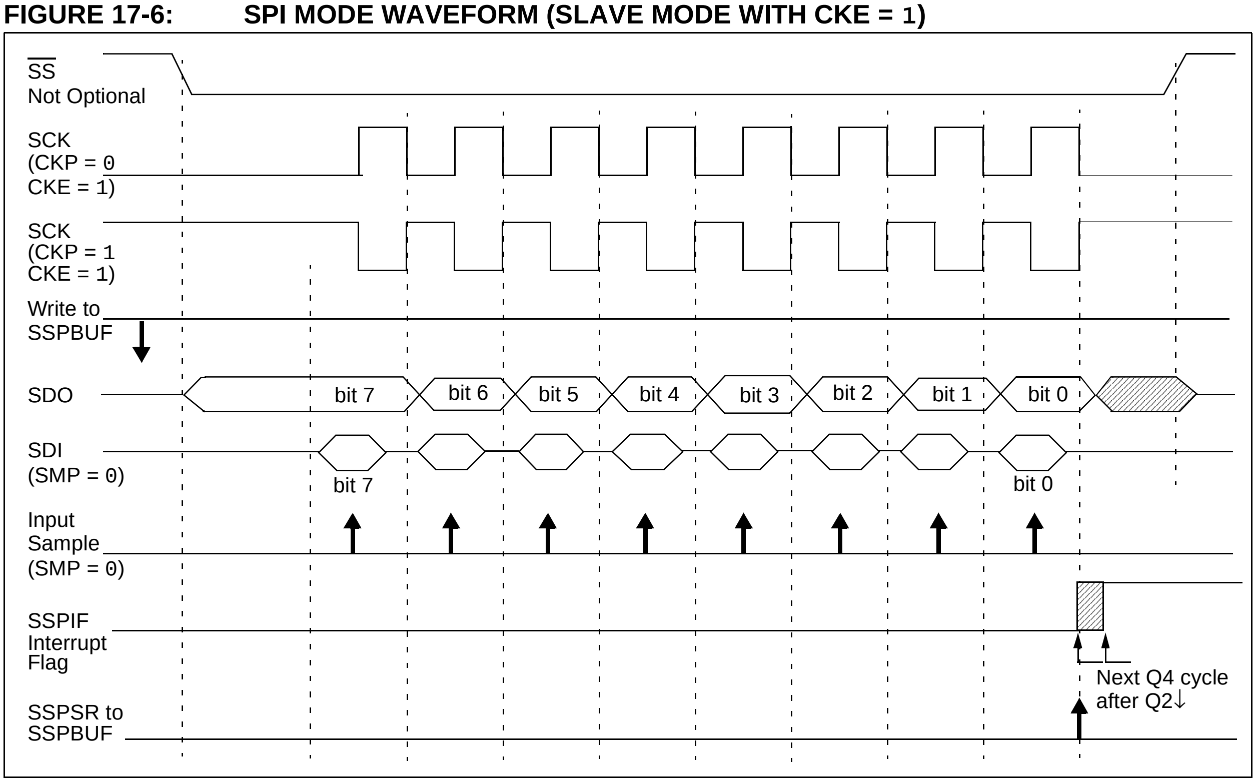


FIGURE 17-6: SPI MODE WAVEFORM (SLAVE MODE WITH CKE = 1)



17.3.8 SLEEP OPERATION

In Master mode, all module clocks are halted and the transmission/reception will remain in that state until the device wakes from Sleep. After the device returns to normal mode, the module will continue to transmit/ receive data.

In Slave mode, the SPI Transmit/Receive Shift register operates asynchronously to the device. This allows the device to be placed in Sleep mode and data to be shifted into the SPI Transmit/Receive Shift register. When all 8 bits have been received, the MSSP interrupt flag bit will be set and if enabled, will wake the device from Sleep.

17.3.9 EFFECTS OF A RESET

A Reset disables the MSSP module and terminates the current transfer.

17.3.10 BUS MODE COMPATIBILITY

Table 17-1 shows the compatibility between the standard SPI modes and the states of the CKP and CKE control bits.

TABLE 17-1: SPI BUS MODES

Standard SPI Mode Terminology	Control Bits State	
	CKP	CKE
0, 0	0	1
0, 1	0	0
1, 0	1	1
1, 1	1	0

There is also an SMP bit, which controls when the data is sampled.

TABLE 17-2: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SPI OPERATION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on B21T	1

17.4 I²C Mode

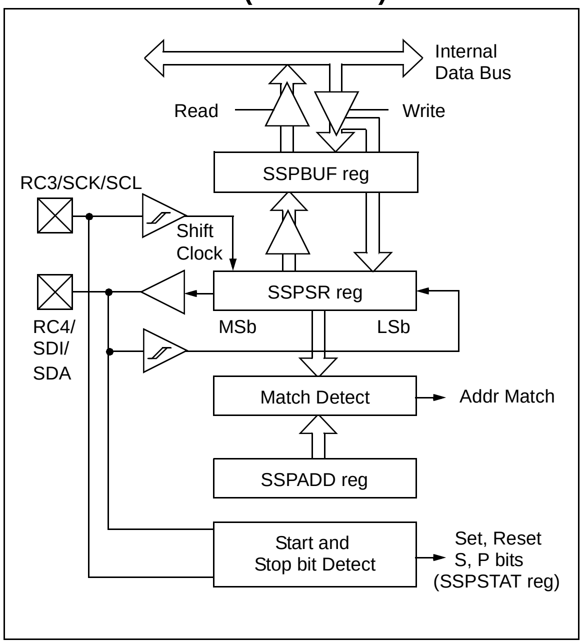
The MSSP module in I²C mode fully implements all master and slave functions (including general call support) and provides interrupts on Start and Stop bits in hardware to determine a free bus (multi-master function). The MSSP module implements the standard mode specifications, as well as 7-bit and 10-bit addressing.

Two pins are used for data transfer:

- Serial clock (SCL) – RC3/SCK/SCL
- Serial data (SDA) – RC4/SDI/SDA

The user must configure these pins as inputs or outputs through the TRISC<4:3> bits.

FIGURE 17-7: MSSP BLOCK DIAGRAM (I²C MODE)



17.4.1 REGISTERS

The MSSP module has six registers for I²C operation. These are:

- MSSP Control Register 1 (SSPCON1)
- MSSP Control Register 2 (SSPCON2)
- MSSP Status Register (SSPSTAT)
- Serial Receive/Transmit Buffer (SSPBUF)
- MSSP Shift Register (SSPSR) – Not directly accessible
- MSSP Address Register (SSPADD)

SSPCON, SSPCON2 and SSPSTAT are the control and status registers in I²C mode operation. The SSPCON and SSPCON2 registers are readable and writable. The lower six bits of the SSPSTAT are read-only. The upper two bits of the SSPSTAT are read/write.

SSPSR is the shift register used for shifting data in or out. SSPBUF is the buffer register to which data bytes are written to or read from.

SSPADD register holds the slave device address when the SSP is configured in I²C Slave mode. When the SSP is configured in Master mode, the lower seven bits of SSPADD act as the Baud Rate Generator reload value.

In receive operations, SSPSR and SSPBUF together, create a double-buffered receiver. When SSPSR receives a complete byte, it is transferred to SSPBUF and the SSPIF interrupt is set.

During transmission, the SSPBUF is not double-buffered. A write to SSPBUF will write to both SSPBUF and SSPSR.

REGISTER 17-3: SSPSTAT: MSSP STATUS REGISTER (I^2C MODE)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0
SMP	CKE	D/$\overline{A}$	P	S	R/$\overline{W}$	UA	BF
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **SMP:** Slew Rate Control bit
In Master or Slave mode:
1 = Slew rate control disabled for standard speed mode (100 kHz and 1 MHz)
0 = Slew rate control enabled for high-speed mode (400 kHz)

bit 6 **CKE:** SMBus Select bit
In Master or Slave mode:
1 = Enable SMBus specific inputs
0 = Disable SMBus specific inputs

bit 5 **D/$\overline{A}$:** Data/$\overline{\text{Address}}$ bit
In Master mode:
Reserved.
In Slave mode:
1 = Indicates that the last byte received or transmitted was data
0 = Indicates that the last byte received or transmitted was address

bit 4 **P:** Stop bit
1 = Indicates that a Stop bit has been detected last
0 = Stop bit was not detected last

Note: This bit is cleared on Reset and when SSPEN is cleared.

bit 3 **S:** Start bit
1 = Indicates that a Start bit has been detected last
0 = Start bit was not detected last

Note: This bit is cleared on Reset and when SSPEN is cleared.

bit 2 **R/$\overline{W}$:** Read/$\overline{\text{Write}}$ bit Information (I^2C mode only)
In Slave mode:
1 = Read
0 = Write

Note: This bit holds the R/$\overline{W}$ bit information following the last address match. This bit is only valid from the address match to the next Start bit, Stop bit, or not $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ bit.

In Master mode:
1 = Transmit is in progress
0 = Transmit is not in progress

Note: ORing this bit with SEN, RSEN, PEN, RCEN or ACKEN will indicate if the MSSP is in active mode.

bit 1 **UA:** Update Address bit (10-bit Slave mode only)
1 = Indicates that the user needs to update the address in the SSPADD register
0 = Address does not need to be updated

bit 0 **BF:** Buffer Full Status bit
In Transmit mode:
1 = SSPBUF is full
0 = SSPBUF is empty
In Receive mode:
1 = SSPBUF is full (does not include the $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ and Stop bits)
0 = SSPBUF is empty (does not include the $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ and Stop bits)

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 17-4: SSPCON1: MSSP CONTROL REGISTER 1 (I^2C MODE)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
WCOL	SSPOV	SSPEN	CKP	SSPM3	SSPM2	SSPM1	SSPM0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **WCOL:** Write Collision Detect bit

In Master Transmit mode:

1 = A write to the SSPBUF register was attempted while the I^2C conditions were not valid for a transmission to be started (must be cleared in software)

0 = No collision

In Slave Transmit mode:

1 = The SSPBUF register is written while it is still transmitting the previous word (must be cleared in software)

0 = No collision

In Receive mode (Master or Slave modes):

This is a "don't care" bit.

bit 6 **SSPOV:** Receive Overflow Indicator bit

In Receive mode:

1 = A byte is received while the SSPBUF register is still holding the previous byte (must be cleared in software)

0 = No overflow

In Transmit mode:

This is a "don't care" bit in Transmit mode.

bit 5 **SSPEN:** Synchronous Serial Port Enable bit

1 = Enables the serial port and configures the SDA and SCL pins as the serial port pins

0 = Disables serial port and configures these pins as I/O port pins

Note: When enabled, the SDA and SCL pins must be properly configured as input or output.

bit 4 **CKP:** SCK Release Control bit

In Slave mode:

1 = Release clock

0 = Holds clock low (clock stretch), used to ensure data setup time

In Master mode:

Unused in this mode.

bit 3-0 **SSPM3:SSPM0:** Synchronous Serial Port Mode Select bits

1111 = I^2C Slave mode, 10-bit address with Start and Stop bit interrupts enabled
1110 = I^2C Slave mode, 7-bit address with Start and Stop bit interrupts enabled
1011 = I^2C Firmware Controlled Master mode (Slave Idle)
1000 = I^2C Master mode, clock = FOSC/(4 * (SSPADD + 1))
0111 = I^2C Slave mode, 10-bit address
0110 = I^2C Slave mode, 7-bit address

Note: Bit combinations not specifically listed here are either reserved or implemented in SPI mode only.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 17-5: SSPCON2: MSSP CONTROL REGISTER 2 (I^2C MODE)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
GCEN	ACKSTAT	ACKDT	ACKEN	RCEN	PEN	RSEN	SEN
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **GCEN:** General Call Enable bit (Slave mode only)
1 = Enable interrupt when a general call address (0000h) is received in the SSPSR
0 = General call address disabled

bit 6 **ACKSTAT:** Acknowledge Status bit (Master Transmit mode only)
1 = Acknowledge was not received from slave
0 = Acknowledge was received from slave

bit 5 **ACKDT:** Acknowledge Data bit (Master Receive mode only)
1 = Not Acknowledge
0 = Acknowledge

Note: Value that will be transmitted when the user initiates an Acknowledge sequence at the end of a receive.

bit 4 **ACKEN:** Acknowledge Sequence Enable bit (Master Receive mode only)
1 = Initiate Acknowledge sequence on SDA and SCL pins and transmit ACKDT data bit. Automatically cleared by hardware.
0 = Acknowledge sequence Idle

bit 3 **RCEN:** Receive Enable bit (Master mode only)
1 = Enables Receive mode for I^2C
0 = Receive Idle

bit 2 **PEN:** Stop Condition Enable bit (Master mode only)
1 = Initiate Stop condition on SDA and SCL pins. Automatically cleared by hardware.
0 = Stop condition Idle

bit 1 **RSEN:** Repeated Start Condition Enabled bit (Master mode only)
1 = Initiate Repeated Start condition on SDA and SCL pins. Automatically cleared by hardware.
0 = Repeated Start condition Idle

bit 0 **SEN:** Start Condition Enabled/Stretch Enabled bit
<u>In Master mode:</u>
1 = Initiate Start condition on SDA and SCL pins. Automatically cleared by hardware.
0 = Start condition Idle
<u>In Slave mode:</u>
1 = Clock stretching is enabled for both Slave Transmit and Slave Receive (stretch enabled)
0 = Clock stretching is disabled

Note: For bits ACKEN, RCEN, PEN, RSEN, SEN: If the I^2C module is not in the Idle mode, this bit may not be set (no spooling) and the SSPBUF may not be written (or writes to the SSPBUF are disabled).

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

17.4.2 OPERATION

The MSSP module functions are enabled by setting MSSP Enable bit, SSPEN (SSPCON<5>).

The SSPCON1 register allows control of the I^{2}C operation. Four mode selection bits (SSPCON<3:0>) allow one of the following I^{2}C modes to be selected:

- I^{2}C Master mode, clock = (F_{OSC}/4) x (SSPADD + 1)
- I^{2}C Slave mode (7-bit address)
- I^{2}C Slave mode (10-bit address)
- I^{2}C Slave mode (7-bit address), with Start and Stop bit interrupts enabled
- I^{2}C Slave mode (10-bit address), with Start and Stop bit interrupts enabled
- I^{2}C Firmware Controlled Master mode, slave is Idle

Selection of any I^{2}C mode, with the SSPEN bit set, forces the SCL and SDA pins to be open-drain, provided these pins are programmed to inputs by setting the appropriate TRISC bits. To ensure proper operation of the module, pull-up resistors must be provided externally to the SCL and SDA pins.

17.4.3 SLAVE MODE

In Slave mode, the SCL and SDA pins must be configured as inputs (TRISC<4:3> set). The MSSP module will override the input state with the output data when required (slave-transmitter).

The I^{2}C Slave mode hardware will always generate an interrupt on an address match. Through the mode select bits, the user can also choose to interrupt on Start and Stop bits

When an address is matched or the data transfer after an address match is received, the hardware automatically will generate the Acknowledge ($\overline{ACK}$) pulse and load the SSPBUF register with the received value currently in the SSPSR register.

Any combination of the following conditions will cause the MSSP module not to give this $\overline{ACK}$ pulse:

- The Buffer Full bit BF (SSPSTAT<0>) was set before the transfer was received.
- The overflow bit SSPOV (SSPCON<6>) was set before the transfer was received.

In this case, the SSPSR register value is not loaded into the SSPBUF, but bit SSPIF (PIR1<3>) is set. The BF bit is cleared by reading the SSPBUF register, while bit SSPOV is cleared through software.

The SCL clock input must have a minimum high and low for proper operation. The high and low times of the I^{2}C specification, as well as the requirement of the MSSP module, are shown in timing parameter #100 and parameter #101.

17.4.3.1 Addressing

Once the MSSP module has been enabled, it waits for a Start condition to occur. Following the Start condition, the 8 bits are shifted into the SSPSR register. All incoming bits are sampled with the rising edge of the clock (SCL) line. The value of register SSPSR<7:1> is compared to the value of the SSPADD register. The address is compared on the falling edge of the eighth clock (SCL) pulse. If the addresses match and the BF and SSPOV bits are clear, the following events occur:

1. The SSPSR register value is loaded into the SSPBUF register.
2. The Buffer Full bit BF is set.
3. An $\overline{ACK}$ pulse is generated.
4. MSSP Interrupt Flag bit, SSPIF (PIR1<3>), is set (interrupt is generated, if enabled) on the falling edge of the ninth SCL pulse.

In 10-bit Address mode, two address bytes need to be received by the slave. The five Most Significant bits (MSbs) of the first address byte specify if this is a 10-bit address. Bit R/$\overline{W}$ (SSPSTAT<2>) must specify a write so the slave device will receive the second address byte. For a 10-bit address, the first byte would equal '`11110 A9 A8 0`', where 'A9' and 'A8' are the two MSbs of the address. The sequence of events for 10-bit address is as follows, with steps 7 through 9 for the slave-transmitter:

1. Receive first (high) byte of address (bits SSPIF, BF and bit UA (SSPSTAT<1>) are set).
2. Update the SSPADD register with second (low) byte of address (clears bit UA and releases the SCL line).
3. Read the SSPBUF register (clears bit BF) and clear flag bit SSPIF.
4. Receive second (low) byte of address (bits SSPIF, BF and UA are set).
5. Update the SSPADD register with the first (high) byte of address. If match releases SCL line, this will clear bit UA.
6. Read the SSPBUF register (clears bit BF) and clear flag bit SSPIF.
7. Receive Repeated Start condition.
8. Receive first (high) byte of address (bits SSPIF and BF are set).
9. Read the SSPBUF register (clears bit BF) and clear flag bit SSPIF.

17.4.3.2 Reception

When the $R/\overline{W}$ bit of the address byte is clear and an address match occurs, the $R/\overline{W}$ bit of the SSPSTAT register is cleared. The received address is loaded into the SSPBUF register and the SDA line is held low ($\overline{ACK}$).

When the address byte overflow condition exists, then the no Acknowledge ($\overline{ACK}$) pulse is given. An overflow condition is defined as either bit BF (SSPSTAT<0>) is set, or bit SSPOV (SSPCON1<6>) is set.

An MSSP interrupt is generated for each data transfer byte. Flag bit SSPIF (PIR1<3>) must be cleared in software. The SSPSTAT register is used to determine the status of the byte.

If SEN is enabled (SSPCON1<0> = 1), RC3/SCK/SCL will be held low (clock stretch) following each data transfer. The clock must be released by setting bit CKP (SSPCON<4>). See **Section 17.4.4 “Clock Stretching”** for more detail.

17.4.3.3 Transmission

When the $R/\overline{W}$ bit of the incoming address byte is set and an address match occurs, the $R/\overline{W}$ bit of the SSPSTAT register is set. The received address is loaded into the SSPBUF register. The $\overline{ACK}$ pulse will be sent on the ninth bit and pin RC3/SCK/SCL is held low, regardless of SEN (see **Section 17.4.4 “Clock Stretching”**, for more detail). By stretching the clock, the master will be unable to assert another clock pulse until the slave is done preparing the transmit data. The transmit data must be loaded into the SSPBUF register, which also loads the SSPSR register. Then pin RC3/SCK/SCL should be enabled by setting bit CKP (SSPCON1<4>). The eight data bits are shifted out on the falling edge of the SCL input. This ensures that the SDA signal is valid during the SCL high time (Figure 17-9).

The $\overline{ACK}$ pulse from the master-receiver is latched on the rising edge of the ninth SCL input pulse. If the SDA line is high (not $\overline{ACK}$), then the data transfer is complete. In this case, when the $\overline{ACK}$ is latched by the slave, the slave logic is reset (resets SSPSTAT register) and the slave monitors for another occurrence of the Start bit. If the SDA line was low ($\overline{ACK}$), the next transmit data must be loaded into the SSPBUF register. Again, pin RC3/SCK/SCL must be enabled by setting bit CKP.

An MSSP interrupt is generated for each data transfer byte. The SSPIF bit must be cleared in software and the SSPSTAT register is used to determine the status of the byte. The SSPIF bit is set on the falling edge of the ninth clock pulse.

FIGURE 17-8: I²C SLAVE MODE TIMING WITH SEN = 0 (RECEPTION, 7-BIT ADDRESS)

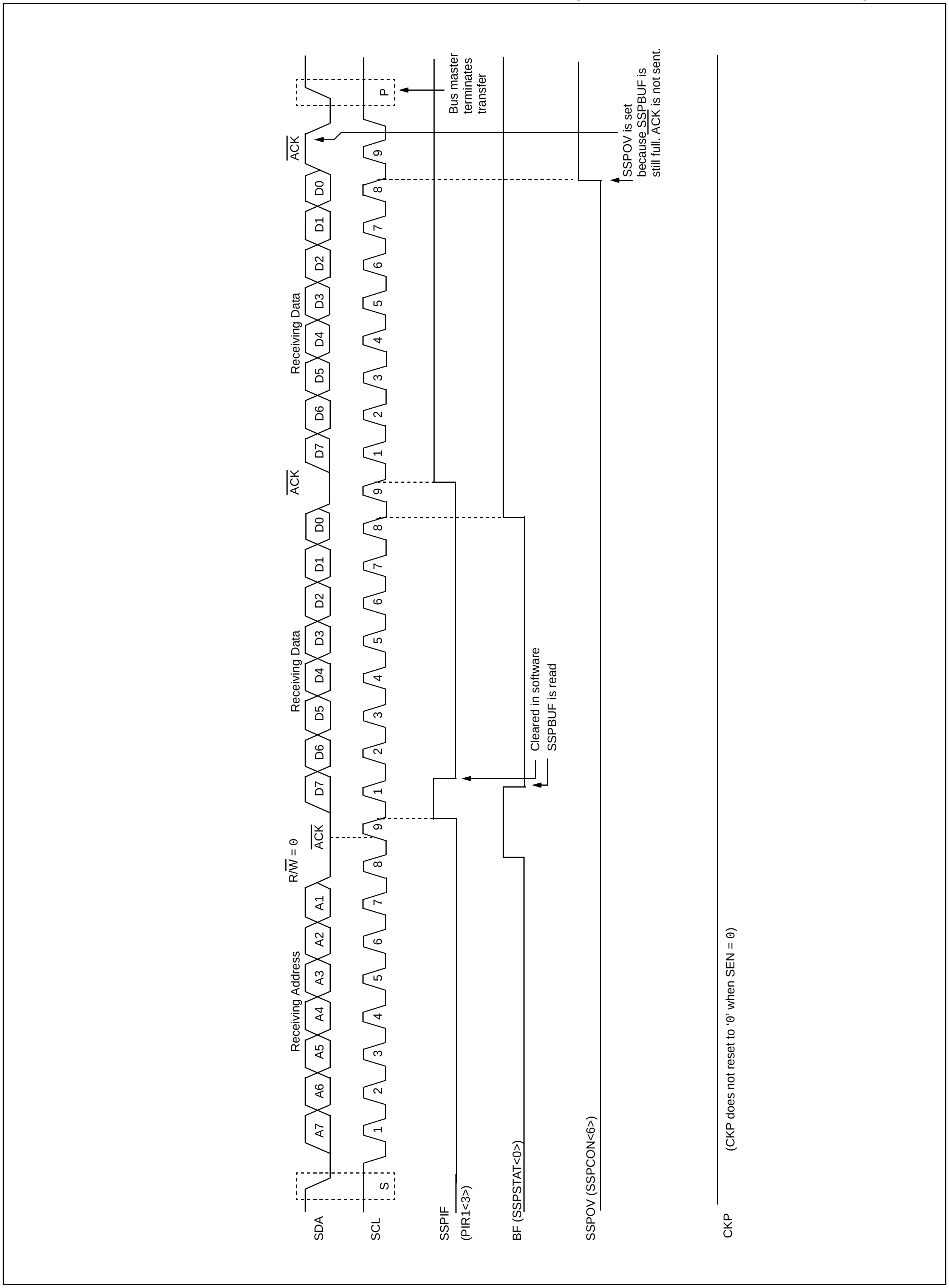


FIGURE 17-9: I²C SLAVE MODE TIMING (TRANSMISSION, 7-BIT ADDRESS)

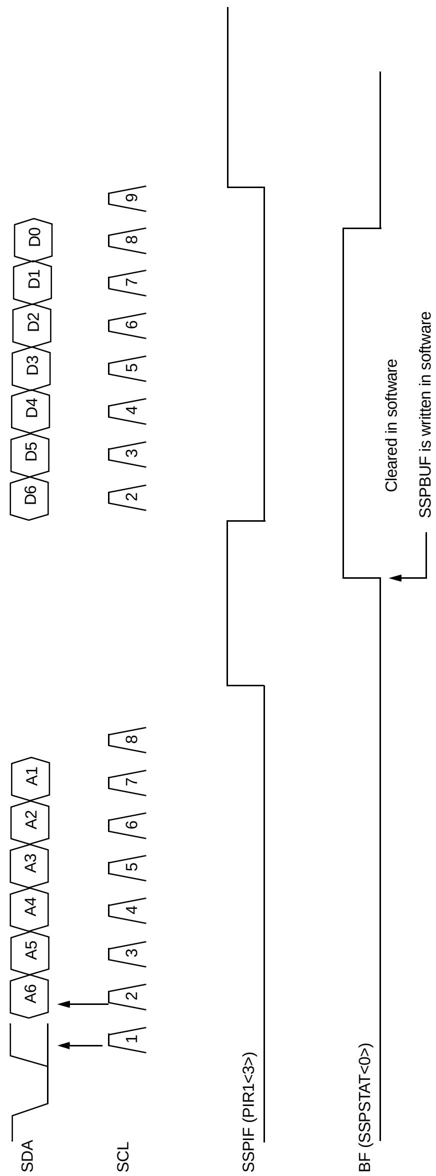


FIGURE 17-10: I²C SLAVE MODE TIMING WITH SEN = 0 (RECEPTION, 10-BIT ADDRESS)

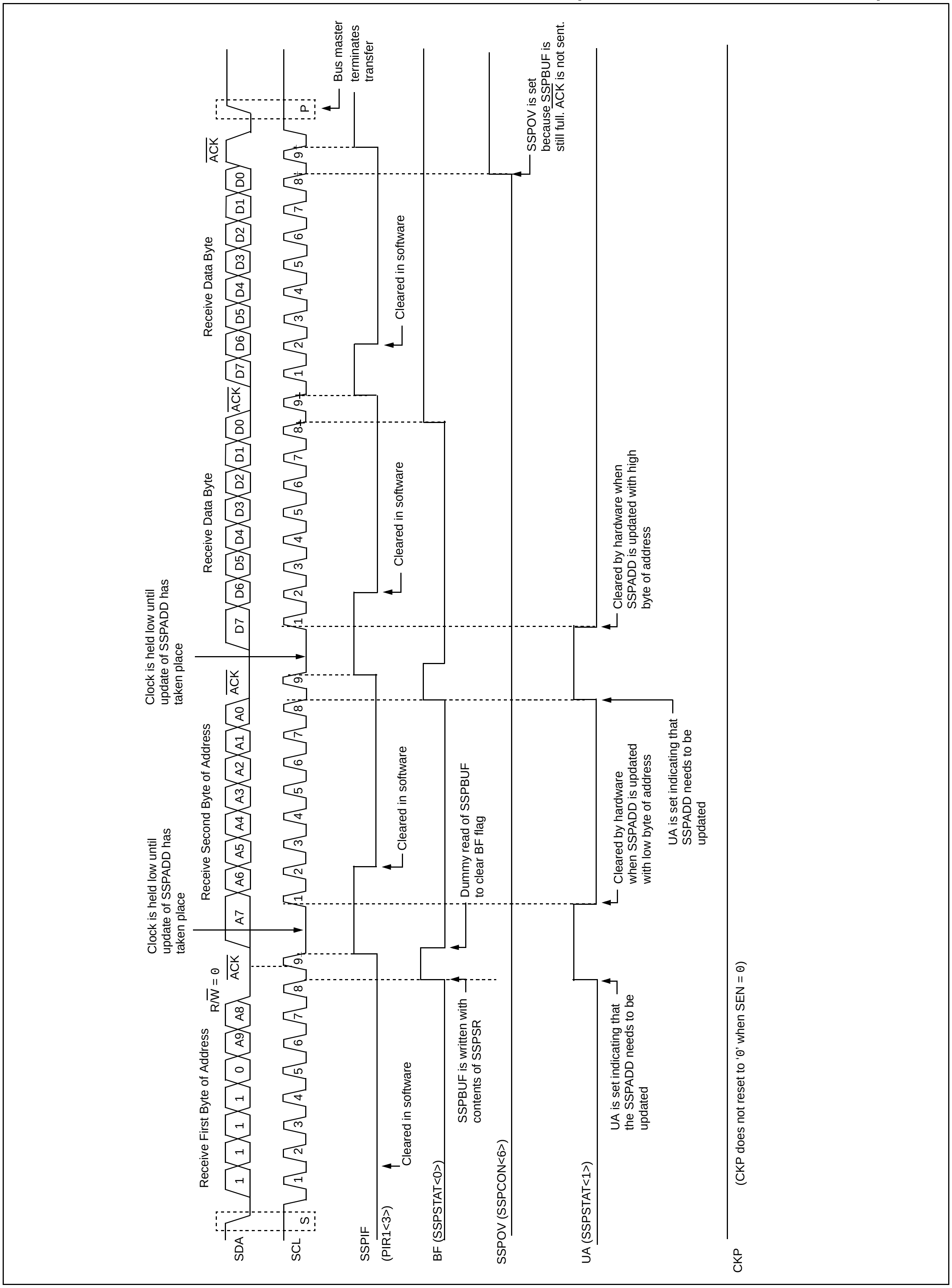
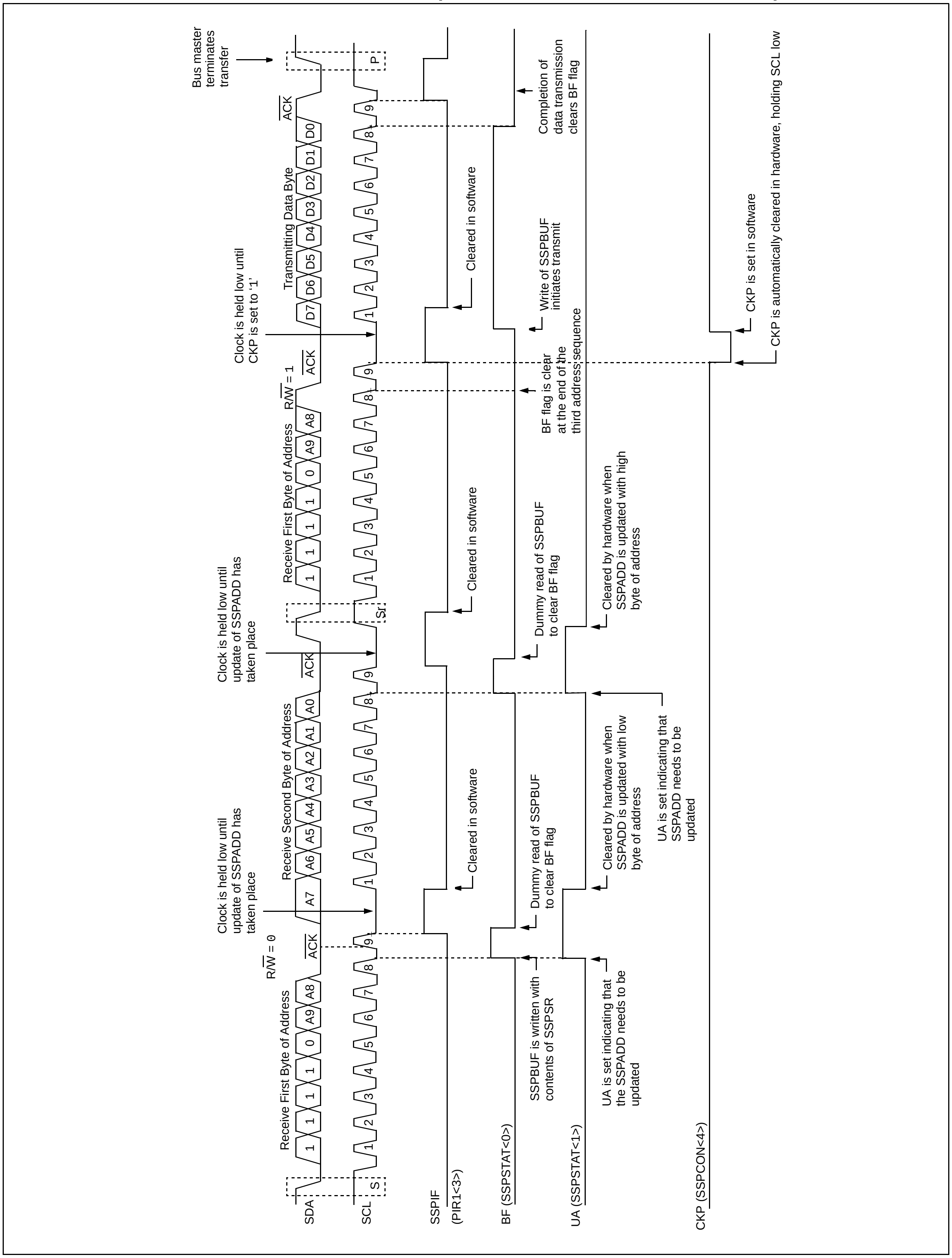


FIGURE 17-11: I²C SLAVE MODE TIMING (TRANSMISSION, 10-BIT ADDRESS)



17.4.4 CLOCK STRETCHING

Both 7- and 10-bit Slave modes implement automatic clock stretching during a transmit sequence.

The SEN bit (SSPCON2<0>) allows clock stretching to be enabled during receives. Setting SEN will cause the SCL pin to be held low at the end of each data receive sequence.

17.4.4.1 Clock Stretching for 7-bit Slave Receive Mode (SEN = 1)

In 7-bit Slave Receive mode, on the falling edge of the ninth clock at the end of the $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ sequence, if the BF bit is set, the CKP bit in the SSPCON1 register is automatically cleared, forcing the SCL output to be held low. The CKP being cleared to '0' will assert the SCL line low. The CKP bit must be set in the user's ISR before reception is allowed to continue. By holding the SCL line low, the user has time to service the ISR and read the contents of the SSPBUF before the master device can initiate another receive sequence. This will prevent buffer overruns from occurring (see Figure 17-13).

> **Note 1:** If the user reads the contents of the SSPBUF before the falling edge of the ninth clock, thus clearing the BF bit, the CKP bit will not be cleared and clock stretching will not occur.
>
> **2:** The CKP bit can be set in software, regardless of the state of the BF bit. The user should be careful to clear the BF bit in the ISR before the next receive sequence, in order to prevent an overflow condition.

17.4.4.2 Clock Stretching for 10-bit Slave Receive Mode (SEN = 1)

In 10-bit Slave Receive mode, during the address sequence, clock stretching automatically takes place but CKP is not cleared. During this time, if the UA bit is set after the ninth clock, clock stretching is initiated. The UA bit is set after receiving the upper byte of the 10-bit address and following the receive of the second byte of the 10-bit address with the R/$\overline{\text{W}}$ bit cleared to '0'. The release of the clock line occurs upon updating SSPADD. Clock stretching will occur on each data receive sequence, as described in 7-bit mode.

> **Note:** If the user polls the UA bit and clears it by updating the SSPADD register before the falling edge of the ninth clock occurs and if the user hasn't cleared the BF bit by reading the SSPBUF register before that time, then the CKP bit will still NOT be asserted low. Clock stretching on the basis of the state of the BF bit only occurs during a data sequence, not an address sequence.

17.4.4.3 Clock Stretching for 7-bit Slave Transmit Mode

7-bit Slave Transmit mode implements clock stretching by clearing the CKP bit after the falling edge of the ninth clock, if the BF bit is clear. This occurs, regardless of the state of the SEN bit.

The user's ISR must set the CKP bit before transmission is allowed to continue. By holding the SCL line low, the user has time to service the ISR and load the contents of the SSPBUF before the master device can initiate another transmit sequence (see Figure 17-9).

> **Note 1:** If the user loads the contents of SSPBUF, setting the BF bit before the falling edge of the ninth clock, the CKP bit will not be cleared and clock stretching will not occur.
>
> **2:** The CKP bit can be set in software, regardless of the state of the BF bit.

17.4.4.4 Clock Stretching for 10-bit Slave Transmit Mode

In 10-bit Slave Transmit mode, clock stretching is controlled during the first two address sequences by the state of the UA bit, just as it is in 10-bit Slave Receive mode. The first two addresses are followed by a third address sequence, which contains the high-order bits of the 10-bit address and the R/$\overline{\text{W}}$ bit set to '1'. After the third address sequence is performed, the UA bit is not set, the module is now configured in Transmit mode and clock stretching is controlled as in 7-bit Slave Transmit mode (see Figure 17-11).

17.4.4.5 Clock Synchronization and the CKP bit

When the CKP bit is cleared, the SCL output is forced to '0'. However, clearing the CKP bit will not assert the SCL output low until the SCL output is already sampled low. Therefore, the CKP bit will not assert the SCL line until an external I^{2}C master device has already asserted the SCL line. The SCL output will remain low until the CKP bit is set and all other devices on the I^{2}C bus have deasserted SCL. This ensures that a write to the CKP bit will not violate the minimum high time requirement for SCL (see Figure 17-12).

FIGURE 17-12: CLOCK SYNCHRONIZATION TIMING

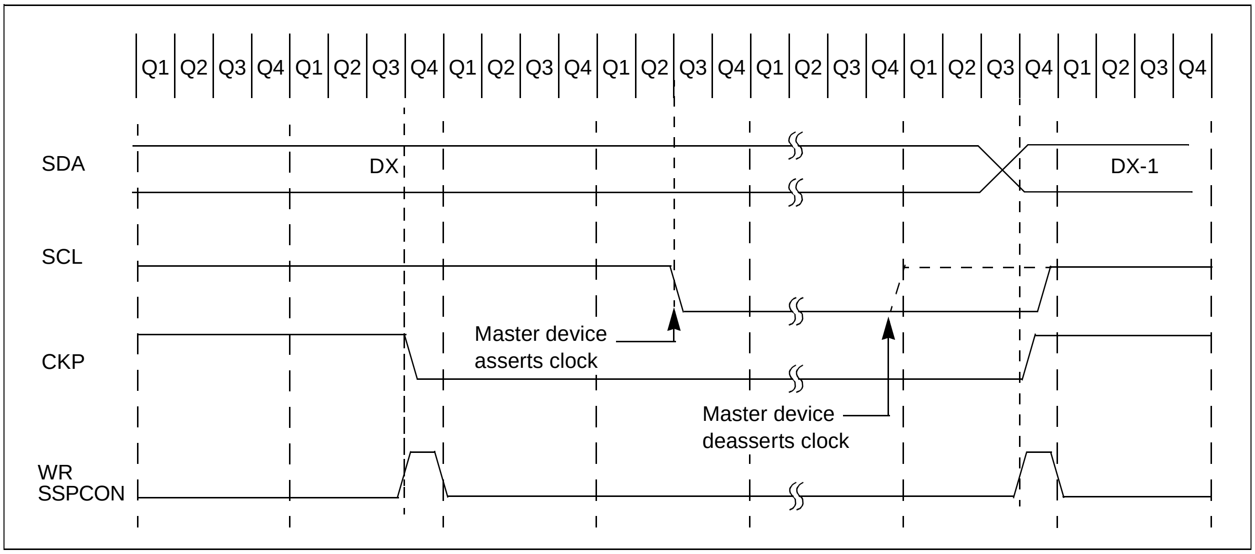


FIGURE 17-13: I²C SLAVE MODE TIMING WITH SEN = 1 (RECEPTION, 7-BIT ADDRESS)

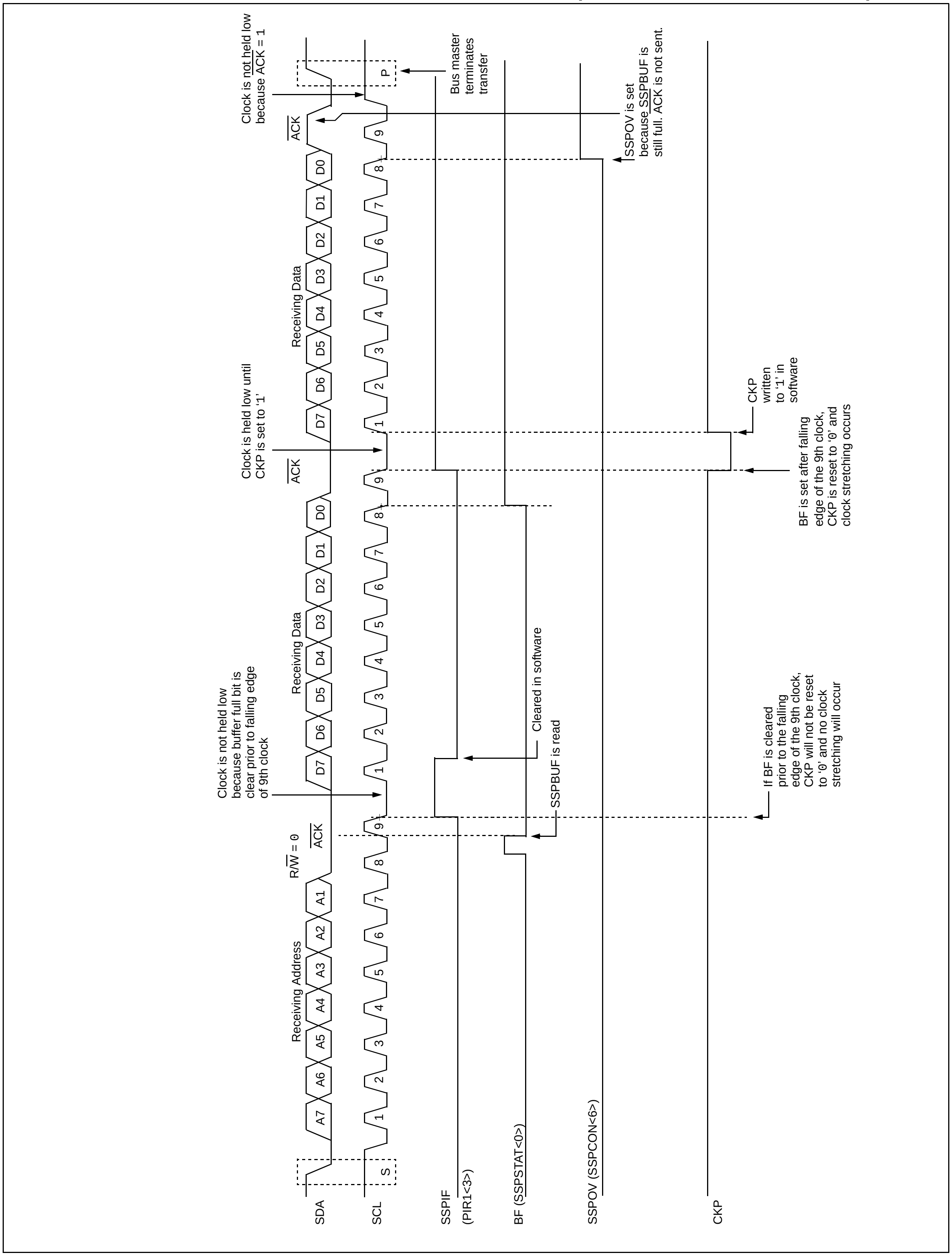
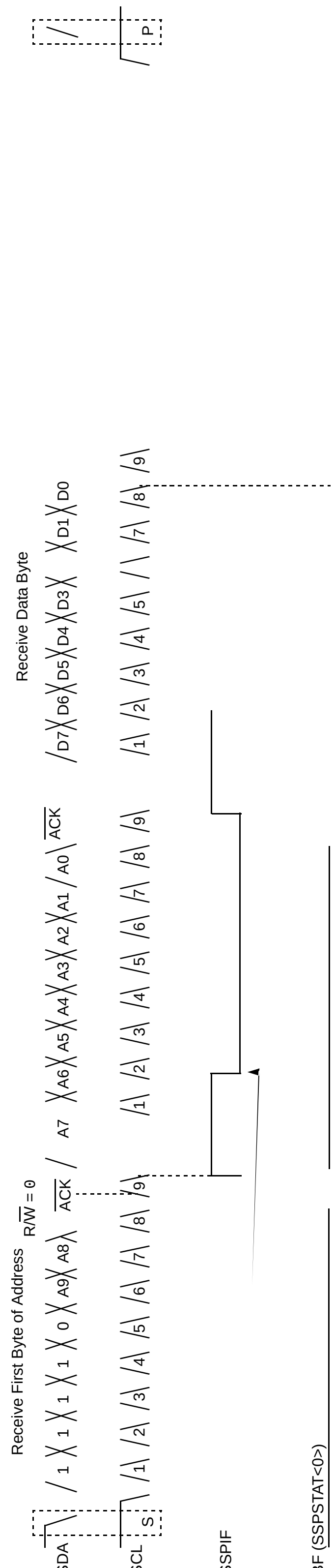


FIGURE 17-14: I²C SLAVE MODE TIMING SEN = 1 (RECEPTION, 10-BIT ADDRESS)



17.4.5 GENERAL CALL ADDRESS SUPPORT

The addressing procedure for the I²C bus is such that the first byte after the Start condition usually determines which device will be the slave addressed by the master. The exception is the general call address, which can address all devices. When this address is used, all devices should, in theory, respond with an Acknowledge.

The general call address is one of eight addresses reserved for specific purposes by the I²C protocol. It consists of all '0's with R/$\overline{W}$ = 0.

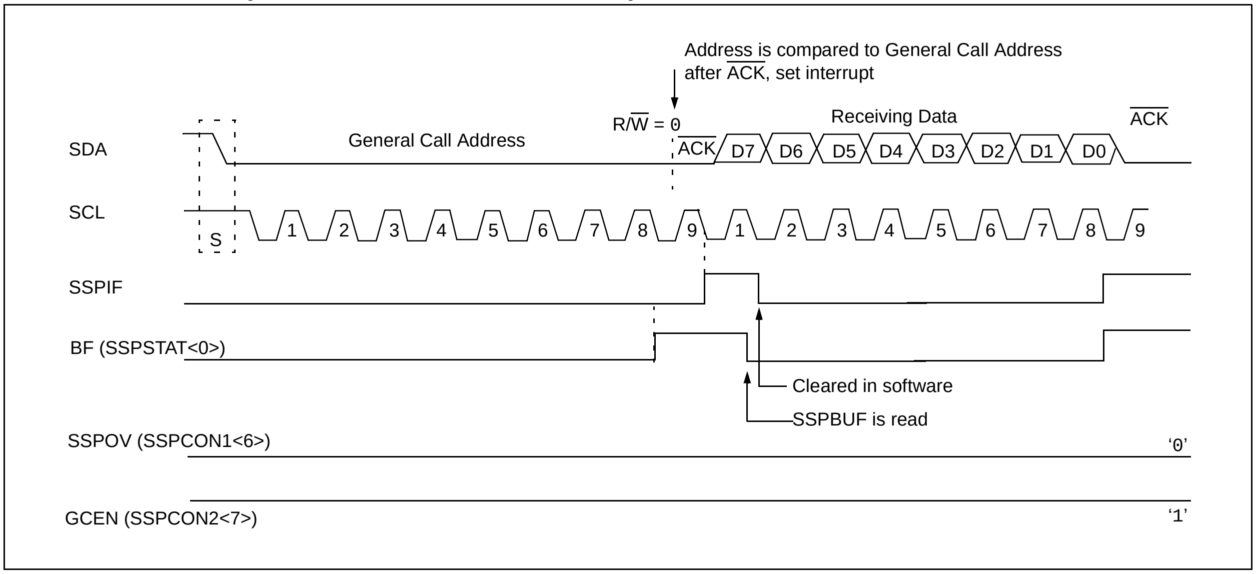
The general call address is recognized when the General Call Enable bit (GCEN) is enabled (SSPCON2<7> set). Following a Start bit detect, 8 bits are shifted into the SSPSR and the address is compared against the SSPADD. It is also compared to the general call address and fixed in hardware.

If the general call address matches, the SSPSR is transferred to the SSPBUF, the BF flag bit is set (eighth bit) and on the falling edge of the ninth bit ($\overline{ACK}$ bit), the SSPIF interrupt flag bit is set.

When the interrupt is serviced, the source for the interrupt can be checked by reading the contents of the SSPBUF. The value can be used to determine if the address was device specific or a general call address.

In 10-bit mode, the SSPADD is required to be updated for the second half of the address to match and the UA bit is set (SSPSTAT<1>). If the general call address is sampled when the GCEN bit is set, while the slave is configured in 10-bit Address mode, then the second half of the address is not necessary, the UA bit will not be set and the slave will begin receiving data after the Acknowledge (Figure 17-15).

FIGURE 17-15: SLAVE MODE GENERAL CALL ADDRESS SEQUENCE (7 OR 10-BIT ADDRESS MODE)



17.4.6 MASTER MODE

Master mode is enabled by setting and clearing the appropriate SSPM bits in SSPCON1 and by setting the SSPEN bit. In Master mode, the SCL and SDA lines are manipulated by the MSSP hardware.

Master mode of operation is supported by interrupt generation on the detection of the Start and Stop conditions. The Stop (P) and Start (S) bits are cleared from a Reset, or when the MSSP module is disabled. Control of the I^2C bus may be taken when the P bit is set or the bus is Idle, with both the S and P bits clear.

In Firmware Controlled Master mode, user code conducts all I^2C bus operations based on Start and Stop bit conditions.

Once Master mode is enabled, the user has six options.

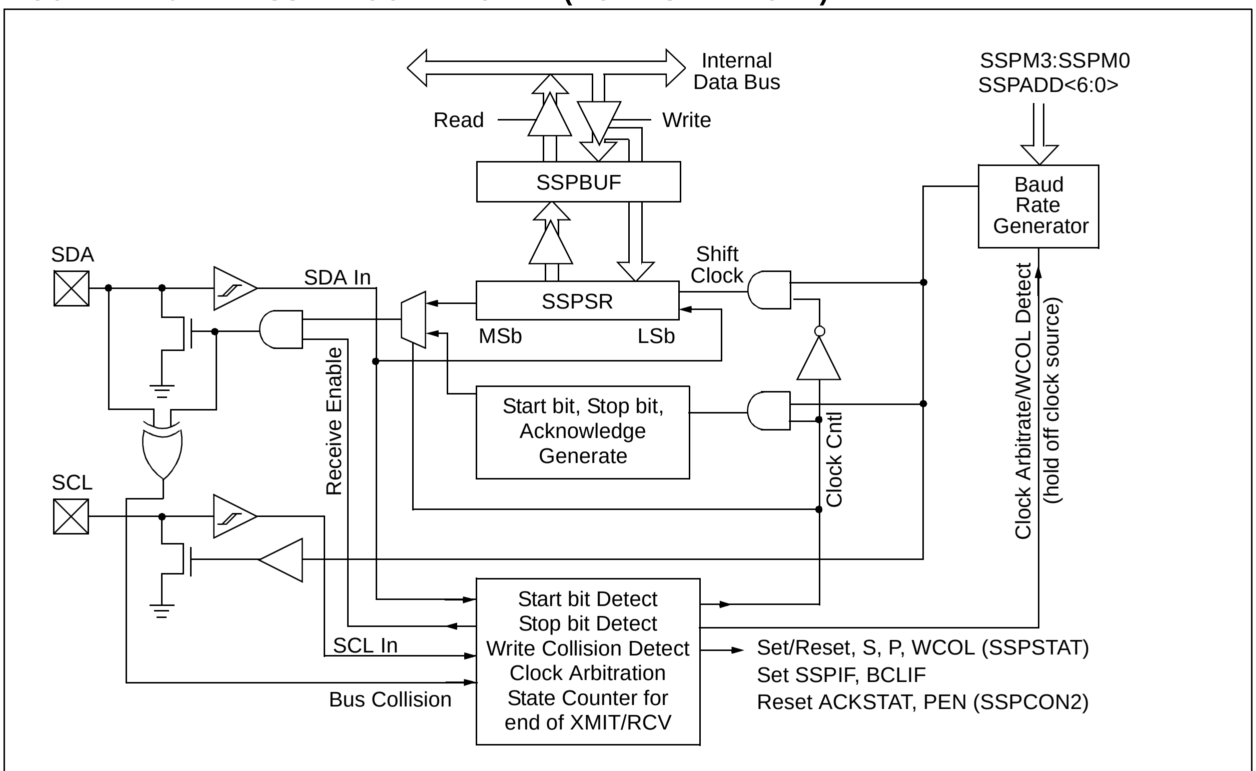
1. Assert a Start condition on SDA and SCL.
2. Assert a Repeated Start condition on SDA and SCL.
3. Write to the SSPBUF register initiating transmission of data/address.
4. Configure the I^2C port to receive data.
5. Generate an Acknowledge condition at the end of a received byte of data.
6. Generate a Stop condition on SDA and SCL.

Note: The MSSP module, when configured in I^2C Master mode, does not allow queueing of events. For instance, the user is not allowed to initiate a Start condition and immediately write the SSPBUF register to initiate transmission before the Start condition is complete. In this case, the SSPBUF will not be written to and the WCOL bit will be set, indicating that a write to the SSPBUF did not occur.

The following events will cause SSP Interrupt Flag bit, SSPIF, to be set (SSP interrupt if enabled):

- Start Condition
- Stop Condition
- Data Transfer Byte Transmitted/received
- Acknowledge Transmit
- Repeated Start

FIGURE 17-16: MSSP BLOCK DIAGRAM (I^2C MASTER MODE)



17.4.6.1 I²C Master Mode Operation

The master device generates all of the serial clock pulses and the Start and Stop conditions. A transfer is ended with a Stop condition or with a Repeated Start condition. Since the Repeated Start condition is also the beginning of the next serial transfer, the I²C bus will not be released.

In Master Transmitter mode, serial data is output through SDA, while SCL outputs the serial clock. The first byte transmitted contains the slave address of the receiving device (7 bits) and the Read/Write ($R/\overline{W}$) bit. In this case, the $R/\overline{W}$ bit will be logic '0'. Serial data is transmitted 8 bits at a time. After each byte is transmitted, an Acknowledge bit is received. Start and Stop conditions are output to indicate the beginning and the end of a serial transfer.

In Master Receive mode, the first byte transmitted contains the slave address of the transmitting device (7 bits) and the $R/\overline{W}$ bit. In this case, the $R/\overline{W}$ bit will be logic '1'. Thus, the first byte transmitted is a 7-bit slave address followed by a '1' to indicate receive bit. Serial data is received via SDA, while SCL outputs the serial clock. Serial data is received 8 bits at a time. After each byte is received, an Acknowledge bit is transmitted. Start and Stop conditions indicate the beginning and end of transmission.

The Baud Rate Generator used for the SPI mode operation is used to set the SCL clock frequency for either 100 kHz, 400 kHz or 1 MHz I²C operation. See **Section 17.4.7 "Baud Rate Generator"**, for more information.

A typical transmit sequence would go as follows:

1. The user generates a Start condition by setting the Start enable bit, SEN (SSPCON2<0>).
2. SSPIF is set. The MSSP module will wait the required start time before any other operation takes place.
3. The user loads the SSPBUF with the slave address to transmit.
4. Address is shifted out the SDA pin until all 8 bits are transmitted.
5. The MSSP module shifts in the ACK bit from the slave device and writes its value into the SSPCON2 register (SSPCON2<6>).
6. The MSSP module generates an interrupt at the end of the ninth clock cycle by setting the SSPIF bit.
7. The user loads the SSPBUF with eight bits of data.
8. Data is shifted out the SDA pin until all 8 bits are transmitted.
9. The MSSP module shifts in the ACK bit from the slave device and writes its value into the SSPCON2 register (SSPCON2<6>).
10. The MSSP module generates an interrupt at the end of the ninth clock cycle by setting the SSPIF bit.
11. The user generates a Stop condition by setting the Stop enable bit PEN (SSPCON2<2>).
12. Interrupt is generated once the Stop condition is complete.

17.4.7 BAUD RATE GENERATOR

In I²C Master mode, the Baud Rate Generator (BRG) reload value is placed in the lower 7 bits of the SSPADD register (Figure 17-17). When a write occurs to SSPBUF, the Baud Rate Generator will automatically begin counting. The BRG counts down to '0' and stops until another reload has taken place. The BRG count is decremented twice per instruction cycle (T_{CY}) on the Q2 and Q4 clocks. In I²C Master mode, the BRG is reloaded automatically.

Once the given operation is complete (i.e., transmission of the last data bit is followed by $\overline{\text{ACK}}$), the internal clock will automatically stop counting and the SCL pin will remain in its last state.

Table 15-3 demonstrates clock rates based on instruction cycles and the BRG value loaded into SSPADD.

FIGURE 17-17: BAUD RATE GENERATOR BLOCK DIAGRAM

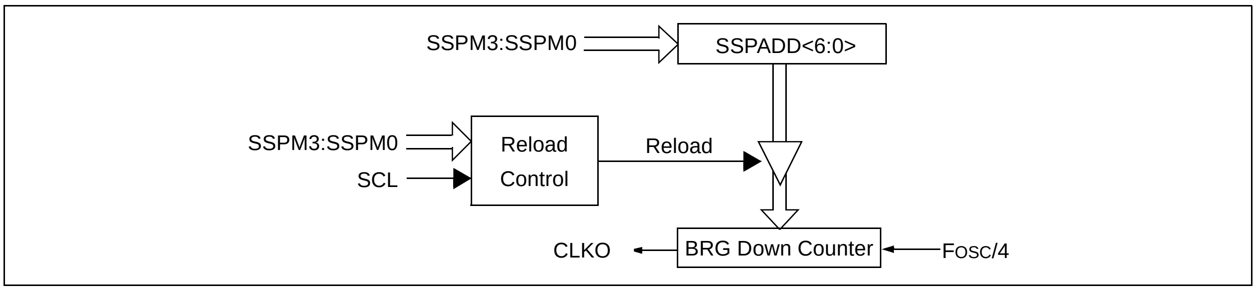


TABLE 17-3: I²C CLOCK RATE W/BRG

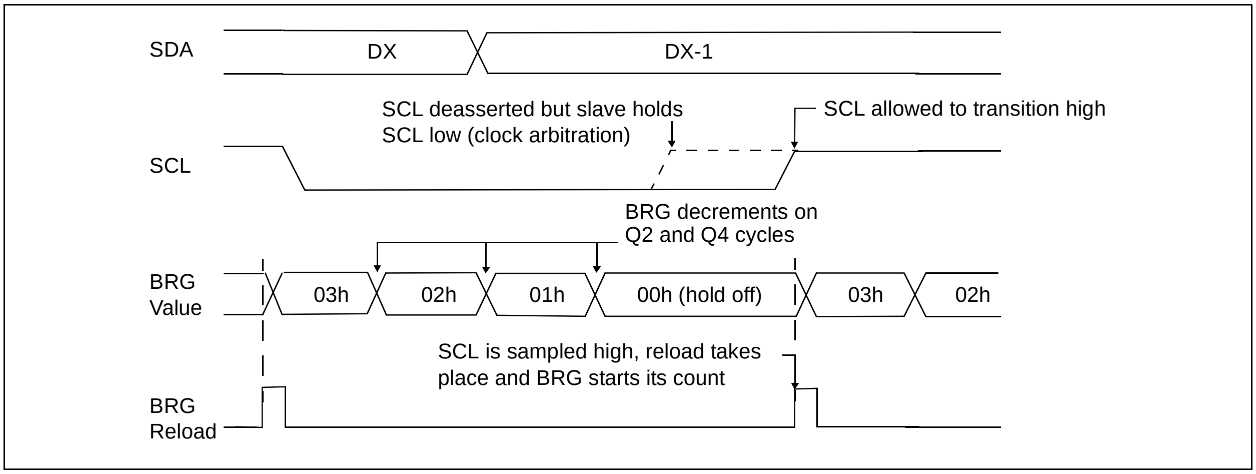
F_{CY}	F_{CY}*2	BRG VALUE	F_{SCL} (2 rollovers of BRG)
10 MHz	20 MHz	19h	400 kHz(1)
10 MHz	20 MHz	20h	312.5 kHz
10 MHz	20 MHz	3Fh	100 kHz
4 MHz	8 MHz	0Ah	400 kHz(1)
4 MHz	8 MHz	0Dh	308 kHz
4 MHz	8 MHz	28h	100 kHz
1 MHz	2 MHz	03h	333 kHz(1)
1 MHz	2 MHz	0Ah	100 kHz
1 MHz	2 MHz	00h	1 MHz(1)

Note 1: The I²C interface does not conform to the 400 kHz I²C specification (which applies to rates greater than 100 kHz) in all details, but may be used with care where higher rates are required by the application.

17.4.7.1 Clock Arbitration

Clock arbitration occurs when the master, during any receive, transmit or Repeated Start/Stop condition, deasserts the SCL pin (SCL allowed to float high). When the SCL pin is allowed to float high, the Baud Rate Generator (BRG) is suspended from counting until the SCL pin is actually sampled high. When the SCL pin is sampled high, the Baud Rate Generator is reloaded with the contents of SSPADD<6:0> and begins counting. This ensures that the SCL high time will always be at least one BRG rollover count, in the event that the clock is held low by an external device (Figure 15-18).

FIGURE 17-18: BAUD RATE GENERATOR TIMING WITH CLOCK ARBITRATION



17.4.8 I²C MASTER MODE START CONDITION TIMING

To initiate a Start condition, the user sets the Start Condition Enable bit, SEN (SSPCON2<0>). If the SDA and SCL pins are sampled high, the Baud Rate Generator is reloaded with the contents of SSPADD<6:0> and starts its count. If SCL and SDA are both sampled high when the Baud Rate Generator times out (TBRG), the SDA pin is driven low. The action of the SDA being driven low, while SCL is high, is the Start condition and causes the S bit (SSPSTAT<3>) to be set. Following this, the Baud Rate Generator is reloaded with the contents of SSPADD<6:0> and resumes its count. When the Baud Rate Generator times out (TBRG), the SEN bit (SSPCON2<0>) will be automatically cleared by hardware, the Baud Rate Generator is suspended, leaving the SDA line held low and the Start condition is complete.

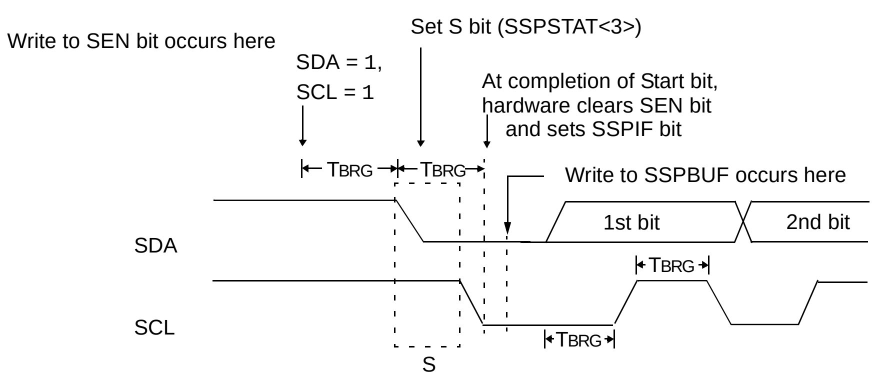
Note:	If at the beginning of the Start condition, the SDA and SCL pins are already sampled low, or if during the Start condition the SCL line is sampled low before the SDA line is driven low, a bus collision occurs, the Bus Collision Interrupt Flag, BCLIF, is set, the Start condition is aborted and the I²C module is reset into its Idle state.

17.4.8.1 WCOL Status Flag

If the user writes the SSPBUF when a Start sequence is in progress, the WCOL is set and the contents of the buffer are unchanged (the write doesn't occur).

Note:	Because queueing of events is not allowed, writing to the lower 5 bits of SSPCON2 is disabled until the Start condition is complete.

FIGURE 17-19: FIRST START BIT TIMING



17.4.9 I²C MASTER MODE REPEATED START CONDITION TIMING

A Repeated Start condition occurs when the RSEN bit (SSPCON2<1>) is programmed high and the I²C logic module is in the Idle state. When the RSEN bit is set, the SCL pin is asserted low. When the SCL pin is sampled low, the Baud Rate Generator is loaded with the contents of SSPADD<5:0> and begins counting. The SDA pin is released (brought high) for one Baud Rate Generator count (TBRG). When the Baud Rate Generator times out, if SDA is sampled high, the SCL pin will be deasserted (brought high). When SCL is sampled high, the Baud Rate Generator is reloaded with the contents of SSPADD<6:0> and begins counting. SDA and SCL must be sampled high for one TBRG. This action is then followed by assertion of the SDA pin (SDA = 0) for one TBRG, while SCL is high. Following this, the RSEN bit (SSPCON2<1>) will be automatically cleared and the Baud Rate Generator will not be reloaded, leaving the SDA pin held low. As soon as a Start condition is detected on the SDA and SCL pins, the S bit (SSPSTAT<3>) will be set. The SSPIF bit will not be set until the Baud Rate Generator has timed out.

> **Note 1:** If RSEN is programmed while any other event is in progress, it will not take effect.
>
> **2:** A bus collision during the Repeated Start condition occurs if:
> - SDA is sampled low when SCL goes from low-to-high.
> - SCL goes low before SDA is asserted low. This may indicate that another master is attempting to transmit a data '1'.

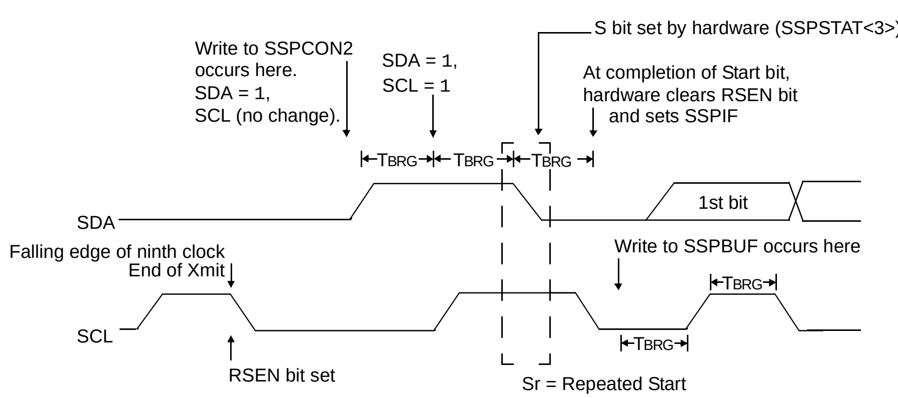
Immediately following the setting of the SSPIF bit, the user may write the SSPBUF with the 7-bit address in 7-bit mode, or the default first address in 10-bit mode. After the first eight bits are transmitted and an ACK is received, the user may then transmit an additional eight bits of address (10-bit mode) or eight bits of data (7-bit mode).

17.4.9.1 WCOL Status Flag

If the user writes the SSPBUF when a Repeated Start sequence is in progress, the WCOL is set and the contents of the buffer are unchanged (the write does not occur).

> **Note:** Because queueing of events is not allowed, writing of the lower 5 bits of SSPCON2 is disabled until the Repeated Start condition is complete.

FIGURE 17-20: REPEAT START CONDITION WAVEFORM



17.4.10 I²C MASTER MODE TRANSMISSION

Transmission of a data byte, a 7-bit address, or the other half of a 10-bit address is accomplished by simply writing a value to the SSPBUF register. This action will set the Buffer Full flag bit, BF and allow the Baud Rate Generator to begin counting and start the next transmission. Each bit of address/data will be shifted out onto the SDA pin after the falling edge of SCL is asserted (see data hold time specification parameter #106). SCL is held low for one Baud Rate Generator rollover count (TBRG). Data should be valid before SCL is released high (see data setup time specification parameter #107). When the SCL pin is released high, it is held that way for TBRG. The data on the SDA pin must remain stable for that duration and some hold time, after the next falling edge of SCL. After the eighth bit is shifted out (the falling edge of the eighth clock), the BF flag is cleared and the master releases SDA. This allows the slave device being addressed to respond with an $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ bit during the ninth bit time if an address match occurred, or if data was received properly. The status of $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ is written into the ACKDT bit on the falling edge of the ninth clock. If the master receives an Acknowledge, the Acknowledge Status bit, ACKSTAT, is cleared. If not, the bit is set. After the ninth clock, the SSPIF bit is set and the master clock (Baud Rate Generator) is suspended until the next data byte is loaded into the SSPBUF, leaving SCL low and SDA unchanged (Figure 17-21).

After the write to the SSPBUF, each address bit will be shifted out on the falling edge of SCL, until all seven address bits and the R/$\overline{\text{W}}$ bit are completed. On the falling edge of the eighth clock, the master will deassert the SDA pin, allowing the slave to respond with an Acknowledge. On the falling edge of the ninth clock, the master will sample the SDA pin to see if the address was recognized by a slave. The status of the $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ bit is loaded into the ACKSTAT status bit (SSPCON2<6>). Following the falling edge of the ninth clock transmission of the address, the SSPIF is set, the BF flag is cleared and the Baud Rate Generator is turned off until another write to the SSPBUF takes place, holding SCL low and allowing SDA to float.

17.4.10.1 BF Status Flag

In Transmit mode, the BF bit (SSPSTAT<0>) is set when the CPU writes to SSPBUF and is cleared when all 8 bits are shifted out.

17.4.10.2 WCOL Status Flag

If the user writes the SSPBUF when a transmit is already in progress (i.e., SSPSR is still shifting out a data byte), the WCOL is set and the contents of the buffer are unchanged (the write doesn't occur).

WCOL must be cleared in software.

17.4.10.3 ACKSTAT Status Flag

In Transmit mode, the ACKSTAT bit (SSPCON2<6>) is cleared when the slave has sent an Acknowledge ($\overline{\text{ACK}}$ = 0) and is set when the slave does not Acknowledge ($\overline{\text{ACK}}$ = 1). A slave sends an Acknowledge when it has recognized its address (including a general call), or when the slave has properly received its data.

17.4.11 I²C MASTER MODE RECEPTION

Master mode reception is enabled by programming the Receive Enable bit, RCEN (SSPCON2<3>).

Note:	The MSSP module must be in an Idle state before the RCEN bit is set, or the RCEN bit will be disregarded.

The Baud Rate Generator begins counting and on each rollover, the state of the SCL pin changes (high-to-low/low-to-high) and data is shifted into the SSPSR. After the falling edge of the eighth clock, the receive enable flag is automatically cleared, the contents of the SSPSR are loaded into the SSPBUF, the BF flag bit is set, the SSPIF flag bit is set and the Baud Rate Generator is suspended from counting, holding SCL low. The MSSP is now in Idle state, awaiting the next command. When the buffer is read by the CPU, the BF flag bit is automatically cleared. The user can then send an Acknowledge bit at the end of reception by setting the Acknowledge Sequence Enable bit, ACKEN (SSPCON2<4>).

17.4.11.1 BF Status Flag

In receive operation, the BF bit is set when an address or data byte is loaded into SSPBUF from SSPSR. It is cleared when the SSPBUF register is read.

17.4.11.2 SSPOV Status Flag

In receive operation, the SSPOV bit is set when 8 bits are received into the SSPSR and the BF flag bit is already set from a previous reception.

17.4.11.3 WCOL Status Flag

If the user writes the SSPBUF when a receive is already in progress (i.e., SSPSR is still shifting in a data byte), the WCOL bit is set and the contents of the buffer are unchanged (the write doesn't occur).

FIGURE 17-21: I²C MASTER MODE WAVEFORM (TRANSMISSION, 7 OR 10-BIT ADDRESS)

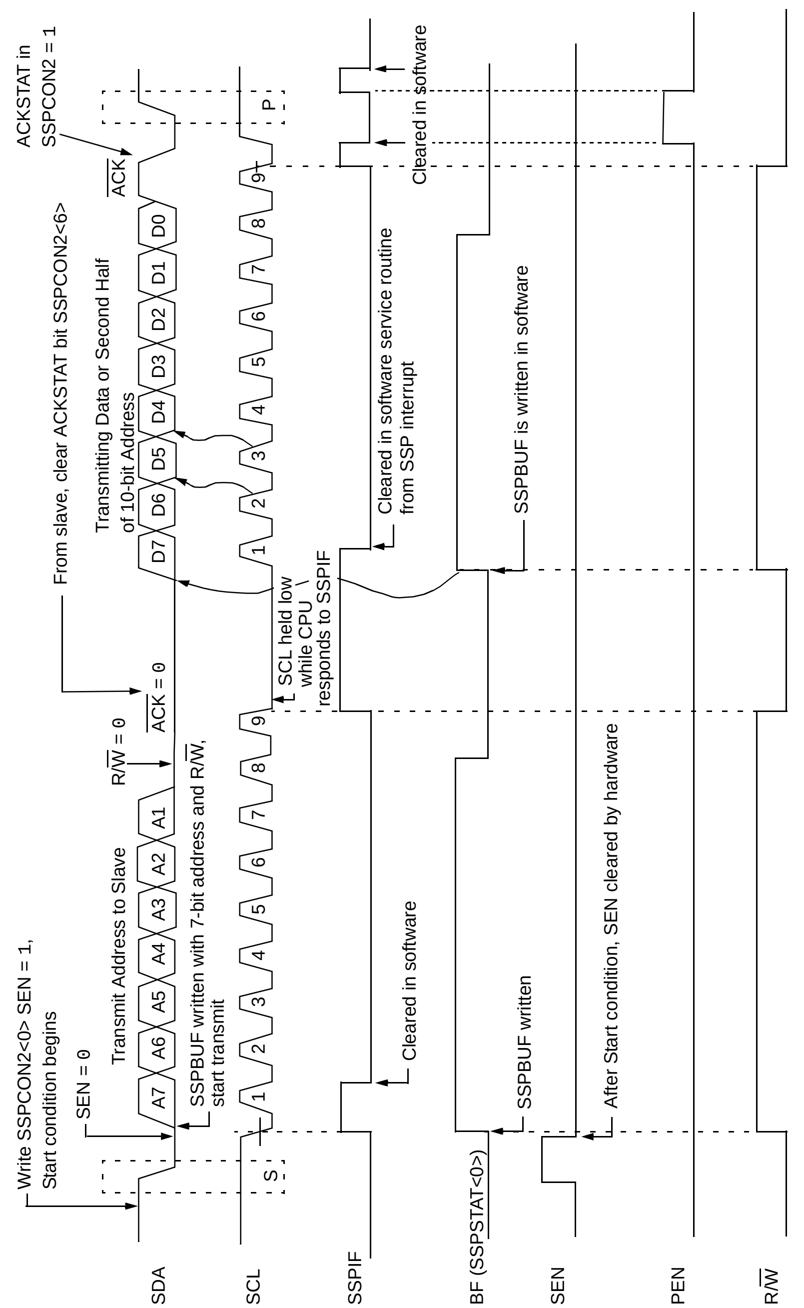
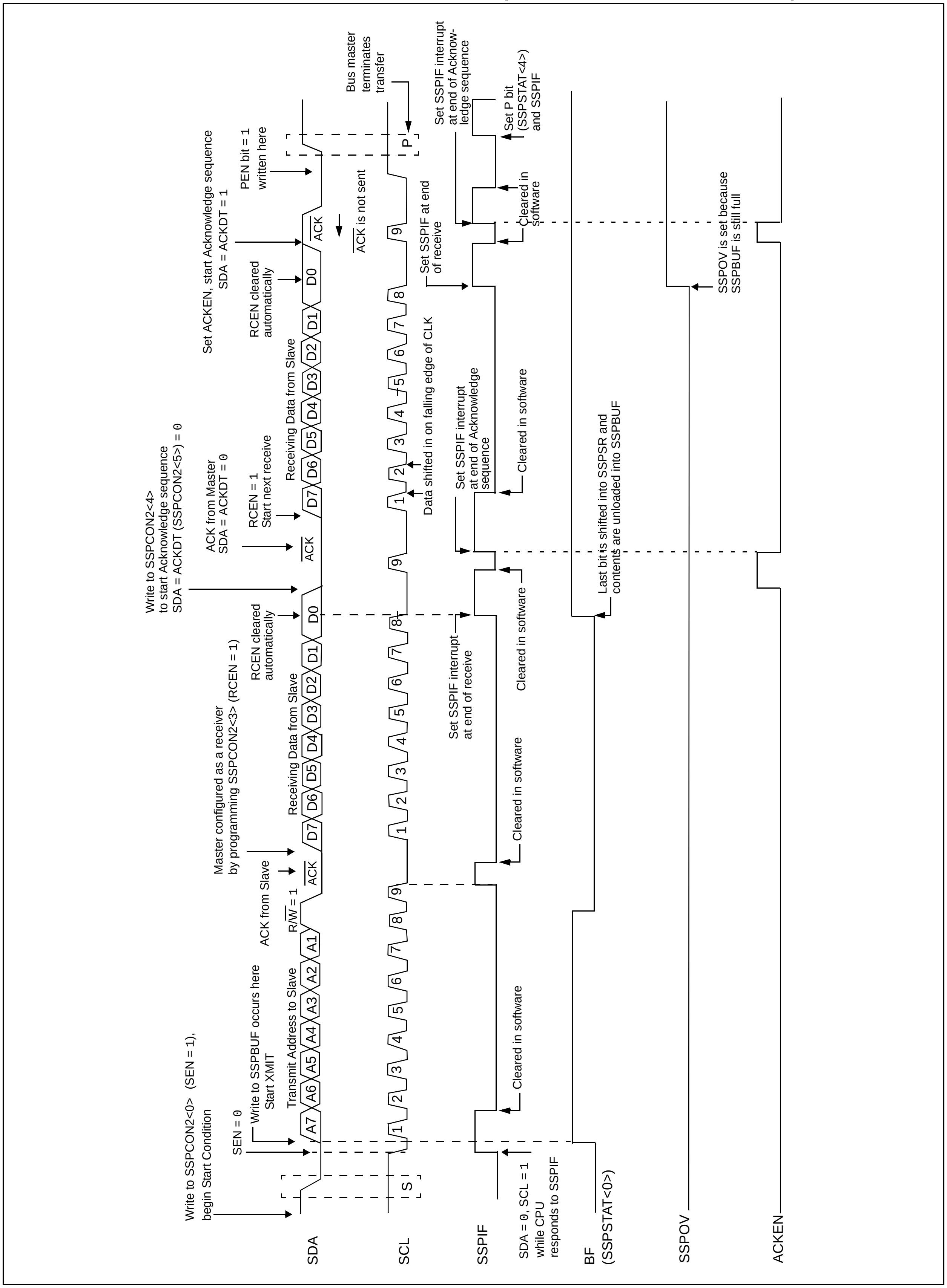


FIGURE 17-22: I²C MASTER MODE WAVEFORM (RECEPTION, 7-BIT ADDRESS)



17.4.12 ACKNOWLEDGE SEQUENCE TIMING

An Acknowledge sequence is enabled by setting the Acknowledge Sequence Enable bit, ACKEN (SSPCON2<4>). When this bit is set, the SCL pin is pulled low and the contents of the Acknowledge data bit are presented on the SDA pin. If the user wishes to generate an Acknowledge, then the ACKDT bit should be cleared. If not, the user should set the ACKDT bit before starting an Acknowledge sequence. The Baud Rate Generator then counts for one rollover period (TBRG) and the SCL pin is deasserted (pulled high). When the SCL pin is sampled high (clock arbitration), the Baud Rate Generator counts for TBRG. The SCL pin is then pulled low. Following this, the ACKEN bit is automatically cleared, the Baud Rate Generator is turned off and the MSSP module then goes into Idle mode (Figure 17-23).

17.4.12.1 WCOL Status Flag

If the user writes the SSPBUF when an Acknowledge sequence is in progress, then WCOL is set and the contents of the buffer are unchanged (the write doesn't occur).

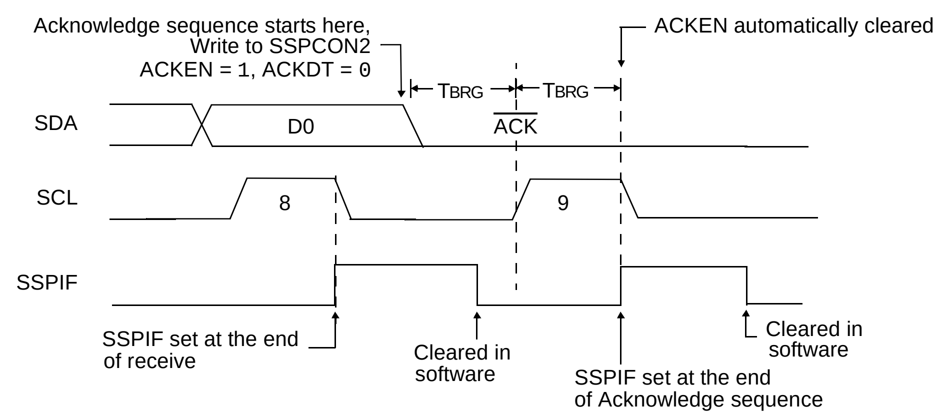
17.4.13 STOP CONDITION TIMING

A Stop bit is asserted on the SDA pin at the end of a receive/transmit by setting the Stop Sequence Enable bit, PEN (SSPCON2<2>). At the end of a receive/transmit, the SCL line is held low after the falling edge of the ninth clock. When the PEN bit is set, the master will assert the SDA line low. When the SDA line is sampled low, the Baud Rate Generator is reloaded and counts down to '0'. When the Baud Rate Generator times out, the SCL pin will be brought high and one TBRG (Baud Rate Generator rollover count) later, the SDA pin will be deasserted. When the SDA pin is sampled high while SCL is high, the P bit (SSPSTAT<4>) is set. A TBRG later, the PEN bit is cleared and the SSPIF bit is set (Figure 17-24).

17.4.13.1 WCOL Status Flag

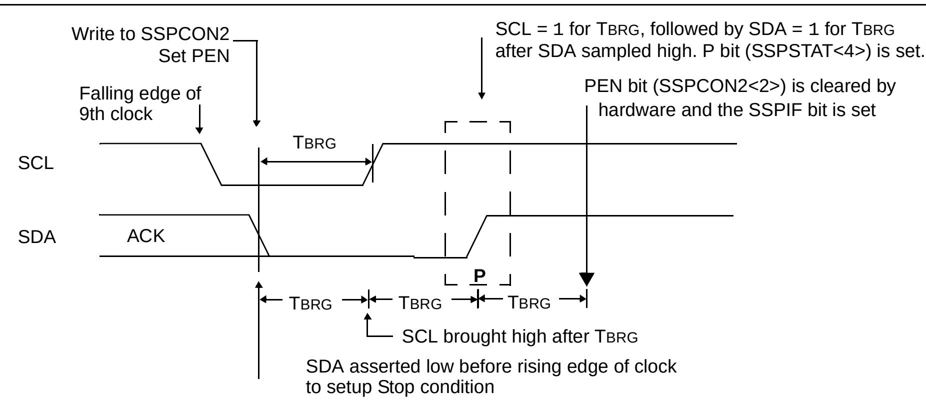
If the user writes the SSPBUF when a Stop sequence is in progress, then the WCOL bit is set and the contents of the buffer are unchanged (the write doesn't occur).

FIGURE 17-23: ACKNOWLEDGE SEQUENCE WAVEFORM



Note: TBRG = one Baud Rate Generator period.

FIGURE 17-24: STOP CONDITION RECEIVE OR TRANSMIT MODE



Note: TBRG = one Baud Rate Generator period.

17.4.14 SLEEP OPERATION

While in Sleep mode, the I²C module can receive addresses or data and when an address match or complete byte transfer occurs, wake the processor from Sleep (if the MSSP interrupt is enabled).

17.4.15 EFFECT OF A RESET

A Reset disables the MSSP module and terminates the current transfer.

17.4.16 MULTI-MASTER MODE

In Multi-Master mode, the interrupt generation on the detection of the Start and Stop conditions allows the determination of when the bus is free. The Stop (P) and Start (S) bits are cleared from a Reset or when the MSSP module is disabled. Control of the I²C bus may be taken when the P bit (SSPSTAT<4>) is set, or the bus is idle with both the S and P bits clear. When the bus is busy, enabling the SSP interrupt will generate the interrupt when the Stop condition occurs.

In multi-master operation, the SDA line must be monitored for arbitration, to see if the signal level is the expected output level. This check is performed in hardware, with the result placed in the BCLIF bit.

The states where arbitration can be lost are:

- Address Transfer
- Data Transfer
- A Start Condition
- A Repeated Start Condition
- An Acknowledge Condition

17.4.17 MULTI -MASTER COMMUNICATION, BUS COLLISION AND BUS ARBITRATION

Multi-Master mode support is achieved by bus arbitration. When the master outputs address/data bits onto the SDA pin, arbitration takes place when the master outputs a '1' on SDA, by letting SDA float high and another master asserts a '0'. When the SCL pin floats high, data should be stable. If the expected data on SDA is a '1' and the data sampled on the SDA pin = 0, then a bus collision has taken place. The master will set the Bus Collision Interrupt Flag, BCLIF and reset the I²C port to its Idle state (Figure 17-25).

If a transmit was in progress when the bus collision occurred, the transmission is halted, the BF flag is cleared, the SDA and SCL lines are deasserted and the SSPBUF can be written to. When the user services the bus collision Interrupt Service Routine and if the I²C bus is free, the user can resume communication by asserting a Start condition.

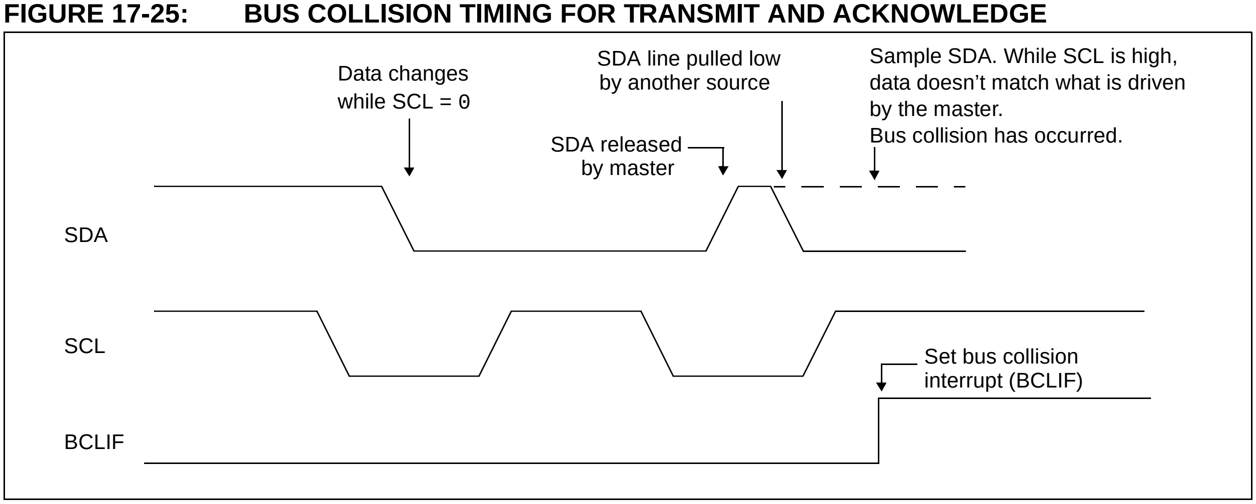
If a Start, Repeated Start, Stop, or Acknowledge condition was in progress when the bus collision occurred, the condition is aborted, the SDA and SCL lines are deasserted and the respective control bits in the SSPCON2 register are cleared. When the user services the bus collision Interrupt Service Routine and if the I²C bus is free, the user can resume communication by asserting a Start condition.

The master will continue to monitor the SDA and SCL pins. If a Stop condition occurs, the SSPIF bit will be set.

A write to the SSPBUF will start the transmission of data at the first data bit, regardless of where the transmitter left off when the bus collision occurred.

In Multi-Master mode, the interrupt generation on the detection of Start and Stop conditions allows the determination of when the bus is free. Control of the I²C bus can be taken when the P bit is set in the SSPSTAT register, or the bus is Idle and the S and P bits are cleared.

FIGURE 17-25: BUS COLLISION TIMING FOR TRANSMIT AND ACKNOWLEDGE



17.4.17.1 Bus Collision During a Start Condition

During a Start condition, a bus collision occurs if:

a) SDA or SCL are sampled low at the beginning of the Start condition (Figure 17-26).

b) SCL is sampled low before SDA is asserted low (Figure 17-27).

During a Start condition, both the SDA and the SCL pins are monitored.

If the SDA pin is already low, or the SCL pin is already low, then all of the following occur:

- the Start condition is aborted,
- the BCLIF flag is set and
- the MSSP module is reset to its Idle state (Figure 17-26).

The Start condition begins with the SDA and SCL pins deasserted. When the SDA pin is sampled high, the Baud Rate Generator is loaded from SSPADD<6:0> and counts down to '0'. If the SCL pin is sampled low while SDA is high, a bus collision occurs, because it is assumed that another master is attempting to drive a data '1' during the Start condition.

If the SDA pin is sampled low during this count, the BRG is reset and the SDA line is asserted early (Figure 17-28). If, however, a '1' is sampled on the SDA pin, the SDA pin is asserted low at the end of the BRG count. The Baud Rate Generator is then reloaded and counts down to '0' and during this time, if the SCL pin is sampled as '0', a bus collision does not occur. At the end of the BRG count, the SCL pin is asserted low.

Note:	The reason that bus collision is not a factor during a Start condition is that no two bus masters can assert a Start condition at the exact same time. Therefore, one master will always assert SDA before the other. This condition does not cause a bus collision because the two masters must be allowed to arbitrate the first address following the Start condition. If the address is the same, arbitration must be allowed to continue into the data portion, Repeated Start or Stop conditions.

FIGURE 17-26: BUS COLLISION DURING START CONDITION (SDA ONLY)

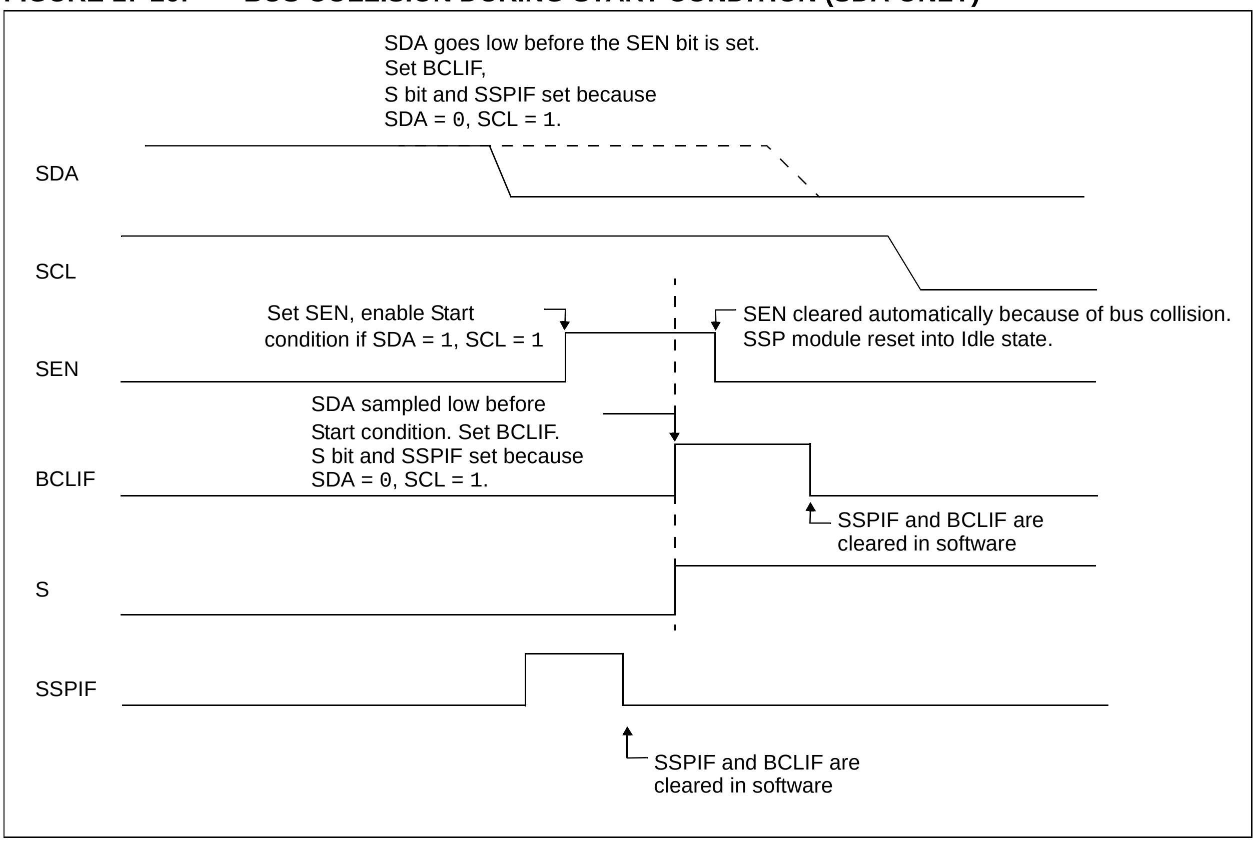


FIGURE 17-27: BUS COLLISION DURING START CONDITION (SCL = 0)

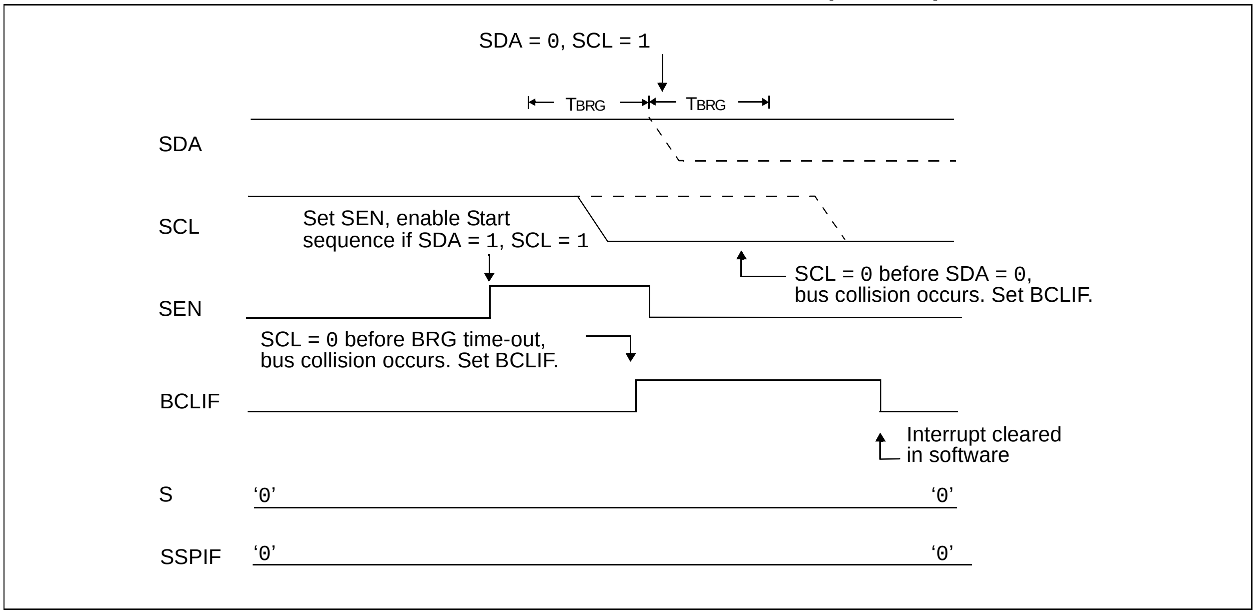
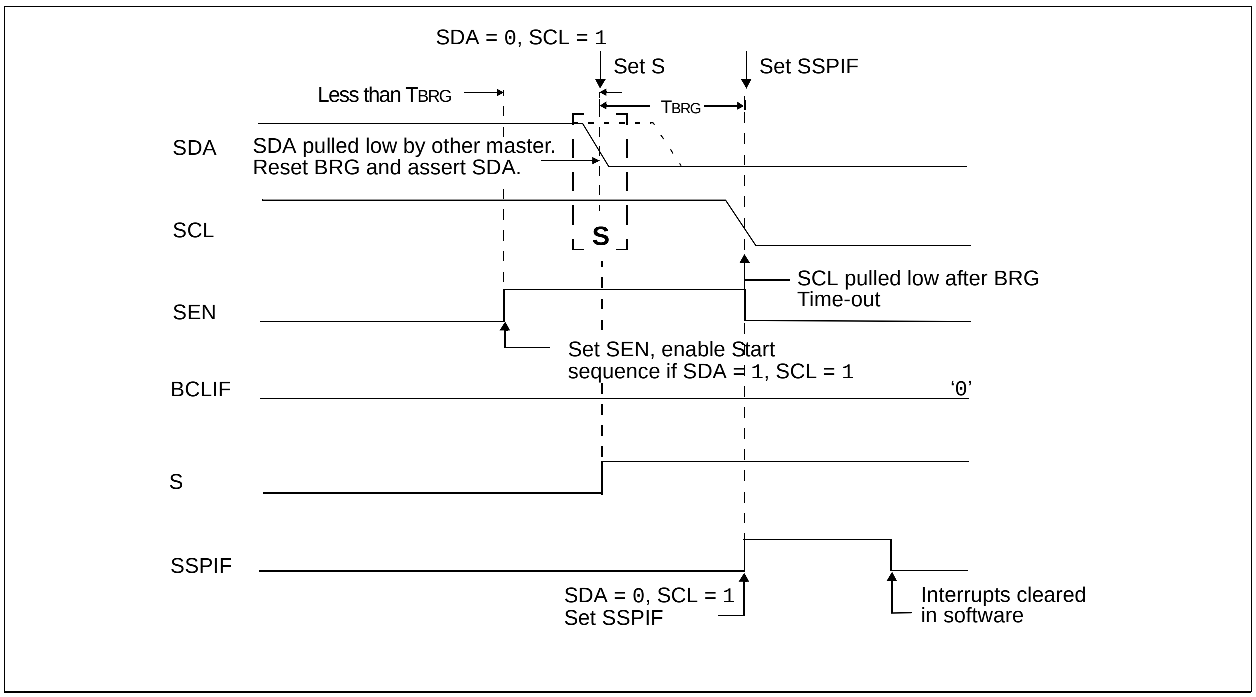


FIGURE 17-28: BRG RESET DUE TO SDA ARBITRATION DURING START CONDITION



17.4.17.2 Bus Collision During a Repeated Start Condition

During a Repeated Start condition, a bus collision occurs if:

a) A low level is sampled on SDA when SCL goes from low level to high level.
b) SCL goes low before SDA is asserted low, indicating that another master is attempting to transmit a data '1'.

When the user deasserts SDA and the pin is allowed to float high, the BRG is loaded with SSPADD<6:0> and counts down to '0'. The SCL pin is then deasserted and when sampled high, the SDA pin is sampled.

If SDA is low, a bus collision has occurred (i.e., another master is attempting to transmit a data '0', Figure 17-29). If SDA is sampled high, the BRG is reloaded and begins counting. If SDA goes from high-to-low before the BRG times out, no bus collision occurs because no two masters can assert SDA at exactly the same time.

If SCL goes from high-to-low before the BRG times out and SDA has not already been asserted, a bus collision occurs. In this case, another master is attempting to transmit a data '1' during the Repeated Start condition, Figure 17-30.

If, at the end of the BRG time-out, both SCL and SDA are still high, the SDA pin is driven low and the BRG is reloaded and begins counting. At the end of the count, regardless of the status of the SCL pin, the SCL pin is driven low and the Repeated Start condition is complete.

FIGURE 17-29: BUS COLLISION DURING A REPEATED START CONDITION (CASE 1)

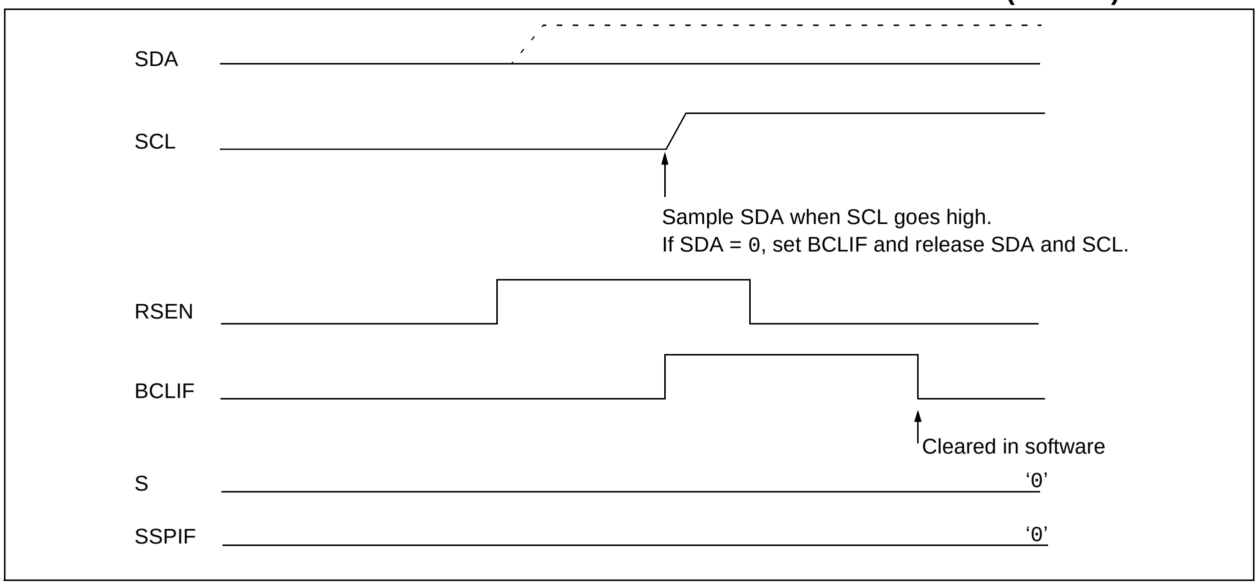
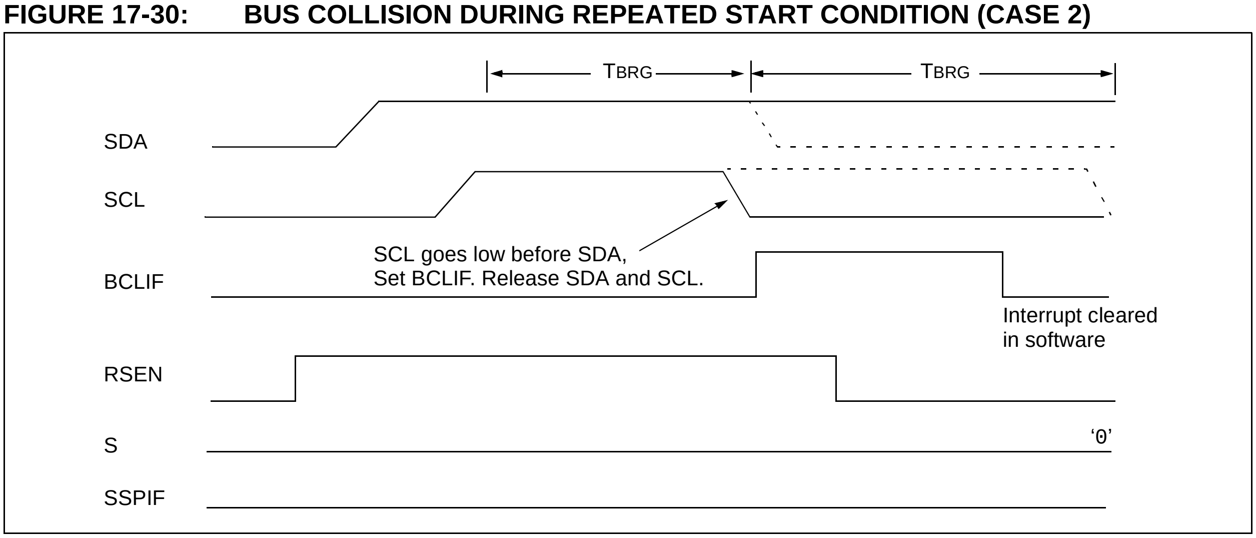


FIGURE 17-30: BUS COLLISION DURING REPEATED START CONDITION (CASE 2)



17.4.17.3 Bus Collision During a Stop Condition

Bus collision occurs during a Stop condition if:

a) After the SDA pin has been deasserted and allowed to float high, SDA is sampled low after the BRG has timed out.

b) After the SCL pin is deasserted, SCL is sampled low before SDA goes high.

The Stop condition begins with SDA asserted low. When SDA is sampled low, the SCL pin is allowed to float. When the pin is sampled high (clock arbitration), the Baud Rate Generator is loaded with SSPADD<6:0> and counts down to '0'. After the BRG times out, SDA is sampled. If SDA is sampled low, a bus collision has occurred. This is due to another master attempting to drive a data '0' (Figure 17-31). If the SCL pin is sampled low before SDA is allowed to float high, a bus collision occurs. This is another case of another master attempting to drive a data '0' (Figure 17-32).

FIGURE 17-31: BUS COLLISION DURING A STOP CONDITION (CASE 1)

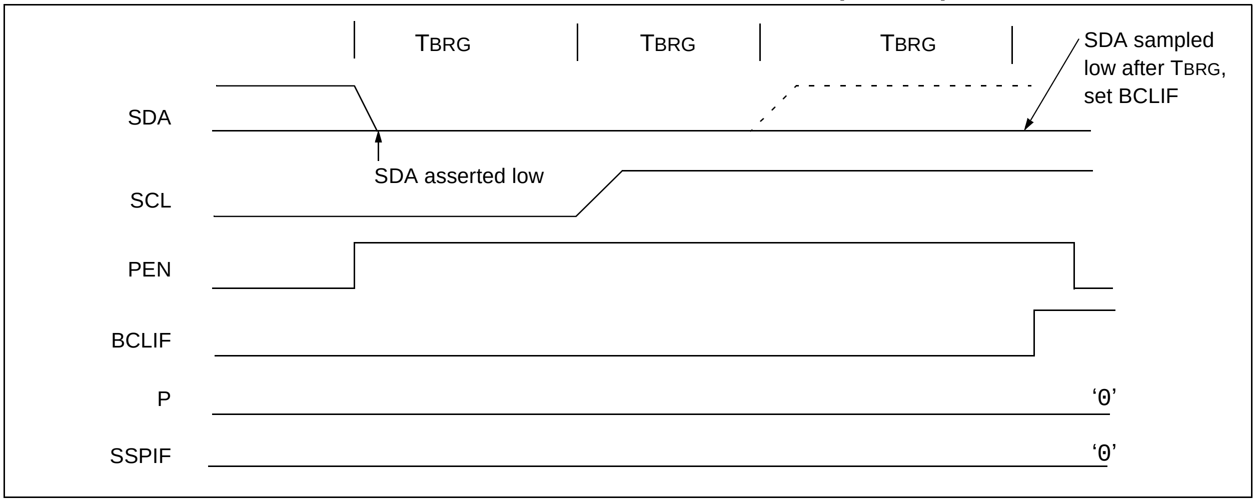
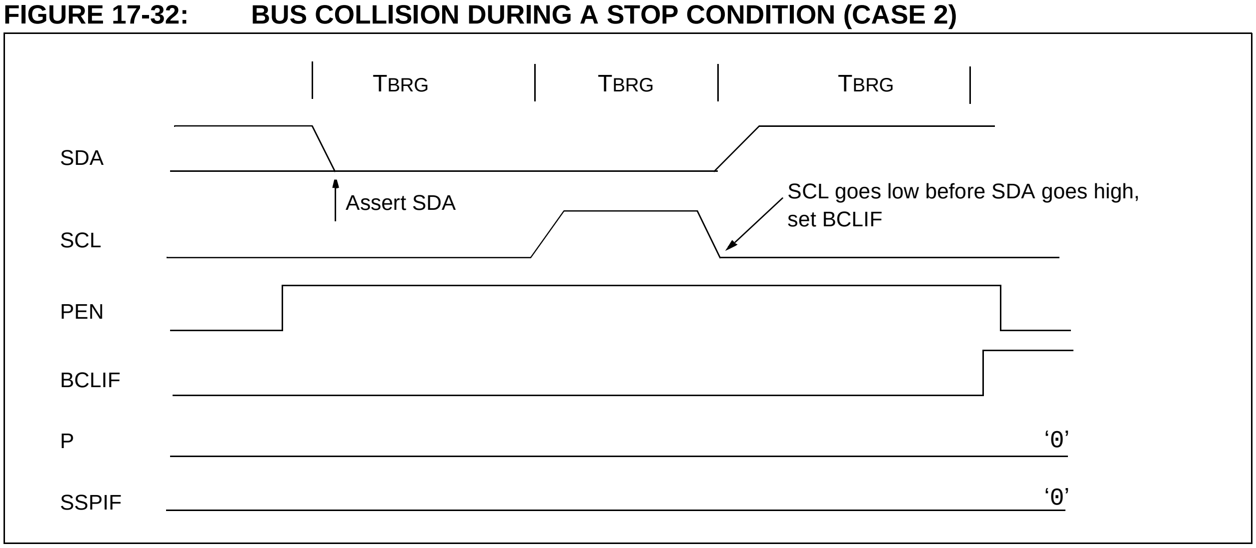


FIGURE 17-32: BUS COLLISION DURING A STOP CONDITION (CASE 2)



NOTES:

18.0 ADDRESSABLE UNIVERSAL SYNCHRONOUS ASYNCHRONOUS RECEIVER TRANSMITTER (USART)

The Universal Synchronous Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (USART) module (also known as a Serial Communications Interface or SCI) is one of the two types of serial I/O modules available on PIC18FXX20 devices. Each device has two USARTs, which can be configured independently of each other. Each can be configured as a full-duplex asynchronous system that can communicate with peripheral devices, such as CRT terminals and personal computers, or as a half-duplex synchronous system that can communicate with peripheral devices, such as A/D or D/A integrated circuits, serial EEPROMs, etc.

The USART can be configured in the following modes:

- Asynchronous (full-duplex)
- Synchronous – Master (half-duplex)
- Synchronous – Slave (half-duplex)

The pins of USART1 and USART2 are multiplexed with the functions of PORTC (RC6/TX1/CK1 and RC7/RX1/DT1) and PORTG (RG1/TX2/CK2 and RG2/RX2/DT2), respectively. In order to configure these pins as a USART:

- For USART1:
  - bit SPEN (RCSTA1<7>) must be set (= `1`)
  - bit TRISC<7> must be set (= `1`)
  - bit TRISC<6> must be cleared (= `0`) for Asynchronous and Synchronous Master modes
  - bit TRISC<6> must be set (= `1`) for Synchronous Slave mode
- For USART2:
  - bit SPEN (RCSTA2<7>) must be set (= `1`)
  - bit TRISG<2> must be set (= `1`)
  - bit TRISG<1> must be cleared (= `0`) for Asynchronous and Synchronous Master modes
  - bit TRISC<6> must be set (= `1`) for Synchronous Slave mode

Register 18-1 shows the layout of the Transmit Status and Control registers (TXSTAx) and Register 18-2 shows the layout of the Receive Status and Control registers (RCSTAx). USART1 and USART2 each have their own independent and distinct pairs of transmit and receive control registers, which are identical to each other apart from their names. Similarly, each USART has its own distinct set of transmit, receive and baud rate registers.

Note:	Throughout this section, references to register and bit names that may be associated with a specific USART module are referred to generically by the use of ‘x’ in place of the specific module number. Thus, “RCSTAx” might refer to the receive status register for either USART1 or USART2.

REGISTER 18-1: TXSTAx: TRANSMIT STATUS AND CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	R/W-0	R-1	R/W-0
CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **CSRC:** Clock Source Select bit

Asynchronous mode:
Don't care.

Synchronous mode:
1 = Master mode (clock generated internally from BRG)
0 = Slave mode (clock from external source)

bit 6 **TX9**: 9-bit Transmit Enable bit

1 = Selects 9-bit transmission
0 = Selects 8-bit transmission

bit 5 **TXEN**: Transmit Enable bit

1 = Transmit enabled
0 = Transmit disabled

Note: SREN/CREN overrides TXEN in Sync mode.

bit 4 **SYNC**: USART Mode Select bit

1 = Synchronous mode
0 = Asynchronous mode

bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2 **BRGH**: High Baud Rate Select bit

Asynchronous mode:
1 = High speed
0 = Low speed

Synchronous mode:
Unused in this mode.

bit 1 **TRMT**: Transmit Shift Register Status bit

1 = TSR empty
0 = TSR full

bit 0 **TX9D:** 9th bit of Transmit Data
Can be address/data bit or a parity bit.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 18-2: RCSTAx: RECEIVE STATUS AND CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R-0	R-0	R-x
SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **SPEN:** Serial Port Enable bit

1 = Serial port enabled (configures RX/DT and TX/CK pins as serial port pins)
0 = Serial port disabled

bit 6 **RX9**: 9-bit Receive Enable bit

1 = Selects 9-bit reception
0 = Selects 8-bit reception

bit 5 **SREN**: Single Receive Enable bit

Asynchronous mode:
Don't care.

Synchronous mode – Master:
1 = Enables single receive
0 = Disables single receive
This bit is cleared after reception is complete.

Synchronous mode – Slave:
Don't care.

bit 4 **CREN**: Continuous Receive Enable bit

Asynchronous mode:
1 = Enables receiver
0 = Disables receiver

Synchronous mode:
1 = Enables continuous receive until enable bit CREN is cleared (CREN overrides SREN)
0 = Disables continuous receive

bit 3 **ADDEN**: Address Detect Enable bit

Asynchronous mode 9-bit (RX9 = 1):
1 = Enables address detection, enables interrupt and load of the receive buffer when RSR<8> is set
0 = Disables address detection, all bytes are received and ninth bit can be used as parity bit

bit 2 **FERR**: Framing Error bit

1 = Framing error (can be updated by reading RCREG register and receive next valid byte)
0 = No framing error

bit 1 **OERR**: Overrun Error bit

1 = Overrun error (can be cleared by clearing bit CREN)
0 = No overrun error

bit 0 **RX9D:** 9th bit of Received Data

This can be address/data bit or a parity bit and must be calculated by user firmware.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

18.1 USART Baud Rate Generator (BRG)

The BRG supports both the Asynchronous and Synchronous modes of the USARTs. It is a dedicated 8-bit Baud Rate Generator. The SPBRG register controls the period of a free running 8-bit timer. In Asynchronous mode, bit BRGH (TXSTAx<2>) also controls the baud rate. In Synchronous mode, bit BRGH is ignored. Table 18-1 shows the formula for computation of the baud rate for different USART modes, which only apply in Master mode (internal clock).

Given the desired baud rate and FOSC, the nearest integer value for the SPBRGx register can be calculated using the formula in Table 18-1. From this, the error in baud rate can be determined.

Example 18-1 shows the calculation of the baud rate error for the following conditions:

- FOSC = 16 MHz
- Desired Baud Rate = 9600
- BRGH = 0
- SYNC = 0

It may be advantageous to use the high baud rate (BRGH = 1) even for slower baud clocks. This is because the equation in Example 18-1 can reduce the baud rate error in some cases.

Writing a new value to the SPBRGx register causes the BRG timer to be reset (or cleared). This ensures the BRG does not wait for a timer overflow before outputting the new baud rate.

18.1.1 SAMPLING

The data on the RXx pin (either RC7/RX1/DT1 or RG2/RX2/DT2) is sampled three times by a majority detect circuit to determine if a high or a low level is present at the pin.

EXAMPLE 18-1: CALCULATING BAUD RATE ERROR

Desired Baud Rate = FOSC/(64 (X + 1))

Solving for X:

X = ((FOSC/Desired Baud Rate)/64) – 1
X = ((16000000/9600)/64) – 1
X = [25.042] = 25

Calculated Baud Rate = 16000000/(64 (25 + 1))
= 9615

Error = (Calculated Baud Rate – Desired Baud Rate) / Desired Baud Rate
= (9615 – 9600)/9600
= 0.16%

TABLE 18-1: BAUD RATE FORMULA

SYNC	BRGH = 0 (Low Speed)	BRGH = 1 (High Speed)
0	(Asynchronous) Baud Rate = FOSC/(64(X + 1))	Baud Rate = FOSC/(16(X + 1))
1	(Synchronous) Baud Rate = FOSC/(4(X + 1))	N/A

Legend: X = value in SPBRGx (0 to 255)

TABLE 18-2: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH BAUD RATE GENERATOR

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
TXSTAx	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 -010	0000 -010
RCSTAx	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 000x	0000 000x
SPBRGx	Baud Rate Generator Register								0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, – = unimplemented, read as ‘0’. Shaded cells are not used by the BRG.

Note 1: Register names generically refer to both of the identically named registers for the two USART modules, where ‘x’ indicates the particular module. Bit names and Reset values are identical between modules.

TABLE 18-3: BAUD RATES FOR SYNCHRONOUS MODE

BAUD RATE (Kbps)	Fosc = 40 MHz			33 MHz			25 MHz			20 MHz		
	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)
0.3	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
1.2	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
2.4	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
9.6	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
19.2	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
76.8	76.92	+0.16	129	77.10	+0.39	106	77.16	+0.47	80	76.92	+0.16	64
96	96.15	+0.16	103	95.93	-0.07	85	96.15	+0.16	64	96.15	+0.16	51
300	303.03	+1.01	32	294.64	-1.79	27	297.62	-0.79	20	294.12	-1.96	16
500	500	0	19	485.30	-2.94	16	480.77	-3.85	12	500	0	9
HIGH	10000	-	0	8250	-	0	6250	-	0	5000	-	0
LOW	39.06	-	255	32.23	-	255	24.41	-	255	19.53	-	255

BAUD RATE (Kbps)	Fosc = 16 MHz			10 MHz			7.15909 MHz			5.0688 MHz		
	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)
0.3	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
1.2	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
2.4	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
9.6	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	9.62	+0.23	185	9.60	0	131
19.2	19.23	+0.16	207	19.23	+0.16	129	19.24	+0.23	92	19.20	0	65
76.8	76.92	+0.16	51	75.76	-1.36	32	77.82	+1.32	22	74.54	-2.94	16
96	95.24	-0.79	41	96.15	+0.16	25	94.20	-1.88	18	97.48	+1.54	12
300	307.70	+2.56	12	312.50	+4.17	7	298.35	-0.57	5	316.80	+5.60	3
500	500	0	7	500	0	4	447.44	-10.51	3	422.40	-15.52	2
HIGH	4000	-	0	2500	-	0	1789.80	-	0	1267.20	-	0
LOW	15.63	-	255	9.77	-	255	6.99	-	255	4.95	-	255

BAUD RATE (Kbps)	Fosc = 4 MHz			3.579545 MHz			1 MHz			32.768 kHz		
	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)
0.3	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	0.30	+1.14	26
1.2	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	1.20	+0.16	207	1.17	-2.48	6
2.4	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	2.40	+0.16	103	2.73	+13.78	2
9.6	9.62	+0.16	103	9.62	+0.23	92	9.62	+0.16	25	8.20	-14.67	0
19.2	19.23	+0.16	51	19.04	-0.83	46	19.23	+0.16	12	NA	-	-
76.8	76.92	+0.16	12	74.57	-2.90	11	83.33	+8.51	2	NA	-	-
96	1000	+4.17	9	99.43	+3.57	8	83.33	-13.19	2	NA	-	-
300	333.33	+11.11	2	298.30	-0.57	2	250	-16.67	0	NA	-	-
500	500	0	1	447.44	-10.51	1	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
HIGH	1000	-	0	894.89	-	0	250	-	0	8.20	-	0
LOW	3.91	-	255	3.50	-	255	0.98	-	255	0.03	-	255

TABLE 18-4: BAUD RATES FOR ASYNCHRONOUS MODE (BRGH = 0)

BAUD RATE (Kbps)	FOSC = 40 MHz			33 MHz			25 MHz			20 MHz		
	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)
0.3	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
1.2	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
2.4	NA	-	-	2.40	-0.07	214	2.40	-0.15	162	2.40	+0.16	129
9.6	9.62	+0.16	64	9.55	-0.54	53	9.53	-0.76	40	9.47	-1.36	32
19.2	18.94	-1.36	32	19.10	-0.54	26	19.53	+1.73	19	19.53	+1.73	15
76.8	78.13	+1.73	7	73.66	-4.09	6	78.13	+1.73	4	78.13	+1.73	3
96	89.29	-6.99	6	103.13	+7.42	4	97.66	+1.73	3	104.17	+8.51	2
300	312.50	+4.17	1	257.81	-14.06	1	NA	-	-	312.50	+4.17	0
500	625	+25.00	0	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
HIGH	625	-	0	515.63	-	0	390.63	-	0	312.50	-	0
LOW	2.44	-	255	2.01	-	255	1.53	-	255	1.22	-	255

BAUD RATE (Kbps)	FOSC = 16 MHz			10 MHz			7.15909 MHz			5.0688 MHz		
	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)
0.3	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
1.2	1.20	+0.16	207	1.20	+0.16	129	1.20	+0.23	92	1.20	0	65
2.4	2.40	+0.16	103	2.40	+0.16	64	2.38	-0.83	46	2.40	0	32
9.6	9.62	+0.16	25	9.77	+1.73	15	9.32	-2.90	11	9.90	+3.13	7
19.2	19.23	+0.16	12	19.53	+1.73	7	18.64	-2.90	5	19.80	+3.13	3
76.8	83.33	+8.51	2	78.13	+1.73	1	111.86	+45.65	0	79.20	+3.13	0
96	83.33	-13.19	2	78.13	-18.62	1	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
300	250	-16.67	0	156.25	-47.92	0	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
500	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
HIGH	250	-	0	156.25	-	0	111.86	-	0	79.20	-	0
LOW	0.98	-	255	0.61	-	255	0.44	-	255	0.31	-	255

BAUD RATE (Kbps)	FOSC = 4 MHz			3.579545 MHz			1 MHz			32.768 kHz		
	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)
0.3	0.30	-0.16	207	0.30	+0.23	185	0.30	+0.16	51	0.26	-14.67	1
1.2	1.20	+1.67	51	1.19	-0.83	46	1.20	+0.16	12	NA	-	-
2.4	2.40	+1.67	25	2.43	+1.32	22	2.23	-6.99	6	NA	-	-
9.6	8.93	-6.99	6	9.32	-2.90	5	7.81	-18.62	1	NA	-	-
19.2	20.83	+8.51	2	18.64	-2.90	2	15.63	-18.62	0	NA	-	-
76.8	62.50	-18.62	0	55.93	-27.17	0	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
96	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
300	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
500	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
HIGH	62.50	-	0	55.93	-	0	15.63	-	0	0.51	-	0
LOW	0.24	-	255	0.22	-	255	0.06	-	255	0.002	-	255

TABLE 18-5: BAUD RATES FOR ASYNCHRONOUS MODE (BRGH = 1)

BAUD RATE (Kbps)	Fosc = 40 MHz			33 MHz			25 MHz			20 MHz		
	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)
0.3	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
1.2	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
2.4	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
9.6	NA	-	-	9.60	-0.07	214	9.59	-0.15	162	9.62	+0.16	129
19.2	19.23	+0.16	129	19.28	+0.39	106	19.30	+0.47	80	19.23	+0.16	64
76.8	75.76	-1.36	32	76.39	-0.54	26	78.13	+1.73	19	78.13	+1.73	15
96	96.15	+0.16	25	98.21	+2.31	20	97.66	+1.73	15	96.15	+0.16	12
300	312.50	+4.17	7	294.64	-1.79	6	312.50	+4.17	4	312.50	+4.17	3
500	500	0	4	515.63	+3.13	3	520.83	+4.17	2	416.67	-16.67	2
HIGH	2500	-	0	2062.50	-	0	1562.50	-	0	1250	-	0
LOW	9.77	-	255	8,06	-	255	6.10	-	255	4.88	-	255

BAUD RATE (Kbps)	Fosc = 16 MHz			10 MHz			7.15909 MHz			5.0688 MHz		
	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)
0.3	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
1.2	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
2.4	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	2.41	+0.23	185	2.40	0	131
9.6	9.62	+0.16	103	9.62	+0.16	64	9.52	-0.83	46	9.60	0	32
19.2	19.23	+0.16	51	18.94	-1.36	32	19.45	+1.32	22	18.64	-2.94	16
76.8	76.92	+0.16	12	78.13	+1.73	7	74.57	-2.90	5	79.20	+3.13	3
96	100	+4.17	9	89.29	-6.99	6	89.49	-6.78	4	105.60	+10.00	2
300	333.33	+11.11	2	312.50	+4.17	1	447.44	+49.15	0	316.80	+5.60	0
500	500	0	1	625	+25.00	0	447.44	-10.51	0	NA	-	-
HIGH	1000	-	0	625	-	0	447.44	-	0	316.80	-	0
LOW	3.91	-	255	2.44	-	255	1.75	-	255	1.24	-	255

BAUD RATE (Kbps)	Fosc = 4 MHz			3.579545 MHz			1 MHz			32.768 kHz		
	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)
0.3	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	0.30	+0.16	207	0.29	-2.48	6
1.2	1.20	+0.16	207	1.20	+0.23	185	1.20	+0.16	51	1.02	-14.67	1
2.4	2.40	+0.16	103	2.41	+0.23	92	2.40	+0.16	25	2.05	-14.67	0
9.6	9.62	+0.16	25	9.73	+1.32	22	8.93	-6.99	6	NA	-	-
19.2	19.23	+0.16	12	18.64	-2.90	11	20.83	+8.51	2	NA	-	-
76.8	NA	-	-	74.57	-2.90	2	62.50	-18.62	0	NA	-	-
96	NA	-	-	111.86	+16.52	1	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
300	NA	-	-	223.72	-25.43	0	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
500	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
HIGH	250	-	0	55.93	-	0	62.50	-	0	2.05	-	0
LOW	0.98	-	255	0.22	-	255	0.24	-	255	0.008	-	255

18.2 USART Asynchronous Mode

In this mode, the USARTs use standard Non-Return-to-Zero (NRZ) format (one Start bit, eight or nine data bits and one Stop bit). The most common data format is 8 bits. An on-chip dedicated 8-bit Baud Rate Generator can be used to derive standard baud rate frequencies from the oscillator. The USART transmits and receives the LSb first. The USART's transmitter and receiver are functionally independent, but use the same data format and baud rate. The Baud Rate Generator produces a clock, either 16 or 64 times the bit shift rate, depending on bit BRGH (TXSTAx<2>). Parity is not supported by the hardware, but can be implemented in software (and stored as the ninth data bit). Asynchronous mode is stopped during Sleep.

Asynchronous mode is selected by clearing bit SYNC (TXSTAx<4>).

The USART Asynchronous module consists of the following important elements:

- Baud Rate Generator
- Sampling Circuit
- Asynchronous Transmitter
- Asynchronous Receiver

18.2.1 USART ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMITTER

The USART transmitter block diagram is shown in Figure 18-1. The heart of the transmitter is the Transmit (Serial) Shift Register (TSR). The shift register obtains its data from the Read/Write Transmit Buffer register, TXREGx. The TXREGx register is loaded with data in software. The TSR register is not loaded until the Stop bit has been transmitted from the previous load. As soon as the Stop bit is transmitted, the TSR is loaded with new data from the TXREGx register (if available). Once the TXREGx register transfers the data to the TSR register (occurs in one TCY), the TXREGx register is empty and flag bit, TXx1IF (PIR1<4> for USART1, PIR3<4> for USART2), is set. This interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing enable bit, TXxIE (PIE1<4> for USART1, PIE<4> for USART2). Flag bit TXxIF will be set, regardless of the state of enable bit TXxIE and cannot be cleared in software. It will reset only when new data is loaded into the TXREGx register. While flag bit TXIF indicates the status of the TXREGx register, another bit, TRMT (TXSTAx<1>), shows the status of the TSR register. Status bit TRMT is a read-only bit, which is set when the TSR register is empty. No interrupt logic is tied to this bit, so the user has to poll this bit in order to determine if the TSR register is empty.

Note 1:	The TSR register is not mapped in data memory, so it is not available to the user.
2:	Flag bit TXIF is set when enable bit TXEN is set.

To set up an Asynchronous Transmission:

1. Initialize the SPBRGx register for the appropriate baud rate. If a high-speed baud rate is desired, set bit BRGH (**Section 18.1 "USART Baud Rate Generator (BRG)"**).
2. Enable the asynchronous serial port by clearing bit SYNC and setting bit SPEN.
3. If interrupts are desired, set enable bit TXxIE in the appropriate PIE register.
4. If 9-bit transmission is desired, set transmit bit TX9. Can be used as address/data bit.
5. Enable the transmission by setting bit TXEN, which will also set bit TXxIF.
6. If 9-bit transmission is selected, the ninth bit should be loaded in bit TX9D.
7. Load data to the TXREGx register (starts transmission).

Note:	TXIF is not cleared immediately upon loading data into the transmit buffer TXREG. The flag bit becomes valid in the second instruction cycle following the load instruction.

FIGURE 18-1: USART TRANSMIT BLOCK DIAGRAM

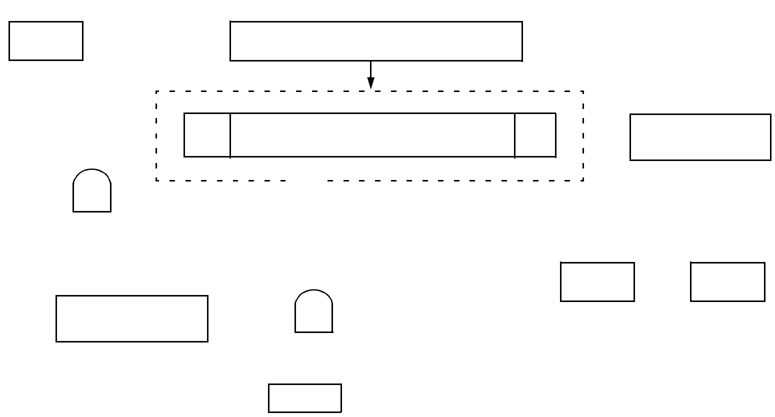


FIGURE 18-2: ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION

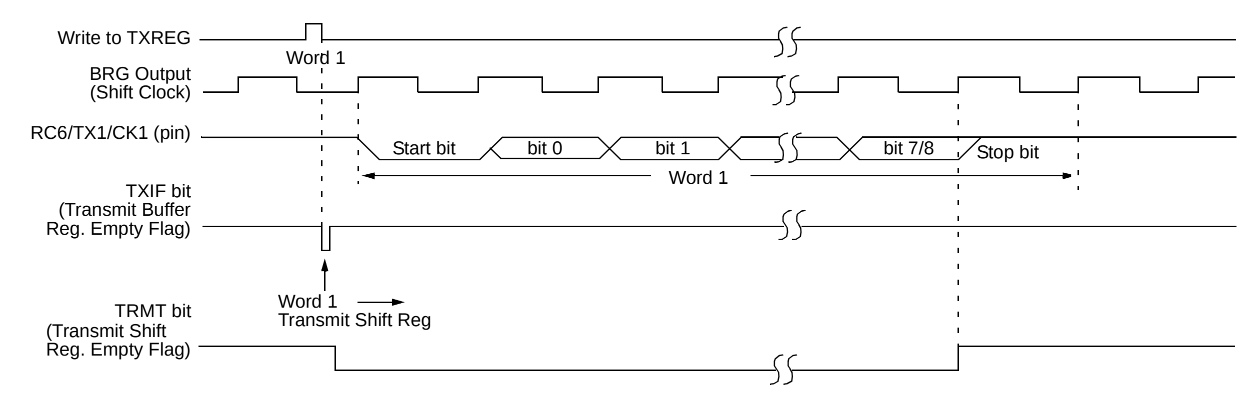
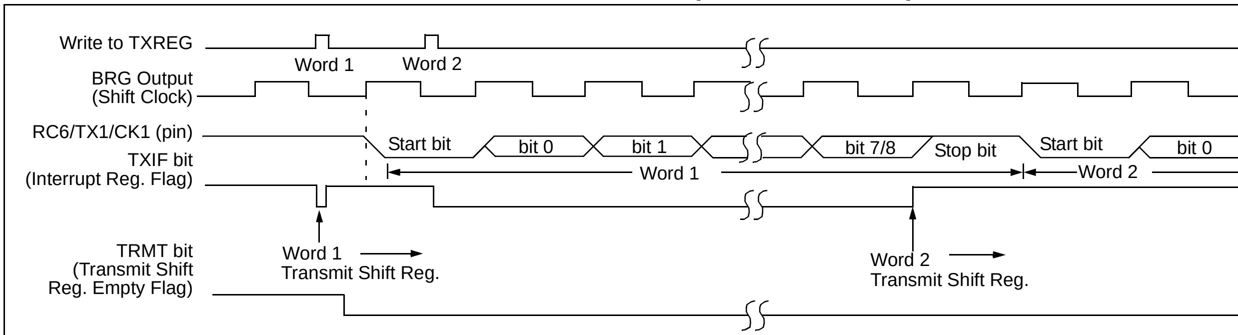


FIGURE 18-3: ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION (BACK TO BACK)



Note: This timing diagram shows two consecutive transmissions.

TABLE 18-6: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIR1	PSPIF	ADIF	RC1IF	TX1IF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE	ADIE	RC1IE	TX1IE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP	ADIP	RC1IP	TX1IP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0111 1111	0111 1111
PIR3	—	—	RC2IF	TX2IF	TMR4IF	CCP5IF	CCP4IF	CCP3IF	--00 0000	--00 0000
PIE3	—	—	RC2IE	TX2IE	TMR4IE	CCP5IE	CCP4IE	CCP3IE	--00 0000	--00 0000
IPR3	—	—	RC2IP	TX2IP	TMR4IP	CCP5IP	CCP4IP	CCP3IP	--11 1111	--11 1111
RCSTAx(1)	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 000x	0000 000x
TXREGx(1)	USART Transmit Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
TXSTAx(1)	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 -010	0000 -010
SPBRGx(1)	Baud Rate Generator Register								0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, – = unimplemented locations read as ‘0’. Shaded cells are not used for asynchronous transmission.

Note 1: Register names generically refer to both of the identically named registers for the two USART modules, where ‘x’ indicates the particular module. Bit names and Reset values are identical between modules.

18.2.2 USART ASYNCHRONOUS RECEIVER

The USART receiver block diagram is shown in Figure 18-4. The data is received on the pin (RC7/RX1/DT1 or RG2/RX2/DT2) and drives the data recovery block. The data recovery block is actually a high-speed shifter operating at 16 times the baud rate, whereas the main receive serial shifter operates at the bit rate or at FOSC. This mode would typically be used in RS-232 systems.

To set up an Asynchronous Reception:

1. Initialize the SPBRG register for the appropriate baud rate. If a high-speed baud rate is desired, set bit BRGH (**Section 18.1 "USART Baud Rate Generator (BRG)"**).
2. Enable the asynchronous serial port by clearing bit SYNC and setting bit SPEN.
3. If interrupts are desired, set enable bit RCxIE.
4. If 9-bit reception is desired, set bit RX9.
5. Enable the reception by setting bit CREN.
6. Flag bit RCxIF will be set when reception is complete and an interrupt will be generated if enable bit RCxIE was set.
7. Read the RCSTAx register to get the ninth bit (if enabled) and determine if any error occurred during reception.
8. Read the 8-bit received data by reading the RCREG register.
9. If any error occurred, clear the error by clearing enable bit CREN.
10. If using interrupts, ensure that the GIE and PEIE bits in the INTCON register (INTCON<7:6>) are set.

18.2.3 SETTING UP 9-BIT MODE WITH ADDRESS DETECT

This mode would typically be used in RS-485 systems. To set up an Asynchronous Reception with Address Detect Enable:

1. Initialize the SPBRGx register for the appropriate baud rate. If a high-speed baud rate is required, set the BRGH bit.
2. Enable the asynchronous serial port by clearing the SYNC bit and setting the SPEN bit.
3. If interrupts are required, set the RCEN bit and select the desired priority level with the RCIP bit.
4. Set the RX9 bit to enable 9-bit reception.
5. Set the ADDEN bit to enable address detect.
6. Enable reception by setting the CREN bit.
7. The RCxIF bit will be set when reception is complete. The interrupt will be Acknowledged if the RCxIE and GIE bits are set.
8. Read the RCSTAx register to determine if any error occurred during reception, as well as read bit 9 of data (if applicable).
9. Read RCREGx to determine if the device is being addressed.
10. If any error occurred, clear the CREN bit.
11. If the device has been addressed, clear the ADDEN bit to allow all received data into the receive buffer and interrupt the CPU.

FIGURE 18-4: USART RECEIVE BLOCK DIAGRAM

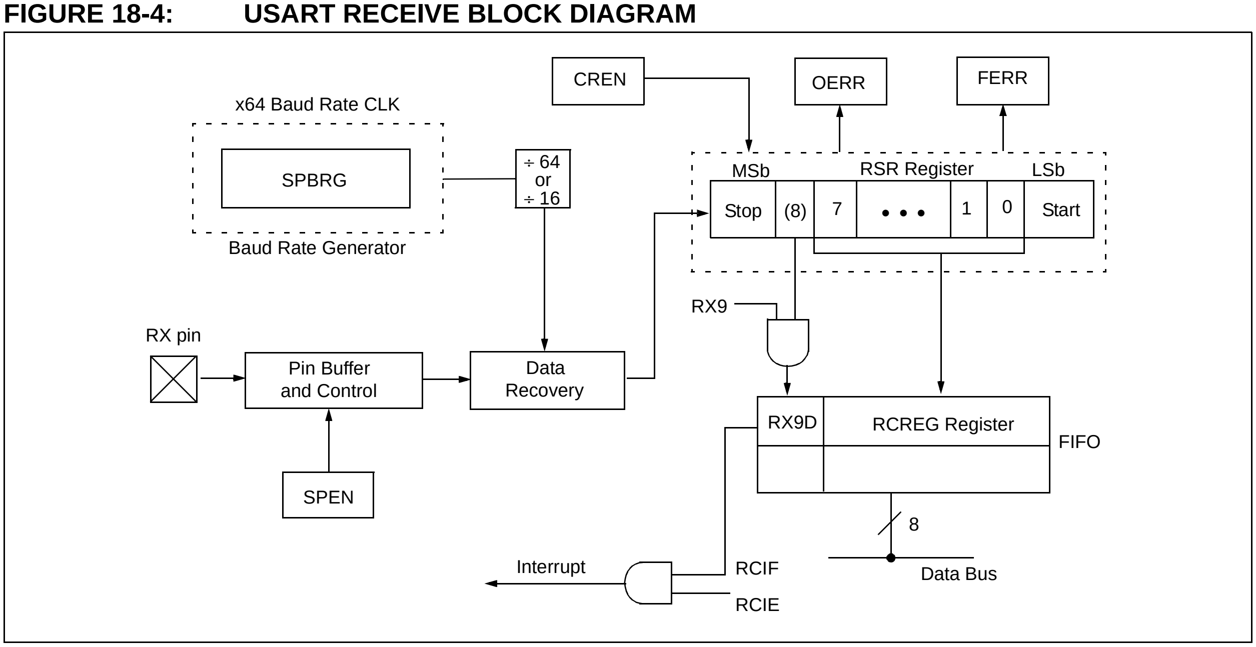
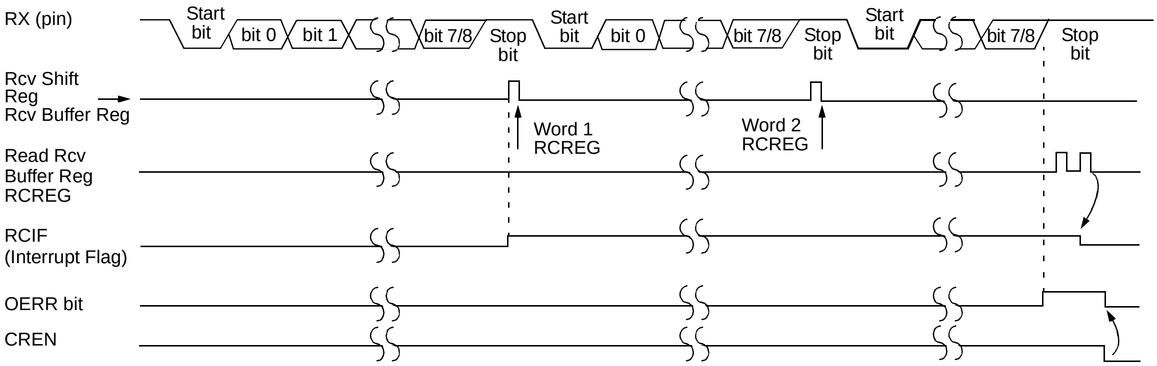


FIGURE 18-5: ASYNCHRONOUS RECEPTION



Note: This timing diagram shows three words appearing on the RX input. The RCREG (receive buffer) is read after the third word, causing the OERR (overrun) bit to be set.

TABLE 18-7: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH ASYNCHRONOUS RECEPTION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
INTCON	GIE/ GIEH	PEIE/ GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIR1	PSPIF	ADIF	RC1IF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE	ADIE	RC1IE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP	ADIP	RC1IP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0111 1111	0111 1111
PIR3	—	—	RC2IF	TX2IF	TMR4IF	CCP5IF	CCP4IF	CCP3IF	--00 0000	--00 0000
PIE3	—	—	RC2IE	TX2IE	TMR4IE	CCP5IE	CCP4IE	CCP3IE	--00 0000	--00 0000
IPR3	—	—	RC2IP	TX2IP	TMR4IP	CCP5IP	CCP4IP	CCP3IP	--11 1111	--11 1111
RCSTAx(1)	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 000x	0000 000x
RCREGx(1)	USART Receive Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
TXSTAx(1)	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 -010	0000 -010
SPBRGx(1)	Baud Rate Generator Register								0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, – = unimplemented locations read as ‘0’. Shaded cells are not used for asynchronous reception.
Note 1: Register names generically refer to both of the identically named registers for the two USART modules, where ‘x’ indicates the particular module. Bit names and Reset values are identical between modules.

18.3 USART Synchronous Master Mode

In Synchronous Master mode, the data is transmitted in a half-duplex manner (i.e., transmission and reception do not occur at the same time). When transmitting data, the reception is inhibited and vice versa. Synchronous mode is entered by setting bit SYNC (TXSTAx<4>). In addition, enable bit SPEN (RCSTAx<7>) is set in order to configure the appropriate I/O pins to CK (clock) and DT (data) lines, respectively. The Master mode indicates that the processor transmits the master clock on the CK line. The Master mode is entered by setting bit CSRC (TXSTAx<7>).

18.3.1 USART SYNCHRONOUS MASTER TRANSMISSION

The USART transmitter block diagram is shown in Figure 18-1. The heart of the transmitter is the Transmit (Serial) Shift Register (TSR). The shift register obtains its data from the Read/Write Transmit Buffer register, TXREG. The TXREGx register is loaded with data in software. The TSR register is not loaded until the last bit has been transmitted from the previous load. As soon as the last bit is transmitted, the TSR is loaded with new data from the TXREGx (if available). Once the TXREGx register transfers the data to the TSR register (occurs in one TCYCLE), the TXREGx is empty and interrupt bit TXxIF (PIR1<4> for USART1, PIR3<4> for USART2) is set. The interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing enable bit TXxIE (PIE1<4> for USART1, PIE3<4> for USART2). Flag bit TXxIF will be set, regardless of the state of enable bit TXxIE and cannot be cleared in software. It will reset only when new data is loaded into the TXREGx register. While flag bit TXxIF indicates the status of the TXREGx register, another bit TRMT (TXSTAx<1>) shows the status of the TSR register. TRMT is a read-only bit, which is set when the TSR is empty. No interrupt logic is tied to this bit, so the user has to poll this bit in order to determine if the TSR register is empty. The TSR is not mapped in data memory, so it is not available to the user.

To set up a Synchronous Master Transmission:

1. Initialize the SPBRG register for the appropriate baud rate (**Section 18.1 "USART Baud Rate Generator (BRG)"**).
2. Enable the synchronous master serial port by setting bits SYNC, SPEN and CSRC.
3. If interrupts are desired, set enable bit TXxIE in the appropriate PIE register.
4. If 9-bit transmission is desired, set bit TX9.
5. Enable the transmission by setting bit TXEN.
6. If 9-bit transmission is selected, the ninth bit should be loaded in bit TX9D.
7. Start transmission by loading data to the TXREGx register.

Note: TXIF is not cleared immediately upon loading data into the transmit buffer TXREG. The flag bit becomes valid in the second instruction cycle following the load instruction.

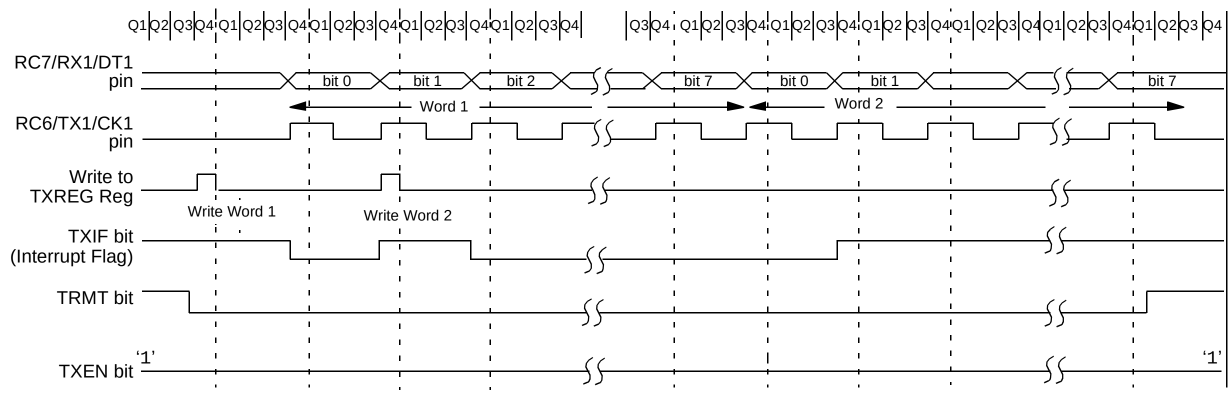
TABLE 18-8: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS MASTER TRANSMISSION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIR1	PSPIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0111 1111	0111 1111
PIR3	—	—	RC2IF	TX2IF	TMR4IF	CCP5IF	CCP4IF	CCP3IF	--00 0000	--00 0000
PIE3	—	—	RC2IE	TX2IE	TMR4IE	CCP5IE	CCP4IE	CCP3IE	--00 0000	--00 0000
IPR3	—	—	RC2IP	TX2IP	TMR4IP	CCP5IP	CCP4IP	CCP3IP	--11 1111	--11 1111
RCSTAx(1)	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 000x	0000 000x
TXREGx(1)	USART Transmit Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
TXSTAx(1)	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 -010	0000 -010
SPBRGx(1)	Baud Rate Generator Register								0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, – = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for synchronous master transmission.

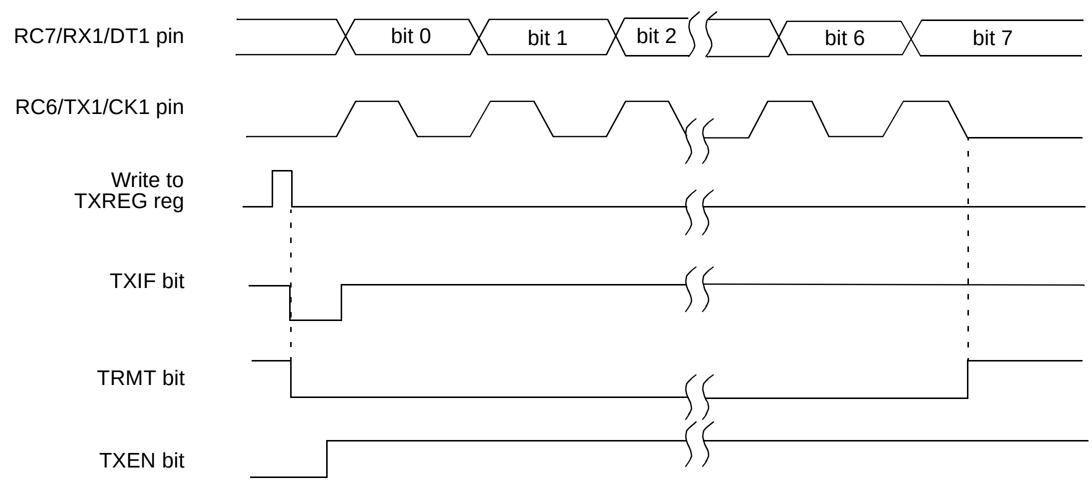
Note 1: Register names generically refer to both of the identically named registers for the two USART modules, where 'x' indicates the particular module. Bit names and Reset values are identical between modules.

FIGURE 18-6: SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION



Note: Sync Master mode; SPBRG = 0. Continuous transmission of two 8-bit words.

FIGURE 18-7: SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION (THROUGH TXEN)



18.3.2 USART SYNCHRONOUS MASTER RECEPTION

Once Synchronous mode is selected, reception is enabled by setting either enable bit SREN (RCSTAx<5>) or enable bit CREN (RCSTAx<4>). Data

18.4 USART Synchronous Slave Mode

Synchronous Slave mode differs from the Master mode in the fact that the shift clock is supplied externally at the TXx pin (RC6/TX1/CK1 or RG1/TX2/CK2), instead of being supplied internally in Master mode. TRISC<6> must be set for this mode. This allows the device to transfer or receive data while in Sleep mode. Slave mode is entered by clearing bit CSRC (TXSTAx<7>).

18.4.1 USART SYNCHRONOUS SLAVE TRANSMIT

The operation of the Synchronous Master and Slave modes are identical, except in the case of the Sleep mode.

If two words are written to the TXREG and then the `SLEEP` instruction is executed, the following will occur:

a) The first word will immediately transfer to the TSR register and transmit.

b) The second word will remain in TXREG register.

c) Flag bit TXxIF will not be set.

d) When the first word has been shifted out of TSR, the TXREGx register will transfer the second word to the TSR and flag bit TXxIF will now be set.

e) If enable bit TXxIE is set, the interrupt will wake the chip from Sleep. If the global interrupt is enabled, the program will branch to the interrupt vector.

To set up a Synchronous Slave Transmission:

1. Enable the synchronous slave serial port by setting bits SYNC and SPEN and clearing bit CSRC.
2. Clear bits CREN and SREN.
3. If interrupts are desired, set enable bit TXxIE.
4. If 9-bit transmission is desired, set bit TX9.
5. Enable the transmission by setting enable bit TXEN.
6. If 9-bit transmission is selected, the ninth bit should be loaded in bit TX9D.
7. Start transmission by loading data to the TXREGx register.
8. If using interrupts, ensure that the GIE and PEIE bits in the INTCON register (INTCON<7:6>) are set.

TABLE 18-10: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS SLAVE TRANSMISSION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIR1	PSPIF	ADIF	RC1IF	TX1IF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE	ADIE	RC1IE	TX1IE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP	ADIP	RC1IP	TX1IP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0111 1111	0111 1111
PIR3	—	—	RC2IF	TX2IF	TMR4IF	CCP5IF	CCP4IF	CCP3IF	--00 0000	--00 0000
PIE3	—	—	RC2IE	TX2IE	TMR4IE	CCP5IE	CCP4IE	CCP3IE	--00 0000	--00 0000
IPR3	—	—	RC2IP	TX2IP	TMR4IP	CCP5IP	CCP4IP	CCP3IP	--11 1111	--11 1111
RCSTAx(1)	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 000x	0000 000x
TXREGx(1)	USART Transmit Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
TXSTAx(1)	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 -010	0000 -010
SPBRGx(1)	Baud Rate Generator Register								0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, – = unimplemented, read as ‘0’. Shaded cells are not used for synchronous slave transmission.

Note 1: Register names generically refer to both of the identically named registers for the two USART modules, where ‘x’ indicates the particular module. Bit names and Reset values are identical between modules.

18.4.2 USART SYNCHRONOUS SLAVE RECEPTION

The operation of the Synchronous Master and Slave modes is identical, except in the case of the Sleep mode and bit SREN, which is a “don’t care” in Slave mode.

If receive is enabled by setting bit CREN prior to the SLEEP instruction, then a word may be received during Sleep. On completely receiving the word, the RSR register will transfer the data to the RCREG register and if enable bit RCxIE bit is set, the interrupt generated will wake the chip from Sleep. If the global interrupt is enabled, the program will branch to the interrupt vector.

To set up a Synchronous Slave Reception:

1. Enable the synchronous master serial port by setting bits SYNC and SPEN and clearing bit CSRC.
2. If interrupts are desired, set enable bit RCxIE.
3. If 9-bit reception is desired, set bit RX9.
4. To enable reception, set enable bit CREN.
5. Flag bit RCxIF will be set when reception is complete. An interrupt will be generated if enable bit RCxIE was set.
6. Read the RCSTAx register to get the ninth bit (if enabled) and determine if any error occurred during reception.
7. Read the 8-bit received data by reading the RCREGx register.
8. If any error occurred, clear the error by clearing bit CREN.
9. If using interrupts, ensure that the GIE and PEIE bits in the INTCON register (INTCON<7:6>) are set.

TABLE 18-11: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS SLAVE RECEPTION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIR1	PSPIF	ADIF	RC1IF	TX1IF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE	ADIE	RC1IE	TX1IE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP	ADIP	RC1IP	TX1IP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0111 1111	0111 1111
PIR3	—	—	RC2IF	TX2IF	TMR4IF	CCP5IF	CCP4IF	CCP3IF	--00 0000	--00 0000
PIE3	—	—	RC2IE	TX2IE	TMR4IE	CCP5IE	CCP4IE	CCP3IE	--00 0000	--00 0000
IPR3	—	—	RC2IP	TX2IP	TMR4IP	CCP5IP	CCP4IP	CCP3IP	--11 1111	--11 1111
RCSTAx(1)	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 000x	0000 000x
RCREGx(1)	USART Receive Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
TXSTAx(1)	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 -010	0000 -010
SPBRGx(1)	Baud Rate Generator Register								0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, – = unimplemented, read as ‘0’. Shaded cells are not used for synchronous slave reception.

Note 1: Register names generically refer to both of the identically named registers for the two USART modules, where ‘x’ indicates the particular module. Bit names and Reset values are identical between modules.

19.0 10-BIT ANALOG-TO-DIGITAL CONVERTER (A/D) MODULE

The analog-to-digital (A/D) converter module has 12 inputs for the PIC18F6X20 devices and 16 for the PIC18F8X20 devices. This module allows conversion of an analog input signal to a corresponding 10-bit digital number.

The module has five registers:

- A/D Result High Register (ADRESH)
- A/D Result Low Register (ADRESL)
- A/D Control Register 0 (ADCON0)
- A/D Control Register 1 (ADCON1)
- A/D Control Register 2 (ADCON2)

The ADCON0 register, shown in Register 19-1, controls the operation of the A/D module. The ADCON1 register, shown in Register 19-2, configures the functions of the port pins. The ADCON2 register, shown in Register 19-3, configures the A/D clock source and justification.

REGISTER 19-1: ADCON0 REGISTER

U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	—	CHS3	CHS2	CHS1	CHS0	GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$	ADON
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 5-2 **CHS3:CHS0:** Analog Channel Select bits
`0000` = Channel 0 (AN0)
`0001` = Channel 1 (AN1)
`0010` = Channel 2 (AN2)
`0011` = Channel 3 (AN3)
`0100` = Channel 4 (AN4)
`0101` = Channel 5 (AN5)
`0110` = Channel 6 (AN6)
`0111` = Channel 7 (AN7)
`1000` = Channel 8 (AN8)
`1001` = Channel 9 (AN9)
`1010` = Channel 10 (AN10)
`1011` = Channel 11 (AN11)
`1100` = Channel 12 (AN12)(1)
`1101` = Channel 13 (AN13)(1)
`1110` = Channel 14 (AN14)(1)
`1111` = Channel 15 (AN15)(1)

Note 1: These channels are not available on the PIC18F6X20 (64-pin) devices.

bit 1 **GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$:** A/D Conversion Status bit
<u>When ADON = 1:</u>
`1` = A/D conversion in progress (setting this bit starts the A/D conversion, which is automatically cleared by hardware when the A/D conversion is complete)
`0` = A/D conversion not in progress

bit 0 **ADON:** A/D On bit
`1` = A/D converter module is enabled
`0` = A/D converter module is disabled

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 19-2: ADCON1 REGISTER

U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	—	VCFG1	VCFG0	PCFG3	PCFG2	PCFG1	PCFG0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-4 **VCFG1:VCFG0:** Voltage Reference Configuration bits:

VCFG1 VCFG0	A/D VREF+	A/D VREF-
00	AVDD	AVSS
01	External VREF+	AVSS
10	AVDD	External VREF-
11	External VREF+	External VREF-

bit 3-0 **PCFG3:PCFG0:** A/D Port Configuration Control bits:

PCFG3 PCFG0	AN15	AN14	AN13	AN12	AN11	AN10	AN9	AN8	AN7	AN6	AN5	AN4	AN3	AN2	AN1	AN0
0000	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
0001	D	D	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
0010	D	D	D	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
0011	D	D	D	D	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
0100	D	D	D	D	D	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
0101	D	D	D	D	D	D	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
0110	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
0111	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
1000	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
1001	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	A	A	A	A	A	A
1010	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	A	A	A	A	A
1011	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	A	A	A	A
1100	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	A	A	A
1101	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	A	A
1110	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	A
1111	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D

A = Analog input D = Digital I/O

Note: Shaded cells indicate A/D channels available only on PIC18F8X20 devices.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 19-3: ADCON2 REGISTER

R/W-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
ADFM	—	—	—	—	ADCS2	ADCS1	ADCS0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **ADFM:** A/D Result Format Select bit
1 = Right justified
0 = Left justified

bit 6-3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2-0 **ADCS1:ADCS0:** A/D Conversion Clock Select bits
000 = FOSC/2
001 = FOSC/8
010 = FOSC/32
011 = FRC (clock derived from an RC oscillator = 1 MHz max)
100 = FOSC/4
101 = FOSC/16
110 = FOSC/64
111 = FRC (clock derived from an RC oscillator = 1 MHz max)

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

The analog reference voltage is software selectable to either the device's positive and negative supply voltage (VDD and VSS), or the voltage level on the RA3/AN3/VREF+ pin and RA2/AN2/VREF- pin.

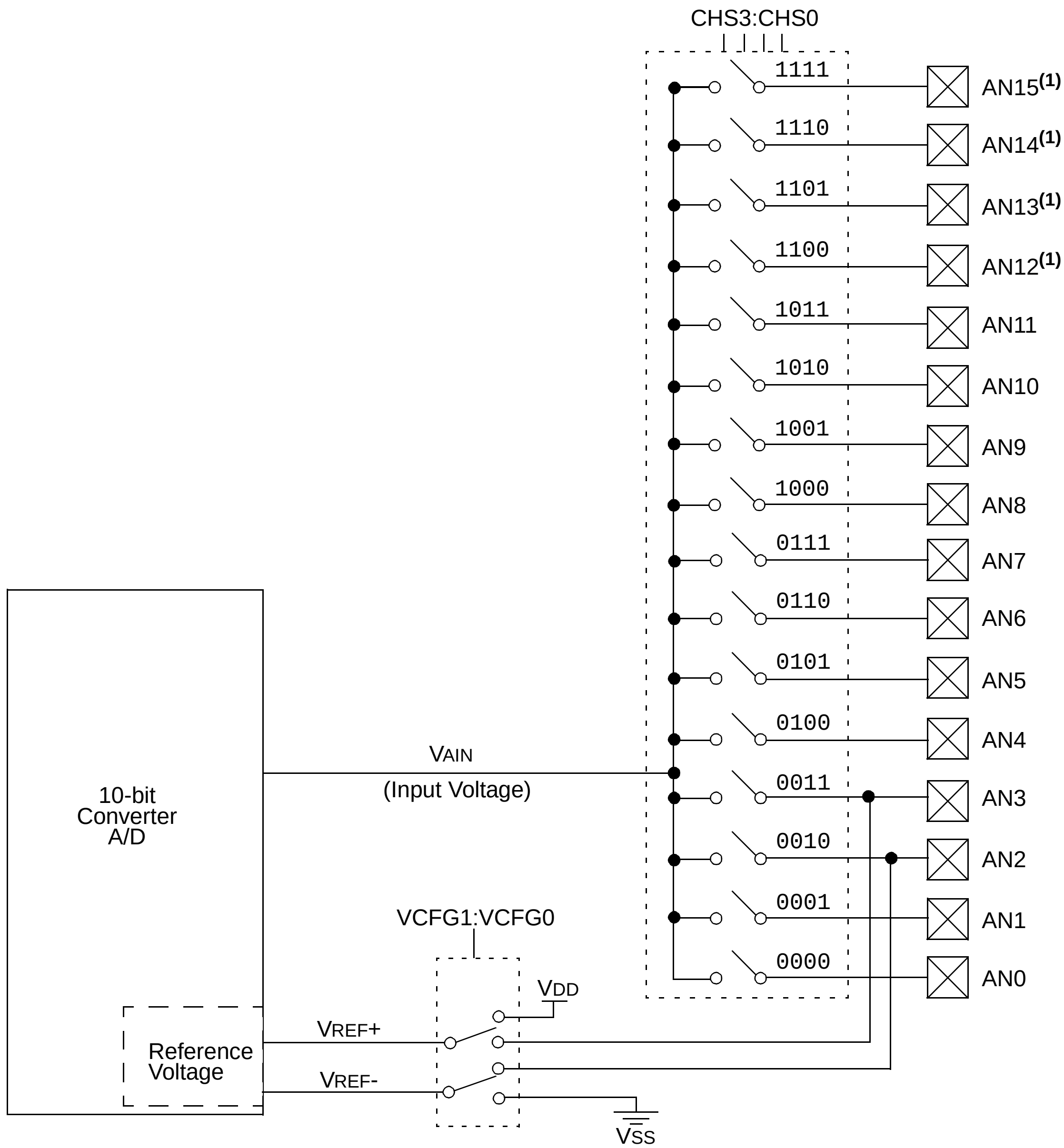
The A/D converter has a unique feature of being able to operate while the device is in Sleep mode. To operate in Sleep, the A/D conversion clock must be derived from the A/D's internal RC oscillator.

The output of the sample and hold is the input into the converter, which generates the result via successive approximation.

A device Reset forces all registers to their Reset state. This forces the A/D module to be turned off and any conversion is aborted.

Each port pin associated with the A/D converter can be configured as an analog input (RA3 can also be a voltage reference), or as a digital I/O. The ADRESH and ADRESL registers contain the result of the A/D conversion. When the A/D conversion is complete, the result is loaded into the ADRESH/ADRESL registers, the GO/DONE bit (ADCON0 register) is cleared and A/D interrupt flag bit, ADIF, is set. The block diagram of the A/D module is shown in Figure 19-1.

FIGURE 19-1: A/D BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: Channels AN15 through AN12 are not available on PIC18F6X20 devices.

2: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

The value in the ADRESH/ADRESL registers is not modified for a Power-on Reset. The ADRESH/ ADRESL registers will contain unknown data after a Power-on Reset.

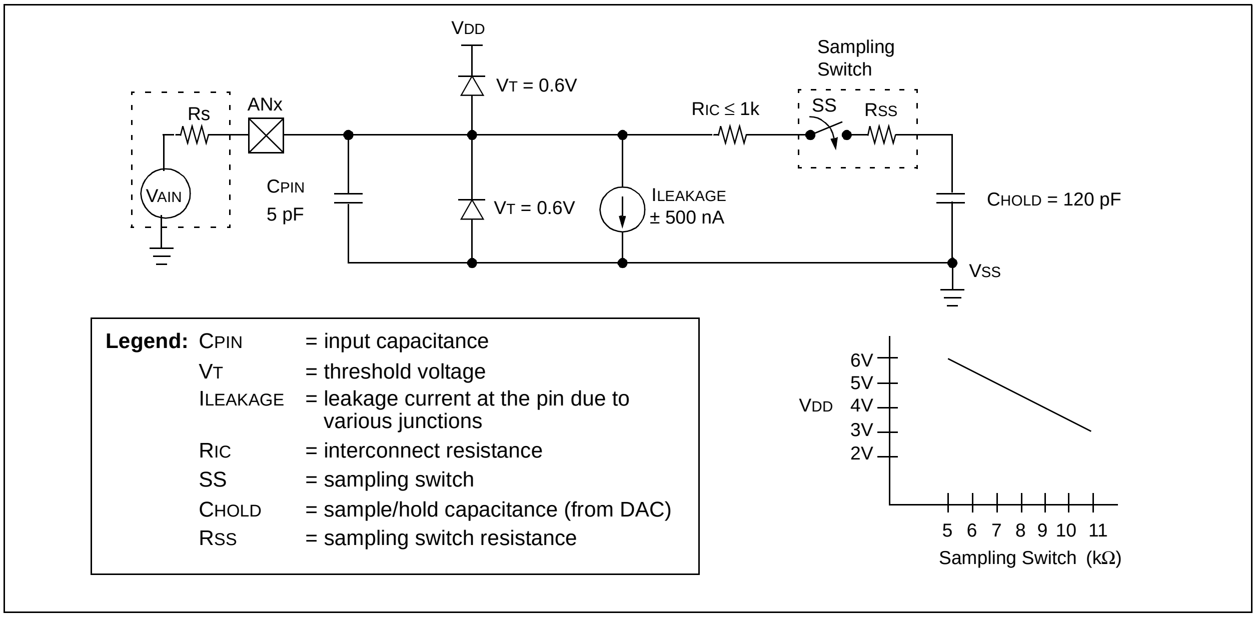
After the A/D module has been configured as desired, the selected channel must be acquired before the conversion is started. The analog input channels must have their corresponding TRIS bits selected as an input. To determine acquisition time, see **Section 19.1 "A/D Acquisition Requirements"**. After this acquisition time has elapsed, the A/D conversion can be started.

The following steps should be followed to do an A/D conversion:

1. Configure the A/D module:
   - Configure analog pins, voltage reference and digital I/O (ADCON1)
   - Select A/D input channel (ADCON0)
   - Select A/D conversion clock (ADCON2)
   - Turn on A/D module (ADCON0)
2. Configure A/D interrupt (if desired):
   - Clear ADIF bit
   - Set ADIE bit
   - Set GIE bit
3. Wait the required acquisition time.
4. Start conversion:
   - Set GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit (ADCON0 register)
5. Wait for A/D conversion to complete, by either:
   - Polling for the GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit to be cleared

   OR
   - Waiting for the A/D interrupt
6. Read A/D Result registers (ADRESH:ADRESL); clear bit ADIF, if required.
7. For the next conversion, go to step 1 or step 2, as required. The A/D conversion time per bit is defined as TAD. A minimum wait of 2 TAD is required before the next acquisition starts.

FIGURE 19-2: ANALOG INPUT MODEL



19.1 A/D Acquisition Requirements

For the A/D converter to meet its specified accuracy, the charge holding capacitor (CHOLD) must be allowed to fully charge to the input channel voltage level. The analog input model is shown in Figure 19-2. The source impedance (RS) and the internal sampling switch (RSS) impedance directly affect the time required to charge the capacitor CHOLD. The sampling switch (RSS) impedance varies over the device voltage (VDD). The source impedance affects the offset voltage at the analog input (due to pin leakage current). **The maximum recommended impedance for analog sources is 2.5 kΩ**. After the analog input channel is selected (changed), this acquisition must be done before the conversion can be started.

Note:	When the conversion is started, the holding capacitor is disconnected from the input pin.

To calculate the minimum acquisition time, Equation 19-1 may be used. This equation assumes that 1/2 LSb error is used (1024 steps for the A/D). The 1/2 LSb error is the maximum error allowed for the A/D to meet its specified resolution.

Example 19-1 shows the calculation of the minimum required acquisition time, TACQ. This calculation is based on the following application system assumptions:

CHOLD	=	120 pF
Rs	=	2.5 kΩ
Conversion Error	≤	1/2 LSb
VDD	=	5V → Rss = 7 kΩ
Temperature	=	50°C (system max.)
VHOLD	=	0V @ time = 0

Note:	When using external voltage references with the A/D converter, the source impedance of the external voltage references must be less than 20Ω to obtain the A/D performance specified in parameters A01-A06. Higher reference source impedances will increase both offset and gain errors. Resistive voltage dividers will not provide a sufficiently low source impedance. To maintain the best possible performance in A/D conversions, external VREF inputs should be buffered with an operational amplifier or other low output impedance circuit. If deviating from the operating conditions specified for parameters A03-A06, the effect of parameter A50 (VREF input current) must be considered.

EQUATION 19-1: ACQUISITION TIME

$$T_{ACQ} = \text{Amplifier Settling Time} + \text{Holding Capacitor Charging Time} + \text{Temperature Coefficient}$$
$$= T_{AMP} + T_C + T_{COFF}$$

EQUATION 19-2: A/D MINIMUM CHARGING TIME

$$V_{HOLD} = (V_{REF} - (V_{REF}/2048)) \bullet (1 - e^{(-T_C/C_{HOLD}(R_{IC} + R_{SS} + R_S))})$$
or
$$T_C = -(120\text{ pF})(1\text{ k}\Omega + R_{SS} + R_S)\ln(1/2047)$$

EXAMPLE 19-1: CALCULATING THE MINIMUM REQUIRED ACQUISITION TIME

$$T_{ACQ} = T_{AMP} + T_C + T_{COFF}$$

Temperature coefficient is only required for temperatures > 25°C.

$$T_{ACQ} = 2\ \mu s + T_C + [(\text{Temp} - 25°C)(0.05\ \mu s/°C)]$$

$$\begin{aligned} T_C &= -C_{HOLD}(R_{IC} + R_{SS} + R_S)\ln(1/2047) \\ &\quad -120\text{ pF }(1\text{ k}\Omega + 7\text{ k}\Omega + 2.5\text{ k}\Omega)\ln(0.0004885) \\ &\quad -120\text{ pF }(10.5\text{ k}\Omega)\ln(0.0004885) \\ &\quad -1.26\ \mu s\ (-7.6241) \\ &\quad 9.61\ \mu s \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} T_{ACQ} &= 2\ \mu s + 9.61\ \mu s + [(50°C - 25°C)(0.05\ \mu s/°C)] \\ &\quad 11.61\ \mu s + 1.25\ \mu s \\ &\quad 12.86\ \mu s \end{aligned}$$

19.2 Selecting the A/D Conversion Clock

The A/D conversion time per bit is defined as TAD. The A/D conversion requires 12 TAD per 10-bit conversion. The source of the A/D conversion clock is software selectable. There are seven possible options for TAD:

- 2 TOSC
- 4 TOSC
- 8 TOSC
- 16 TOSC
- 32 TOSC
- 64 TOSC
- Internal RC oscillator

For correct A/D conversions, the A/D conversion clock (TAD) must be selected to ensure a minimum TAD time of 1.6 μs.

Table 19-1 shows the resultant TAD times derived from the device operating frequencies and the A/D clock source selected.

19.3 Configuring Analog Port Pins

The ADCON1, TRISA, TRISF and TRISH registers control the operation of the A/D port pins. The port pins needed as analog inputs must have their corresponding TRIS bits set (input). If the TRIS bit is cleared (output), the digital output level (VOH or VOL) will be converted.

The A/D operation is independent of the state of the CHS3:CHS0 bits and the TRIS bits.

Note 1: When reading the port register, all pins configured as analog input channels will read as cleared (a low level). Pins configured as digital inputs will convert as an analog input. Analog levels on a digitally configured input will not affect the conversion accuracy.

2: Analog levels on any pin defined as a digital input may cause the input buffer to consume current out of the device's specification limits.

TABLE 19-1: TAD vs. DEVICE OPERATING FREQUENCIES

AD Clock Source (TAD)		Maximum Device Frequency	
Operation	**ADCS2:ADCS0**	**PIC18FXX20**	**PIC18LFXX20**
2 TOSC	`000`	1.25 MHz	666 kHz
4 TOSC	`100`	2.50 MHz	1.33 MHz
8 TOSC	`001`	5.00 MHz	2.67 MHz
16 TOSC	`101`	10.0 MHz	5.33 MHz
32 TOSC	`010`	20.0 MHz	10.67 MHz
64 TOSC	`110`	40.0 MHz	21.33 MHz
RC	`x11`	—	—

19.4 A/D Conversions

Figure 19-3 shows the operation of the A/D converter after the GO bit has been set. Clearing the GO/DONE bit during a conversion will abort the current conversion. The A/D Result register pair will NOT be updated with the partially completed A/D conversion sample. That is, the ADRESH:ADRESL registers will continue to contain the value of the last completed conversion (or the last value written to the ADRESH:ADRESL registers). After the A/D conversion is aborted, a 2 TAD wait is required before the next acquisition is started. After this 2 TAD wait, acquisition on the selected channel is automatically started.

Note:	The GO/DONE bit should **NOT** be set in the same instruction that turns on the A/D.

19.5 Use of the CCP2 Trigger

An A/D conversion can be started by the "special event trigger" of the CCP2 module. This requires that the CCP2M3:CCP2M0 bits (CCP2CON<3:0>) be programmed as '1011' and that the A/D module is enabled (ADON bit is set). When the trigger occurs, the GO/DONE bit will be set, starting the A/D conversion and the Timer1 (or Timer3) counter will be reset to zero. Timer1 (or Timer3) is reset to automatically repeat the A/D acquisition period with minimal software overhead (moving ADRESH/ADRESL to the desired location). The appropriate analog input channel must be selected and the minimum acquisition done before the "special event trigger" sets the GO/DONE bit (starts a conversion).

If the A/D module is not enabled (ADON is cleared), the "special event trigger" will be ignored by the A/D module, but will still reset the Timer1 (or Timer3) counter.

FIGURE 19-3: A/D CONVERSION TAD CYCLES

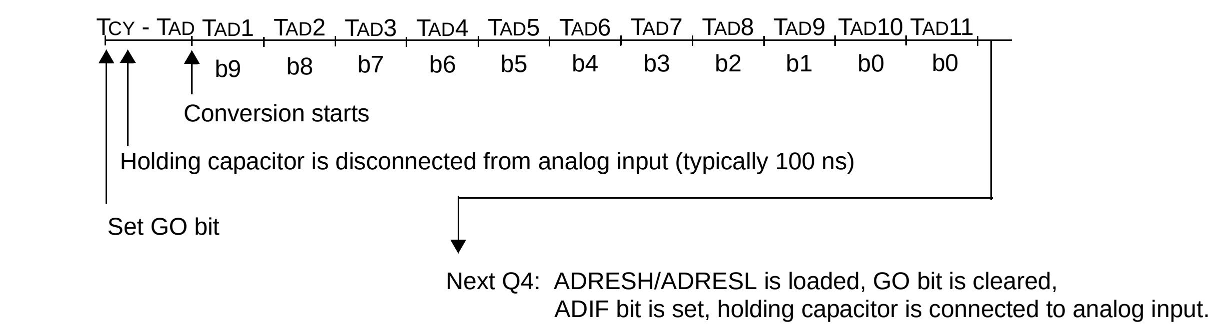


TABLE 19-2: SUMMARY OF A/D REGISTERS

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIR1	PSPIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0111 1111	0111 1111
PIR2	—	CMIF	—	—	BCLIF	LVDIF	TMR3IF	CCP2IF	-0-- 0000	-0-- 0000
PIE2	—	CMIE	—	—	BCLIE	LVDIE	TMR3IE	CCP2IE	-0-- 0000	-0-- 0000
IPR2	—	CMIP	—	—	BCLIP	LVDIP	TMR3IP	CCP2IP	-0-- 0000	-0-- 0000
ADRESH	A/D Result Register High Byte								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
ADRESL	A/D Result Register Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
ADCON0	—	—	CHS3	CHS3	CHS1	CHS0	GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$	ADON	--00 0000	--00 0000
ADCON1	—	—	VCFG1	VCFG0	PCFG3	PCFG2	PCFG1	PCFG0	--00 0000	--00 0000
ADCON2	ADFM	—	—	—	—	ADCS2	ADCS1	ADCS0	0--- -000	0--- -000
PORTA	—	RA6	RA5	RA4	RA3	RA2	RA1	RA0	--0x 0000	--0u 0000
TRISA	—	PORTA Data Direction Register							--11 1111	--11 1111
PORTF	RF7	RF6	RF5	RF4	RF3	RF2	RF1	RF0	x000 0000	u000 0000
LATF	LATF7	LATF6	LATF5	LATF4	LATF3	LATF2	LATF1	LATF0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TRISF	PORTF Data Direction Control Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
PORTH(1)	RH7	RH6	RH5	RH4	RH3	RH2	RH1	RH0	0000 xxxx	0000 xxxx
LATH(1)	LATH7	LATH6	LATH5	LATH4	LATH3	LATH2	LATH1	LATH0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TRISH(1)	PORTH Data Direction Control Register								1111 1111	1111 1111

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, – = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for A/D conversion.

Note 1: Only available on PIC18F8X20 devices.

NOTES:

20.0 COMPARATOR MODULE

The comparator module contains two analog comparators. The inputs to the comparators are multiplexed with the RF1 through RF6 pins. The on-chip voltage reference (**Section 21.0 "Comparator Voltage Reference Module"**) can also be an input to the comparators.

The CMCON register, shown as Register 20-1, controls the comparator input and output multiplexers. A block diagram of the various comparator configurations is shown in Figure 20-1.

REGISTER 20-1: CMCON REGISTER

R-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
C2OUT	C1OUT	C2INV	C1INV	CIS	CM2	CM1	CM0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **C2OUT**: Comparator 2 Output bit
When C2INV = 0:
1 = C2 VIN+ > C2 VIN-
0 = C2 VIN+ < C2 VIN-
When C2INV = 1:
1 = C2 VIN+ < C2 VIN-
0 = C2 VIN+ > C2 VIN-

bit 6 **C1OUT**: Comparator 1 Output bit
When C1INV = 0:
1 = C1 VIN+ > C1 VIN-
0 = C1 VIN+ < C1 VIN-
When C1INV = 1:
1 = C1 VIN+ < C1 VIN-
0 = C1 VIN+ > C1 VIN-

bit 5 **C2INV**: Comparator 2 Output Inversion bit
1 = C2 output inverted
0 = C2 output not inverted

bit 4 **C1INV**: Comparator 1 Output Inversion bit
1 = C1 output inverted
0 = C1 output not inverted

bit 3 **CIS**: Comparator Input Switch bit
When CM2:CM0 = 110:
1 = C1 VIN- connects to RF5/AN10
C2 VIN- connects to RF3/AN8
0 = C1 VIN- connects to RF6/AN11
C2 VIN- connects to RF4/AN9

bit 2-0 **CM2:CM0**: Comparator Mode bits
Figure 20-1 shows the Comparator modes and the CM2:CM0 bit settings.

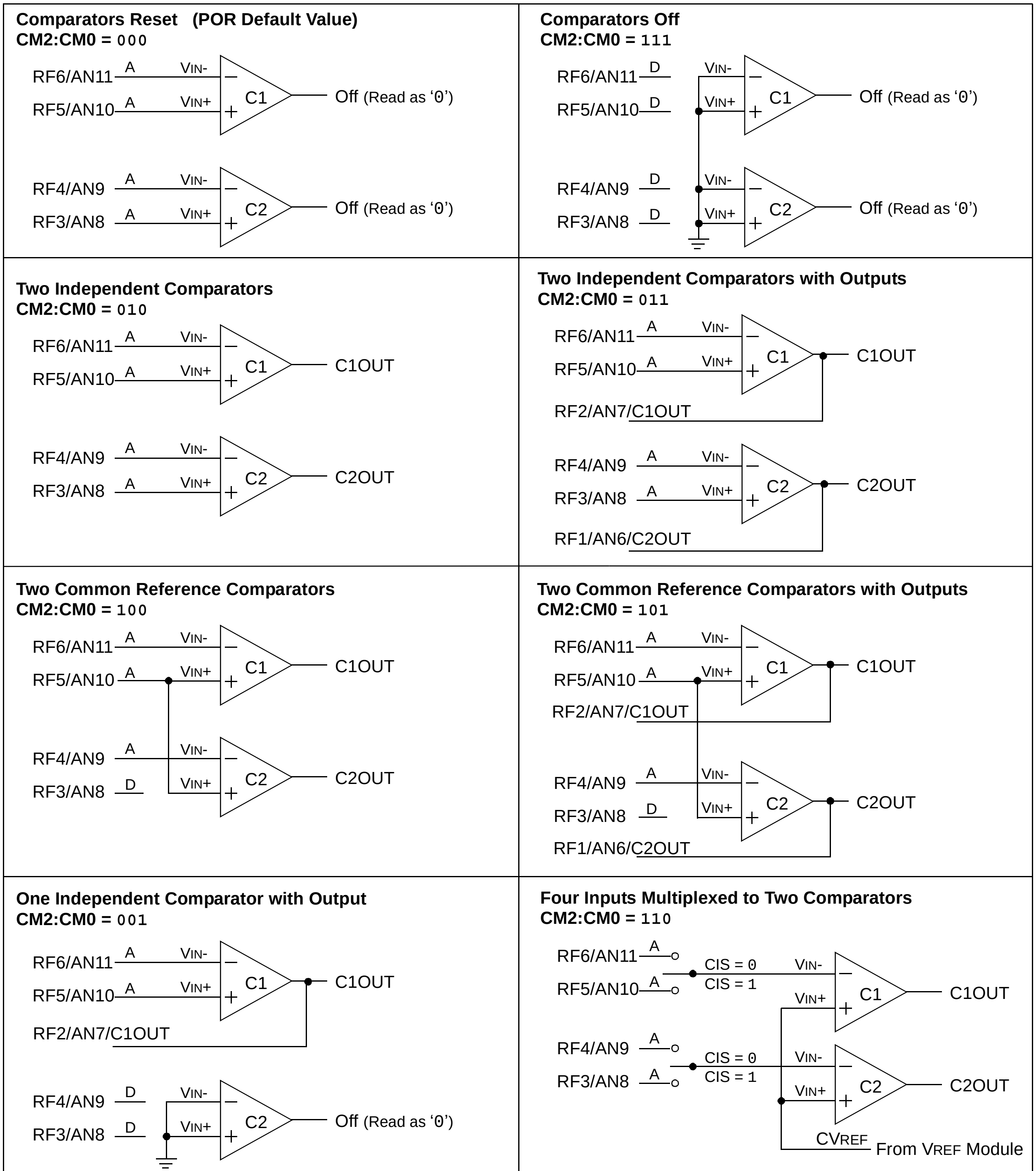
Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

20.1 Comparator Configuration

There are eight modes of operation for the comparators. The CMCON register is used to select these modes. Figure 20-1 shows the eight possible modes. The TRISF register controls the data direction of the comparator pins for each mode. If the Comparator mode is changed, the comparator output level may not be valid for the specified mode change delay shown in the Electrical Specifications (**Section 26.0 "Electrical Characteristics"**).

Note:	Comparator interrupts should be disabled during a Comparator mode change. Otherwise, a false interrupt may occur.

FIGURE 20-1: COMPARATOR I/O OPERATING MODES



A = Analog Input, port reads zeros always D = Digital Input CIS (CMCON<3>) is the Comparator Input Switch

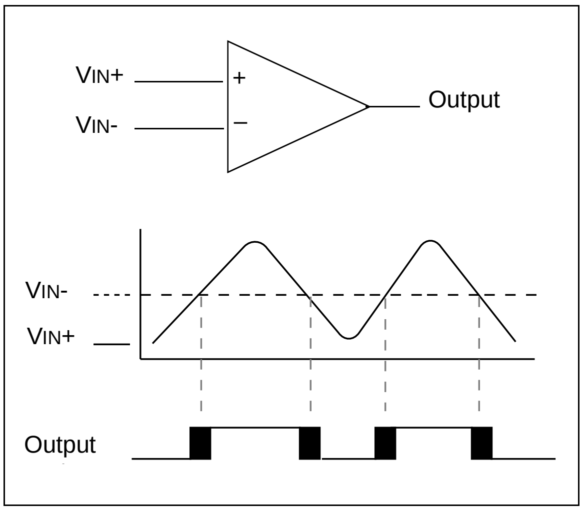
20.2 Comparator Operation

A single comparator is shown in Figure 20-2, along with the relationship between the analog input levels and the digital output. When the analog input at VIN+ is less than the analog input VIN-, the output of the comparator is a digital low level. When the analog input at VIN+ is greater than the analog input VIN-, the output of the comparator is a digital high level. The shaded areas of the output of the comparator in Figure 20-2 represent the uncertainty, due to input offsets and response time.

20.3 Comparator Reference

An external or internal reference signal may be used, depending on the comparator operating mode. The analog signal present at VIN- is compared to the signal at VIN+ and the digital output of the comparator is adjusted accordingly (Figure 20-2).

FIGURE 20-2: SINGLE COMPARATOR



20.3.1 EXTERNAL REFERENCE SIGNAL

When external voltage references are used, the comparator module can be configured to have the comparators operate from the same, or different reference sources. However, threshold detector applications may require the same reference. The reference signal must be between VSS and VDD and can be applied to either pin of the comparator(s).

20.3.2 INTERNAL REFERENCE SIGNAL

The comparator module also allows the selection of an internally generated voltage reference for the comparators. **Section 21.0 "Comparator Voltage Reference Module"** contains a detailed description of the comparator voltage reference module that provides this signal. The internal reference signal is used when comparators are in mode CM<2:0> = `110` (Figure 20-1). In this mode, the internal voltage reference is applied to the VIN+ pin of both comparators.

20.4 Comparator Response Time

Response time is the minimum time, after selecting a new reference voltage or input source, before the comparator output has a valid level. If the internal reference is changed, the maximum delay of the internal voltage reference must be considered when using the comparator outputs. Otherwise, the maximum delay of the comparators should be used (**Section 26.0 "Electrical Characteristics"**).

20.5 Comparator Outputs

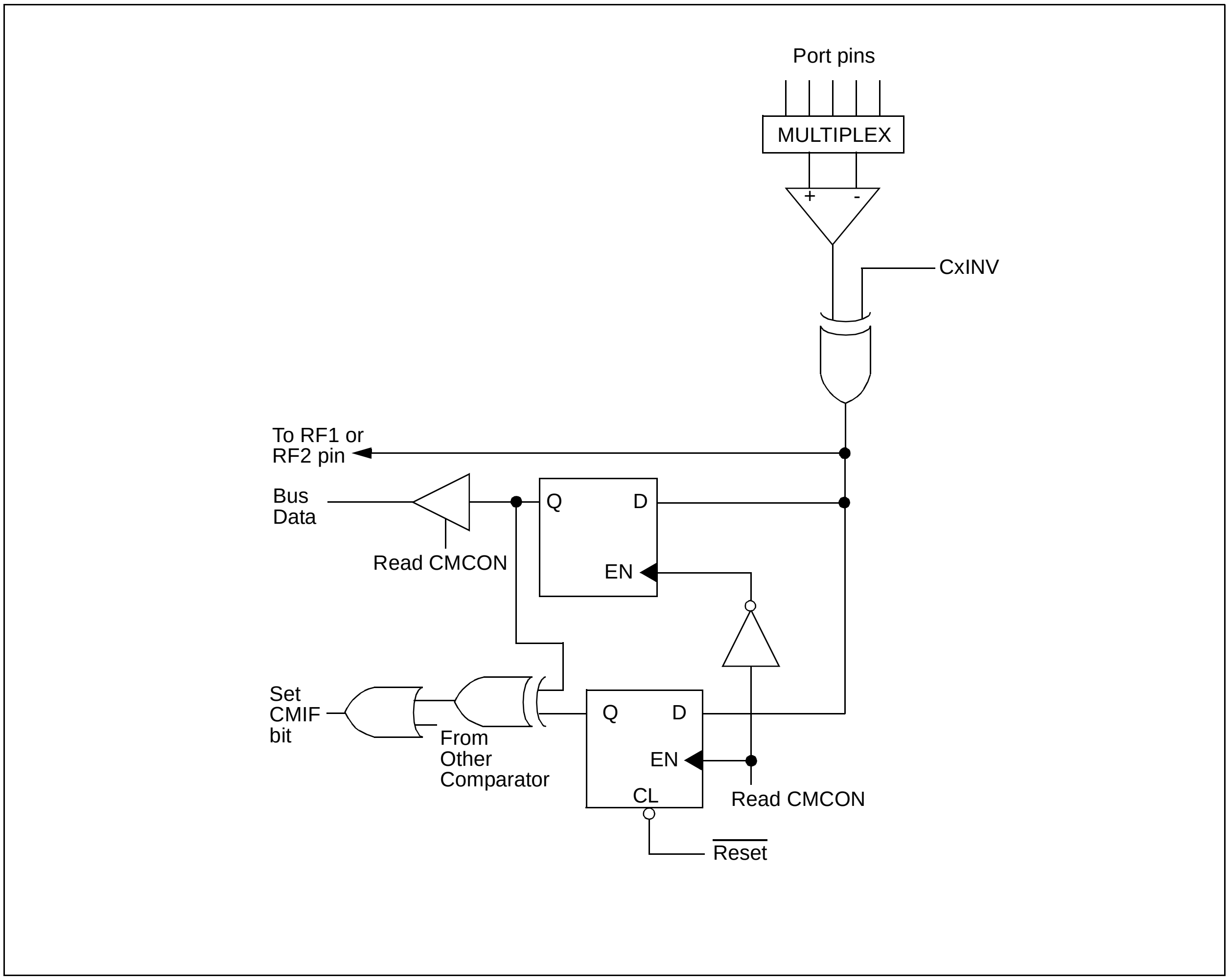
The comparator outputs are read through the CMCON register. These bits are read-only. The comparator outputs may also be directly output to the RF1 and RF2 I/O pins. When enabled, multiplexors in the output path of the RF1 and RF2 pins will switch and the output of each pin will be the unsynchronized output of the comparator. The uncertainty of each of the comparators is related to the input offset voltage and the response time given in the specifications. Figure 20-3 shows the comparator output block diagram.

The TRISF bits will still function as an output enable/disable for the RF1 and RF2 pins while in this mode.

The polarity of the comparator outputs can be changed using the C2INV and C1INV bits (CMCON<4:5>).

Note 1:	When reading the port register, all pins configured as analog inputs will read as a '`0`'. Pins configured as digital inputs will convert an analog input, according to the Schmitt Trigger input specification.
2:	Analog levels on any pin defined as a digital input may cause the input buffer to consume more current than is specified.

FIGURE 20-3: COMPARATOR OUTPUT BLOCK DIAGRAM



20.6 Comparator Interrupts

The comparator interrupt flag is set whenever there is a change in the output value of either comparator. Software will need to maintain information about the status of the output bits, as read from CMCON<7:6>, to determine the actual change that occurred. The CMIF bit (PIR registers) is the Comparator Interrupt Flag. The CMIF bit must be reset by clearing '0'. Since it is also possible to write a '1' to this register, a simulated interrupt may be initiated.

The CMIE bit (PIE registers) and the PEIE bit (INTCON register) must be set to enable the interrupt. In addition, the GIE bit must also be set. If any of these bits are clear, the interrupt is not enabled, though the CMIF bit will still be set if an interrupt condition occurs.

> **Note:** If a change in the CMCON register (C1OUT or C2OUT) should occur when a read operation is being executed (start of the Q2 cycle), then the CMIF (PIR registers) interrupt flag may not get set.

The user, in the Interrupt Service Routine, can clear the interrupt in the following manner:

a) Any read or write of CMCON will end the mismatch condition.

b) Clear flag bit CMIF.

A mismatch condition will continue to set flag bit CMIF. Reading CMCON will end the mismatch condition and allow flag bit CMIF to be cleared.

20.7 Comparator Operation During Sleep

When a comparator is active and the device is placed in Sleep mode, the comparator remains active and the interrupt is functional, if enabled. This interrupt will wake-up the device from Sleep mode, when enabled. While the comparator is powered up, higher Sleep currents than shown in the power-down current specification will occur. Each operational comparator will consume additional current, as shown in the comparator specifications. To minimize power consumption while in Sleep mode, turn off the comparators (CM<2:0> = `111`) before entering Sleep. If the device wakes up from Sleep, the contents of the CMCON register are not affected.

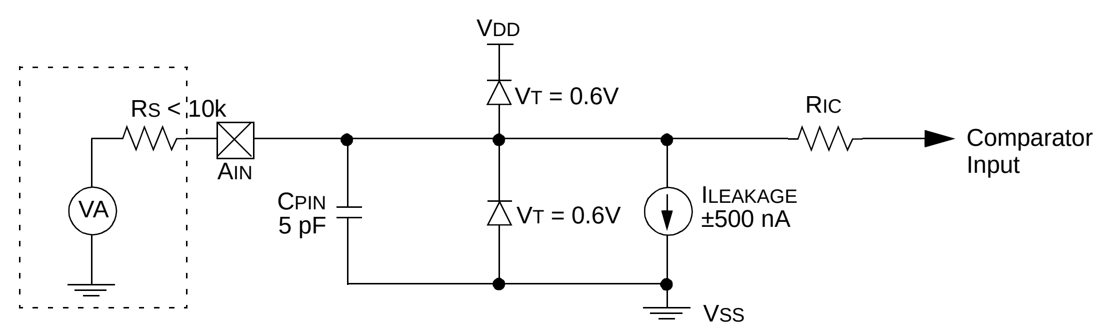
20.8 Effects of a Reset

A device Reset forces the CMCON register to its Reset state, causing the comparator module to be in the Comparator Reset mode, CM<2:0> = `000`. This ensures that all potential inputs are analog inputs. Device current is minimized when analog inputs are present at Reset time. The comparators will be powered down during the Reset interval.

20.9 Analog Input Connection Considerations

A simplified circuit for an analog input is shown in Figure 20-4. Since the analog pins are connected to a digital output, they have reverse biased diodes to V_{DD} and V_{SS}. The analog input, therefore, must be between V_{SS} and V_{DD}. If the input voltage deviates from this range by more than 0.6V in either direction, one of the diodes is forward biased and a latch-up condition may occur. A maximum source impedance of 10 kΩ is recommended for the analog sources. Any external component connected to an analog input pin, such as a capacitor or a Zener diode, should have very little leakage current.

FIGURE 20-4: COMPARATOR ANALOG INPUT MODEL



Legend:	C_{PIN}	=	Input Capacitance
	V_T	=	Threshold Voltage
	$I_{LEAKAGE}$	=	Leakage Current at the pin due to various junctions
	R_{IC}	=	Interconnect Resistance
	R_S	=	Source Impedance
	VA	=	Analog Voltage

TABLE 20-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH COMPARATOR MODULE

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR	Value on all other Resets
CMCON	C2OUT	C1OUT	C2INV	C1INV	CIS	CM2	CM1	CM0	0000 0000	0000 0000
CVRCON	CVREN	CVROE	CVRR	CVRSS	CVR3	CVR2	CVR1	CVR0	0000 0000	0000 0000
INTCON	GIE/ GIEH	PEIE/ GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIR2	—	CMIF	—	—	BCLIF	LVDIF	TMR3IF	CCP2IF	-0-- 0000	-0-- 0000
PIE2	—	CMIE	—	—	BCLIE	LVDIE	TMR3IE	CCP2IE	-0-- 0000	-0-- 0000
IPR2	—	CMIP	—	—	BCLIP	LVDIP	TMR3IP	CCP2IP	-1-- 1111	-1-- 1111
PORTF	RF7	RF6	RF5	RF4	RF3	RF2	RF1	RF0	x000 0000	u000 0000
LATF	LATF7	LATF6	LATF5	LATF4	LATF3	LATF2	LATF1	LATF0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TRISF	TRISF7	TRISF6	TRISF5	TRISF4	TRISF3	TRISF2	TRISF1	TRISF0	1111 1111	1111 1111

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, – = unimplemented, read as ‘0’.
Shaded cells are unused by the comparator module.

21.0 COMPARATOR VOLTAGE REFERENCE MODULE

The comparator voltage reference is a 16-tap resistor ladder network that provides a selectable voltage reference. The resistor ladder is segmented to provide two ranges of CVREF values and has a power-down function to conserve power when the reference is not being used. The CVRCON register controls the operation of the reference as shown in Register 21-1. The block diagram is given in Figure 21-1.

The comparator reference supply voltage can come from either VDD or VSS, or the external VREF+ and VREF- that are multiplexed with RA3 and RA2. The comparator reference supply voltage is controlled by the CVRSS bit.

Note:	In order to select external VREF+ and VREF- supply voltages, the Voltage Reference Configuration bits (VCFG1:VCFG0) of the ADCON1 register must be set appropriately.

21.1 Configuring the Comparator Voltage Reference

The comparator voltage reference can output 16 distinct voltage levels for each range. The equations used to calculate the output of the comparator voltage reference are as follows:

<u>If CVRR = 1:</u>
CVREF = (CVR<3:0>/24) x CVRSRC

<u>If CVRR = 0:</u>
CVREF = (CVRSRC x 1/4) + (CVR<3:0>/32) x CVRSRC

The settling time of the comparator voltage reference must be considered when changing the CVREF output (**Section 26.0 "Electrical Characteristics"**).

REGISTER 21-1: CVRCON REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
CVREN	CVROE	CVRR	CVRSS	CVR3	CVR2	CVR1	CVR0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **CVREN**: Comparator Voltage Reference Enable bit
1 = CVREF circuit powered on
0 = CVREF circuit powered down

bit 6 **CVROE**: Comparator VREF Output Enable bit(1)
1 = CVREF voltage level is also output on the RF5/AN10/CVREF pin
0 = CVREF voltage is disconnected from the RF5/AN10/CVREF pin

bit 5 **CVRR**: Comparator VREF Range Selection bit
1 = 0.00 CVRSRC to 0.667 CVRSRC, with CVRSRC/24 step size (low range)
0 = 0.25 CVRSRC to 0.75 CVRSRC, with CVRSRC/32 step size (high range)

bit 4 **CVRSS**: Comparator VREF Source Selection bit(2)
1 = Comparator reference source CVRSRC = VREF+ – VREF-
0 = Comparator reference source CVRSRC = VDD – VSS

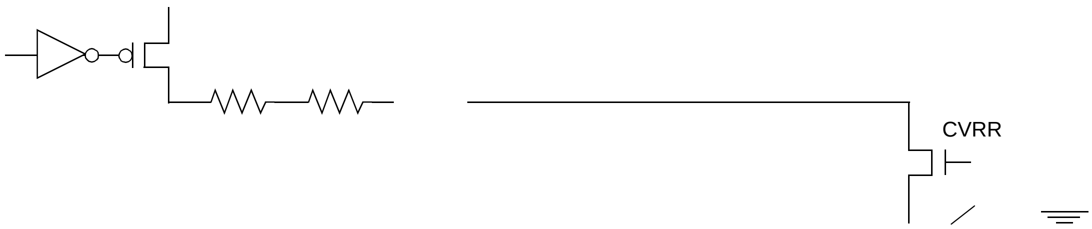
bit 3-0 **CVR3:CVR0:** Comparator VREF Value Selection bits (0 ≤ VR3:VR0 ≤ 15)
<u>When CVRR = 1:</u>
CVREF = (CVR<3:0>/24) • (CVRSRC)
<u>When CVRR = 0:</u>
CVREF = 1/4 • (CVRSRC) + (CVR3:CVR0/32) • (CVRSRC)

Note 1: If enabled for output, RF5 must also be configured as an input by setting TRISF<5> to '1'.

2: In order to select external VREF+ and VREF- supply voltages, the Voltage Reference Configuration bits (VCFG1:VCFG0) of the ADCON1 register must be set appropriately.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

FIGURE 21-1: VOLTAGE REFERENCE BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note: R is defined in **Section 26.0 “Electrical Characteristics”**.

21.2 Voltage Reference Accuracy/Error

The full range of voltage reference cannot be realized due to the construction of the module. The transistors on the top and bottom of the resistor ladder network (Figure 21-1) keep CVREF from approaching the reference source rails. The voltage reference is derived from the reference source; therefore, the CVREF output changes with fluctuations in that source. The tested absolute accuracy of the voltage reference can be found in **Section 26.0 “Electrical Characteristics”**.

21.3 Operation During Sleep

When the device wakes up from Sleep through an interrupt or a Watchdog Timer time-out, the contents of the CVRCON register are not affected. To minimize current consumption in Sleep mode, the voltage reference should be disabled.

21.4 Effects of a Reset

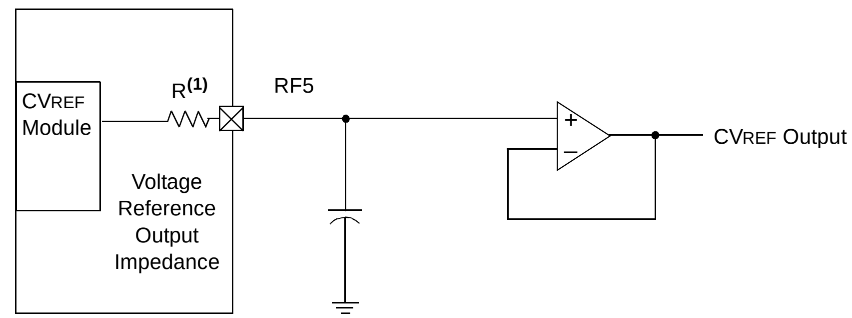
A device Reset disables the voltage reference by clearing bit CVREN (CVRCON<7>). This Reset also disconnects the reference from the RA2 pin by clearing bit CVROE (CVRCON<6>) and selects the high-voltage range by clearing bit CVRR (CVRCON<5>). The VRSS value select bits, CVRCON<3:0>, are also cleared.

21.5 Connection Considerations

The voltage reference module operates independently of the comparator module. The output of the reference generator may be connected to the RF5 pin if the TRISF<5> bit is set and the CVROE bit is set. Enabling the voltage reference output onto the RF5 pin, configured as a digital input, will increase current consumption. Connecting RF5 as a digital output with VRSS enabled will also increase current consumption.

The RF5 pin can be used as a simple D/A output with limited drive capability. Due to the limited current drive capability, a buffer must be used on the voltage reference output for external connections to VREF. Figure 21-2 shows an example buffering technique.

FIGURE 21-2: VOLTAGE REFERENCE OUTPUT BUFFER EXAMPLE



Note 1: R is dependent upon the Comparator Voltage Reference Configuration bits CVRCON<3:0> and CVRCON<5>.

TABLE 21-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH COMPARATOR VOLTAGE REFERENCE

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR	Value on all other Resets
CVRCON	CVREN	CVROE	CVRR	CVRSS	CVR3	CVR2	CVR1	CVR0	0000 0000	0000 0000
CMCON	C2OUT	C1OUT	C2INV	C1INV	CIS	CM2	CM1	CM0	0000 0000	0000 0000
TRISF	TRISF7	TRISF6	TRISF5	TRISF4	TRISF3	TRISF2	TRISF1	TRISF0	1111 1111	1111 1111

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, – = unimplemented, read as '0'.
Shaded cells are not used with the comparator voltage reference.

NOTES:

22.0 LOW-VOLTAGE DETECT

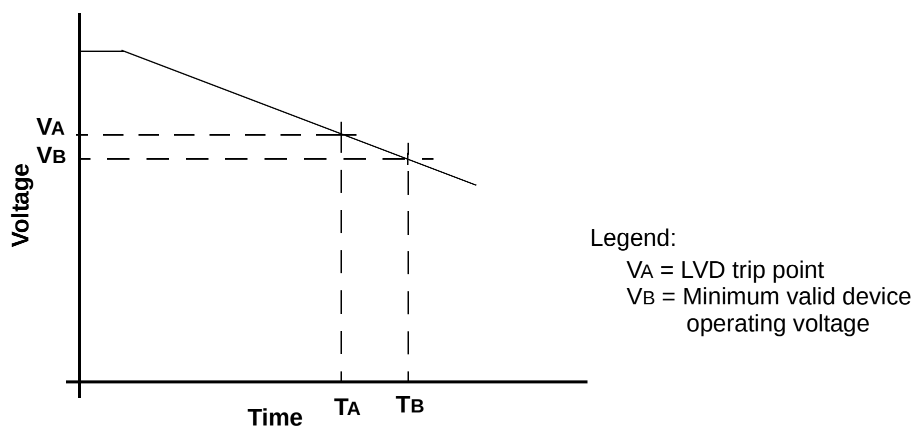
In many applications, the ability to determine if the device voltage (V_{DD}) is below a specified voltage level is a desirable feature. A window of operation for the application can be created, where the application software can do “housekeeping tasks” before the device voltage exits the valid operating range. This can be done using the Low-Voltage Detect module.

This module is a software programmable circuitry, where a device voltage trip point can be specified. When the voltage of the device becomes lower then the specified point, an interrupt flag is set. If the interrupt is enabled, the program execution will branch to the interrupt vector address and the software can then respond to that interrupt source.

The Low-Voltage Detect circuitry is completely under software control. This allows the circuitry to be “turned off” by the software, which minimizes the current consumption for the device.

Figure 22-1 shows a possible application voltage curve (typically for batteries). Over time, the device voltage decreases. When the device voltage equals voltage V_A, the LVD logic generates an interrupt. This occurs at time T_A. The application software then has the time, until the device voltage is no longer in valid operating range, to shut down the system. Voltage point V_B is the minimum valid operating voltage specification. This occurs at time T_B. The difference $T_B – T_A$ is the total time for shutdown.

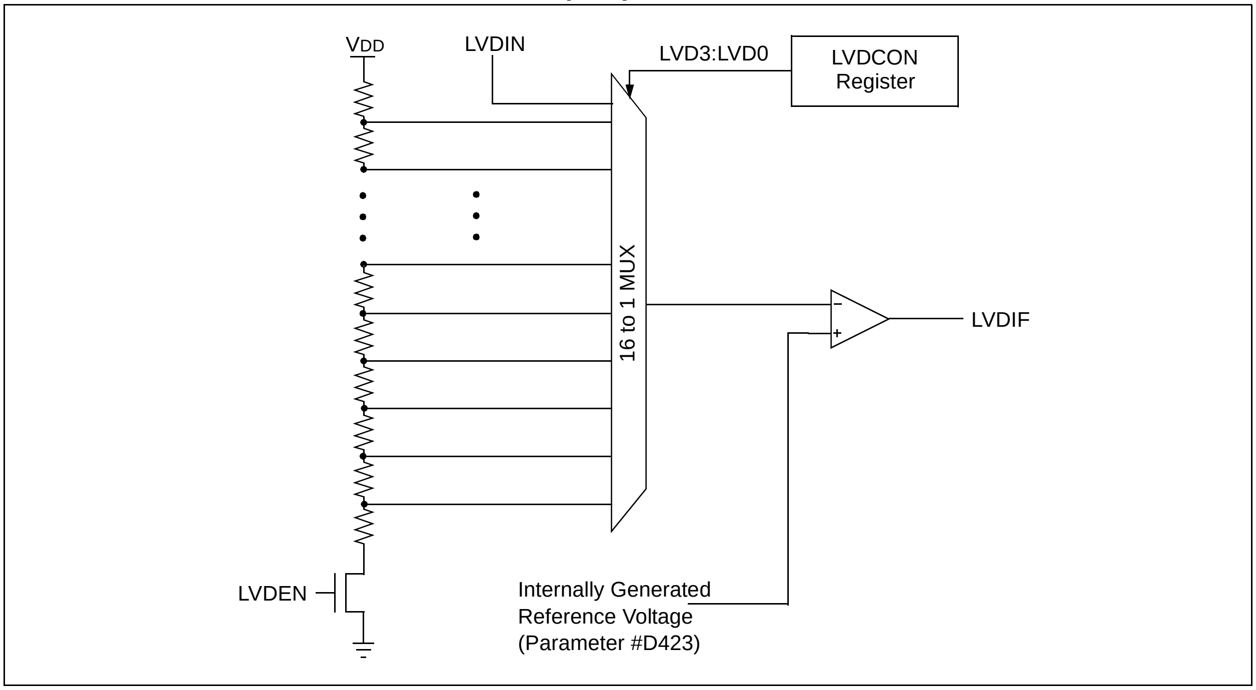
FIGURE 22-1: TYPICAL LOW-VOLTAGE DETECT APPLICATION



The block diagram for the LVD module is shown in Figure 22-2. A comparator uses an internally generated reference voltage as the set point. When the selected tap output of the device voltage crosses the set point (is lower than), the LVDIF bit is set.

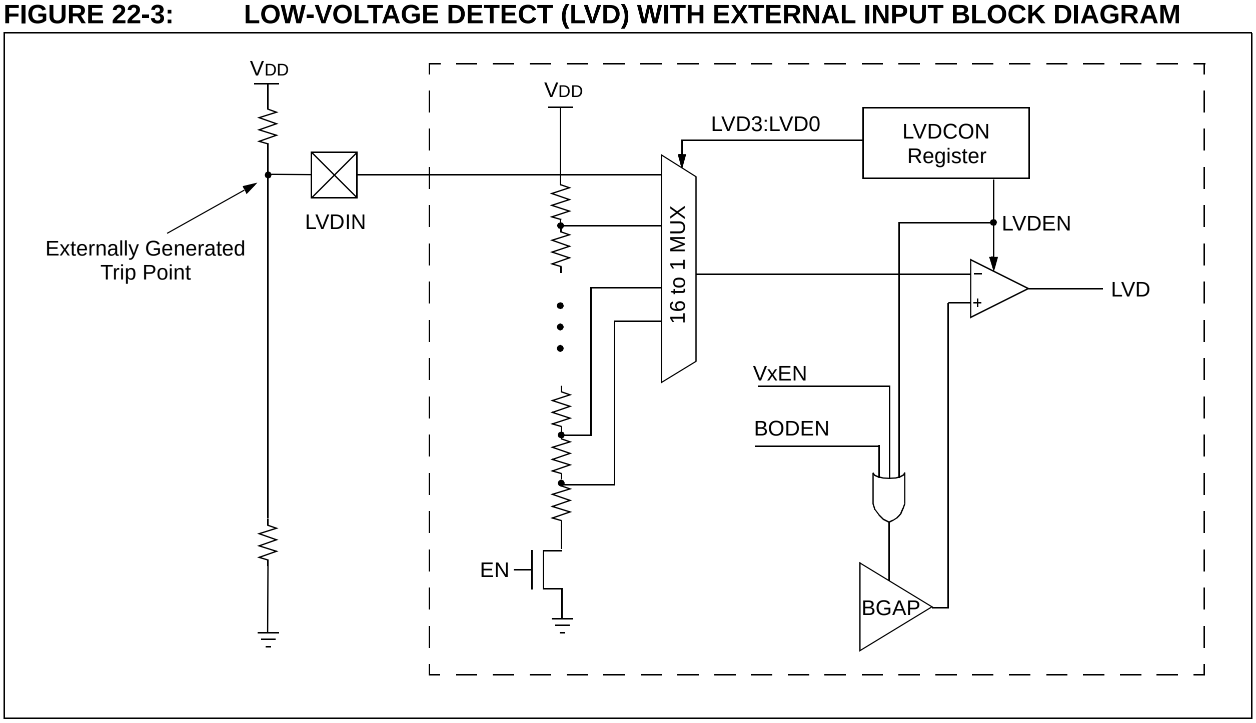
Each node in the resistor divider represents a “trip point” voltage. The “trip point” voltage is the minimum supply voltage level at which the device can operate before the LVD module asserts an interrupt. When the supply voltage is equal to the trip point, the voltage tapped off of the resistor array is equal to the 1.2V internal reference voltage generated by the voltage reference module. The comparator then generates an interrupt signal, setting the LVDIF bit. This voltage is software programmable to any one of 16 values (see Figure 22-2). The trip point is selected by programming the LVDL3:LVDL0 bits (LVDCON<3:0>).

FIGURE 22-2: LOW-VOLTAGE DETECT (LVD) BLOCK DIAGRAM



The LVD module has an additional feature that allows the user to supply the trip voltage to the module from an external source. This mode is enabled when bits LVDL3:LVDL0 are set to '1111'. In this state, the comparator input is multiplexed from the external input pin, LVDIN (Figure 22-3). This gives users flexibility because it allows them to configure the Low-Voltage Detect interrupt to occur at any voltage in the valid operating range.

FIGURE 22-3: LOW-VOLTAGE DETECT (LVD) WITH EXTERNAL INPUT BLOCK DIAGRAM



22.1 Control Register

The Low-Voltage Detect Control register controls the operation of the Low-Voltage Detect circuitry.

REGISTER 22-1: LVDCON REGISTER

U-0	U-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-1	R/W-0	R/W-1
—	—	IRVST	LVDEN	LVDL3	LVDL2	LVDL1	LVDL0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5 **IRVST:** Internal Reference Voltage Stable Flag bit
1 = Indicates that the Low-Voltage Detect logic will generate the interrupt flag at the specified voltage range
0 = Indicates that the Low-Voltage Detect logic will not generate the interrupt flag at the specified voltage range and the LVD interrupt should not be enabled

bit 4 **LVDEN:** Low-Voltage Detect Power Enable bit
1 = Enables LVD, powers up LVD circuit
0 = Disables LVD, powers down LVD circuit

bit 3-0 **LVDL3:LVDL0:** Low-Voltage Detection Limit bits(2)
1111 = External analog input is used (input comes from the LVDIN pin)
1110 = 4.64V
1101 = 4.33V
1100 = 4.13V
1011 = 3.92V
1010 = 3.72V
1001 = 3.61V
1000 = 3.41V
0111 = 3.1V
0110 = 2.89V
0101 = 2.78V
0100 = 2.58V
0011 = 2.47V
0010 = 2.27V
0001 = 2.06V
0000 = Reserved

Note 1: LVDL3:LVDL0 modes which result in a trip point below the valid operating voltage of the device are not tested.
2: Typical values shown, see parameter D420 in Table 26-3 for more information.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

22.2 Operation

Depending on the power source for the device voltage, the voltage normally decreases relatively slowly. This means that the LVD module does not need to be constantly operating. To decrease the current requirements, the LVD circuitry only needs to be enabled for short periods, where the voltage is checked. After doing the check, the LVD module may be disabled.

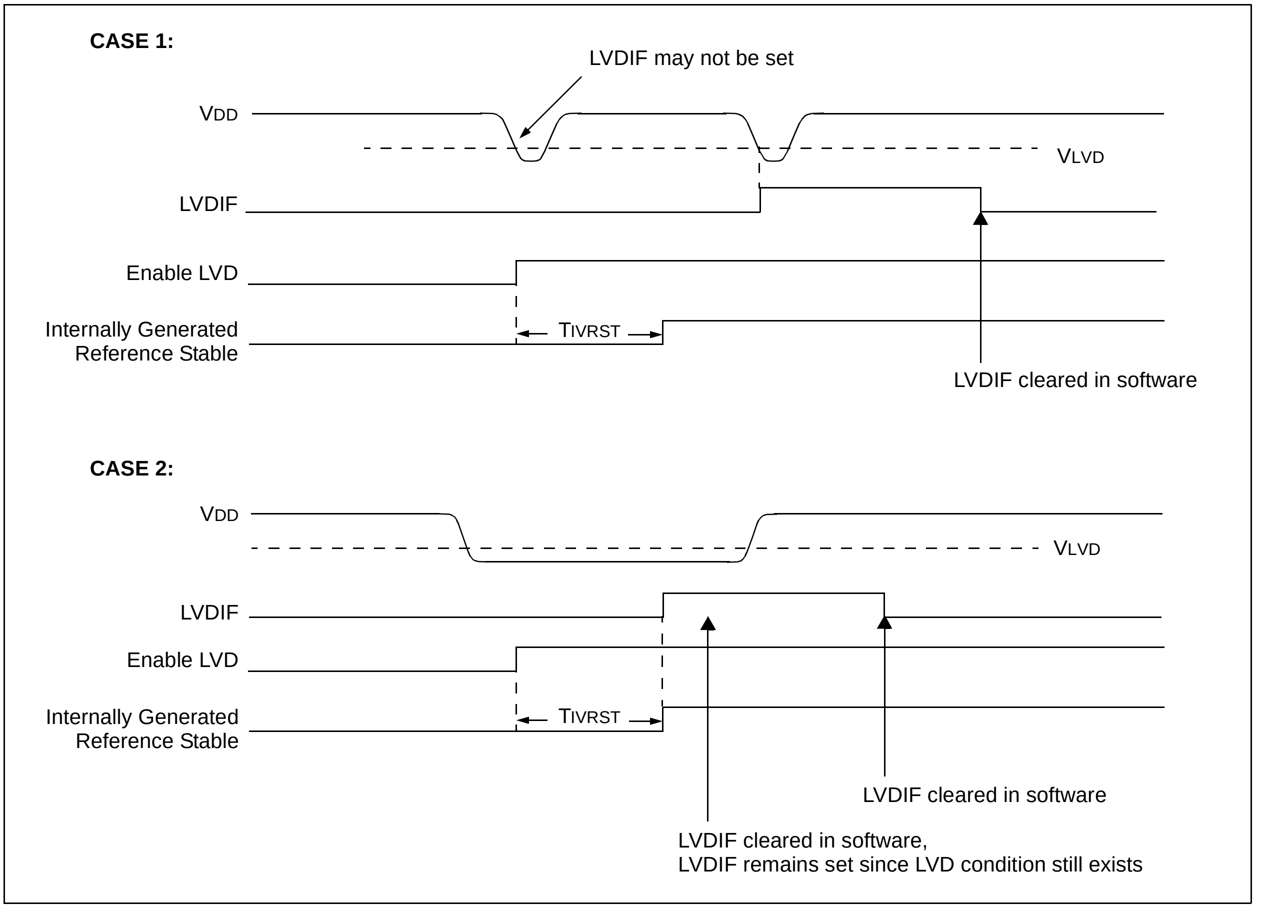
Each time that the LVD module is enabled, the circuitry requires some time to stabilize. After the circuitry has stabilized, all status flags may be cleared. The module will then indicate the proper state of the system.

The following steps are needed to set up the LVD module:

1. Write the value to the LVDL3:LVDL0 bits (LVDCON register), which selects the desired LVD trip point.
2. Ensure that LVD interrupts are disabled (the LVDIE bit is cleared or the GIE bit is cleared).
3. Enable the LVD module (set the LVDEN bit in the LVDCON register).
4. Wait for the LVD module to stabilize (the IRVST bit to become set).
5. Clear the LVD interrupt flag, which may have falsely become set, until the LVD module has stabilized (clear the LVDIF bit).
6. Enable the LVD interrupt (set the LVDIE and the GIE bits).

Figure 22-4 shows typical waveforms that the LVD module may be used to detect.

FIGURE 22-4: LOW-VOLTAGE DETECT WAVEFORMS



22.2.1 REFERENCE VOLTAGE SET POINT

The internal reference voltage of the LVD module, specified in electrical specification parameter #D423, may be used by other internal circuitry (the Programmable Brown-out Reset). If these circuits are disabled (lower current consumption), the reference voltage circuit requires a time to become stable before a low-voltage condition can be reliably detected. This time is invariant of system clock speed. This start-up time is specified in electrical specification parameter #36. The low-voltage interrupt flag will not be enabled until a stable reference voltage is reached. Refer to the waveform in Figure 22-4.

22.2.2 CURRENT CONSUMPTION

When the module is enabled, the LVD comparator and voltage divider are enabled and will consume static current. The voltage divider can be tapped from multiple places in the resistor array. Total current consumption, when enabled, is specified in electrical specification parameter #D022B.

22.3 Operation During Sleep

When enabled, the LVD circuitry continues to operate during Sleep. If the device voltage crosses the trip point, the LVDIF bit will be set and the device will wake-up from Sleep. Device execution will continue from the interrupt vector address if interrupts have been globally enabled.

22.4 Effects of a Reset

A device Reset forces all registers to their Reset state. This forces the LVD module to be turned off.

NOTES:

23.0 SPECIAL FEATURES OF THE CPU

There are several features intended to maximize system reliability, minimize cost through elimination of external components, provide power saving operating modes and offer code protection. These are:

- Oscillator Selection
- Reset
  - Power-on Reset (POR)
  - Power-up Timer (PWRT)
  - Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST)
  - Brown-out Reset (BOR)
- Interrupts
- Watchdog Timer (WDT)
- Sleep
- Code Protection
- ID Locations
- In-Circuit Serial Programming

All PIC18FXX20 devices have a Watchdog Timer, which is permanently enabled via the configuration bits, or software controlled. It runs off its own RC oscillator for added reliability. There are two timers that offer necessary delays on power-up. One is the Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST), intended to keep the chip in Reset until the crystal oscillator is stable. The other is the Power-up Timer (PWRT), which provides a fixed delay on power-up only, designed to keep the part in Reset while the power supply stabilizes. With these two timers on-chip, most applications need no external Reset circuitry.

Sleep mode is designed to offer a very low current power-down mode. The user can wake-up from Sleep through external Reset, Watchdog Timer Wake-up or through an interrupt. Several oscillator options are also made available to allow the part to fit the application. The RC oscillator option saves system cost, while the LP crystal option saves power. A set of configuration bits is used to select various options.

23.1 Configuration Bits

The configuration bits can be programmed (read as '`0`'), or left unprogrammed (read as '`1`'), to select various device configurations. These bits are mapped, starting at program memory location 300000h.

The user will note that address 300000h is beyond the user program memory space. In fact, it belongs to the configuration memory space (300000h through 3FFFFFh), which can only be accessed using table reads and table writes.

Programming the configuration registers is done in a manner similar to programming the Flash memory. The EECON1 register WR bit starts a self-timed write to the configuration register. In normal operation mode, a `TBLWT` instruction with the TBLPTR pointed to the configuration register sets up the address and the data for the configuration register write. Setting the WR bit starts a long write to the configuration register. The configuration registers are written a byte at a time. To write or erase a configuration cell, a `TBLWT` instruction can write a '`1`' or a '`0`' into the cell.

TABLE 23-1: CONFIGURATION BITS AND DEVICE IDS

File Name		Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Default/ Unprogrammed Value
300001h	CONFIG1H	—	—	OSCSEN	—	—	FOSC2	FOSC1	FOSC0	`--1- -111`
300002h	CONFIG2L	—	—	—	—	BORV1	BORV0	BODEN	PWRTEN	`---- 1111`
300003h	CONFIG2H	—	—	—	—	WDTPS2	WDTPS1	WDTPS0	WDTEN	`---- 1111`
300004h(1)	CONFIG3L	WAIT	—	—	—	—	—	PM1	PM0	`1--- --11`
300005h	CONFIG3H	—	—	—	—	—	—	r(3)	CCP2MX	`---- --11`
300006h	CONFIG4L	DEBUG	—	—	—	—	LVP	—	STVREN	`1--- -1-1`
300008h	CONFIG5L	CP7(2)	CP6(2)	CP5(2)	CP4(2)	CP3	CP2	CP1	CP0	`1111 1111`
300009h	CONFIG5H	CPD	CPB	—	—	—	—	—	—	`11-- ----`
30000Ah	CONFIG6L	WRT7(2)	WRT6(2)	WRT5(2)	WRT4(2)	WRT3	WRT2	WRT1	WRT0	`1111 1111`
30000Bh	CONFIG6H	WRTD	WRTB	WRTC	—	—	—	—	—	`111- ----`
30000Ch	CONFIG7L	EBTR7(2)	EBTR6(2)	EBTR5(2)	EBTR4(2)	EBTR3	EBTR2	EBTR1	EBTR0	`1111 1111`
30000Dh	CONFIG7H	—	EBTRB	—	—	—	—	—	—	`-1-- ----`
3FFFFEh	DEVID1	DEV2	DEV1	DEV0	REV4	REV3	REV2	REV1	REV0	**(4)**
3FFFFFh	DEVID2	DEV10	DEV9	DEV8	DEV7	DEV6	DEV5	DEV4	DEV3	`0000 0110`

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, – = unimplemented, q = value depends on condition, `r` = reserved.
Shaded cells are unimplemented, read as '`0`'.

Note 1: Unimplemented in PIC18F6X20 devices; maintain this bit set.
2: Unimplemented in PIC18FX520 and PIC18FX620 devices; maintain this bit set.
3: Unimplemented in PIC18FX620 and PIC18FX720 devices; maintain this bit set.
4: See Register 23-13 for DEVID1 values.

REGISTER 23-1: CONFIG1H: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 1 HIGH (BYTE ADDRESS 300001h)

U-0	U-0	R/P-1	U-0	U-0	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1
—	—	$\overline{\text{OSCSEN}}$	—	—	FOSC2	FOSC1	FOSC0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '`0`'

bit 5 **$\overline{\text{OSCSEN}}$**: Oscillator System Clock Switch Enable bit
`1` = Oscillator system clock switch option is disabled (main oscillator is source)
`0` = Timer1 Oscillator system clock switch option is enabled (oscillator switching is enabled)

bit 4-3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '`0`'

bit 2-0 **FOSC2:FOSC0**: Oscillator Selection bits
`111` = RC oscillator w/ OSC2 configured as RA6
`110` = HS oscillator with PLL enabled; clock frequency = (4 x FOSC)
`101` = EC oscillator w/ OSC2 configured as RA6
`100` = EC oscillator w/ OSC2 configured as divide-by-4 clock output
`011` = RC oscillator w/ OSC2 configured as divide-by-4 clock output
`010` = HS oscillator
`001` = XT oscillator
`000` = LP oscillator

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

REGISTER 23-2: CONFIG2L: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 2 LOW (BYTE ADDRESS 300002h)

U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1
—	—	—	—	BORV1	BORV0	BOREN	$\overline{\text{PWRTEN}}$
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 3-2 **BORV1:BORV0:** Brown-out Reset Voltage bits
11 = VBOR set to 2.5V
10 = VBOR set to 2.7V
01 = VBOR set to 4.2V
00 = VBOR set to 4.5V

bit 1 **BOREN:** Brown-out Reset Enable bit
1 = Brown-out Reset enabled
0 = Brown-out Reset disabled

bit 0 **$\overline{\text{PWRTEN}}$:** Power-up Timer Enable bit
1 = PWRT disabled
0 = PWRT enabled

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

REGISTER 23-3: CONFIG2H: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 2 HIGH (BYTE ADDRESS 300003h)

U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1
—	—	—	—	WDTPS2	WDTPS1	WDTPS0	WDTEN
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 3-1 **WDTPS2:WDTPS0:** Watchdog Timer Postscale Select bits
111 = 1:128
110 = 1:64
101 = 1:32
100 = 1:16
011 = 1:8
010 = 1:4
001 = 1:2
000 = 1:1

bit 0 **WDTEN:** Watchdog Timer Enable bit
1 = WDT enabled
0 = WDT disabled (control is placed on the SWDTEN bit)

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

REGISTER 23-4: CONFIG3L: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 3 LOW (BYTE ADDRESS 300004h)[(1)]

R/P-1	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/P-1	R/P-1
WAIT	—	—	—	—	—	PM1	PM0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **WAIT:** External Bus Data Wait Enable bit
1 = Wait selections unavailable for table reads and table writes
0 = Wait selections for table reads and table writes are determined by the WAIT1:WAIT0 bits (MEMCOM<5:4>)

bit 6-2 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 1-0 **PM1:PM0:** Processor Mode Select bits
11 = Microcontroller mode
10 = Microprocessor mode
01 = Microprocessor with Boot Block mode
00 = Extended Microcontroller mode

Note 1: This register is unimplemented in PIC18F6X20 devices; maintain these bits set.

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

REGISTER 23-5: CONFIG3H: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 3 HIGH (BYTE ADDRESS 300005h)

U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/P-1	R/P-1
—	—	—	—	—	—	r[(1)]	CCP2MX
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-2 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 1 **Reserved:** Read as unknown[(1)]

bit 0 **CCP2MX:** CCP2 Mux bit
<u>In Microcontroller mode:</u>
1 = CCP2 input/output is multiplexed with RC1
0 = CCP2 input/output is multiplexed with RE7
<u>In Microprocessor, Microprocessor with Boot Block and Extended Microcontroller modes (PIC18F8X20 devices only):</u>
1 = CCP2 input/output is multiplexed with RC1
0 = CCP2 input/output is multiplexed with RB3

Note 1: Unimplemented in PIC18FX620 and PIC18FX720 devices; read as '0'.

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

REGISTER 23-6: CONFIG4L: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 4 LOW (BYTE ADDRESS 300006h)

R/P-1	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/P-1	U-0	R/P-1
$\overline{\text{DEBUG}}$	—	—	—	—	LVP	—	STVREN
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **$\overline{\textbf{DEBUG}}$:** Background Debugger Enable bit
1 = Background debugger disabled. RB6 and RB7 configured as general purpose I/O pins.
0 = Background debugger enabled. RB6 and RB7 are dedicated to In-Circuit Debug.

bit 6-3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2 **LVP:** Low-Voltage ICSP Enable bit
1 = Low-voltage ICSP enabled
0 = Low-voltage ICSP disabled

bit 1 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 0 **STVREN:** Stack Full/Underflow Reset Enable bit
1 = Stack full/underflow will cause Reset
0 = Stack full/underflow will not cause Reset

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

REGISTER 23-7: CONFIG5L: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 5 LOW (BYTE ADDRESS 300008h)

R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1
CP7(1)	CP6(1)	CP5(1)	CP4(1)	CP3	CP2	CP1	CP0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **CP7:** Code Protection bit(1)
1 = Block 7 (01C000-01FFFFh) not code-protected
0 = Block 7 (01C000-01FFFFh) code-protected

bit 6 **CP6:** Code Protection bit(1)
1 = Block 6 (018000-01BFFFh) not code-protected
0 = Block 6 (018000-01BFFFh) code-protected

bit 5 **CP5:** Code Protection bit(1)
1 = Block 5 (014000-017FFFh) not code-protected
0 = Block 5 (014000-017FFFh) code-protected

bit 4 **CP4:** Code Protection bit(1)
1 = Block 4 (010000-013FFFh) not code-protected
0 = Block 4 (010000-013FFFh) code-protected

bit 3 **CP3:** Code Protection bit
For PIC18FX520 devices:
1 = Block 3 (006000-007FFFh) not code-protected
0 = Block 3 (006000-007FFFh) code-protected
For PIC18FX620 and PIC18FX720 devices:
1 = Block 3 (00C000-00FFFFh) not code-protected
0 = Block 3 (00C000-00FFFFh) code-protected

bit 2 **CP2:** Code Protection bit
For PIC18FX520 devices:
1 = Block 2 (004000-005FFFh) not code-protected
0 = Block 2 (004000-005FFFh) code-protected
For PIC18FX620 and PIC18FX720 devices:
1 = Block 2 (008000-00BFFFh) not code-protected
0 = Block 2 (008000-00BFFFh) code-protected

bit 1 **CP1:** Code Protection bit
For PIC18FX520 devices:
1 = Block 1 (002000-003FFFh) not code-protected
0 = Block 1 (002000-003FFFh) code-protected
For PIC18FX620 and PIC18FX720 devices:
1 = Block 1 (004000-007FFFh) not code-protected
0 = Block 1 (004000-007FFFh) code-protected

bit 0 **CP0:** Code Protection bit
For PIC18FX520 devices:
1 = Block 0 (000800-001FFFh) not code-protected
0 = Block 0 (000800-001FFFh) code-protected
For PIC18FX620 and PIC18FX720 devices:
1 = Block 0 (000200-003FFFh) not code-protected
0 = Block 0 (000200-003FFFh) code-protected

Note 1: Unimplemented in PIC18FX520 and PIC18FX620 devices; maintain this bit set.

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

REGISTER 23-8: CONFIG5H: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 5 HIGH (BYTE ADDRESS 300009h)

R/C-1	R/C-1	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0
CPD	CPB	—	—	—	—	—	—
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **CPD:** Data EEPROM Code Protection bit
1 = Data EEPROM not code-protected
0 = Data EEPROM code-protected

bit 6 **CPB:** Boot Block Code Protection bit
For PIC18FX520 devices:
1 = Boot Block (000000-0007FFh) not code-protected
0 = Boot Block (000000-0007FFh) code-protected
For PIC18FX620 and PIC18FX720 devices:
1 = Boot Block (000000-0001FFh) not code-protected
0 = Boot Block (000000-0001FFh) code-protected

bit 5-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	C = Clearable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

REGISTER 23-9: CONFIG6L: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 6 LOW (BYTE ADDRESS 30000Ah)

R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1
WRT7(1)	WRT6(1)	WRT5(1)	WRT4(1)	WRT3	WRT2	WRT1	WRT0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **WR7:** Write Protection bit(1)
1 = Block 7 (01C000-01FFFFh) not write-protected
0 = Block 7 (01C000-01FFFFh) write-protected

bit 6 **WR6:** Write Protection bit(1)
1 = Block 6 (018000-01BFFFh) not write-protected
0 = Block 6 (018000-01BFFFh) write-protected

bit 5 **WR5:** Write Protection bit(1)
1 = Block 5 (014000-017FFFh) not write-protected
0 = Block 5 (014000-017FFFh) write-protected

bit 4 **WR4:** Write Protection bit(1)
1 = Block 4 (010000-013FFFh) not write-protected
0 = Block 4 (010000-013FFFh) write-protected

bit 3 **WR3:** Write Protection bit
For PIC18FX520 devices:
1 = Block 3 (006000-007FFFh) not write-protected
0 = Block 3 (006000-007FFFh) write-protected
For PIC18FX620 and PIC18FX720 devices:
1 = Block 3 (00C000-00FFFFh) not write-protected
0 = Block 3 (00C000-00FFFFh) write-protected

bit 2 **WR2:** Write Protection bit
For PIC18FX520 devices:
1 = Block 2 (004000-005FFFh) not write-protected
0 = Block 2 (004000-005FFFh) write-protected
For PIC18FX620 and PIC18FX720 devices:
1 = Block 2 (008000-00BFFFh) not write-protected
0 = Block 2 (008000-00BFFFh) write-protected

bit 1 **WR1:** Write Protection bit
For PIC18FX520 devices:
1 = Block 1 (002000-003FFFh) not write-protected
0 = Block 1 (002000-003FFFh) write-protected
For PIC18FX620 and PIC18FX720 devices:
1 = Block 1 (004000-007FFFh) not write-protected
0 = Block 1 (004000-007FFFh) write-protected

bit 0 **WR0:** Write Protection bit
For PIC18FX520 devices:
1 = Block 0 (000800-001FFFh) not write-protected
0 = Block 0 (000800-001FFFh) write-protected
For PIC18FX620 and PIC18FX720 devices:
1 = Block 0 (000200-003FFFh) not write-protected
0 = Block 0 (000200-003FFFh) write-protected

Note 1: Unimplemented in PIC18FX520 and PIC18FX620 devices; maintain this bit set.

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

REGISTER 23-10: CONFIG6H: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 6 HIGH (BYTE ADDRESS 30000Bh)

R/P-1	R/P-1	R-1	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0
WRTD	WRTB	WRTC(1)	—	—	—	—	—
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **WRTD:** Data EEPROM Write Protection bit
1 = Data EEPROM not write-protected
0 = Data EEPROM write-protected

bit 6 **WRTB:** Boot Block Write Protection bit
For PIC18FX520 devices:
1 = Boot Block (000000-0007FFh) not write-protected
0 = Boot Block (000000-0007FFh) write-protected
For PIC18FX620 and PIC18FX720 devices:
1 = Boot Block (000000-0001FFh) not write-protected
0 = Boot Block (000000-0001FFh) write-protected

bit 5 **WRTC:** Configuration Register Write Protection bit(1)
1 = Configuration registers (300000-3000FFh) not write-protected
0 = Configuration registers (300000-3000FFh) write-protected

Note 1: This bit is read-only and cannot be changed in user mode.

bit 4-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

REGISTER 23-11: CONFIG7L: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 7 LOW (BYTE ADDRESS 30000Ch)

R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1
EBTR7(1)	EBTR6(1)	EBTR5(1)	EBTR4(1)	EBTR3	EBTR2	EBTR1	EBTR0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **EBTR7:** Table Read Protection bit(1)
1 = Block 3 (01C000-01FFFFh) not protected from table reads executed in other blocks
0 = Block 3 (01C000-01FFFFh) protected from table reads executed in other blocks

bit 6 **EBTR6:** Table Read Protection bit(1)
1 = Block 2 (018000-01BFFFh) not protected from table reads executed in other blocks
0 = Block 2 (018000-01BFFFh) protected from table reads executed in other blocks

bit 5 **EBTR5:** Table Read Protection bit(1)
1 = Block 1 (014000-017FFFh) not protected from table reads executed in other blocks
0 = Block 1 (014000-017FFFh) protected from table reads executed in other blocks

bit 4 **EBTR4:** Table Read Protection bit(1)
1 = Block 0 (010000-013FFFh) not protected from table reads executed in other blocks
0 = Block 0 (010000-013FFFh) protected from table reads executed in other blocks

bit 3 **EBTR3:** Table Read Protection bit
For PIC18FX520 devices:
1 = Block 3 (006000-007FFFh) not protected from table reads executed in other blocks
0 = Block 3 (006000-007FFFh) protected from table reads executed in other blocks
For PIC18FX620 and PIC18FX720 devices:
1 = Block 3 (00C000-00FFFFh) not protected from table reads executed in other blocks
0 = Block 3 (00C000-00FFFFh) protected from table reads executed in other blocks

bit 2 **EBTR2:** Table Read Protection bit
For PIC18FX520 devices:
1 = Block 2 (004000-005FFFh) not protected from table reads executed in other blocks
0 = Block 2 (004000-005FFFh) protected from table reads executed in other blocks
For PIC18FX620 and PIC18FX720 devices:
1 = Block 2 (008000-00BFFFh) not protected from table reads executed in other blocks
0 = Block 2 (008000-00BFFFh) protected from table reads executed in other blocks

bit 1 **EBTR1:** Table Read Protection bit
For PIC18FX520 devices:
1 = Block 1 (002000-003FFFh) not protected from table reads executed in other blocks
0 = Block 1 (002000-003FFFh) protected from table reads executed in other blocks
For PIC18FX620 and PIC18FX720 devices:
1 = Block 1 (004000-007FFFh) not protected from table reads executed in other blocks
0 = Block 1 (004000-007FFFh) protected from table reads executed in other blocks

bit 0 **EBTR0:** Table Read Protection bit
For PIC18FX520 devices:
1 = Block 0 (000800-001FFFh) not protected from table reads executed in other blocks
0 = Block 0 (000800-001FFFh) protected from table reads executed in other blocks
For PIC18FX620 and PIC18FX720 devices:
1 = Block 0 (000200-003FFFh) not protected from table reads executed in other blocks
0 = Block 0 (000200-003FFFh) protected from table reads executed in other blocks

Note 1: Unimplemented in PIC18FX520 and PIC18FX620 devices; maintain this bit set.

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

REGISTER 23-12: CONFIG7H: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 7 HIGH (BYTE ADDRESS 30000Dh)

U-0	R/P-1	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0
—	EBTRB	—	—	—	—	—	—
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 6 **EBTRB:** Boot Block Table Read Protection bit

For PIC18FX520 devices:
1 = Boot Block (000000-0007FFh) not protected from table reads executed in other blocks
0 = Boot Block (000000-0007FFh) protected from table reads executed in other blocks

For PIC18FX620 and PIC18FX720 devices:
1 = Boot Block (000000-0001FFh) not protected from table reads executed in other blocks
0 = Boot Block (000000-0001FFh) protected from table reads executed in other blocks

bit 5-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

REGISTER 23-13: DEVICE ID REGISTER 1 FOR PIC18FXX20 DEVICES (ADDRESS 3FFFFEh)

R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
DEV2	DEV1	DEV0	REV4	REV3	REV2	REV1	REV0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-5 **DEV2:DEV0:** Device ID bits

000 = PIC18F8720
001 = PIC18F6720
010 = PIC18F8620
011 = PIC18F6620

bit 4-0 **REV4:REV0:** Revision ID bits

These bits are used to indicate the device revision.

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

REGISTER 23-14: DEVICE ID REGISTER 2 FOR PIC18FXX20 DEVICES (ADDRESS 3FFFFFh)

R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
DEV10	DEV9	DEV8	DEV7	DEV6	DEV5	DEV4	DEV3
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-0 **DEV10:DEV3:** Device ID bits

These bits are used with the DEV2:DEV0 bits in the Device ID Register 1 to identify the part number.

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

23.2 Watchdog Timer (WDT)

The Watchdog Timer is a free running, on-chip RC oscillator, which does not require any external components. This RC oscillator is separate from the RC oscillator of the OSC1/CLKI pin. That means that the WDT will run, even if the clock on the OSC1/CLKI and OSC2/CLKO/RA6 pins of the device has been stopped, for example, by execution of a `SLEEP` instruction.

During normal operation, a WDT time-out generates a device Reset (Watchdog Timer Reset). If the device is in Sleep mode, a WDT time-out causes the device to wake-up and continue with normal operation (Watchdog Timer wake-up). The $\overline{\text{TO}}$ bit in the RCON register will be cleared upon a WDT time-out.

The Watchdog Timer is enabled/disabled by a device configuration bit. If the WDT is enabled, software execution may not disable this function. When the WDTEN configuration bit is cleared, the SWDTEN bit enables/disables the operation of the WDT.

The WDT time-out period values may be found in the Electrical Specifications section under parameter #31. Values for the WDT postscaler may be assigned using the configuration bits.

Note 1:	The `CLRWDT` and `SLEEP` instructions clear the WDT and the postscaler, if assigned to the WDT and prevent it from timing out and generating a device Reset condition.
2:	When a `CLRWDT` instruction is executed and the postscaler is assigned to the WDT, the postscaler count will be cleared, but the postscaler assignment is not changed.

23.2.1 CONTROL REGISTER

Register 23-15 shows the WDTCON register. This is a readable and writable register, which contains a control bit that allows software to override the WDT enable configuration bit, only when the configuration bit has disabled the WDT.

REGISTER 23-15: WDTCON REGISTER

U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SWDTEN
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-1 **Unimplemented**: Read as '0'

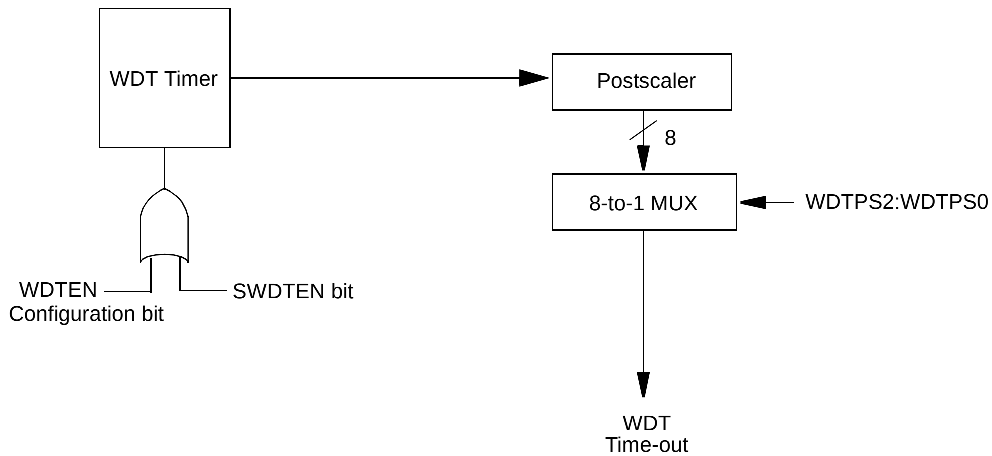
bit 0 **SWDTEN:** Software Controlled Watchdog Timer Enable bit
1 = Watchdog Timer is on
0 = Watchdog Timer is turned off if the WDTEN configuration bit in the configuration register = 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

23.2.2 WDT POSTSCALER

The WDT has a postscaler that can extend the WDT Reset period. The postscaler is selected at the time of the device programming by the value written to the CONFIG2H Configuration register.

FIGURE 23-1: WATCHDOG TIMER BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note: WDPS2:WDPS0 are bits in register CONFIG2H.

TABLE 23-2: SUMMARY OF WATCHDOG TIMER REGISTERS

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
CONFIG2H	—	—	—	—	WDTPS2	WDTPS2	WDTPS0	WDTEN
RCON	IPEN	—	—	$\overline{\text{RI}}$	$\overline{\text{TO}}$	$\overline{\text{PD}}$	$\overline{\text{POR}}$	$\overline{\text{BOR}}$
WDTCON	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SWDTEN

Legend: Shaded cells are not used by the Watchdog Timer.

23.3 Power-down Mode (Sleep)

Power-down mode is entered by executing a SLEEP instruction.

If enabled, the Watchdog Timer will be cleared, but keeps running, the $\overline{PD}$ bit (RCON<3>) is cleared, the $\overline{TO}$ (RCON<4>) bit is set and the oscillator driver is turned off. The I/O ports maintain the status they had before the SLEEP instruction was executed (driving high, low or high-impedance).

For lowest current consumption in this mode, place all I/O pins at either V_{DD} or V_{SS}, ensure no external circuitry is drawing current from the I/O pin, power-down the A/D and disable external clocks. Pull all I/O pins that are high-impedance inputs, high or low externally, to avoid switching currents caused by floating inputs. The T0CKI input should also be at V_{DD} or V_{SS} for lowest current consumption. The contribution from on-chip pull-ups on PORTB should be considered.

The $\overline{MCLR}$ pin must be at a logic high level (V_{IHMC}).

23.3.1 WAKE-UP FROM SLEEP

The device can wake-up from Sleep through one of the following events:

1. External Reset input on $\overline{MCLR}$ pin.
2. Watchdog Timer Wake-up (if WDT was enabled).
3. Interrupt from INT pin, RB port change or a peripheral interrupt.

The following peripheral interrupts can wake the device from Sleep:

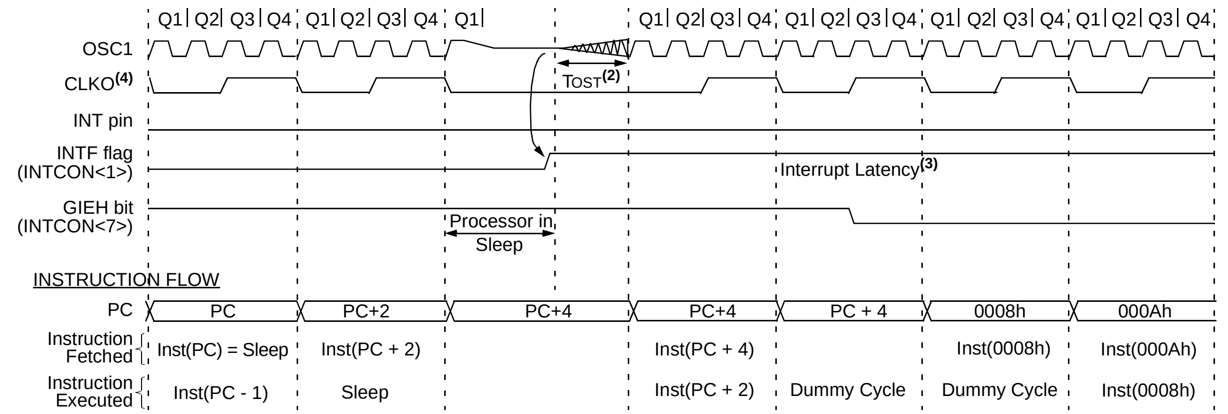
1. PSP read or write.
2. TMR1 interrupt. Timer1 must be operating as an asynchronous counter.
3. TMR3 interrupt. Timer3 must be operating as an asynchronous counter.
4. CCP Capture mode interrupt.
5. Special event trigger (Timer1 in Asynchronous mode using an external clock).
6. MSSP (Start/Stop) bit detect interrupt.
7. MSSP transmit or receive in Slave mode (SPI/I^{2}C).
8. USART RX or TX (Synchronous Slave mode).
9. A/D conversion (when A/D clock source is RC).
10. EEPROM write operation complete.
11. LVD interrupt.

Other peripherals cannot generate interrupts, since during Sleep, no on-chip clocks are present.

External $\overline{MCLR}$ Reset will cause a device Reset. All other events are considered a continuation of program execution and will cause a “wake-up”. The $\overline{TO}$ and $\overline{PD}$ bits in the RCON register can be used to determine the cause of the device Reset. The $\overline{PD}$ bit, which is set on power-up, is cleared when Sleep is invoked. The $\overline{TO}$ bit is cleared if a WDT time-out occurred (and caused wake-up).

When the SLEEP instruction is being executed, the next instruction (PC + 2) is prefetched. For the device to wake-up through an interrupt event, the cœ co

FIGURE 23-2: WAKE-UP FROM SLEEP THROUGH INTERRUPT(1,2)



Note 1: XT, HS or LP Oscillator mode assumed.
2: GIE = `1` assumed. In this case, after wake-up, the processor jumps to the interrupt routine. If GIE = `0`, execution will continue in-line.
3: TOST = 1024 TOSC (drawing not to scale). This delay will not occur for RC and EC Oscillator modes.
4: CLKO is not available in these oscillator modes, but shown here for timing reference.

23.4 Program Verification and Code Protection

The overall structure of the code protection on the PIC18 Flash devices differs significantly from other PICmicro® devices. The user program memory is divided on binary boundaries into individual blocks, each of which has three separate code protection bits associated with it:

- Code-Protect bit (CPn)
- Write-Protect bit (WRTn)
- External Block Table Read bit (EBTRn)

The code protection bits are located in Configuration Registers 5L through 7H. Their locations within the registers are summarized in Table 23-3.

In the PIC18FXX20 family, the block size varies with the size of the user program memory. For PIC18FX520 devices, program memory is divided into four blocks of 8 Kbytes each. The first block is further divided into a boot block of 2 Kbytes and a second block (Block 0) of 6 Kbytes, for a total of five blocks. The organization of the blocks and their associated code protection bits are shown in Figure 23-3.

For PIC18FX620 and PIC18FX720 devices, program memory is divided into blocks of 16 Kbytes. The first block is further divided into a boot block of 512 bytes and a second block (Block 0) of 15.5 Kbytes, for a total of nine blocks. This produces five blocks for 64-Kbyte devices and nine for 128-Kbyte devices. The organization of the blocks and their associated code protection bits are shown in Figure 23-4.

TABLE 23-3: SUMMARY OF CODE PROTECTION REGISTERS

File Name		Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
300008h	CONFIG5L	CP7(1)	CP6(1)	CP5(1)	CP4(1)	CP3	CP2	CP1	CP0
300009h	CONFIG5H	CPD	CPB	—	—	—	—	—	—
30000Ah	CONFIG6L	WRT7(1)	WRT6(1)	WRT5(1)	WRT4(1)	WRT3	WRT2	WRT1	WRT0
30000Bh	CONFIG6H	WRTD	WRTB	WRTC	—	—	—	—	—
30000Ch	CONFIG7L	EBTR7(1)	EBTR6(1)	EBTR5(1)	EBTR4(1)	EBTR3	EBTR2	EBTR1	EBTR0
30000Dh	CONFIG7H	—	EBTRB	—	—	—	—	—	—

Legend: Shaded cells are unimplemented.
Note 1: Unimplemented in PIC18FX520 and PIC18FX620 devices.

FIGURE 23-3: CODE-PROTECTED PROGRAM MEMORY FOR PIC18FX520 DEVICES

32 Kbytes	Address Range	Block Code Protection Controlled By:
Boot Block	000000h 0007FFh	CPB, WRTB, EBTRB
Block 0	000800h 001FFFh	CP0, WRT0, EBTR0
Block 1	002000h 003FFFh	CP1, WRT1, EBTR1
Block 2	004000h 005FFFh	CP2, WRT2, EBTR2
Block 3	006000h 007FFFh	CP3, WRT3, EBTR3
Unimplemented Read '0's	008000h 1FFFFFh	

FIGURE 23-4: CODE-PROTECTED PROGRAM MEMORY FOR PIC18FX620/X720 DEVICES

MEMORY SIZE/DEVICE			
64 Kbytes (PIC18FX620)	**128 Kbytes (PIC18FX720)**	**Address Range**	**Block Code Protection Controlled By:**
Boot Block	Boot Block	000000h 0001FFh	CPB, WRTB, EBTRB
Block 0	Block 0	000200h 003FFFh	CP0, WRT0, EBTR0
Block 1	Block 1	004000h 007FFFh	CP1, WRT1, EBTR1
Block 2	Block 2	008000h 00BFFFh	CP2, WRT2, EBTR2
Block 3	Block 3	00C000h 00FFFFh	CP3, WRT3, EBTR3
Unimplemented Read '0's	Block 4	010000h 013FFFh	CP4, WRT4, EBTR4
	Block 5	014000h 017FFFh	CP5, WRT5, EBTR5
	Block 6	018000h 01BFFFh	CP6, WRT6, EBTR6
	Block 7	01C000h 01FFFFh	CP7, WRT7, EBTR7

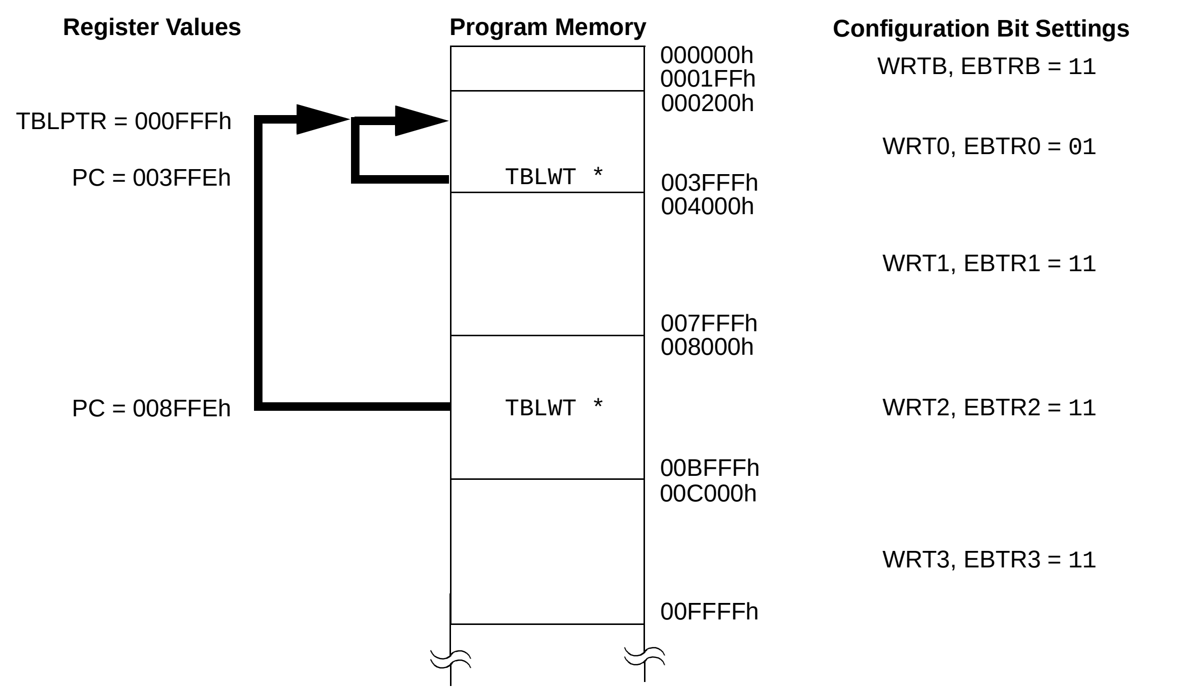
23.4.1 PROGRAM MEMORY CODE PROTECTION

The user memory may be read to, or written from, any location using the table read and table write instructions. The device ID may be read with table reads. The configuration registers may be read and written with the table read and table write instructions.

In user mode, the CPn bits have no direct effect. CPn bits inhibit external reads and writes. A block of user memory may be protected from table writes if the WRTn configuration bit is '0'. The EBTRn bits control table reads. For a block of user memory with the EBTRn bit set to '0', a table read instruction that executes from within that block is allowed to read. A table read instruction that executes from a location outside of that block is not allowed to read and will result in reading '0's. Figures 23-5 through 23-7 illustrate table write and table read protection using devices with a 16-Kbyte block size as the models. The principles illustrated are identical for devices with an 8-Kbyte block size.

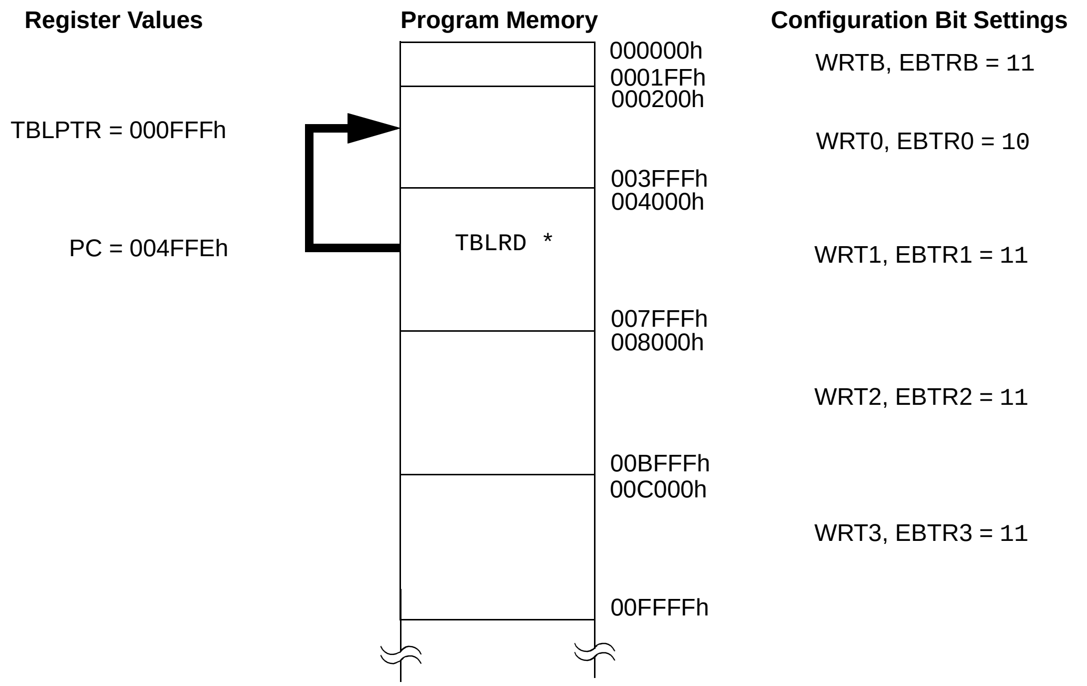
Note:	Code protection bits may only be written to a '0' from a '1' state. It is not possible to write a '1' to a bit in the '0' state. Code protection bits are only set to '1' by a full chip erase or block erase function. The full chip erase and block erase functions can only be initiated via ICSP or an external programmer.

FIGURE 23-5: TABLE WRITE (WRTn) DISALLOWED



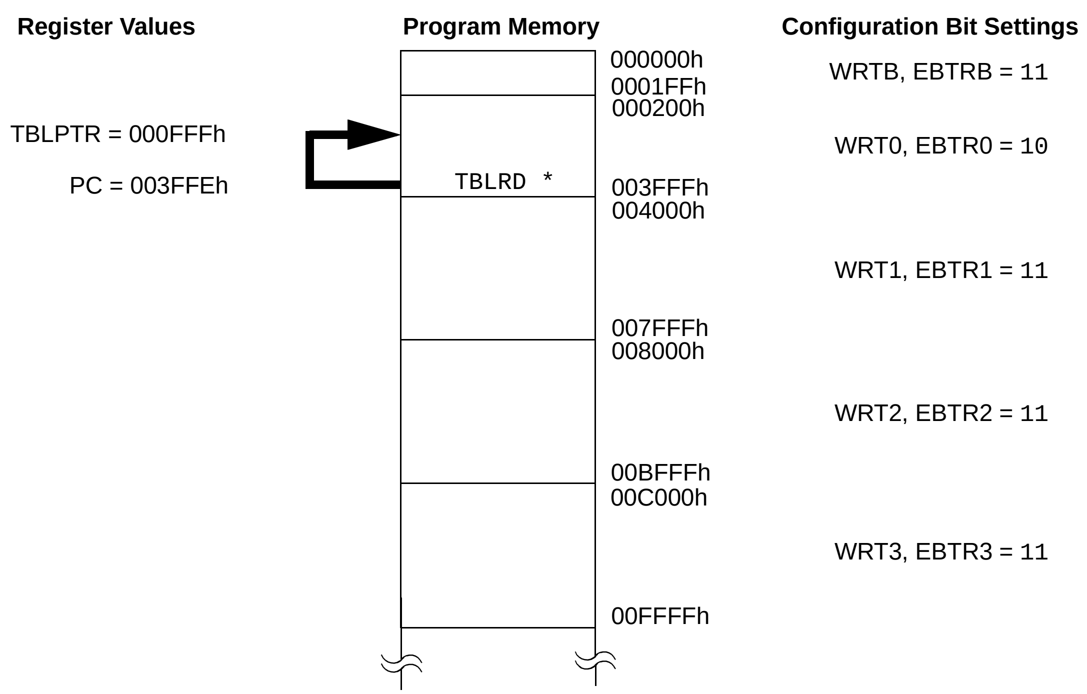
Results: All table writes disabled to Block n whenever WRTn = 0.

FIGURE 23-6: EXTERNAL BLOCK TABLE READ (EBTRn) DISALLOWED



Results: All table reads from external blocks to Block n are disabled whenever EBTRn = 0.
TABLAT register returns a value of ‘0’.

FIGURE 23-7: EXTERNAL BLOCK TABLE READ (EBTRn) ALLOWED



Results: Table reads permitted within Block n, even when EBTRBn = 0.
TABLAT register returns the value of the data at the location TBLPTR.

23.4.2 DATA EEPROM CODE PROTECTION

The entire data EEPROM is protected from external reads and writes by two bits: CPD and WRTD. CPD inhibits external reads and writes of data EEPROM. WRTD inhibits external writes to data EEPROM. The CPU can continue to read and write data EEPROM, regardless of the protection bit settings.

23.4.3 CONFIGURATION REGISTER PROTECTION

The configuration registers can be write-protected. The WRTC bit controls protection of the configuration registers. In user mode, the WRTC bit is readable only. WRTC can only be written via ICSP or an external programmer.

23.5 ID Locations

Eight memory locations (200000h-200007h) are designated as ID locations, where the user can store checksum or other code identification numbers. These locations are accessible during normal execution through the `TBLRD` and `TBLWT` instructions or during program/verify. The ID locations can be read when the device is code-protected.

23.6 In-Circuit Serial Programming

PIC18FX520/X620/X720 microcontrollers can be serially programmed while in the end application circuit. This is simply done with two lines for clock and data and three other lines for power, ground and the programming voltage. This allows customers to manufacture boards with unprogrammed devices and then program the microcontroller just before shipping the product. This also allows the most recent firmware or a custom firmware to be programmed.

> **Note:** When performing In-Circuit Serial Programming, verify that power is connected to **all** V_{DD} and AV_{DD} pins of the microcontroller and that **all** V_{SS} and AV_{SS} pins are grounded.

23.7 In-Circuit Debugger

When the DEBUG bit in the CONFIG4L Configuration register is programmed to a '0', the In-Circuit Debugger functionality is enabled. This function allows simple debugging functions when used with MPLAB® IDE. When the microcontroller has this feature enabled, some of the resources are not available for general use. Table 23-4 shows which features are consumed by the background debugger.

TABLE 23-4: DEBUGGER RESOURCES

I/O pins	RB6, RB7
Stack	2 levels
Program Memory	Last 576 bytes
Data Memory	Last 10 bytes

To use the In-Circuit Debugger function of the microcontroller, the design must implement In-Circuit Serial Programming connections to $\overline{MCLR}/V_{PP}$, V_{DD}, GND, RB7 and RB6. This will interface to the In-Circuit Debugger module available from Microchip or one of the third party development tool companies.

23.8 Low-Voltage ICSP Programming

The LVP bit in the CONFIG4L Configuration register enables Low-Voltage ICSP Programming. This mode allows the microcontroller to be programmed via ICSP using a V_{DD} source in the operating voltage range. This only means that V_{PP} does not have to be brought to V_{IHH}, but can instead be left at the normal operating voltage. In this mode, the RB5/PGM pin is dedicated to the programming function and ceases to be a general purpose I/O pin. During programming, V_{DD} is applied to the $\overline{MCLR}/V_{PP}$ pin. To enter Programming mode, V_{DD} must be applied to the RB5/PGM pin, provided the LVP bit is set. The LVP bit defaults to a '1' from the factory.

> **Note 1:** The High-Voltage Programming mode is always available, regardless of the state of the LVP bit, by applying V_{IHH} to the $\overline{MCLR}$ pin.
>
> **2:** While in Low-Voltage ICSP mode, the RB5 pin can no longer be used as a general purpose I/O pin and should be held low during normal operation.
>
> **3:** When using Low-Voltage ICSP Programming (LVP) and the pull-ups on PORTB are enabled, bit 5 in the TRISB register must be cleared to disable the pull-up on RB5 and ensure the proper operation of the device.

If Low-Voltage Programming mode is not used, the LVP bit can be programmed to a '0' and RB5/PGM becomes a digital I/O pin. However, the LVP bit may only be programmed when programming is entered with V_{IHH} on $\overline{MCLR}/V_{PP}$.

It should be noted that once the LVP bit is programmed to '0', only the High-Voltage Programming mode is available and only High-Voltage Programming mode can be used to program the device.

When using Low-Voltage ICSP Programming, the part must be supplied 4.5V to 5.5V if a bulk erase will be executed. This includes reprogramming of the code-protect bits from an on state to an off state. For all other cases of Low-Voltage ICSP, the part may be programmed at the normal operating voltage. This means unique user IDs or user code can be reprogrammed or added.

NOTES:

24.0 INSTRUCTION SET SUMMARY

The PIC18 instruction set adds many enhancements to the previous PICmicro instruction sets, while maintaining an easy migration from these PICmicro instruction sets.

Most instructions are a single program memory word (16 bits), but there are three instructions that require two program memory locations.

Each single-word instruction is a 16-bit word divided into an opcode, which specifies the instruction type and one or more operands, which further specify the operation of the instruction.

The instruction set is highly orthogonal and is grouped into four basic categories:

- **Byte-oriented** operations
- **Bit-oriented** operations
- **Literal** operations
- **Control** operations

The PIC18 instruction set summary in Table 24-1 lists **byte-oriented**, **bit-oriented**, **literal** and **control** operations. Table 24-1 shows the opcode field descriptions.

Most **byte-oriented** instructions have three operands:

1. The file register (specified by ‘f’)
2. The destination of the result

TABLE 24-1: OPCODE FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Field	Description
a	RAM access bit a = 0: RAM location in Access RAM (BSR register is ignored) a = 1: RAM bank is specified by BSR register
bbb	Bit address within an 8-bit file register (0 to 7).
BSR	Bank Select Register. Used to select the current RAM bank.
d	Destination select bit d = 0: store result in WREG d = 1: store result in file register f
dest	Destination either the WREG register or the specified register file location.
f	8-bit Register file address (0x00 to 0xFF).
fs	12-bit Register file address (0x000 to 0xFFF). This is the source address.
fd	12-bit Register file address (0x000 to 0xFFF). This is the destination address.
k	Literal field, constant data or label (may be either an 8-bit, 12-bit or a 20-bit value).
label	Label name.
mm * *+ *- +*	The mode of the TBLPTR register for the table read and table write instructions. Only used with table read and table write instructions: No Change to register (such as TBLPTR with table reads and writes) Post-Increment register (such as TBLPTR with table reads and writes) Post-Decrement register (such as TBLPTR with table reads and writes) Pre-Increment register (such as TBLPTR with table reads and writes)
n	The relative address (2’s complement number) for relative branch instructions, or the direct address for Call/Branch and Return instructions.
PRODH	Product of Multiply High Byte.
PRODL	Product of Multiply Low Byte.
s	Fast Call/Return mode select bit s = 0: do not update into/from shadow registers s = 1: certain registers loaded into/from shadow registers (Fast mode)
u	Unused or Unchanged.
WREG	Working register (accumulator).
x	Don’t care (‘0’ or ‘1’). The assembler will generate code with x = 0. It is the recommended form of use for compatibility with all Microchip software tools.
TBLPTR	21-bit Table Pointer (points to a Program Memory location).
TABLAT	8-bit Table Latch.
TOS	Top-of-Stack.
PC	Program Counter.
PCL	Program Counter Low Byte.
PCH	Program Counter High Byte.
PCLATH	Program Counter High Byte Latch.
PCLATU	Program Counter Upper Byte Latch.
GIE	Global Interrupt Enable bit.
WDT	Watchdog Timer.
$\overline{\text{TO}}$	Time-out bit.
$\overline{\text{PD}}$	Power-down bit.
C, DC, Z, OV, N	ALU Status bits: Carry, Digit Carry, Zero, Overflow, Negative.
[ ]	Optional.
( )	Contents.
→	Assigned to.
< >	Register bit field.
∈	In the set of.
italics	User defined term (font is courier).

FIGURE 24-1: GENERAL FORMAT FOR INSTRUCTIONS

Byte-oriented file register operations — **Example Instruction**: `ADDWF MYREG, W, B`

15 … 10	9	8	7 … 0
OPCODE	d	a	f (FILE #)

d = `0` for result destination to be WREG register
d = `1` for result destination to be file register (f)
a = `0` to force Access Bank
a = `1` for BSR to select bank
f = 8-bit file register address

Byte to Byte move operations (2-word) — `MOVFF MYREG1, MYREG2`

15 … 12	11 … 0
OPCODE	f (Source FILE #)

15 … 12	11 … 0
`1111`	f (Destination FILE #)

f = 12-bit file register address

Bit-oriented file register operations — `BSF MYREG, bit, B`

15 … 12	11 … 9	8	7 … 0
OPCODE	b (BIT #)	a	f (FILE #)

b = 3-bit position of bit in file register (f)
a = `0` to force Access Bank
a = `1` for BSR to select bank
f = 8-bit file register address

Literal operations — `MOVLW 0x7F`

15 … 8	7 … 0
OPCODE	k (literal)

k = 8-bit immediate value

Control operations

`CALL`, `GOTO` and Branch operations

`GOTO Label`

15 … 8	7 … 0
OPCODE	n<7:0> (literal)

15 … 12	11 … 0
`1111`	n<19:8> (literal)

n = 20-bit immediate value

`CALL MYFUNC`

15 … 8		7 … 0
OPCODE	S	n<7:0> (literal)

15 … 12	11 … 0
	n<19:8> (literal)

S = Fast bit

`BRA MYFUNC`

15 … 11	10 … 0
OPCODE	n<10:0> (literal)

`BC MYFUNC`

15 … 8	7 … 0
OPCODE	n<7:0> (literal)

TABLE 24-1: PIC18FXXXX INSTRUCTION SET

Mnemonic,	Operands	Description	Cycles	16-Bit Instruction Word				Status Affected	Notes
				MSb			LSb		
BYTE-ORIENTED FILE REGISTER OPERATIONS									
ADDWF	f, d, a	Add WREG and f	1	0010	01da	ffff	ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	1, 2
ADDWFC	f, d, a	Add WREG and Carry bit to f	1	0010	00da	ffff	ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	1, 2
ANDWF	f, d, a	AND WREG with f	1	0001	01da	ffff	ffff	Z, N	1,2
CLRF	f, a	Clear f	1	0110	101a	ffff	ffff	Z	2
COMF	f, d, a	Complement f	1	0001	11da	ffff	ffff	Z, N	1, 2
CPFSEQ	f, a	Compare f with WREG, skip =	1 (2 or 3)	0110	001a	ffff	ffff	None	4
CPFSGT	f, a	Compare f with WREG, skip >	1 (2 or 3)	0110	010a	ffff	ffff	None	4
CPFSLT	f, a	Compare f with WREG, skip <	1 (2 or 3)	0110	000a	ffff	ffff	None	1, 2
DECF	f, d, a	Decrement f	1	0000	01da	ffff	ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	1, 2, 3, 4
DECFSZ	f, d, a	Decrement f, Skip if 0	1 (2 or 3)	0010	11da	ffff	ffff	None	1, 2, 3, 4
DCFSNZ	f, d, a	Decrement f, Skip if Not 0	1 (2 or 3)	0100	11da	ffff	ffff	None	1, 2
INCF	f, d, a	Increment f	1	0010	10da	ffff	ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	1, 2, 3, 4
INCFSZ	f, d, a	Increment f, Skip if 0	1 (2 or 3)	0011	11da	ffff	ffff	None	4
INFSNZ	f, d, a	Increment f, Skip if Not 0	1 (2 or 3)	0100	10da	ffff	ffff	None	1, 2
IORWF	f, d, a	Inclusive OR WREG with f	1	0001	00da	ffff	ffff	Z, N	1, 2
MOVF	f, d, a	Move f	1	0101	00da	ffff	ffff	Z, N	1
MOVFF	f_s, f_d	Move f_s (source) to 1st word	2	1100	ffff	ffff	ffff	None	
		f_d (destination) 2nd word		1111	ffff	ffff	ffff		
MOVWF	f, a	Move WREG to f	1	0110	111a	ffff	ffff	None	
MULWF	f, a	Multiply WREG with f	1	0000	001a	ffff	ffff	None	
NEGF	f, a	Negate f	1	0110	110a	ffff	ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	1, 2
RLCF	f, d, a	Rotate Left f through Carry	1	0011	01da	ffff	ffff	C, Z, N	
RLNCF	f, d, a	Rotate Left f (No Carry)	1	0100	01da	ffff	ffff	Z, N	1, 2
RRCF	f, d, a	Rotate Right f through Carry	1	0011	00da	ffff	ffff	C, Z, N	
RRNCF	f, d, a	Rotate Right f (No Carry)	1	0100	00da	ffff	ffff	Z, N	
SETF	f, a	Set f	1	0110	100a	ffff	ffff	None	
SUBFWB	f, d, a	Subtract f from WREG with borrow	1	0101	01da	ffff	ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	1, 2
SUBWF	f, d, a	Subtract WREG from f	1	0101	11da	ffff	ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	
SUBWFB	f, d, a	Subtract WREG from f with borrow	1	0101	10da	ffff	ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	1, 2
SWAPF	f, d, a	Swap nibbles in f	1	0011	10da	ffff	ffff	None	4
TSTFSZ	f, a	Test f, skip if 0	1 (2 or 3)	0110	011a	ffff	ffff	None	1, 2
XORWF	f, d, a	Exclusive OR WREG with f	1	0001	10da	ffff	ffff	Z, N	
BIT-ORIENTED FILE REGISTER OPERATIONS									
BCF	f, b, a	Bit Clear f	1	1001	bbba	ffff	ffff	None	1, 2
BSF	f, b, a	Bit Set f	1	1000	bbba	ffff	ffff	None	1, 2
BTFSC	f, b, a	Bit Test f, Skip if Clear	1 (2 or 3)	1011	bbba	ffff	ffff	None	3, 4
BTFSS	f, b, a	Bit Test f, Skip if Set	1 (2 or 3)	1010	bbba	ffff	ffff	None	3, 4
BTG	f, d, a	Bit Toggle f	1	0111	bbba	ffff	ffff	None	1, 2

Note 1: When a Port register is modified as a function of itself (e.g., `MOVF PORTB, 1, 0`), the value used will be that value present on the pins themselves. For example, if the data latch is '1' for a pin configured as input and is driven low by an external device, the data will be written back with a '0'.

2: If this instruction is executed on the TMR0 register (and where applicable, d = 1), the prescaler will be cleared if assigned.

3: If Program Counter (PC) is modified or a conditional test is true, the instruction requires two cycles. The second cycle is executed as a NOP.

4: Some instructions are 2-word instructions. The second word of these instructions will be executed as a NOP unless the first word of the instruction retrieves the information embedded in these 16 bits. This ensures that all program memory locations have a valid instruction.

5: If the table write starts the write cycle to internal memory, the write will continue until terminated.

TABLE 24-1: PIC18FXXXX INSTRUCTION SET (CONTINUED)

Mnemonic, Operands		Description	Cycles	16-Bit Instruction Word				Status Affected	Notes
				MSb			LSb		
CONTROL OPERATIONS									
BC	n	Branch if Carry	1 (2)	1110	0010	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BN	n	Branch if Negative	1 (2)	1110	0110	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BNC	n	Branch if Not Carry	1 (2)	1110	0011	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BNN	n	Branch if Not Negative	1 (2)	1110	0111	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BNOV	n	Branch if Not Overflow	1 (2)	1110	0101	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BNZ	n	Branch if Not Zero	1 (2)	1110	0001	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BOV	n	Branch if Overflow	1 (2)	1110	0100	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BRA	n	Branch Unconditionally	2	1101	0nnn	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BZ	n	Branch if Zero	1 (2)	1110	0000	nnnn	nnnn	None	
CALL	n, s	Call subroutine 1st word	2	1110	110s	kkkk	kkkk	None	
		2nd word		1111	kkkk	kkkk	kkkk		
CLRWDT	—	Clear Watchdog Timer	1	0000	0000	0000	0100	$\overline{TO}$, $\overline{PD}$	
DAW	—	Decimal Adjust WREG	1	0000	0000	0000	0111	C	
GOTO	n	Go to address 1st word	2	1110	1111	kkkk	kkkk	None	
		2nd word		1111	kkkk	kkkk	kkkk		
NOP	—	No Operation	1	0000	0000	0000	0000	None	
NOP	—	No Operation	1	1111	xxxx	xxxx	xxxx	None	4
POP	—	Pop top of return stack (TOS)	1	0000	0000	0000	0110	None	
PUSH	—	Push top of return stack (TOS)	1	0000	0000	0000	0101	None	
RCALL	n	Relative Call	2	1101	1nnn	nnnn	nnnn	None	
RESET		Software device Reset	1	0000	0000	1111	1111	All	
RETFIE	s	Return from interrupt enable	2	0000	0000	0001	000s	GIE/GIEH, PEIE/GIEL	
RETLW	k	Return with literal in WREG	2	0000	1100	kkkk	kkkk	None	
RETURN	s	Return from Subroutine	2	0000	0000	0001	001s	None	
SLEEP	—	Go into Standby mode	1	0000	0000	0000	0011	$\overline{TO}$, $\overline{PD}$	

Note 1: When a Port register is modified as a function of itself (e.g., `MOVF PORTB, 1, 0`), the value used will be that value present on the pins themselves. For example, if the data latch is '1' for a pin configured as input and is driven low by an external device, the data will be written back with a '0'.

2: If this instruction is executed on the TMR0 register (and where applicable, d = 1), the prescaler will be cleared if assigned.

3: If Program Counter (PC) is modified or a conditional test is true, the instruction requires two cycles. The second cycle is executed as a `NOP`.

4: Some instructions are 2-word instructions. The second word of these instructions will be executed as a `NOP` unless the first word of the instruction retrieves the information embedded in these 16 bits. This ensures that all program memory locations have a valid instruction.

5: If the table write starts the write cycle to internal memory, the write will continue until terminated.

TABLE 24-1: PIC18FXXXX INSTRUCTION SET (CONTINUED)

Mnemonic, Operands		Description	Cycles	16-Bit Instruction Word				Status Affected	Notes
				MSb			LSb		
LITERAL OPERATIONS									
ADDLW	k	Add literal and WREG	1	0000	1111	kkkk	kkkk	C, DC, Z, OV, N	
ANDLW	k	AND literal with WREG	1	0000	1011	kkkk	kkkk	Z, N	
IORLW	k	Inclusive OR literal with WREG	1	0000	1001	kkkk	kkkk	Z, N	
LFSR	f, k	Move literal (12-bit) 2nd word to FSRx 1st word	2	1110 1111	1110 0000	00ff kkkk	kkkk kkkk	None	
MOVLB	k	Move literal to BSR<3:0>	1	0000	0001	0000	kkkk	None	
MOVLW	k	Move literal to WREG	1	0000	1110	kkkk	kkkk	None	
MULLW	k	Multiply literal with WREG	1	0000	1101	kkkk	kkkk	None	
RETLW	k	Return with literal in WREG	2	0000	1100	kkkk	kkkk	None	
SUBLW	k	Subtract WREG from literal	1	0000	1000	kkkk	kkkk	C, DC, Z, OV, N	
XORLW	k	Exclusive OR literal with WREG	1	0000	1010	kkkk	kkkk	Z, N	
DATA MEMORY ↔ PROGRAM MEMORY OPERATIONS									
TBLRD*		Table Read	2	0000	0000	0000	1000	None	
TBLRD*+		Table Read with post-increment		0000	0000	0000	1001	None	
TBLRD*-		Table Read with post-decrement		0000	0000	0000	1010	None	
TBLRD+*		Table Read with pre-increment		0000	0000	0000	1011	None	
TBLWT*		Table Write	2 (5)	0000	0000	0000	1100	None	
TBLWT*+		Table Write with post-increment		0000	0000	0000	1101	None	
TBLWT*-		Table Write with post-decrement		0000	0000	0000	1110	None	
TBLWT+*		Table Write with pre-increment		0000	0000	0000	1111	None	

Note 1: When a Port register is modified as a function of itself (e.g., `MOVF PORTB, 1, 0`), the value used will be that value present on the pins themselves. For example, if the data latch is '1' for a pin configured as input and is driven low by an external device, the data will be written back with a '0'.

2: If this instruction is executed on the TMR0 register (and where applicable, d = 1), the prescaler will be cleared if assigned.

3: If Program Counter (PC) is modified or a conditional test is true, the instruction requires two cycles. The second cycle is executed as a `NOP`.

4: Some instructions are 2-word instructions. The second word of these instructions will be executed as a `NOP` unless the first word of the instruction retrieves the information embedded in these 16 bits. This ensures that all program memory locations have a valid instruction.

5: If the table write starts the write cycle to internal memory, the write will continue until terminated.

24.1 Instruction Set

ADDLW **ADD literal to W**

Syntax:	[*label*] ADDLW k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 255$
Operation:	(W) + k → W
Status Affected:	N, OV, C, DC, Z
Encoding:	`0000` `1111` `kkkk` `kkkk`
Description:	The contents of W are added to the 8-bit literal 'k' and the result is placed in W.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write to W

Example: `ADDLW 0x15`

Before Instruction
W = 0x10
After Instruction
W = 0x25

ADDWF **ADD W to f**

Syntax:	[*label*] ADDWF f [,d [,a] f [,d [,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(W) + (f) → dest
Status Affected:	N, OV, C, DC, Z
Encoding:	`0010` `01da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	Add W to register 'f'. If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank will be selected. If 'a' is '1', the BSR is used.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `ADDWF REG, 0, 0`

Before Instruction
W = 0x17
REG = 0xC2
After Instruction
W = 0xD9
REG = 0xC2

ADDWFC — ADD W and Carry bit to f

Syntax:	[*label*] ADDWFC f [,d [,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$(W) + (f) + (C) \rightarrow dest$
Status Affected:	N, OV, C, DC, Z
Encoding:	`0010` `00da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	Add W, the Carry flag and data memory location 'f'. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed in data memory location 'f'. If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank will be selected. If 'a' is '1', the BSR will not be overridden.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `ADDWFC REG, 0, 1`

Before Instruction
- Carry bit = 1
- REG = 0x02
- W = 0x4D

After Instruction
- Carry bit = 0
- REG = 0x02
- W = 0x50

ANDLW — AND literal with W

Syntax:	[*label*] ANDLW k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 255$
Operation:	(W) .AND. k $\rightarrow$ W
Status Affected:	N, Z
Encoding:	`0000` `1011` `kkkk` `kkkk`
Description:	The contents of W are AND'ed with the 8-bit literal 'k'. The result is placed in W.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write to W

Example: `ANDLW 0x5F`

Before Instruction
- W = 0xA3

After Instruction
- W = 0x03

ANDWF **AND W with f**

Syntax:	[*label*] ANDWF f [,d [,a]
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(W) .AND. (f) $\rightarrow$ dest
Status Affected:	N, Z
Encoding:	`0001` `01da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	The contents of W are AND'ed with register 'f'. If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank will be selected. If 'a' is '1', the BSR will not be overridden (default).
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `ANDWF REG, 0, 0`

Before Instruction

W = 0x17
REG = 0xC2

After Instruction

W = 0x02
REG = 0xC2

BC **Branch if Carry**

Syntax:	[*label*] BC n
Operands:	$-128 \leq n \leq 127$
Operation:	if Carry bit is '1' (PC) + 2 + 2n $\rightarrow$ PC
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`1110` `0010` `nnnn` `nnnn`
Description:	If the Carry bit is '1', then the program will branch. The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC+2+2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2)

Q Cycle Activity:

If Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If No Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	No operation

Example: `HERE BC 5`

Before Instruction

PC = address (HERE)

After Instruction

If Carry = 1;
PC = address (HERE+12)
If Carry = 0;
PC = address (HERE+2)

BCF — Bit Clear f

Syntax:	[*label*] BCF f,b[,a]
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 255$ $0 \leq b \leq 7$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$0 \rightarrow$ f<b>
Status Affected:	None

Encoding:

1001	bbba	ffff	ffff

Description: Bit 'b' in register 'f' is cleared. If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write register 'f'

Example: `BCF FLAG_REG, 7, 0`

Before Instruction
FLAG_REG = 0xC7

After Instruction
FLAG_REG = 0x47

BN — Branch if Negative

Syntax:	[*label*] BN n
Operands:	$-128 \leq n \leq 127$
Operation:	if Negative bit is '1' $(PC) + 2 + 2n \rightarrow PC$
Status Affected:	None

Encoding:

1110	0110	nnnn	nnnn

Description: If the Negative bit is '1', then the program will branch.
The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC+2+2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1(2)

Q Cycle Activity:

If Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If No Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	No operation

Example: `HERE BN Jump`

Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)

After Instruction
If Negative = 1;
PC = address (Jump)
If Negative = 0;
PC = address (HERE+2)

BNC	**Branch if Not Carry**
Syntax:	[*label*] BNC n
Operands:	$-128 \leq n \leq 127$
Operation:	if Carry bit is '`0`' (PC) + 2 + 2n $\rightarrow$ PC
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`1110 0011 nnnn nnnn`
Description:	If the Carry bit is '`0`', then the program will branch. The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC+2+2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	1

BNOV **Branch if Not Overflow**

Syntax:	[*label*] BNOV n
Operands:	-128 ≤ n ≤ 127
Operation:	if Overflow bit is '0' (PC) + 2 + 2n → PC
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`1110` `0101` `nnnn` `nnnn`
Description:	If the Overflow bit is '0', then the program will branch. The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC+2+2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2)

Q Cycle Activity:

If Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If No Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	No operation

Example: `HERE BNOV Jump`

Before Instruction

PC = address (`HERE`)

After Instruction

If Overflow = 0;
PC = address (`Jump`)
If Overflow = 1;
PC = address (`HERE+2`)

BNZ **Branch if Not Zero**

Syntax:	[*label*] BNZ n
Operands:	-128 ≤ n ≤ 127
Operation:	if Zero bit is '0' (PC) + 2 + 2n → PC
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`1110` `0001` `nnnn` `nnnn`
Description:	If the Zero bit is '0', then the program will branch. The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC+2+2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2)

Q Cycle Activity:

If Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If No Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	No operation

Example: `HERE BNZ Jump`

Before Instruction

PC = address (`HERE`)

After Instruction

If Zero = 0;
PC = address (`Jump`)
If Zero = 1;
PC = address (`HERE+2`)

BRA **Unconditional Branch**

Syntax:	[*label*] BRA n
Operands:	-1024 ≤ n ≤ 1023
Operation:	(PC) + 2 + 2n → PC
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`1101` | `0nnn` | `nnnn` | `nnnn`
Description:	Add the 2's complement number '2n' to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC+2+2n. This instruction is a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	1
Cycles:	2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example: `HERE BRA Jump`

Before Instruction
PC = address (`HERE`)
After Instruction
PC = address (`Jump`)

BSF **Bit Set f**

Syntax:	[*label*] BSF f,b[,a]
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 255 0 ≤ b ≤ 7 a ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	1 → f<b>
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`1000` | `bbba` | `ffff` | `ffff`
Description:	Bit 'b' in register 'f' is set. If 'a' is '0', Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write register 'f'

Example: `BSF FLAG_REG, 7, 1`

Before Instruction
FLAG_REG = 0x0A
After Instruction
FLAG_REG = 0x8A

BTFSC	Bit Test File, Skip if Clear
Syntax:	[*label*] BTFSC f,b[,a]
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 255 0 ≤ b ≤ 7 a ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	skip if (f<b>) = 0
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`1011` `bbba` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	If bit 'b' in register 'f' is '0', then the next instruction is skipped. If bit 'b' is '0', then the next instruction fetched during the current instruction execution is discarded and a NOP is executed instead, making this a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2) **Note:** 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	No operation

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
HERE    BTFSC   FLAG, 1, 0
FALSE   :
TRUE    :
```

Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)

After Instruction
If FLAG<1> = 0;
PC = address (TRUE)
If FLAG<1> = 1;
PC = address (FALSE)

BTFSS	Bit Test File, Skip if Set
Syntax:	[*label*] BTFSS f,b[,a]
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 255 0 ≤ b < 7 a ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	skip if (f<b>) = 1
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`1010` `bbba` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	If bit 'b' in register 'f' is '1', then the next instruction is skipped. If bit 'b' is '1', then the next instruction fetched during the current instruction execution is discarded and a NOP is executed instead, making this a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2) **Note:** 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	No operation

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
HERE    BTFSS   FLAG, 1, 0
FALSE   :
TRUE    :
```

Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)

After Instruction
If FLAG<1> = 0;
PC = address (FALSE)
If FLAG<1> = 1;
PC = address (TRUE)

BTG **Bit Toggle f**

Syntax:	[*label*] BTG f,b[,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $0 \le b < 7$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$(\overline{f<b>}) \rightarrow f<b>$
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0111` `bbba` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	Bit 'b' in data memory location 'f' is inverted. If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write register 'f'

Example: `BTG PORTC, 4, 0`

Before Instruction:
PORTC = `0111 0101` [0x75]

After Instruction:
PORTC = `0110 0101` [0x65]

BOV **Branch if Overflow**

Syntax:	[*label*] BOV n
Operands:	$-128 \le n \le 127$
Operation:	if Overflow bit is '1' $(PC) + 2 + 2n \rightarrow PC$
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`1110` `0100` `nnnn` `nnnn`
Description:	If the Overflow bit is '1', then the program will branch. The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC+2+2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2)

Q Cycle Activity:

If Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If No Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	No operation

Example: `HERE BOV Jump`

Before Instruction
PC = address (`HERE`)

After Instruction
If Overflow = 1;
PC = address (`Jump`)
If Overflow = 0;
PC = address (`HERE+2`)

BZ — Branch if Zero

Syntax:	[*label*] BZ n
Operands:	$-128 \le n \le 127$
Operation:	if Zero bit is '1' $(PC) + 2 + 2n \rightarrow PC$
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`1110 0000 nnnn nnnn`
Description:	If the Zero bit is '1', then the program will branch. The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC+2+2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2)

Q Cycle Activity:

If Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If No Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	No operation

Example:
```
HERE     BZ   Jump
```

Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)

After Instruction
If Zero = 1;
PC = address (Jump)
If Zero = 0;
PC = address (HERE+2)

CALL — Subroutine Call

Syntax:	[*label*] CALL k [,s]
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 1048575$ $s \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$(PC) + 4 \rightarrow TOS$, $k \rightarrow PC<20:1>$, if s = 1 $(W) \rightarrow WS$, $(STATUS) \rightarrow STATUSS$, $(BSR) \rightarrow BSRS$
Status Affected:	None

Encoding:

1st word (k<7:0>)	1110	110s	$k_7$kkk	kkkk$_0$
2nd word(k<19:8>)	1111	k_{19}kkk	kkkk	kkkk$_8$

Description:	Subroutine call of entire 2-Mbyte memory range. First, return address (PC+ 4) is pushed onto the return stack. If 's' = 1, the W, Status and BSR registers are also pushed into their respective shadow registers, WS, STATUSS and BSRS. If 's' = 0, no update occurs (default). Then, the 20-bit value 'k' is loaded into PC<20:1>. CALL is a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	2
Cycles:	2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'<7:0>	Push PC to stack	Read literal 'k'<19:8>, Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:
```
HERE     CALL   THERE,1
```

Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)

After Instruction
PC = address (THERE)
TOS = address (HERE + 4)
WS = W
BSRS = BSR
STATUSS = STATUS

CLRF — Clear f

Syntax:	[*label*] CLRF f [,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	000h $\rightarrow$ f 1 $\rightarrow$ Z
Status Affected:	Z
Encoding:	`0110` `101a` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	Clears the contents of the specified register. If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write register 'f'

Example: `CLRF FLAG_REG,1`

Before Instruction
FLAG_REG = 0x5A
After Instruction
FLAG_REG = 0x00

CLRWDT — Clear Watchdog Timer

Syntax:	[*label*] CLRWDT
Operands:	None
Operation:	000h $\rightarrow$ WDT, 000h $\rightarrow$ WDT postscaler, 1 $\rightarrow$ $\overline{TO}$, 1 $\rightarrow$ $\overline{PD}$
Status Affected:	$\overline{TO}$, $\overline{PD}$
Encoding:	`0000` `0000` `0000` `0100`
Description:	`CLRWDT` instruction resets the Watchdog Timer. It also resets the postscaler of the WDT. Status bits $\overline{TO}$ and $\overline{PD}$ are set.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	Process Data	No operation

Example: `CLRWDT`

Before Instruction
WDT Counter = ?
After Instruction
WDT Counter = 0x00
WDT Postscaler = 0
$\overline{TO}$ = 1
$\overline{PD}$ = 1

COMF **Complement f**

Syntax:	[*label*] COMF f [,d [,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$(\overline{f}) \rightarrow$ dest
Status Affected:	N, Z
Encoding:	`0001` `11da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are complemented. If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `COMF REG, 0, 0`

Before Instruction
REG = 0x13
After Instruction
REG = 0x13
W = 0xEC

CPFSEQ **Compare f with W, skip if f = W**

Syntax:	[*label*] CPFSEQ f [,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f) – (W), skip if (f) = (W) (unsigned comparison)
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0110` `001a` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	Compares the contents of data memory location 'f' to the contents of W by performing an unsigned subtraction. If 'f' = W, then the fetched instruction is discarded and a `NOP` is executed instead, making this a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2) **Note:** 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	No operation

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
HERE     CPFSEQ REG, 0
NEQUAL   :
EQUAL    :
```

Before Instruction
PC Address = HERE
W = ?
REG = ?
After Instruction
If REG = W;
PC = Address (EQUAL)
If REG ≠ W;
PC = Address (NEQUAL)

CPFSGT — Compare f with W, skip if f > W

Syntax:	[*label*] CPFSGT f [,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f) – (W), skip if (f) > (W) (unsigned comparison)
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0110` `010a` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	Compares the contents of data memory location 'f' to the contents of W by performing an unsigned subtraction. If the contents of 'f' are greater than the contents of WREG, then the fetched instruction is discarded and a `NOP` is executed instead, making this a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is '`0`', the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = `1`, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2) **Note:** 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	No operation

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
HERE      CPFSGT REG, 0
NGREATER  :
GREATER   :
```

Before Instruction

```
PC  =  Address (HERE)
W   =  ?
```

After Instruction

```
If REG  >  W;
   PC   =  Address (GREATER)
If REG  ≤  W;
   PC   =  Address (NGREATER)
```

CPFSLT — Compare f with W, skip if f < W

Syntax:	[*label*] CPFSLT f [,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f) – (W), skip if (f) < (W) (unsigned comparison)
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0110` `000a` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	Compares the contents of data memory location 'f' to the contents of W by performing an unsigned subtraction. If the contents of 'f' are less than the contents of W, then the fetched instruction is discarded and a `NOP` is executed instead, making this a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is '`0`', the Access Bank will be selected. If 'a' is '`1`', the BSR will not be overridden (default).
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2) **Note:** 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	No operation

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
HERE    CPFSLT REG, 1
NLESS   :
LESS    :
```

Before Instruction

```
PC  =  Address (HERE)
W   =  ?
```

After Instruction

```
If REG  <  W;
PC      =  Address (LESS)
If REG  ≥  W;
PC      =  Address (NLESS)
```

DAW — Decimal Adjust W Register

Syntax:	[*label*] DAW
Operands:	None

Operation:	If [W<3:0> >9] or [DC = 1] then
	(W<3:0>) + 6 → W<3:0>;
	else
	(W<3:0>) → W<3:0>;
	
	If [W<7:4> >9] or [C = 1] then
	(W<7:4>) + 6 → W<7:4>;
	else
	(W<7:4>) → W<7:4>;

Status Affected:	C
Encoding:	0000 0000 0000 0111
Description:	DAW adjusts the eight-bit value in W, resulting from the earlier addition of two variables (each in packed BCD format) and produces a correct packed BCD result.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register W	Process Data	Write W

Example1: DAW

Before Instruction

W = 0xA5
C = 0
DC = 0

After Instruction

W = 0x05
C = 1
DC = 0

Example 2:

Before Instruction

W = 0xCE
C = 0
DC = 0

After Instruction

W = 0x34
C = 1
DC = 0

DECF — Decrement f

Syntax:	[*label*] DECF f [,d [,a]
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f) – 1 → dest
Status Affected:	C, DC, N, OV, Z
Encoding:	0000 01da ffff ffff
Description:	Decrement register 'f'. If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: DECF CNT, 1, 0

Before Instruction

CNT = 0x01
Z = 0

After Instruction

CNT = 0x00
Z = 1

DECFSZ **Decrement f, skip if 0**

Syntax: [*label*] DECFSZ f [,d [,a]]

Operands: $0 \leq f \leq 255$
$d \in [0,1]$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: (f) – 1 → dest,
skip if result = 0

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

`0010`	`11da`	`ffff`	`ffff`

Description: The contents of register 'f' are decremented. If 'd' is '`0`', the result is placed in W. If 'd' is '`1`', the result is placed back in register 'f' (default).
If the result is '`0`', the next instruction which is already fetched is discarded and a `NOP` is executed instead, making it a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is '`0`', the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = `1`, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1(2)
Note: 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

<u>Example</u>:

```
HERE      DECFSZ   CNT, 1, 1
          GOTO     LOOP
CONTINUE
```

Before Instruction
PC = Address (`HERE`)

After Instruction
CNT = CNT - 1
If CNT = 0;
PC = Address (`CONTINUE`)
If CNT ≠ 0;
PC = Address (`HERE+2`)

DCFSNZ **Decrement f, skip if not 0**

Syntax: [*label*] DCFSNZ f [,d [,a]

Operands: $0 \leq f \leq 255$
$d \in [0,1]$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: (f) – 1 → dest,
skip if result ≠ 0

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

`0100`	`11da`	`ffff`	`ffff`

Description: The contents of register 'f' are decremented. If 'd' is '`0`', the result is placed in W. If 'd' is '`1`', the result is placed back in register 'f' (default).
If the result is not '`0`', the next instruction which is already fetched is discarded and a `NOP` is executed instead, making it a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is '`0`', the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = `1`, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1(2)
Note: 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

<u>Example</u>:

```
HERE    DCFSNZ  TEMP, 1, 0
ZERO    :
NZERO   :
```

Before Instruction
TEMP = ?

After Instruction
TEMP = TEMP - 1,
If TEMP = 0;
PC = Address (`ZERO`)
If TEMP ≠ 0;
PC = Address (`NZERO`)

GOTO — Unconditional Branch

Syntax:	[*label*] GOTO k
Operands:	0 ≤ k ≤ 1048575
Operation:	k → PC<20:1>
Status Affected:	None

Encoding:

1st word (k<7:0>)	1110	1111	$k_7$kkk	kkkk$_0$
2nd word(k<19:8>)	1111	k_{19}kkk	kkkk	kkkk$_8$

Description:	GOTO allows an unconditional branch anywhere within the entire 2-Mbyte memory range. The 20-bit value 'k' is loaded into PC<20:1>. GOTO is always a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	2
Cycles:	2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'<7:0>	No operation	Read literal 'k'<19:8>, Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example: `GOTO THERE`

After Instruction

PC = Address (THERE)

INCF — Increment f

Syntax:	[*label*] INCF f [,d [,a]
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 255 d ∈ [0,1] a ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	(f) + 1 → dest
Status Affected:	C, DC, N, OV, Z

Encoding:

0010	10da	ffff	ffff

Description:	The contents of register 'f' are incremented. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `INCF CNT, 1, 0`

Before Instruction

CNT = 0xFF
Z = 0
C = ?
DC = ?

After Instruction

CNT = 0x00
Z = 1
C = 1
DC = 1

INCFSZ	**Increment f, skip if 0**
Syntax:	[*label*] INCFSZ f [,d [,a]
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f) + 1 → dest, skip if result = 0
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0011` `11da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are incremented. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed back in register 'f' (default). If the result is '0', the next instruction which is already fetched is discarded and a NOP is executed instead, making it a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2) **Note:** 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
HERE     INCFSZ   CNT, 1, 0
NZERO    :
ZERO     :
```

Before Instruction

PC = Address (HERE)

After Instruction

CNT = CNT + 1
If CNT = 0;
PC = Address (ZERO)
If CNT ≠ 0;
PC = Address (NZERO)

INFSNZ	**Increment f, skip if not 0**
Syntax:	[*label*] INFSNZ f [,d [,a]
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f) + 1 → dest, skip if result ≠ 0
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0100` `10da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are incremented. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed back in register 'f' (default). If the result is not '0', the next instruction which is already fetched is discarded and a NOP is executed instead, making it a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2) **Note:** 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
HERE     INFSNZ  REG, 1, 0
ZERO
NZERO
```

Before Instruction

PC = Address (HERE)

After Instruction

REG = REG + 1
If REG ≠ 0;
PC = Address (NZERO)
If REG = 0;
PC = Address (ZERO)

IORLW **Inclusive OR literal with W**

Syntax:	[*label*] IORLW k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 255$
Operation:	(W) .OR. k $\rightarrow$ W
Status Affected:	N, Z
Encoding:	`0000` `1001` `kkkk` `kkkk`
Description:	The contents of W are OR'ed with the eight-bit literal 'k'. The result is placed in W.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write to W

Example: `IORLW 0x35`

Before Instruction

W = 0x9A

After Instruction

W = 0xBF

IORWF **Inclusive OR W with f**

Syntax:	[*label*] IORWF f [,d [,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(W) .OR. (f) $\rightarrow$ dest
Status Affected:	N, Z
Encoding:	`0001` `00da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	Inclusive OR W with register 'f'. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `IORWF RESULT, 0, 1`

Before Instruction

RESULT = 0x13
W = 0x91

After Instruction

RESULT = 0x13
W = 0x93

LFSR **Load FSR**

Syntax:	[*label*] LFSR f,k
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 2$ $0 \le k \le 4095$
Operation:	$k \rightarrow$ FSRf
Status Affected:	None

Encoding:

1110 1111	1110 0000	00ff $k_7$kkk	k_{11}kkk kkkk

Description: The 12-bit literal 'k' is loaded into the File Select Register pointed to by 'f'.

Words: 2

Cycles: 2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k' MSB	Process Data	Write literal 'k' MSB to FSRfH
Decode	Read literal 'k' LSB	Process Data	Write literal 'k' to FSRfL

Example: `LFSR 2, 0x3AB`

After Instruction

FSR2H	=	0x03
FSR2L	=	0xAB

MOVF **Move f**

Syntax:	[*label*] MOVF f [,d [,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$f \rightarrow$ dest
Status Affected:	N, Z

Encoding:

0101	00da	ffff	ffff

Description: The contents of register 'f' are moved to a destination dependent upon the status of 'd'. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed back in register 'f' (default). Location 'f' can be anywhere in the 256-byte bank. If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write W

Example: `MOVF REG, 0, 0`

Before Instruction

REG	=	0x22
W	=	0xFF

After Instruction

REG	=	0x22
W	=	0x22

MOVFF — Move f to f

Syntax:	[*label*] MOVFF f_s,f_d
Operands:	$0 \le f_s \le 4095$ $0 \le f_d \le 4095$
Operation:	$(f_s) \rightarrow f_d$
Status Affected:	None

Encoding:

1st word (source)	`1100`	`ffff`	`ffff`	`ffff`$_s$
2nd word (destin.)	`1111`	`ffff`	`ffff`	`ffff`$_d$

Description: The contents of source register 'f_s' are moved to destination register 'f_d'. Location of source 'f_s' can be anywhere in the 4096-byte data space (000h to FFFh) and location of destination 'f_d' can also be anywhere from 000h to FFFh.
Either source or destination can be W (a useful special situation).
`MOVFF` is particularly useful for transferring a data memory location to a peripheral register (such as the transmit buffer or an I/O port).
The `MOVFF` instruction cannot use the PCL, TOSU, TOSH or TOSL as the destination register.

Words: 2

Cycles: 2 (3)

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f' (src)	Process Data	No operation
Decode	No operation, No dummy read	No operation	Write register 'f' (dest)

<u>Example</u>: `MOVFF REG1, REG2`

Before Instruction
REG1 = 0x33
REG2 = 0x11

After Instruction
REG1 = 0x33,
REG2 = 0x33

MOVLB — Move literal to low nibble in BSR

Syntax:	[*label*] MOVLB k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 255$
Operation:	$k \rightarrow$ BSR
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0000` `0001` `kkkk` `kkkk`
Description:	The 8-bit literal 'k' is loaded into the Bank Select Register (BSR).
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write literal 'k' to BSR

<u>Example</u>: `MOVLB 5`

Before Instruction
BSR register = 0x02

After Instruction
BSR register = 0x05

MOVLW — Move literal to W

Syntax:	[*label*] MOVLW k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 255$
Operation:	$k \rightarrow W$
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0000` `1110` `kkkk` `kkkk`
Description:	The eight-bit literal 'k' is loaded into W.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write to W

Example: `MOVLW 0x5A`

After Instruction

W = 0x5A

MOVWF — Move W to f

Syntax:	[*label*] MOVWF f [,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$(W) \rightarrow f$
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0110` `111a` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	Move data from W to register 'f'. Location 'f' can be anywhere in the 256-byte bank. If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write register 'f'

Example: `MOVWF REG, 0`

Before Instruction

W = 0x4F
REG = 0xFF

After Instruction

W = 0x4F
REG = 0x4F

MULLW **Multiply Literal with W**

Syntax:	[*label*] MULLW k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 255$
Operation:	(W) x k $\rightarrow$ PRODH:PRODL
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0000` `1101` `kkkk` `kkkk`
Description:	An unsigned multiplication is carried out between the contents of W and the 8-bit literal 'k'. The 16-bit result is placed in PRODH:PRODL register pair. PRODH contains the high byte. W is unchanged. None of the status flags are affected. Note that neither overflow nor carry is possible in this operation. A zero result is possible but not detected.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write registers PRODH: PRODL

Example: `MULLW 0xC4`

Before Instruction

W = 0xE2
PRODH = ?
PRODL = ?

After Instruction

W = 0xE2
PRODH = 0xAD
PRODL = 0x08

MULWF **Multiply W with f**

Syntax:	[*label*] MULWF f [,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(W) x (f) $\rightarrow$ PRODH:PRODL
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0000` `001a` `ffff` `ffff`
Description	An unsigned multiplication is carried out between the contents of W and the register file location 'f'. The 16-bit result is stored in the PRODH:PRODL register pair. PRODH contains the high byte. Both W and 'f' are unchanged. None of the status flags are affected. Note that neither overflow nor carry is possible in this operation. A zero result is possible but not detected. If 'a' is '`0`', the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a'= `1`, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write registers PRODH: PRODL

Example: `MULWF REG, 1`

Before Instruction

W = 0xC4
REG = 0xB5
PRODH = ?
PRODL = ?

After Instruction

W = 0xC4
REG = 0xB5
PRODH = 0x8A
PRODL = 0x94

NEGF — Negate f

Syntax:	[*label*] NEGF f [,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$(\overline{f}) + 1 \rightarrow f$
Status Affected:	N, OV, C, DC, Z
Encoding:	`0110` `110a` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	Location 'f' is negated using two's complement. The result is placed in the data memory location 'f'. If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write register 'f'

Example: `NEGF REG, 1`

Before Instruction
REG = `0011 1010` [0x3A]
After Instruction
REG = `1100 0110` [0xC6]

NOP — No Operation

Syntax:	[*label*] NOP
Operands:	None
Operation:	No operation
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0000` `0000` `0000` `0000` `1111` `xxxx` `xxxx` `xxxx`
Description:	No operation.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

None.

POP — Pop Top of Return Stack

Syntax:	[*label*] POP
Operands:	None
Operation:	(TOS) → bit bucket
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0000 0000 0000 0110`
Description:	The TOS value is pulled off the return stack and is discarded. The TOS value then becomes the previous value that was pushed onto the return stack. This instruction is provided to enable the user to properly manage the return stack to incorporate a software stack.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	POP TOS value	No operation

Example:

```
POP
GOTO    NEW
```

Before Instruction

TOS	=	0031A2h
Stack (1 level down)	=	014332h

After Instruction

TOS	=	014332h
PC	=	NEW

PUSH — Push Top of Return Stack

Syntax:	[*label*] PUSH
Operands:	None
Operation:	(PC+2) → TOS
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0000 0000 0000 0101`
Description:	The PC+2 is pushed onto the top of the return stack. The previous TOS value is pushed down on the stack. This instruction allows implementing a software stack by modifying TOS and then pushing it onto the return stack.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	PUSH PC+2 onto return stack	No operation	No operation

Example: `PUSH`

Before Instruction

TOS	=	00345Ah
PC	=	000124h

After Instruction

PC	=	000126h
TOS	=	000126h
Stack (1 level down)	=	00345Ah

RCALL **Relative Call**

Syntax:	[*label*] RCALL n
Operands:	$-1024 \le n \le 1023$
Operation:	(PC) + 2 → TOS, (PC) + 2 + 2n → PC
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`1101` `1nnn` `nnnn` `nnnn`
Description:	Subroutine call with a jump up to 1K from the current location. First, return address (PC+2) is pushed onto the stack. Then, add the 2's complement number '2n' to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC+2+2n. This instruction is a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	1
Cycles:	2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n' Push PC to stack	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example: `HERE RCALL Jump`

Before Instruction
PC = Address (`HERE`)

After Instruction
PC = Address (`Jump`)
TOS = Address (`HERE+2`)

RESET **Reset**

Syntax:	[*label*] RESET
Operands:	None
Operation:	Reset all registers and flags that are affected by a $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset.
Status Affected:	All
Encoding:	`0000` `0000` `1111` `1111`
Description:	This instruction provides a way to execute a $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset in software.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Start Reset	No operation	No operation

Example: `RESET`

After Instruction
Registers = Reset Value
Flags* = Reset Value

RETFIE — Return from Interrupt

Syntax: [*label*] RETFIE [s]

Operands: s ∈ [0,1]

Operation: (TOS) → PC,
1 → GIE/GIEH or PEIE/GIEL,
if s = 1
(WS) → W,
(STATUSS) → STATUS,
(BSRS) → BSR,
PCLATU, PCLATH are unchanged

Status Affected: GIE/GIEH, PEIE/GIEL.

Encoding:

0000	0000	0001	000s

Description: Return from Interrupt. Stack is popped and Top-of-Stack (TOS) is loaded into the PC. Interrupts are enabled by setting either the high or low priority global interrupt enable bit. If ‘s’ = 1, the contents of the shadow registers, WS, STATUSS and BSRS, are loaded into their corresponding registers, W, Status and BSR. If ‘s’ = 0, no update of these registers occurs (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	No operation	Pop PC from stack Set GIEH or GIEL
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example: `RETFIE 1`

After Interrupt

PC	=	TOS
W	=	WS
BSR	=	BSRS
STATUS	=	STATUSS
GIE/GIEH, PEIE/GIEL	=	1

RETLW — Return Literal to W

Syntax: [*label*] RETLW k

Operands: 0 ≤ k ≤ 255

Operation: k → W,
(TOS) → PC,
PCLATU, PCLATH are unchanged

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

0000	1100	kkkk	kkkk

Description: W is loaded with the eight-bit literal ‘k’. The program counter is loaded from the top of the stack (the return address). The high address latch (PCLATH) remains unchanged.

Words: 1

Cycles: 2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal ‘k’	Process Data	Pop PC from stack, Write to W
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
    CALL TABLE ; W contains table
               ; offset value
               ; W now has
               ; table value
   :
TABLE
    ADDWF PCL  ; W = offset
    RETLW k0   ; Begin table
    RETLW k1   ;
   :
   :
    RETLW kn   ; End of table
```

Before Instruction

W = 0x07

After Instruction

W = value of kn

RETURN — Return from Subroutine

Syntax: [*label*] RETURN [s]

Operands: s ∈ [0,1]

Operation: (TOS) → PC,
if s = 1
(WS) → W,
(STATUSS) → STATUS,
(BSRS) → BSR,
PCLATU, PCLATH are unchanged

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

`0000`	`0000`	`0001`	`001s`

Description: Return from subroutine. The stack is popped and the top of the stack (TOS) is loaded into the program counter. If 's' = `1`, the contents of the shadow registers, WS, STATUSS and BSRS, are loaded into their corresponding registers, W, Status and BSR. If 's' = `0`, no update of these registers occurs (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	Process Data	Pop PC from stack
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example: `RETURN`

After Interrupt
PC = TOS

RLCF — Rotate Left f through Carry

Syntax: [*label*] RLCF f [,d [,a]

Operands: 0 ≤ f ≤ 255
d ∈ [0,1]
a ∈ [0,1]

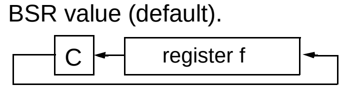
Operation: (f<n>) → dest<n+1>,
(f<7>) → C,
(C) → dest<0>

Status Affected: C, N, Z

Encoding:

`0011`	`01da`	`ffff`	`ffff`

Description: The contents of register 'f' are rotated one bit to the left through the Carry flag. If 'd' is '`0`', the result is placed in W. If 'd' is '`1`', the result is stored back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is '`0`', the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = `1`, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).



Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `RLCF REG, 0, 0`

Before Instruction
```
REG  =  1110 0110
C    =  0
```
After Instruction
```
REG  =  1110 0110
W    =  1100 1100
C    =  1
```

RLNCF **Rotate Left f (no carry)**

Syntax: [*label*] RLNCF f [,d [,a]

Operands: $0 \leq f \leq 255$
$d \in [0,1]$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: (f<n>) → dest<n+1>,
(f<7>) → dest<0>

Status Affected: N, Z

Encoding:

`0100`	`01da`	`ffff`	`ffff`

Description: The contents of register 'f' are rotated one bit to the left. If 'd' is '`0`', the result is placed in W. If 'd' is '`1`', the result is stored back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is '`0`', the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is '`1`', then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `RLNCF REG, 1, 0`

Before Instruction
```
REG = 1010 1011
```
After Instruction
```
REG = 0101 0111
```

RRCF **Rotate Right f through Carry**

Syntax: [*label*] RRCF f [,d [,a]

Operands: $0 \leq f \leq 255$
$d \in [0,1]$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: (f<n>) → dest<n-1>,
(f<0>) → C,
(C) → dest<7>

Status Affected: C, N, Z

Encoding:

`0011`	`00da`	`ffff`	`ffff`

Description: The contents of register 'f' are rotated one bit to the right through the Carry flag. If 'd' is '`0`', the result is placed in W. If 'd' is '`1`', the result is placed back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is '`0`', the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is '`1`', then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `RRCF REG, 0, 0`

Before Instruction
```
REG = 1110 0110
C   = 0
```
After Instruction
```
REG = 1110 0110
W   = 0111 0011
C   = 0
```

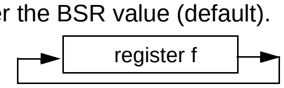
RRNCF — Rotate Right f (no carry)

Syntax:	[*label*] RRNCF f [,d [,a]
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 255 d ∈ [0,1] a ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	(f<n>) → dest<n-1>, (f<0>) → dest<7>
Status Affected:	N, Z

Encoding:

`0100`	`00da`	`ffff`	`ffff`

Description: The contents of register ‘f’ are rotated one bit to the right. If ‘d’ is ‘0’, the result is placed in W. If ‘d’ is ‘1’, the result is placed back in register ‘f’ (default). If ‘a’ is ‘0’, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If ‘a’ is ‘1’, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).



Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register ‘f’	Process Data	Write to destination

Example 1: `RRNCF REG, 1, 0`

Before Instruction
REG = 1101 0111

After Instruction
REG = 1110 1011

Example 2: `RRNCF REG, 0, 0`

Before Instruction
W = ?
REG = 1101 0111

After Instruction
W = 1110 1011
REG = 1101 0111

SETF — Set f

Syntax:	[*label*] SETF f [,a]
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 255 a ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	FFh → f
Status Affected:	None

Encoding:

`0110`	`100a`	`ffff`	`ffff`

Description: The contents of the specified register are set to FFh. If ‘a’ is ‘0’, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If ‘a’ is ‘1’, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register ‘f’	Process Data	Write register ‘f’

Example: `SETF REG,1`

Before Instruction
REG = 0x5A

After Instruction
REG = 0xFF

SLEEP	Enter SLEEP mode
Syntax:	[*label*] SLEEP
Operands:	None
Operation:	00h → WDT, 0 → $\overline{\text{WDT}}$ postscaler, 1 → $\overline{\text{TO}}$, 0 → $\overline{\text{PD}}$
Status Affected:	$\overline{\text{TO}}$, $\overline{\text{PD}}$
Encoding:	`0000` `0000` `0000` `0011`
Description:	The Power-down status bit ($\overline{\text{PD}}$) is cleared. The Time-out status bit ($\overline{\text{TO}}$) is set. Watchdog Timer and its postscaler are cleared. The processor is put into Sleep mode with the oscillator stopped.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	Process Data	Go to Sleep

Example: `SLEEP`

Before Instruction
$\overline{\text{TO}}$ = ?
$\overline{\text{PD}}$ = ?

After Instruction
$\overline{\text{TO}}$ = 1 †
$\overline{\text{PD}}$ = 0

† If WDT causes wake-up, this bit is cleared.

SUBFWB	Subtract f from W with borrow
Syntax:	[*label*] SUBFWB f [,d [,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(W) – (f) – ($\overline{\text{C}}$) → dest
Status Affected:	N, OV, C, DC, Z
Encoding:	`0101` `01da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	Subtract register 'f' and Carry flag (borrow) from W (2's complement method). If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is '1', then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example 1: `SUBFWB REG, 1, 0`

Before Instruction
REG = 3
W = 2
C = 1

After Instruction
REG = FF
W = 2
C = 0
Z = 0
N = 1 ; result is negative

Example 2: `SUBFWB REG, 0, 0`

Before Instruction
REG = 2
W = 5
C = 1

After Instruction
REG = 2
W = 3
C = 1
Z = 0
N = 0 ; result is positive

Example 3: `SUBFWB REG, 1, 0`

Before Instruction
REG = 1
W = 2
C = 0

After Instruction
REG = 0
W = 2
C = 1
Z = 1 ; result is zero
N = 0

SUBLW	Subtract W from literal
Syntax:	[*label*] SUBLW k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 255$
Operation:	$k - (W) \rightarrow W$
Status Affected:	N, OV, C, DC, Z
Encoding:	`0000` `1000` `kkkk` `kkkk`
Description:	W is subtracted from the eight-bit literal 'k'. The result is placed in W.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write to W

Example 1: `SUBLW 0x02`

Before Instruction
W = 1
C = ?

After Instruction
W = 1
C = 1 ; result is positive
Z = 0
N = 0

Example 2: `SUBLW 0x02`

Before Instruction
W = 2
C = ?

After Instruction
W = 0
C = 1 ; result is zero
Z = 1
N = 0

Example 3: `SUBLW 0x02`

Before Instruction
W = 3
C = ?

After Instruction
W = FF ; (2's complement)
C = 0 ; result is negative
Z = 0
N = 1

SUBWF	Subtract W from f
Syntax:	[*label*] SUBWF f [,d [,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$(f) - (W) \rightarrow$ dest
Status Affected:	N, OV, C, DC, Z
Encoding:	`0101` `11da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	Subtract W from register 'f' (2's complement method). If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is '1', then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example 1: `SUBWF REG, 1, 0`

Before Instruction
REG = 3
W = 2
C = ?

After Instruction
REG = 1
W = 2
C = 1 ; result is positive
Z = 0
N = 0

Example 2: `SUBWF REG, 0, 0`

Before Instruction
REG = 2
W = 2
C = ?

After Instruction
REG = 2
W = 0
C = 1 ; result is zero
Z = 1
N = 0

Example 3: `SUBWF REG, 1, 0`

Before Instruction
REG = 1
W = 2
C = ?

After Instruction
REG = FFh ;(2's complement)
W = 2
C = 0 ; result is negative
Z = 0
N = 1

SUBWFB **Subtract W from f with Borrow**

Syntax:	[*label*] SUBWFB f [,d [,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$(f) - (W) - (\overline{C}) \rightarrow$ dest
Status Affected:	N, OV, C, DC, Z
Encoding:	`0101` `10da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	Subtract W and the Carry flag (borrow) from register 'f' (2's complement method). If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is '1', then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example 1: `SUBWFB REG, 1, 0`

Before Instruction
```
REG  =  0x19   (0001 1001)
W    =  0x0D   (0000 1101)
C    =  1
```
After Instruction
```
REG  =  0x0C   (0000 1011)
W    =  0x0D   (0000 1101)
C    =  1
Z    =  0
N    =  0      ; result is positive
```

Example 2: `SUBWFB REG, 0, 0`

Before Instruction
```
REG  =  0x1B   (0001 1011)
W    =  0x1A   (0001 1010)
C    =  0
```
After Instruction
```
REG  =  0x1B   (0001 1011)
W    =  0x00
C    =  1
Z    =  1      ; result is zero
N    =  0
```

Example 3: `SUBWFB REG, 1, 0`

Before Instruction
```
REG  =  0x03   (0000 0011)
W    =  0x0E   (0000 1101)
C    =  1
```
After Instruction
```
REG  =  0xF5   (1111 0100)
               ; [2's comp]
W    =  0x0E   (0000 1101)
C    =  0
Z    =  0
N    =  1      ; result is negative
```

SWAPF **Swap f**

Syntax:	[*label*] SWAPF f [,d [,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$(f<3:0>) \rightarrow dest<7:4>$, $(f<7:4>) \rightarrow dest<3:0>$
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0011` `10da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	The upper and lower nibbles of register 'f' are exchanged. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in W. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is '0', the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is '1', then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `SWAPF REG, 1, 0`

Before Instruction
```
REG  =  0x53
```
After Instruction
```
REG  =  0x35
```

TBLRD	**Table Read**
Syntax:	[*label*] TBLRD (*; *+; *-; +*)
Operands:	None
Operation:	if TBLRD *, (Prog Mem (TBLPTR)) → TABLAT; TBLPTR – No Change; if TBLRD *+, (Prog Mem (TBLPTR)) → TABLAT; (TBLPTR) + 1 → TBLPTR; if TBLRD *-, (Prog Mem (TBLPTR)) → TABLAT; (TBLPTR) – 1 → TBLPTR; if TBLRD +*, (TBLPTR) + 1 → TBLPTR; (Prog Mem (TBLPTR)) → TABLAT;
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	

0000	0000	0000	10nn nn=0 * =1 *+ =2 *- =3 +*

Description: This instruction is used to read the contents of Program Memory (P.M.). To address the Program Memory, a pointer called Table Pointer (TBLPTR) is used. The TBLPTR (a 21-bit pointer) points to each byte in the program memory. TBLPTR has a 2-Mbyte address range.

TBLPTR[0] = 0: Least Significant Byte of Program Memory Word

TBLPTR[0] = 1: Most Significant Byte of Program Memory Word

The `TBLRD` instruction can modify the value of TBLPTR as follows:

- no change
- post-increment
- post-decrement
- pre-increment

Words: 1

Cycles: 2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation (Read Program Memory)	No operation	No operation (Write TABLAT)

TBLRD **Table Read (Continued)**

Example 1: `TBLRD *+ ;`

Before Instruction

TABLAT	=	0x55
TBLPTR	=	0x00A356
MEMORY(0x00A356)	=	0x34

After Instruction

TABLAT	=	0x34
TBLPTR	=	0x00A357

Example 2: `TBLRD +* ;`

Before Instruction

TABLAT	=	0xAA
TBLPTR	=	0x01A357
MEMORY(0x01A357)	=	0x12
MEMORY(0x01A358)	=	0x34

After Instruction

TABLAT	=	0x34
TBLPTR	=	0x01A358

TBLWT	**Table Write**
Syntax:	[*label*] TBLWT (*; *+; *-; +*)
Operands:	None
Operation:	if TBLWT*, (TABLAT) → Holding Register; TBLPTR – No Change; if TBLWT*+, (TABLAT) → Holding Register; (TBLPTR) + 1 → TBLPTR; if TBLWT*-, (TABLAT) → Holding Register; (TBLPTR) – 1 → TBLPTR; if TBLWT+*, (TBLPTR) + 1 → TBLPTR; (TABLAT) → Holding Register;
Status Affected:	None

Encoding:

0000	0000	0000	11nn nn=0 * =1 *+ =2 *- =3 +*

Description: This instruction uses the 3 LSBs of TBLPTR to determine which of the 8 holding registers the TABLAT is written to. The holding registers are used to program the contents of Program Memory (P.M.). (Refer to **Section 5.0 “Flash Program Memory”** for additional details on programming Flash memory.)

The TBLPTR (a 21-bit pointer) points to each byte in the Program Memory. TBLPTR has a 2-Mbyte address range. The LSb of the TBLPTR selects which byte of the program memory location to access.

TBLPTR[0] = 0: Least Significant Byte of Program Memory Word

TBLPTR[0] = 1: Most Significant Byte of Program Memory Word

The `TBLWT` instruction can modify the value of TBLPTR as follows:

- no change
- post-increment
- post-decrement
- pre-increment

TBLWT Table Write (Continued)

Words: 1

Cycles: 2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation (Read TABLAT)	No operation	No operation (Write to Holding Register)

Example 1: `TBLWT *+;`

Before Instruction

TABLAT	=	0x55
TBLPTR	=	0x00A356
HOLDING REGISTER (0x00A356)	=	0xFF

After Instructions (table write completion)

TABLAT	=	0x55
TBLPTR	=	0x00A357
HOLDING REGISTER (0x00A356)	=	0x55

Example 2: `TBLWT +*;`

Before Instruction

TABLAT	=	0x34
TBLPTR	=	0x01389A
HOLDING REGISTER (0x01389A)	=	0xFF
HOLDING REGISTER (0x01389B)	=	0xFF

After Instruction (table write completion)

TABLAT	=	0x34
TBLPTR	=	0x01389B
HOLDING REGISTER (0x01389A)	=	0xFF
HOLDING REGISTER (0x01389B)	=	0x34

TSTFSZ **Test f, skip if 0**

Syntax: [*label*] TSTFSZ f [,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: skip if f = 0

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

0110	011a	ffff	ffff

Description: If ‘f’ = `0`, the next instruction, fetched during the current instruction execution is discarded and a `NOP` is executed, making this a two-cycle instruction. If ‘a’ is ‘`0`’, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If ‘a’ is ‘`1`’, then the bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1(2)
Note: 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register ‘f’	Process Data	No operation

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
HERE    TSTFSZ  CNT, 1
NZERO   :
ZERO    :
```

Before Instruction
PC = Address (`HERE`)

After Instruction
If CNT = 0x00,
PC = Address (`ZERO`)
If CNT ≠ 0x00,
PC = Address (`NZERO`)

XORLW **Exclusive OR literal with W**

Syntax: [*label*] XORLW k

Operands: $0 \le k \le 255$

Operation: (W) .XOR. k $\rightarrow$ W

Status Affected: N, Z

Encoding:

0000	1010	kkkk	kkkk

Description: The contents of W are XOR’ed with the 8-bit literal ‘k’. The result is placed in W.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal ‘k’	Process Data	Write to W

Example: `XORLW 0xAF`

Before Instruction
W = 0xB5

After Instruction
W = 0x1A

25.0 DEVELOPMENT SUPPORT

The PICmicro® microcontrollers are supported with a full range of hardware and software development tools:

- Integrated Development Environment
  - MPLAB® IDE Software
- Assemblers/Compilers/Linkers
  - MPASM™ Assembler
  - MPLAB C17 and MPLAB C18 C Compilers
  - MPLINK™ Object Linker/
    MPLIB™ Object Librarian
  - MPLAB C30 C Compiler
  - MPLAB ASM30 Assembler/Linker/Library
- Simulators
  - MPLAB SIM Software Simulator
  - MPLAB dsPIC30 Software Simulator
- Emulators
  - MPLAB ICE 2000 In-Circuit Emulator
  - MPLAB ICE 4000 In-Circuit Emulator
- In-Circuit Debugger
  - MPLAB ICD 2
- Device Programmers
  - PRO MATE® II Universal Device Programmer
  - PICSTART® Plus Development Programmer
  - MPLAB PM3 Device Programmer
- Low-Cost Demonstration Boards
  - PICDEM™ 1 Demonstration Board
  - PICDEM.net™ Demonstration Board
  - PICDEM 2 Plus Demonstration Board
  - PICDEM 3 Demonstration Board
  - PICDEM 4 Demonstration Board
  - PICDEM 17 Demonstration Board
  - PICDEM 18R Demonstration Board
  - PICDEM LIN Demonstration Board
  - PICDEM USB Demonstration Board
- Evaluation Kits
  - KEELOQ®
  - PICDEM MSC
  - microID®
  - CAN
  - PowerSmart®
  - Analog

25.1 MPLAB Integrated Development Environment Software

The MPLAB IDE software brings an ease of software development previously unseen in the 8/16-bit microcontroller market. The MPLAB IDE is a Windows® based application that contains:

- An interface to debugging tools
  - simulator
  - programmer (sold separately)
  - emulator (sold separately)
  - in-circuit debugger (sold separately)
- A full-featured editor with color coded context
- A multiple project manager
- Customizable data windows with direct edit of contents
- High-level source code debugging
- Mouse over variable inspection
- Extensive on-line help

The MPLAB IDE allows you to:

- Edit your source files (either assembly or C)
- One touch assemble (or compile) and download to PICmicro emulator and simulator tools (automatically updates all project information)
- Debug using:
  - source files (assembly or C)
  - mixed assembly and C
  - machine code

MPLAB IDE supports multiple debugging tools in a single development paradigm, from the cost effective simulators, through low-cost in-circuit debuggers, to full-featured emulators. This eliminates the learning curve when upgrading to tools with increasing flexibility and power.

25.2 MPASM Assembler

The MPASM assembler is a full-featured, universal macro assembler for all PICmicro MCUs.

The MPASM assembler generates relocatable object files for the MPLINK object linker, Intel® standard HEX files, MAP files to detail memory usage and symbol reference, absolute LST files that contain source lines and generated machine code and COFF files for debugging.

The MPASM assembler features include:

- Integration into MPLAB IDE projects
- User defined macros to streamline assembly code
- Conditional assembly for multi-purpose source files
- Directives that allow complete control over the assembly process

25.3 MPLAB C17 and MPLAB C18 C Compilers

The MPLAB C17 and MPLAB C18 Code Development Systems are complete ANSI C compilers for Microchip's PIC17CXXX and PIC18CXXX family of microcontrollers. These compilers provide powerful integration capabilities, superior code optimization and ease of use not found with other compilers.

For easy source level debugging, the compilers provide symbol information that is optimized to the MPLAB IDE debugger.

25.4 MPLINK Object Linker/ MPLIB Object Librarian

The MPLINK object linker combines relocatable objects created by the MPASM assembler and the MPLAB C17 and MPLAB C18 C compilers. It can link relocatable objects from precompiled libraries, using directives from a linker script.

The MPLIB object librarian manages the creation and modification of library files of precompiled code. When a routine from a library is called from a source file, only the modules that contain that routine will be linked in with the application. This allows large libraries to be used efficiently in many different applications.

The object linker/library features include:

- Efficient linking of single libraries instead of many smaller files
- Enhanced code maintainability by grouping related modules together
- Flexible creation of libraries with easy module listing, replacement, deletion and extraction

25.5 MPLAB C30 C Compiler

The MPLAB C30 C compiler is a full-featured, ANSI compliant, optimizing compiler that translates standard ANSI C programs into dsPIC30F assembly language source. The compiler also supports many command line options and language extensions to take full advantage of the dsPIC30F device hardware capabilities and afford fine control of the compiler code generator.

MPLAB C30 is distributed with a complete ANSI C standard library. All library functions have been validated and conform to the ANSI C library standard. The library includes functions for string manipulation, dynamic memory allocation, data conversion, timekeeping and math functions (trigonometric, exponential and hyperbolic). The compiler provides symbolic information for high-level source debugging with the MPLAB IDE.

25.6 MPLAB ASM30 Assembler, Linker and Librarian

MPLAB ASM30 assembler produces relocatable machine code from symbolic assembly language for dsPIC30F devices. MPLAB C30 compiler uses the assembler to produce it's object file. The assembler generates relocatable object files that can then be archived or linked with other relocatable object files and archives to create an executable file. Notable features of the assembler include:

- Support for the entire dsPIC30F instruction set
- Support for fixed-point and floating-point data
- Command line interface
- Rich directive set
- Flexible macro language
- MPLAB IDE compatibility

25.7 MPLAB SIM Software Simulator

The MPLAB SIM software simulator allows code development in a PC hosted environment by simulating the PICmicro series microcontrollers on an instruction level. On any given instruction, the data areas can be examined or modified and stimuli can be applied from a file, or user defined key press, to any pin. The execution can be performed in Single-Step, Execute Until Break or Trace mode.

The MPLAB SIM simulator fully supports symbolic debugging using the MPLAB C17 and MPLAB C18 C Compilers, as well as the MPASM assembler. The software simulator offers the flexibility to develop and debug code outside of the laboratory environment, making it an excellent, economical software development tool.

25.8 MPLAB SIM30 Software Simulator

The MPLAB SIM30 software simulator allows code development in a PC hosted environment by simulating the dsPIC30F series microcontrollers on an instruction level. On any given instruction, the data areas can be examined or modified and stimuli can be applied from a file, or user defined key press, to any of the pins.

The MPLAB SIM30 simulator fully supports symbolic debugging using the MPLAB C30 C Compiler and MPLAB ASM30 assembler. The simulator runs in either a Command Line mode for automated tasks, or from MPLAB IDE. This high-speed simulator is designed to debug, analyze and optimize time intensive DSP routines.

25.9 MPLAB ICE 2000 High-Performance Universal In-Circuit Emulator

The MPLAB ICE 2000 universal in-circuit emulator is intended to provide the product development engineer with a complete microcontroller design tool set for PICmicro microcontrollers. Software control of the MPLAB ICE 2000 in-circuit emulator is advanced by the MPLAB Integrated Development Environment, which allows editing, building, downloading and source debugging from a single environment.

The MPLAB ICE 2000 is a full-featured emulator system with enhanced trace, trigger and data monitoring features. Interchangeable processor modules allow the system to be easily reconfigured for emulation of different processors. The universal architecture of the MPLAB ICE in-circuit emulator allows expansion to support new PICmicro microcontrollers.

The MPLAB ICE 2000 in-circuit emulator system has been designed as a real-time emulation system with advanced features that are typically found on more expensive development tools. The PC platform and Microsoft® Windows 32-bit operating system were chosen to best make these features available in a simple, unified application.

25.10 MPLAB ICE 4000 High-Performance Universal In-Circuit Emulator

The MPLAB ICE 4000 universal in-circuit emulator is intended to provide the product development engineer with a complete microcontroller design tool set for high-end PICmicro microcontrollers. Software control of the MPLAB ICE in-circuit emulator is provided by the MPLAB Integrated Development Environment, which allows editing, building, downloading and source debugging from a single environment.

The MPLAB ICD 4000 is a premium emulator system, providing the features of MPLAB ICE 2000, but with increased emulation memory and high-speed performance for dsPIC30F and PIC18XXXX devices. Its advanced emulator features include complex triggering and timing, up to 2 Mb of emulation memory and the ability to view variables in real-time.

The MPLAB ICE 4000 in-circuit emulator system has been designed as a real-time emulation system with advanced features that are typically found on more expensive development tools. The PC platform and Microsoft Windows 32-bit operating system were chosen to best make these features available in a simple, unified application.

25.11 MPLAB ICD 2 In-Circuit Debugger

Microchip's In-Circuit Debugger, MPLAB ICD 2, is a powerful, low-cost, run-time development tool, connecting to the host PC via an RS-232 or high-speed USB interface. This tool is based on the Flash PICmicro MCUs and can be used to develop for these and other PICmicro microcontrollers. The MPLAB ICD 2 utilizes the in-circuit debugging capability built into the Flash devices. This feature, along with Microchip's In-Circuit Serial Programming™ (ICSP™) protocol, offers cost effective in-circuit Flash debugging from the graphical user interface of the MPLAB Integrated Development Environment. This enables a designer to develop and debug source code by setting breakpoints, single-stepping and watching variables, CPU status and peripheral registers. Running at full speed enables testing hardware and applications in real-time. MPLAB ICD 2 also serves as a development programmer for selected PICmicro devices.

25.12 PRO MATE II Universal Device Programmer

The PRO MATE II is a universal, CE compliant device programmer with programmable voltage verification at V_{DDMIN} and V_{DDMAX} for maximum reliability. It features an LCD display for instructions and error messages and a modular detachable socket assembly to support various package types. In Stand-Alone mode, the PRO MATE II device programmer can read, verify and program PICmicro devices without a PC connection. It can also set code protection in this mode.

25.13 MPLAB PM3 Device Programmer

The MPLAB PM3 is a universal, CE compliant device programmer with programmable voltage verification at V_{DDMIN} and V_{DDMAX} for maximum reliability. It features a large LCD display (128 x 64) for menus and error messages and a modular detachable socket assembly to support various package types. The ICSP™ cable assembly is included as a standard item. In Stand-Alone mode, the MPLAB PM3 device programmer can read, verify and program PICmicro devices without a PC connection. It can also set code protection in this mode. MPLAB PM3 connects to the host PC via an RS-232 or USB cable. MPLAB PM3 has high-speed communications and optimized algorithms for quick programming of large memory devices and incorporates an SD/MMC card for file storage and secure data applications.

25.14 PICSTART Plus Development Programmer

The PICSTART Plus development programmer is an easy-to-use, low-cost, prototype programmer. It connects to the PC via a COM (RS-232) port. MPLAB Integrated Development Environment software makes using the programmer simple and efficient. The PICSTART Plus development programmer supports most PICmicro devices up to 40 pins. Larger pin count devices, such as the PIC16C92X and PIC17C76X, may be supported with an adapter socket. The PICSTART Plus development programmer is CE compliant.

25.15 PICDEM 1 PICmicro Demonstration Board

The PICDEM 1 demonstration board demonstrates the capabilities of the PIC16C5X (PIC16C54 to PIC16C58A), PIC16C61, PIC16C62X, PIC16C71, PIC16C8X, PIC17C42, PIC17C43 and PIC17C44. All necessary hardware and software is included to run basic demo programs. The sample microcontrollers provided with the PICDEM 1 demonstration board can be programmed with a PRO MATE II device programmer or a PICSTART Plus development programmer. The PICDEM 1 demonstration board can be connected to the MPLAB ICE in-circuit emulator for testing. A prototype area extends the circuitry for additional application components. Features include an RS-232 interface, a potentiometer for simulated analog input, push button switches and eight LEDs.

25.16 PICDEM.net Internet/Ethernet Demonstration Board

The PICDEM.net demonstration board is an Internet/ Ethernet demonstration board using the PIC18F452 microcontroller and TCP/IP firmware. The board supports any 40-pin DIP device that conforms to the standard pinout used by the PIC16F877 or PIC18C452. This kit features a user friendly TCP/IP stack, web server with HTML, a 24L256 Serial EEPROM for Xmodem download to web pages into Serial EEPROM, ICSP/MPLAB ICD 2 interface connector, an Ethernet interface, RS-232 interface and a 16 x 2 LCD display. Also included is the book and CD-ROM *"TCP/IP Lean, Web Servers for Embedded Systems,"* by Jeremy Bentham

25.17 PICDEM 2 Plus Demonstration Board

The PICDEM 2 Plus demonstration board supports many 18, 28 and 40-pin microcontrollers, including PIC16F87X and PIC18FXX2 devices. All the necessary hardware and software is included to run the demonstration programs. The sample microcontrollers provided with the PICDEM 2 demonstration board can be programmed with a PRO MATE II device programmer, PICSTART Plus development programmer, or MPLAB ICD 2 with a Universal Programmer Adapter. The MPLAB ICD 2 and MPLAB ICE in-circuit emulators

25.20 PICDEM 17 Demonstration Board

The PICDEM 17 demonstration board is an evaluation board that demonstrates the capabilities of several Microchip microcontrollers, including PIC17C752, PIC17C756A, PIC17C762 and PIC17C766. A programmed sample is included. The PRO MATE II device programmer, or the PICSTART Plus development programmer, can be used to reprogram the device for user tailored application development. The PICDEM 17 demonstration board supports program download and execution from external on-board Flash memory. A generous prototype area is available for user hardware expansion.

25.21 PICDEM 18R PIC18C601/801 Demonstration Board

The PICDEM 18R demonstration board serves to assist development of the PIC18C601/801 family of Microchip microcontrollers. It provides hardware implementation of both 8-bit Multiplexed/Demultiplexed and 16-bit Memory modes. The board includes 2 Mb external Flash memory and 128 Kb SRAM memory, as well as serial EEPROM, allowing access to the wide range of memory types supported by the PIC18C601/801.

25.22 PICDEM LIN PIC16C43X Demonstration Board

The powerful LIN hardware and software kit includes a series of boards and three PICmicro microcontrollers. The small footprint PIC16C432 and PIC16C433 are used as slaves in the LIN communication and feature on-board LIN transceivers. A PIC16F874 Flash microcontroller serves as the master. All three microcontrollers are programmed with firmware to provide LIN bus communication.

25.23 PICkit™ 1 Flash Starter Kit

A complete “development system in a box”, the PICkit Flash Starter Kit includes a convenient multi-section board for programming, evaluation and development of 8/14-pin Flash PIC® microcontrollers. Powered via USB, the board operates under a simple Windows GUI. The PICkit 1 Starter Kit includes the User’s Guide (on CD ROM), PICkit 1 tutorial software and code for various applications. Also included are MPLAB® IDE (Integrated Development Environment) software, software and hardware “Tips 'n Tricks for 8-pin Flash PIC® Microcontrollers” Handbook and a USB interface cable. Supports all current 8/14-pin Flash PIC microcontrollers, as well as many future planned devices.

25.24 PICDEM USB PIC16C7X5 Demonstration Board

The PICDEM USB Demonstration Board shows off the capabilities of the PIC16C745 and PIC16C765 USB microcontrollers. This board provides the basis for future USB products.

25.25 Evaluation and Programming Tools

In addition to the PICDEM series of circuits, Microchip has a line of evaluation kits and demonstration software for these products.

- KEELOQ evaluation and programming tools for Microchip’s HCS Secure Data Products
- CAN developers kit for automotive network applications
- Analog design boards and filter design software
- PowerSmart battery charging evaluation/ calibration kits
- IrDA® development kit
- microID development and rfLab™ development software
- SEEVAL® designer kit for memory evaluation and endurance calculations
- PICDEM MSC demo boards for Switching mode power supply, high-power IR driver, delta sigma ADC and flow rate sensor

Check the Microchip web page and the latest Product Selector Guide for the complete list of demonstration and evaluation kits.

NOTES:

26.0 ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Absolute Maximum Ratings (†)

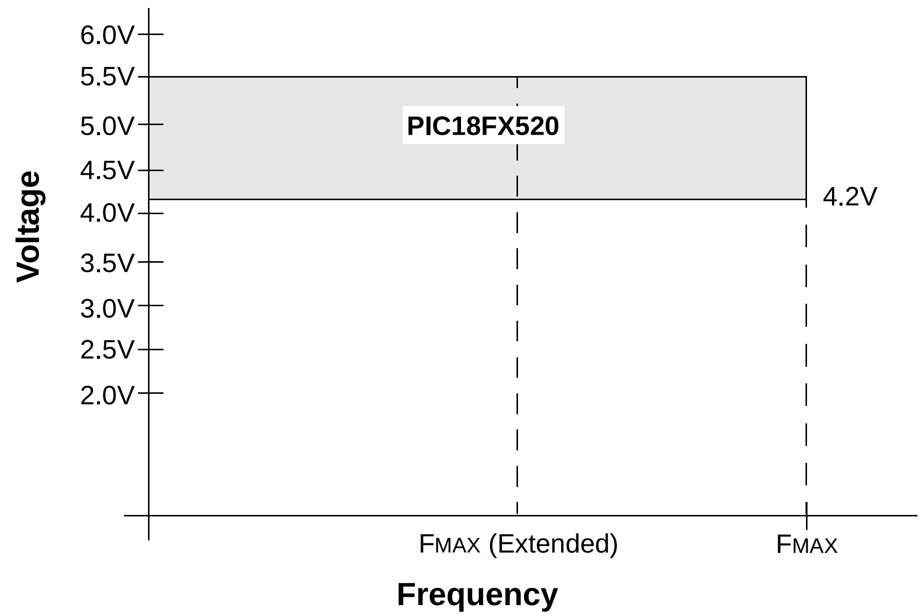
Ambient temperature under bias .... -55°C to +125°C
Storage temperature .... -65°C to +150°C
Voltage on any pin with respect to VSS (except VDD, $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ and RA4) .... -0.3V to (VDD + 0.3V)
Voltage on VDD with respect to VSS .... -0.3V to +5.5V
Voltage on $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ with respect to VSS **(Note 2)** .... 0V to +13.25V
Voltage on RA4 with respect to Vss .... 0V to +8.5V
Total power dissipation **(Note 1)** 1.0W
Maximum current out of VSS pin .... 300 mA
Maximum current into VDD pin .... 250 mA
Input clamp current, IIK (VI < 0 or VI > VDD) .... ±20 mA
Output clamp current, IOK (VO < 0 or VO > VDD) .... ±20 mA
Maximum output current sunk by any I/O pin .... 25 mA
Maximum output current sourced by any I/O pin .... 25 mA
Maximum current sunk by all ports .... 200 mA
Maximum current sourced by all ports .... 200 mA

Note 1: Power dissipation is calculated as follows:
$Pdis = V_{DD} \times \{I_{DD} - \sum I_{OH}\} + \sum \{(V_{DD} - V_{OH}) \times I_{OH}\} + \sum(V_{OL} \times I_{OL})$

2: Voltage spikes below VSS at the $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$/VPP pin, inducing currents greater than 80 mA, may cause latch-up. Thus, a series resistor of 50-100Ω should be used when applying a “low” level to the $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$/VPP pin, rather than pulling this pin directly to VSS.

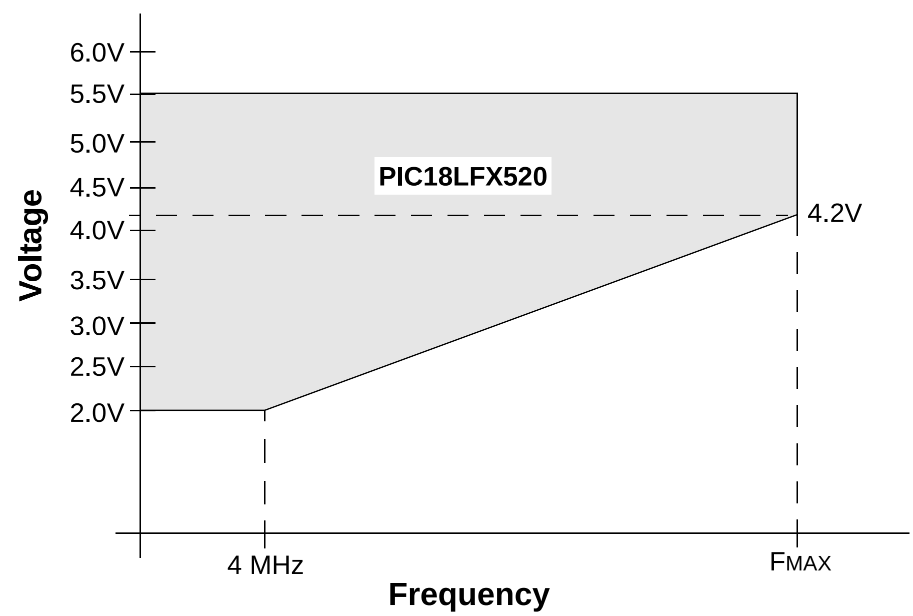
† NOTICE: Stresses above those listed under “Absolute Maximum Ratings” may cause permanent damage to the device. This is a stress rating only and functional operation of the device at those or any other conditions above those indicated in the operation listings of this specification is not implied. Exposure to maximum rating conditions for extended periods may affect device reliability.

FIGURE 26-1: PIC18F6520/8520 VOLTAGE-FREQUENCY GRAPH (INDUSTRIAL, EXTENDED)



FMAX = 40 MHz for PIC18F6520/8520 in Microcontroller mode.
FMAX (Extended) = 25 MHz for PIC18F6520/8520 in modes other than Microcontroller mode.

FIGURE 26-2: PIC18LF6520/8520 VOLTAGE-FREQUENCY GRAPH (INDUSTRIAL)

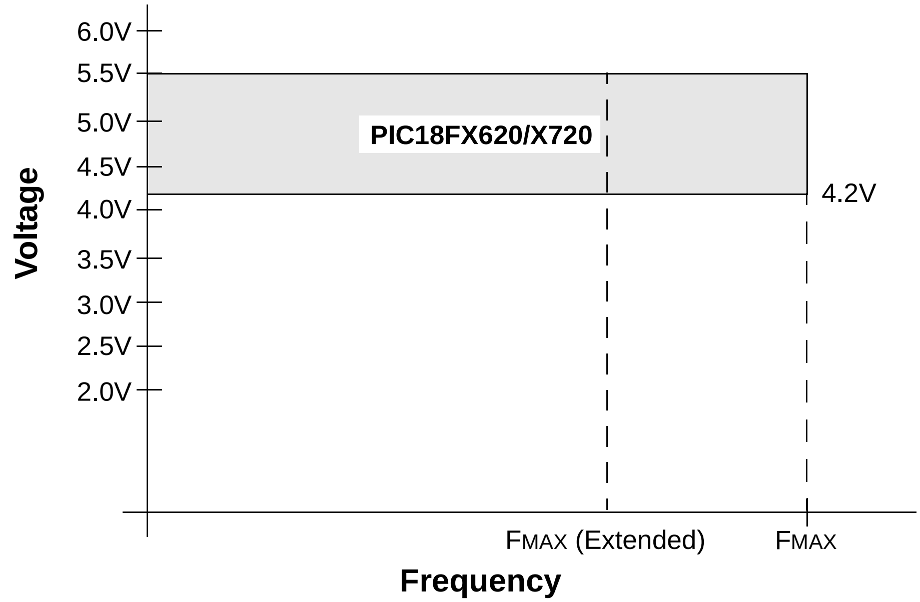


For PIC18F6520/8520 in Microcontroller mode:
FMAX = (16.36 MHz/V) (VDDAPPMIN – 2.0V) + 4 MHz, if VDDAPPMIN ≤ 4.2V;
FMAX = 40 MHz, if VDDAPPMIN > 4.2V.

For PIC18F8X8X in modes other than Microcontroller mode:
FMAX = (9.55 MHz/V) (VDDAPPMIN – 2.0V) + 4 MHz, if VDDAPPMIN ≤ 4.2V;
FMAX = 25 MHz, if VDDAPPMIN > 4.2V.

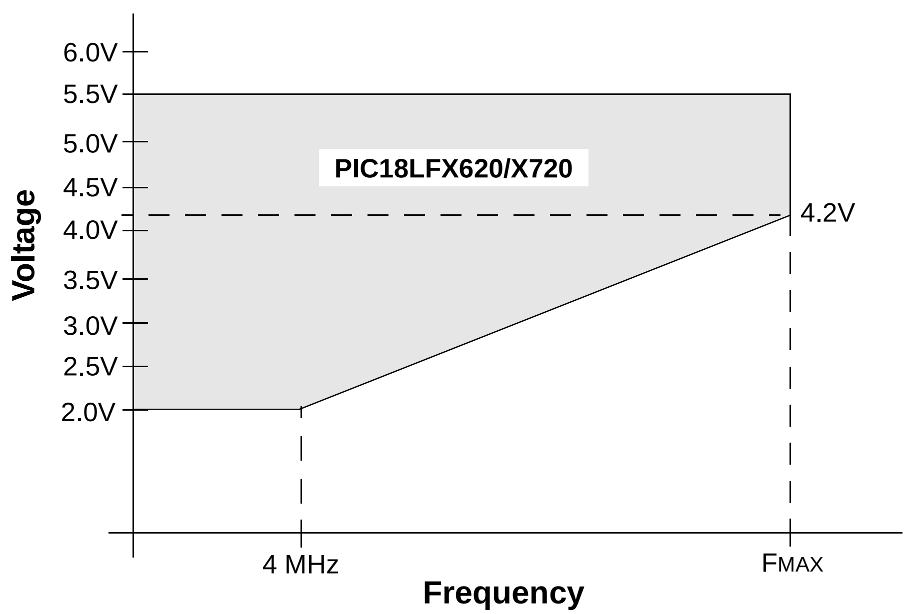
Note: VDDAPPMIN is the minimum voltage of the Picmicro® device in the application.

FIGURE 26-3: PIC18F6620/6720/8620/8720 VOLTAGE-FREQUENCY GRAPH (INDUSTRIAL, EXTENDED)



F_{MAX} = 25 MHz in Microcontroller mode.
F_{MAX} (Extended) = 16 MHz for PIC18F6520/8520 in modes other than Microcontroller mode.

FIGURE 26-4: PIC18LF6620/6720/8620/8720 VOLTAGE-FREQUENCY GRAPH (INDUSTRIAL)



In Microcontroller mode:
F_{MAX} = (9.55 MHz/V) ($V_{DDAPPMIN}$ – 2.0V) + 4 MHz, if $V_{DDAPPMIN} \le 4.2V$;
F_{MAX} = 25 MHz, if $V_{DDAPPMIN} > 4.2V$.

In modes other than Microcontroller mode:
F_{MAX} = (5.45 MHz/V) ($V_{DDAPPMIN}$ – 2.0V) + 4 MHz, if $V_{DDAPPMIN} \le 4.2V$;
F_{MAX} = 16 MHz, if $V_{DDAPPMIN} > 4.2V$.

Note: $V_{DDAPPMIN}$ is the minimum voltage of the Picmicro® device in the application.

26.1 DC Characteristics: Supply Voltage PIC18F6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720 (Industrial, Extended) PIC18LF6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720 (Industrial)

PIC18LF6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720 (Industrial)			Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial				
PIC18F6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720 (Industrial, Extended)			**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended				
Param No.	**Symbol**	**Characteristic**	**Min**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**
D001	VDD	**Supply Voltage**					
		PIC18LFXX20	2.0	—	5.5	V	HS, XT, RC and LP Oscillator mode
		PIC18FXX20	4.2	—	5.5	V	
D001A	AVDD	**Analog Supply Voltage**	VDD – 0.3	—	VDD + 0.3	V	
D002	VDR	**RAM Data Retention Voltage**(1)	1.5	—	—	V	
D003	VPOR	**VDD Start Voltage** to ensure internal Power-on Reset signal	—	—	0.7	V	See section on Power-on Reset for details
D004	SVDD	**VDD Rise Rate** to ensure internal Power-on Reset signal	0.05	—	—	V/ms	See section on Power-on Reset for details
D005	VBOR	**Brown-out Reset Voltage**					
		BORV1:BORV0 = 11	N/A	—	N/A	V	Reserved
		BORV1:BORV0 = 10	2.64	—	2.92	V	
		BORV1:BORV0 = 01	4.11	—	4.55	V	
		BORV1:BORV0 = 00	4.41	—	4.87	V	

Legend: Shading of rows is to assist in readability of the table.

Note 1: This is the limit to which VDD can be lowered in Sleep mode, or during a device Reset, without losing RAM data.

26.2 DC Characteristics: Power-Down and Supply Current PIC18F6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720 (Industrial, Extended) PIC18LF6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720 (Industrial)

PIC18LF6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720 (Industrial)		**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ T_A ≤ +85°C for industrial				
PIC18F6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720 (Industrial, Extended)		**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ T_A ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ T_A ≤ +125°C for extended				
Param No.	**Device**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**	
	Power-down Current (I_{PD})(1)					
	PIC18LFXX20	0.2	1	μA	-40°C	V_{DD} = 2.0V, (Sleep mode)
		0.2	1	μA	+25°C	
		1.2	5	μA	+85°C	
	PIC18LFXX20	0.4	1	μA	-40°C	V_{DD} = 3.0V, (Sleep mode)
		0.4	1	μA	+25°C	
		1.8	8	μA	+85°C	
	All devices	0.7	2	μA	-40°C	V_{DD} = 5.0V, (Sleep mode)
		0.7	2	μA	+25°C	
		3.0	15	μA	+85°C	

Legend: Shading of rows is to assist in readability of the table.

Note 1: The power-down current in Sleep mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in Sleep mode, with all I/O pins in high-impedance state and tied to V_{DD} or V_{SS} and all features that add delta current disabled (such as WDT, Timer1 Oscillator, BOR, etc.).

2: The supply current is mainly a function of operating voltage, frequency and mode. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type and circuit, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.
The test conditions for all I_{DD} measurements in active operation mode are:
OSC1 = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to V_{DD};
$\overline{MCLR}$ = V_{DD}; WDT enabled/disabled as specified.

3: For RC oscillator configurations, current through R_{EXT} is not included. The current through the resistor can be estimated by the formula Ir = $V_{DD}/2R_{EXT}$ (mA) with R_{EXT} in kΩ.

26.2 DC Characteristics: Power-Down and Supply Current PIC18F6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720 (Industrial, Extended) PIC18LF6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720 (Industrial) (Continued)

PIC18LF6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720 (Industrial)		**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial					
PIC18F6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720 (Industrial, Extended)		**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended					
Param No.	**Device**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**		
	Supply Current (IDD)(2,3)						
	PIC18LFXX20	165	350	µA	-40°C	VDD = 2.0V	FOSC = 1 MHz, EC oscillator
		165	350	µA	+25°C		
		170	350	µA	+85°C		
	PIC18LFXX20	360	750	µA	-40°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		340	750	µA	+25°C		
		300	750	µA	+85°C		
	All devices	800	1700	µA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		730	1700	µA	+25°C		
		700	1700	µA	+85°C		
	PIC18LFXX20	600	1200	µA	-40°C	VDD = 2.0V	FOSC = 4 MHz, EC oscillator
		600	1200	µA	+25°C		
		640	1300	µA	+85°C		
	PIC18LFXX20	1000	2500	µA	-40°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		1000	2500	µA	+25°C		
		1000	2500	µA	+85°C		
	All devices	2.2	5.0	mA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		2.1	5.0	mA	+25°C		
		2.0	5.0	mA	+85°C		

Legend: Shading of rows is to assist in readability of the table.

Note 1: The power-down current in Sleep mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in Sleep mode, with all I/O pins in high-impedance state and tied to VDD or VSS and all features that add delta current disabled (such as WDT, Timer1 Oscillator, BOR, etc.).

2: The supply current is mainly a function of operating voltage, frequency and mode. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type and circuit, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.
The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active operation mode are:
$\overline{\text{OSC1}}$ = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD;
$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ = VDD; WDT enabled/disabled as specified.

3: For RC oscillator configurations, current through REXT is not included. The current through the resistor can be estimated by the formula Ir = VDD/2REXT (mA) with REXT in kΩ.

26.2 DC Characteristics: Power-Down and Supply Current PIC18F6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720 (Industrial, Extended) PIC18LF6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720 (Industrial) (Continued)

PIC18LF6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720 (Industrial)	**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial
PIC18F6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720 (Industrial, Extended)	**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended

Param No.	Device	Typ	Max	Units	Conditions		
	Supply Current (IDD)(2,3)						
	PIC18FX620, PIC18FX720	9.3	15	mA	-40°C	VDD = 4.2V	FOSC = 25 MHz, EC oscillator
		9.5	15	mA	+25°C		
		10	15	mA	+85°C		
	PIC18FX620, PIC18FX720	11.8	20	mA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		12	20	mA	+25°C		
		12	20	mA	+85°C		
	PIC18FX520	16	20	mA	-40°C	VDD = 4.2V	FOSC = 40 MHz, EC oscillator
		16	20	mA	+25°C		
		16	20	mA	+85°C		
	PIC18FX520	19	25	mA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		19	25	mA	+25°C		
		19	25	mA	+85°C		
D014	PIC18FX620/X720	15	55	µA	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 2.0V	FOSC = 32 kHz, Timer1 as clock
	PIC18LF8520	13	18	µA	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 2.0V	FOSC = 32 kHz, Timer1 as clock
		20	35	µA	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		50	85	µA	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 5.0V	
	PIC18FXX20	—	200	µA	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 4.2V	FOSC = 32 kHz, Timer1 as clock
		—	250	µA	-40°C to +125°C	VDD = 4.2V	

Legend: Shading of rows is to assist in readability of the table.

Note 1: The power-down current in Sleep mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in Sleep mode, with all I/O pins in high-impedance state and tied to VDD or VSS and all features that add delta current disabled (such as WDT, Timer1 Oscillator, BOR, etc.).

2: The supply current is mainly a function of operating voltage, frequency and mode. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type and circuit, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.
The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active operation mode are:
OSC1 = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD;
$\overline{MCLR}$ = VDD; WDT enabled/disabled as specified.

3: For RC oscillator configurations, current through REXT is not included. The current through the resistor can be estimated by the formula Ir = VDD/2REXT (mA) with REXT in kΩ.

26.2 DC Characteristics: Power-Down and Supply Current PIC18F6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720 (Industrial, Extended) PIC18LF6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720 (Industrial) (Continued)

PIC18LF6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720 (Industrial)		**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial					
PIC18F6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720 (Industrial, Extended)		**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended					
Param No.	**Device**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**		
	Module Differential Currents (ΔIWDT, ΔIBOR, ΔILVD, ΔIOSCB, ΔIAD)						
D022 (ΔIWDT)	**Watchdog Timer**	<1	2.0	μA	-40°C	VDD = 2.0V	
		<1	1.5	μA	+25°C		
		<1	3	μA	+85°C		
		3	10	μA	-40°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		2.5	6	μA	+25°C		
		3	15	μA	+85°C		
		15	25	μA	-40°C	VDD = 5.0V	
		12	20	μA	+25°C		
		12	40	μA	+85°C		
D022A (ΔIBOR)	**Brown-out Reset**	35	50	μA	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		45	65	μA	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 5.0V	
D022B (ΔILVD)	**Low-Voltage Detect**	33	45	μA	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 2.0V	
		35	50	μA	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		45	65	μA	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 5.0V	
D025 (ΔIOSCB)	**Timer1 Oscillator**	5.2	30	μA	+25°C	VDD = 2.0V	32 kHz on Timer1
	PIC18LF8720/8620	5.2	40	μA	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 2.0V	
		6.5	50	μA	-40°C to +125°C	VDD = 4.2V	
	PIC18F8520/8620/8720	6.5	40	μA	+25°C	VDD = 4.2V	32 kHz on Timer1
		6.5	50	μA	-40°C to +85°C		
		6.5	65	μA	-40°C to +125°C		
	PIC18LF8520	1.8	2.2	μA	+25°C	VDD = 2.0V	32 kHz on Timer1
		2.9	3.8	μA	-40°C to +85°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		3.4	7.0	μA	-40°C to +125°C	VDD = 5.0V	
D026 (ΔIAD)	**A/D Converter**	<1	2	μA	+25°C	VDD = 2.0V	A/D on, not converting. Device is in Sleep.
		<1	2	μA	+25°C	VDD = 3.0V	
		<1	2	μA	+25°C	VDD = 5.0V	

Legend: Shading of rows is to assist in readability of the table.

Note 1: The power-down current in Sleep mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in Sleep mode, with all I/O pins in high-impedance state and tied to VDD or VSS and all features that add delta current disabled (such as WDT, Timer1 Oscillator, BOR, etc.).

2: The supply current is mainly a function of operating voltage, frequency and mode. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type and circuit, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.
The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active operation mode are:
OSC1 = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD;
MCLR = VDD; WDT enabled/disabled as specified.

3: For RC oscillator configurations, current through REXT is not included. The current through the resistor can be estimated by the formula Ir = VDD/2REXT (mA) with REXT in kΩ.

26.3 DC Characteristics: PIC18F6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720 (Industrial, Extended) PIC18LF6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720 (Industrial)

DC CHARACTERISTICS			Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended			
Param No.	**Sym**	**Characteristic**	**Min**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**
	VIL	**Input Low Voltage**				
		I/O ports:				
D030		with TTL buffer	VSS	0.15 VDD	V	VDD < 4.5V
D030A			—	0.8	V	4.5V ≤ VDD ≤ 5.5V
D031		with Schmitt Trigger buffer RC3 and RC4	VSS VSS	0.2 VDD 0.3 VDD	V V	
D032		$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$	VSS	0.2 VDD	V	
D032A		OSC1 (in XT, HS and LP modes) and T1OSI	VSS	0.2 VDD	V	
D033		OSC1 (in RC and EC mode)(1)	VSS	0.2 VDD	V	
	VIH	**Input High Voltage**				
		I/O ports:				
D040		with TTL buffer	0.25 VDD + 0.8V	VDD	V	VDD < 4.5V
D040A			2.0	VDD	V	4.5V ≤ VDD ≤ 5.5V
D041		with Schmitt Trigger buffer RC3 and RC4	0.8 VDD 0.7 VDD	VDD VDD	V V	
D042		$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$, OSC1 (EC mode)	0.8 VDD	VDD	V	
D042A		OSC1 and T1OSI	1.6	VDD	V	LP, XT, HS, HSPLL modes(1)
D043		OSC1 (RC mode)(1)	0.9 VDD	VDD	V	
	IIL	**Input Leakage Current(2,3)**				
D060		I/O ports	—	±1	μA	VSS ≤ VPIN ≤ VDD, Pin at high-impedance
D061		$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$	—	±5	μA	VSS ≤ VPIN ≤ VDD
D063		OSC1	—	±5	μA	VSS ≤ VPIN ≤ VDD
	IPU	**Weak Pull-up Current**				
D070	IPURB	PORTB weak pull-up current	50	400	μA	VDD = 5V, VPIN = VSS

Note 1: In RC oscillator configuration, the OSC1/CLKI pin is a Schmitt Trigger input. It is not recommended that the PICmicro device be driven with an external clock while in RC mode.

2: The leakage current on the $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ pin is strongly dependent on the applied voltage level. The specified levels represent normal operating conditions. Higher leakage current may be measured at different input voltages.

3: Negative current is defined as current sourced by the pin.

4: Parameter is characterized but not tested.

26.3 DC Characteristics: PIC18F6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720 (Industrial, Extended) PIC18LF6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720 (Industrial) (Continued)

DC CHARACTERISTICS			Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended			
Param No.	**Sym**	**Characteristic**	**Min**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**
	V_{OL}	**Output Low Voltage**				
D080		I/O ports	—	0.6	V	I_{OL} = 8.5 mA, V_{DD} = 4.5V, -40°C to +85°C
D080A			—	0.6	V	I_{OL} = 7.0 mA, V_{DD} = 4.5V, -40°C to +125°C
D083		OSC2/CLKO (RC mode)	—	0.6	V	I_{OL} = 1.6 mA, V_{DD} = 4.5V, -40°C to +85°C
D083A			—	0.6	V	I_{OL} = 1.2 mA, V_{DD} = 4.5V, -40°C to +125°C
	V_{OH}	**Output High Voltage**(3)				
D090		I/O ports	V_{DD} – 0.7	—	V	I_{OH} = -3.0 mA, V_{DD} = 4.5V, -40°C to +85°C
D090A			V_{DD} – 0.7	—	V	I_{OH} = -2.5 mA, V_{DD} = 4.5V, -40°C to +125°C
D092		OSC2/CLKO (RC mode)	V_{DD} – 0.7	—	V	I_{OH} = -1.3 mA, V_{DD} = 4.5V, -40°C to +85°C
D092A			V_{DD} – 0.7	—	V	I_{OH} = -1.0 mA, V_{DD} = 4.5V, -40°C to +125°C
D150	V_{OD}	**Open-Drain High Voltage**	—	8.5	V	RA4 pin
		Capacitive Loading Specs on Output Pins				
D100(4)	C_{OSC2}	OSC2 pin	—	15	pF	In XT, HS and LP modes when external clock is used to drive OSC1
D101	C_{IO}	All I/O pins and OSC2 (in RC mode)	—	50	pF	To meet the AC Timing Specifications
D102	C_B	SCL, SDA	—	400	pF	In I^2C mode

Note 1: In RC oscillator configuration, the OSC1/CLKI pin is a Schmitt Trigger input. It is not recommended that the PICmicro device be driven with an external clock while in RC mode.

2: The leakage current on the $\overline{MCLR}$ pin is strongly dependent on the applied voltage level. The specified levels represent normal operating conditions. Higher leakage current may be measured at different input voltages.

3: Negative current is defined as current sourced by the pin.

4: Parameter is characterized but not tested.

TABLE 26-1: COMPARATOR SPECIFICATIONS

Operating Conditions: 3.0V < VDD < 5.5V, -40°C < TA < +125°C (unless otherwise stated).							
Param No.	**Sym**	**Characteristics**	**Min**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Units**	**Comments**
D300	VIOFF	Input Offset Voltage	—	± 5.0	± 10	mV	
D301	VICM	Input Common Mode Voltage	0	—	VDD – 1.5	V	
D302	CMRR	Common Mode Rejection Ratio	55	—	—	dB	
300 300A	TRESP	Response Time(1)	—	150	400 600	ns ns	PIC18FXX20 PIC18LFXX20
301	TMC2OV	Comparator Mode Change to Output Valid	—	—	10	µs	

Note 1: Response time measured with one comparator input at (VDD – 1.5)/2, while the other input transitions from VSS to VDD.

TABLE 26-2: VOLTAGE REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS

Operating Conditions: 3.0V < VDD < 5.5V, -40°C < TA < +125°C (unless otherwise stated).							
Param No.	**Sym**	**Characteristics**	**Min**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Units**	**Comments**
D310	VRES	Resolution	VDD/24	—	VDD/32	LSb	
D311	VRAA	Absolute Accuracy	— —	— —	1/4 1/2	LSb LSb	Low Range (VRR = 1) High Range (VRR = 0)
D312	VRUR	Unit Resistor Value (R)	—	2k	—	Ω	
310	TSET	Settling Time(1)	—	—	10	µs	

Note 1: Settling time measured while VRR = 1 and VR<3:0> transitions from '0000' to '1111'.

FIGURE 26-5: LOW-VOLTAGE DETECT CHARACTERISTICS

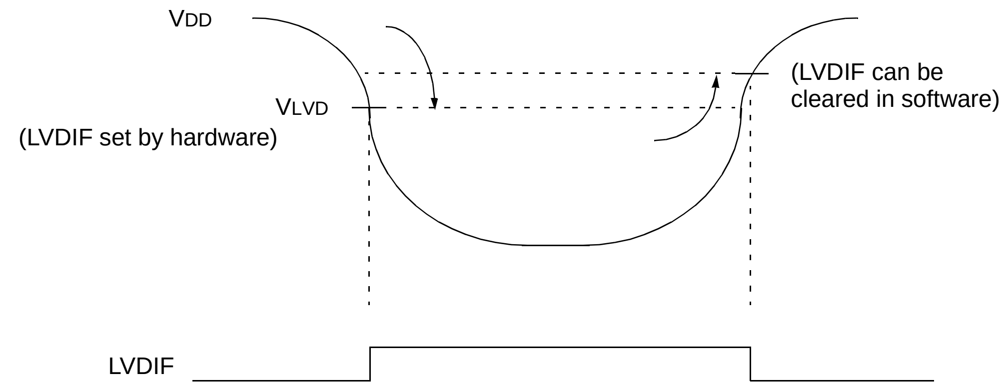


TABLE 26-3: LOW-VOLTAGE DETECT CHARACTERISTICS

Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)
Operating temperature -40°C ≤ T_A ≤ +85°C for industrial
-40°C ≤ T_A ≤ +125°C for extended

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Typ†	Max	Units	Conditions
D420		LVD Voltage on V_{DD} Transition high-to-low	LVV = 0001	1.96	2.06	2.16	V	
			LVV = 0010	2.16	2.27	2.38	V	
			LVV = 0011	2.35	2.47	2.59	V	
			LVV = 0100	2.45	2.58	2.71	V	
			LVV = 0101	2.64	2.78	2.92	V	
			LVV = 0110	2.75	2.89	3.03	V	
			LVV = 0111	2.95	3.1	3.26	V	
			LVV = 1000	3.24	3.41	3.58	V	
			LVV = 1001	3.43	3.61	3.79	V	
			LVV = 1010	3.53	3.72	3.91	V	
			LVV = 1011	3.72	3.92	4.12	V	
			LVV = 1100	3.92	4.13	4.34	V	
			LVV = 1101	4.11	4.33	4.55	V	
			LVV = 1110	4.41	4.64	4.87	V	
D423	V_{BG}	Band Gap Reference Voltage Value		—	1.22	—	V	

† Production tested at T_{AMB} = 25°C. Specifications over temperature limits ensured by characterization.

TABLE 26-4: MEMORY PROGRAMMING REQUIREMENTS

DC Characteristics			Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended				
Param No.	**Sym**	**Characteristic**	**Min**	**Typ†**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**
		Internal Program Memory Programming Specifications (Note 1)					
D110	VPP	Voltage on $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$/VPP pin	9.00	—	13.25	V	**(Note 2)**
D112	IPP	Current into $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$/VPP pin	—	—	5	μA	
D113	IDDP	Supply Current during Programming	—	—	10	mA	
		Data EEPROM Memory					
D120	ED	Cell Endurance	100K	1M	—	E/W	-40°C to +85°C
D120A	ED	Cell Endurance	10K	100K	—	E/W	+85°C to +125°C
D121	VDRW	VDD for Read/Write	VMIN	—	5.5	V	Using EECON to read/write VMIN = Minimum operating voltage
D122	TDEW	Erase/Write Cycle Time	—	4	—	ms	
D123	TRETD	Characteristic Retention	40	—	—	Year	-40°C to +85°C **(Note 3)**
D123A	TRETD	Characteristic Retention	100	—	—	Year	25°C **(Note 3)**
		Program Flash Memory					
D130	EP	Cell Endurance	10K	100K	—	E/W	-40°C to +85°C
D130A	EP	Cell Endurance	1000	10K	—	E/W	+85°C to +125°C
D131	VPR	VDD for Read	VMIN	—	5.5	V	VMIN = Minimum operating voltage
D132	VIE	VDD for Block Erase	4.5	—	5.5	V	Using ICSP port
D132A	VIW	VDD for Externally Timed Erase or Write	4.5	—	5.5	V	Using ICSP port
D132B	VPEW	VDD for Self-Timed Write	VMIN	—	5.5	V	VMIN = Minimum operating voltage
D133	TIE	ICSP Block Erase Cycle Time	—	5	—	ms	VDD > 4.5V
D133A	TIW	ICSP Erase or Write Cycle Time (externally timed)	1	—	—	ms	VDD > 4.5V
D133A	TIW	Self-Timed Write Cycle Time	—	2.5	—	ms	
D134	TRETD	Characteristic Retention	40	—	—	Year	-40°C to +85°C **(Note 3)**
D134A	TRETD	Characteristic Retention	100	—	—	Year	25°C **(Note 3)**

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

Note 1: These specifications are for programming the on-chip program memory through the use of table write instructions.

2: The pin may be kept in this range at times other than programming, but it is not recommended.

3: Retention time is valid, provided no other specifications are violated.

26.4 AC (Timing) Characteristics

26.4.1 TIMING PARAMETER SYMBOLOGY

The timing parameter symbols have been created using one of the following formats:

1. TppS2ppS		3. TCC:ST	(I^2C specifications only)
2. TppS		4. Ts	(I^2C specifications only)
T			
F	Frequency	T	Time
Lowercase letters (pp) and their meanings:			
pp			
cc	CCP1	osc	OSC1
ck	CLKO	rd	$\overline{\text{RD}}$
cs	$\overline{\text{CS}}$	rw	$\overline{\text{RD}}$ or $\overline{\text{WR}}$
di	SDI	sc	SCK
do	SDO	ss	$\overline{\text{SS}}$
dt	Data in	t0	T0CKI
io	I/O port	t1	T1CKI
mc	$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$	wr	$\overline{\text{WR}}$
Uppercase letters and their meanings:			
S			
F	Fall	P	Period
H	High	R	Rise
I	Invalid (High-Impedance)	V	Valid
L	Low	Z	High-Impedance
I^2C only			
AA	output access	High	High
BUF	Bus free	Low	Low
TCC:ST (I^2			

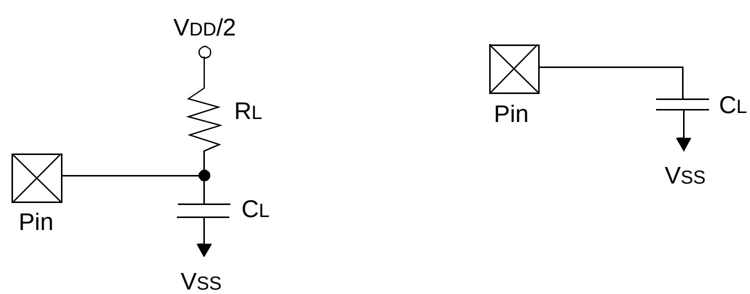
26.4.2 TIMING CONDITIONS

The temperature and voltages specified in Table 26-5 apply to all timing specifications unless otherwise noted. Figure 26-6 specifies the load conditions for the timing specifications.

TABLE 26-5: TEMPERATURE AND VOLTAGE SPECIFICATIONS – AC

AC CHARACTERISTICS	**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ T_A ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ T_A ≤ +125°C for extended Operating voltage V_{DD} range as described in DC spec **Section 26.1** and **Section 26.3**. LC parts operate for industrial temperatures only.

FIGURE 26-6: LOAD CONDITIONS FOR DEVICE TIMING SPECIFICATIONS



26.4.3 TIMING DIAGRAMS AND SPECIFICATIONS

FIGURE 26-7: EXTERNAL CLOCK TIMING (ALL MODES EXCEPT PLL)

TABLE 26-6: EXTERNAL CLOCK TIMING REQUIREMENTS

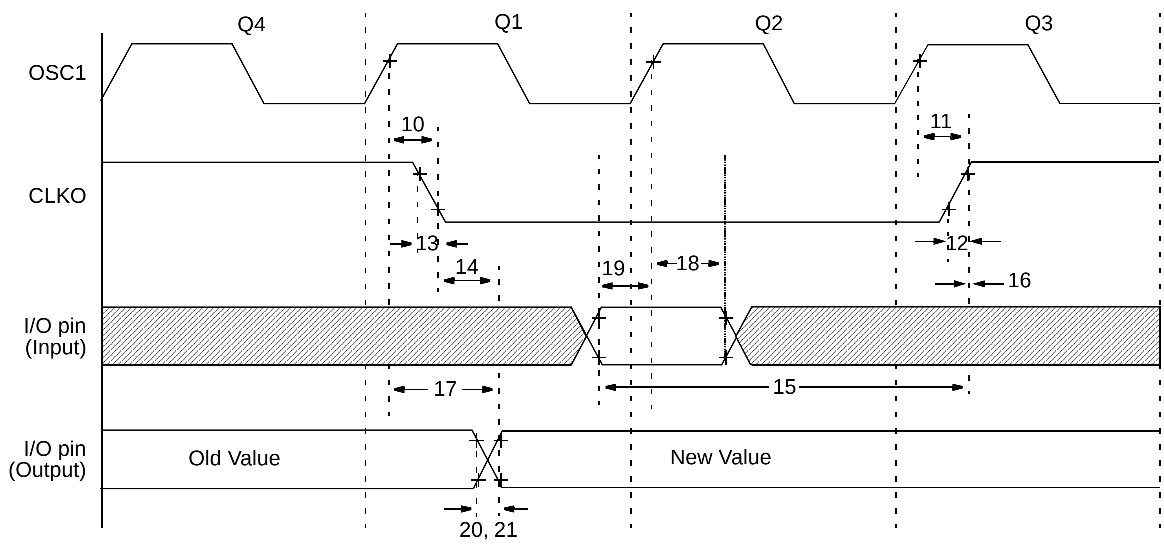
Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic	Min	Max	Units	Conditions
1A	FOSC	External CLKI Frequency(1)	DC	25	MHz	EC, ECIO, PIC18FX620/X720 (-40°C to +85°C)
			DC	40	MHz	EC, ECIO, PIC18FX520 (-40°C to +85°C)
			DC	25	MHz	EC, ECIO, PIC18FX520 using external memory interface (-40°C to +85°C)
		Oscillator Frequency(1)	DC	4	MHz	RC oscillator
			0.1	4	MHz	XT oscillator
			4	25	MHz	HS oscillator
			4	10	MHz	HS + PLL oscillator, PIC18FX520
			4	6.25	MHz	HS + PLL oscillator, PIC18FX520 using external memory interface
			4	6.25	MHz	HS + PLL oscillator, PIC18FX620/X720
			5	33	kHz	LP Oscillator mode
1	TOSC	External CLKI Period(1)	40	—	ns	EC, ECIO, PIC18FX620/X720 (-40°C to +85°C)
			25	—	ns	EC, ECIO, PIC18FX520 (-40°C to +85°C)
			40	—	ns	EC, ECIO, PIC18FX520 using external memory interface (-40°C to +85°C)
		Oscillator Period				

TABLE 26-7: PLL CLOCK TIMING SPECIFICATIONS (VDD = 4.2V TO 5.5V)

Param No.	Sym	Characteristic	Min	Typ†	Max	Units	Conditions
—	FOSC	Oscillator Frequency Range	4	—	10	MHz	HS mode
—	FSYS	On-Chip VCO System Frequency	16	—	40	MHz	HS mode
—	t_{rc}	PLL Start-up Time (Lock Time)	—	—	2	ms	
—	ΔCLK	CLKO Stability (Jitter)	-2	—	+2	%	

† Data in “Typ” column is at 5V, 25°C, unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

FIGURE 26-8: CLKO AND I/O TIMING



Note: Refer to Figure 26-6 for load conditions.

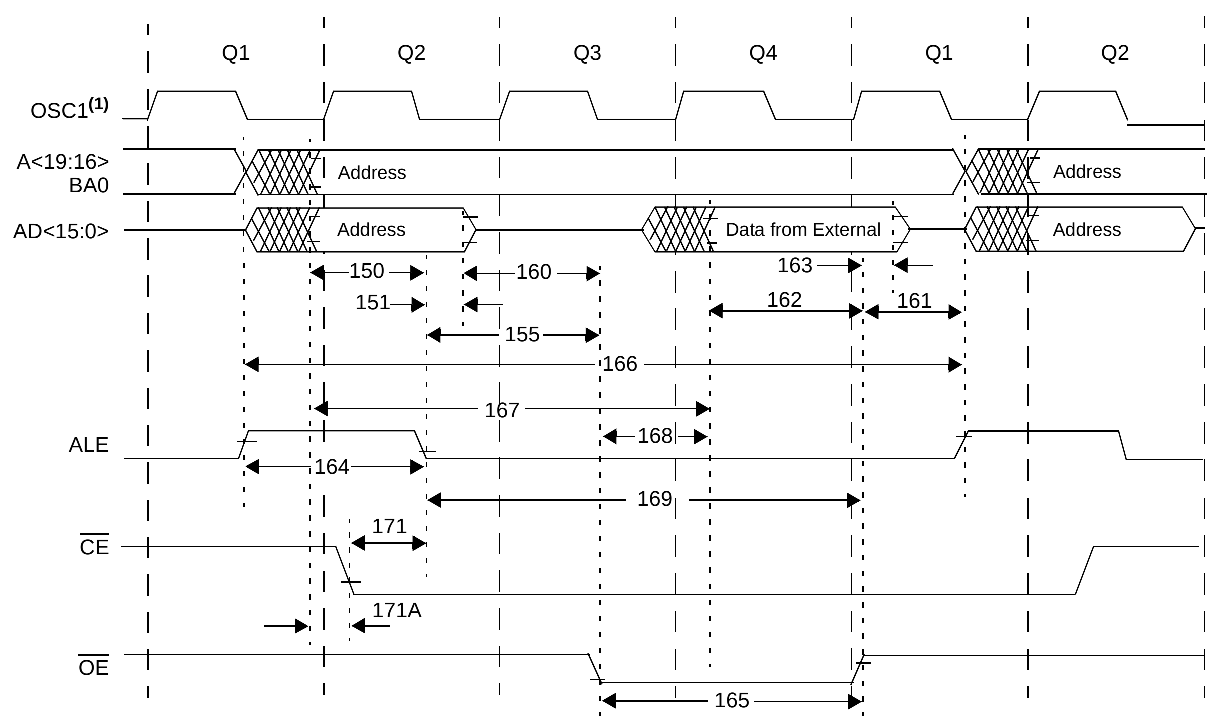
TABLE 26-8: CLKO AND I/O TIMING REQUIREMENTS

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Typ	Max	Units	Conditions
10	TOSH2CKL	OSC1 ↑ to CLKO ↓		—	75	200	ns	**(Note 1)**
11	TOSH2CKH	OSC1 ↑ to CLKO ↑		—	75	200	ns	**(Note 1)**
12	TCKR	CLKO Rise Time		—	35	100	ns	**(Note 1)**
13	TCKF	CLKO Fall Time		—	35	100	ns	**(Note 1)**
14	TCKL2IOV	CLKO ↓ to Port Out Valid		—	—	0.5 TCY + 20	ns	**(Note 1)**
15	TIOV2CKH	Port In Valid before CLKO ↑		0.25 TCY + 25	—	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
16	TCKH2IOI	Port In Hold after CLKO ↑		0	—	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
17	TOSH2IOV	OSC1 ↑ (Q1 cycle) to Port Out Valid		—	50	150	ns	
18	TOSH2IOI	OSC1 ↑ (Q2 cycle) to Port Input Invalid (I/O in hold time)	PIC18FXX20	100	—	—	ns	
18A			PIC18LFXX20	200	—	—	ns	VDD = 2.0V
19	TIOV2OSH	Port Input Valid to OSC1 ↑ (I/O in setup time)		0	—	—	ns	
20	TIOR	Port Output Rise Time	PIC18FXX20	—	10	25	ns	
20A			PIC18LFXX20	—	—	60	ns	VDD = 2.0V
21	TIOF	Port Output Fall Time	PIC18FXX20	—	10	25	ns	
21A			PIC18LFXX20	—	—	60	ns	VDD = 2.0V
22†	TINP	INT pin High or Low Time		TCY	—	—	ns	
23†	TRBP	RB7:RB4 Change INT High or Low Time		TCY	—	—	ns	
24†	TRCP	RC7:RC4 Change INT High or Low Time		20	—	—	ns	

† These parameters are asynchronous events not related to any internal clock edges.

Note 1: Measurements are taken in RC mode, where CLKO output is 4 x TOSC.

FIGURE 26-9: PROGRAM MEMORY READ TIMING DIAGRAM



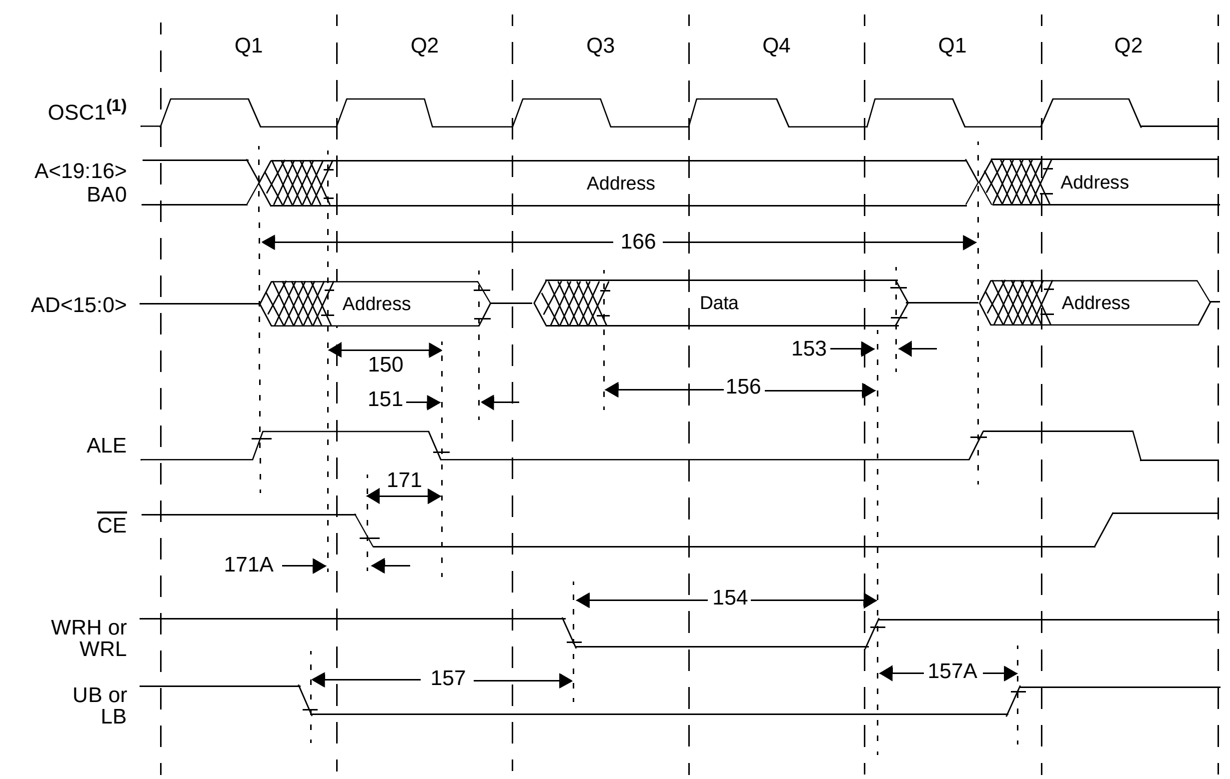
Operating Conditions: 2.0V < VCC < 5.5V, -40°C < TA < +125°C unless otherwise stated.

Note 1: Maximum speed of FOSC is 25 MHz for external program memory read.

TABLE 26-9: CLKO AND I/O TIMING REQUIREMENTS

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristics	Min	Typ	Max	Units
150	TADV2ALL	Address Out Valid to ALE ↓ (address setup time)	0.25 TCY – 10	—	—	ns
151	TALL2ADL	ALE ↓ to Address Out Invalid (address hold time)	5	—	—	ns
155	TALL2OEL	ALE ↓ to $\overline{OE}$ ↓	10	0.125 TCY	—	ns
160	TADZ2OEL	AD high-Z to $\overline{OE}$ ↓ (bus release to $\overline{OE}$)	0	—	—	ns
161	TOEH2ADD	$\overline{OE}$ ↑ to AD Driven	0.125 TCY – 5	—	—	ns
162	TADV2OEH	LS Data Valid before $\overline{OE}$ ↑ (data setup time)	20	—	—	ns
163	TOEH2ADL	$\overline{OE}$ ↑ to Data In Invalid (data hold time)	0	—	—	ns
164	TALH2ALL	ALE Pulse Width	—	0.25 TCY	—	ns
165	TOEL2OEH	$\overline{OE}$ Pulse Width	0.5 TCY – 5	0.5 TCY	—	ns
166	TALH2ALH	ALE ↑ to ALE ↑ (cycle time)	—	TCY	—	ns
167	TACC	Address Valid to Data Valid	0.75 TCY – 25	—	—	ns
168	TOE	$\overline{OE}$ ↓ to Data Valid		—	0.5 TCY – 25	ns
169	TALL2OEH	ALE ↓ to $\overline{OE}$ ↑	0.625 TCY – 10	—	0.625 TCY + 10	ns
171	TALH2CSL	Chip Enable Active to ALE ↓	—	—	10	ns
171A	TUBL2OEH	AD Valid to Chip Enable Active	0.25 TCY – 20	—	—	ns

FIGURE 26-10: PROGRAM MEMORY WRITE TIMING DIAGRAM



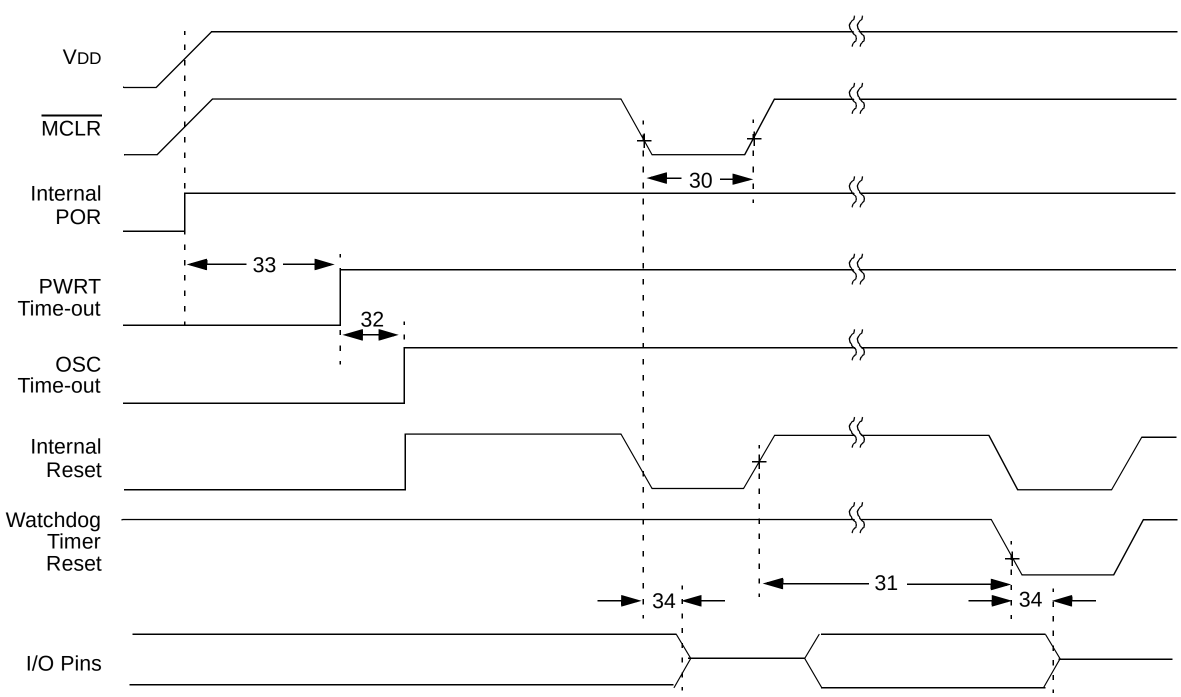
Operating Conditions: 2.0V < VCC < 5.5V, -40°C < TA < +125°C unless otherwise stated.

Note 1: Maximum speed of FOSC is 25 MHz for external program memory read.

TABLE 26-10: PROGRAM MEMORY WRITE TIMING REQUIREMENTS

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristics	Min	Typ	Max	Units
150	TADV2ALL	Address Out Valid to ALE ↓ (address setup time)	0.25 TCY – 10	—	—	ns
151	TALL2ADL	ALE ↓ to Address Out Invalid (address hold time)	5	—	—	ns
153	TWRH2ADL	WRn ↑ to Data Out Invalid (data hold time)	5	—	—	ns
154	TWRL	WRn Pulse Width	0.5 TCY – 5	0.5 TCY	—	ns
156	TADV2WRH	Data Valid before WRn ↑ (data setup time)	0.5 TCY – 10	—	—	ns
157	TBSV2WRL	Byte Select Valid before WRn ↓ (byte select setup time)	0.25 TCY	—	—	ns
157A	TWRH2BSI	WRn ↑ to Byte Select Invalid (byte select hold time)	0.125 TCY – 5	—	—	ns
166	TALH2ALH	ALE ↑ to ALE ↑ (cycle time)	—	TCY	—	ns
171	TALH2CSL	Chip Enable Active to ALE ↓	—	—	10	ns
171A	TUBL2OEH	AD Valid to Chip Enable Active	0.25 TCY – 20	—	—	ns

FIGURE 26-11: RESET, WATCHDOG TIMER, OSCILLATOR START-UP TIMER AND POWER-UP TIMER TIMING



Note: Refer to Figure 26-6 for load conditions.

FIGURE 26-12: BROWN-OUT RESET TIMING

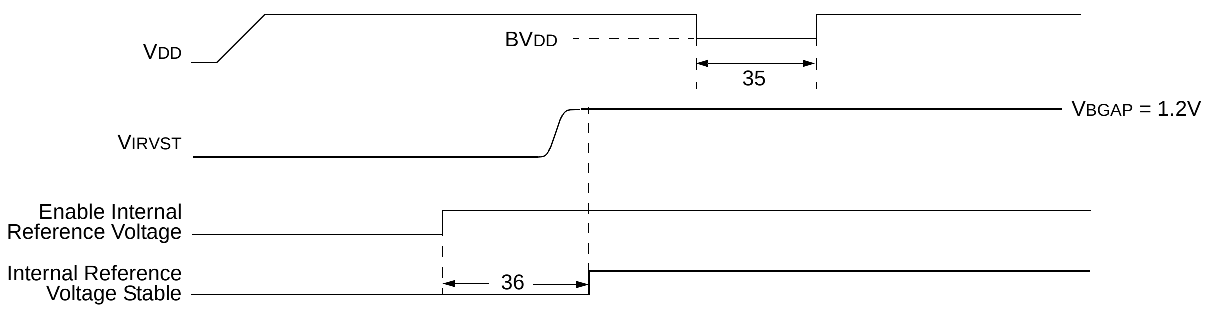
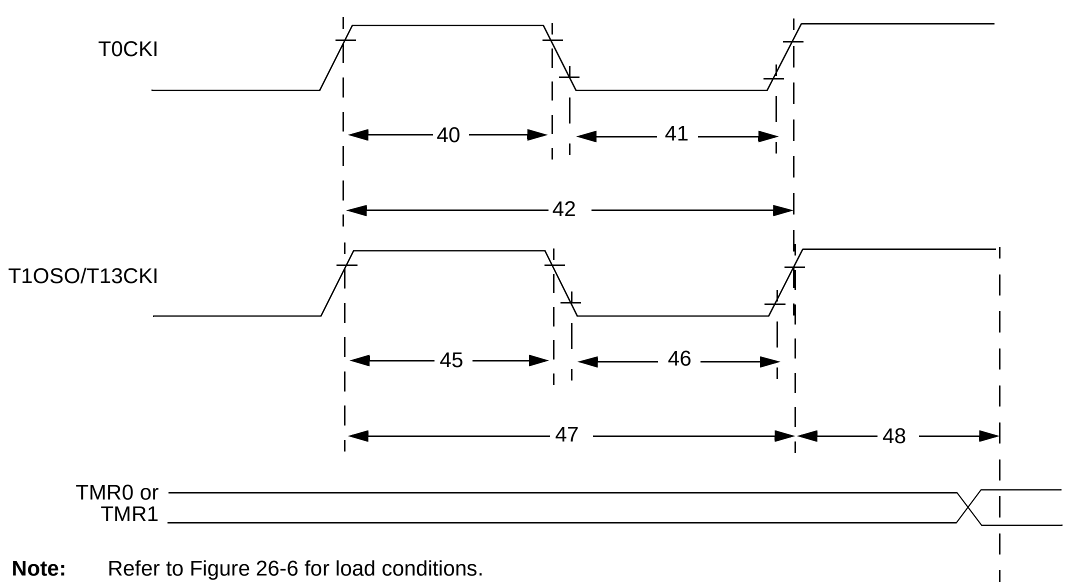


TABLE 26-11: RESET, WATCHDOG TIMER, OSCILLATOR START-UP TIMER, POWER-UP TIMER AND BROWN-OUT RESET REQUIREMENTS

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic	Min	Typ	Max	Units	Conditions
30	TMCL	$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Pulse Width (low)	2	—	—	µs	
31	TWDT	Watchdog Timer Time-out Period (no postscaler)	7	18	33	ms	
32	TOST	Oscillation Start-up Timer Period	1024 TOSC	—	1024 TOSC	—	TOSC = OSC1 period
33	TPWRT	Power-up Timer Period	28	72	132	ms	
34	TIOZ	I/O High-Impedance from $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Low or Watchdog Timer Reset	—	2	—	µs	
35	TBOR	Brown-out Reset Pulse Width	200	—	—	µs	VDD ≤ BVDD (see D005)
36	TIVRST	Time for Internal Reference Voltage to become stable	—	20	50	µs	
37	TLVD	Low-Voltage Detect Pulse Width	200	—	—	µs	VDD ≤ VLVD

FIGURE 26-13: TIMER0 AND TIMER1 EXTERNAL CLOCK TIMINGS

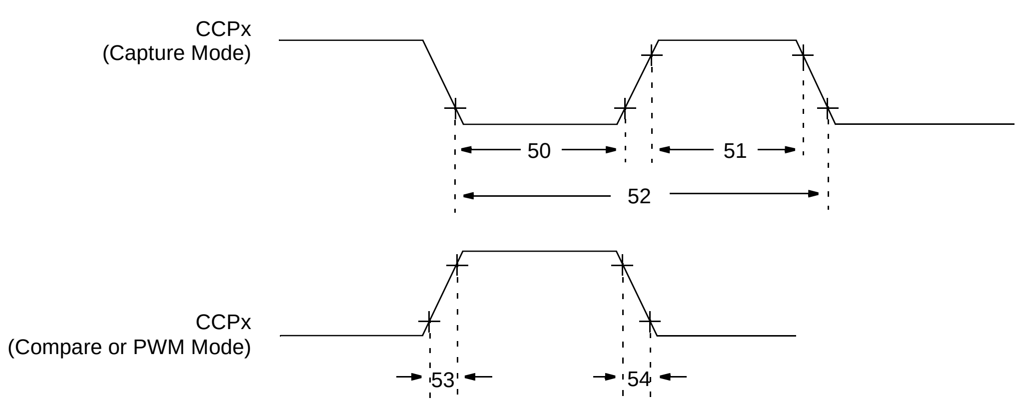


Note: Refer to Figure 26-6 for load conditions.

TABLE 26-12: TIMER0 AND TIMER1 EXTERNAL CLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic			Min	Max	Units	Conditions
40	TT0H	T0CKI High Pulse Width		No prescaler	0.5 TCY + 20	—	ns	
				With prescaler	10	—	ns	
41	TT0L	T0CKI Low Pulse Width		No prescaler	0.5 TCY + 20	—	ns	
				With prescaler	10	—	ns	
42	TT0P	T0CKI Period		No prescaler	TCY + 10	—	ns	
				With prescaler	Greater of: 20 ns or $\frac{TCY + 40}{N}$	—	ns	N = prescale value (1, 2, 4,..., 256)
45	TT1H	T13CKI High Time	Synchronous, no prescaler		0.5 TCY + 20	—	ns	
			Synchronous, with prescaler	PIC18FXX20	10	—	ns	
				PIC18LFXX20	25	—	ns	
			Asynchronous	PIC18FXX20	30	—	ns	
				PIC18LFXX20	50	—	ns	
46	TT1L	T13CKI Low Time	Synchronous, no prescaler		0.5 TCY + 5	—	ns	
			Synchronous, with prescaler	PIC18FXX20	10	—	ns	
				PIC18LFXX20	25	—	ns	
			Asynchronous	PIC18FXX20	30	—	ns	
				PIC18LFXX20	TBD	TBD	ns	
47	TT1P	T13CKI Input Period	Synchronous		Greater of: 20 ns or $\frac{TCY + 40}{N}$	—	ns	N = prescale value (1, 2, 4, 8)
			Asynchronous		60	—	ns	
	FT1	T13CKI Oscillator Input Frequency Range			DC	50	kHz	
48	TCKE2TMRI	Delay from External T13CKI Clock Edge to Timer Increment			2 TOSC	7 TOSC	—	

FIGURE 26-14: CAPTURE/COMPARE/PWM TIMINGS (ALL CCP MODULES)

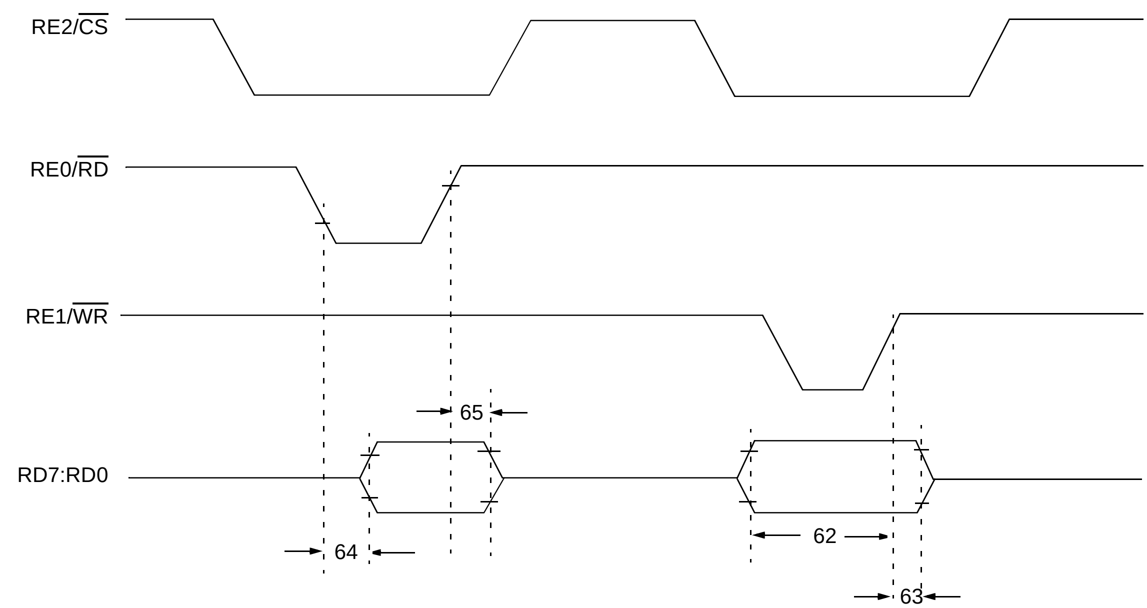


Note: Refer to Figure 26-6 for load conditions.

TABLE 26-13: CAPTURE/COMPARE/PWM REQUIREMENTS (ALL CCP MODULES)

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic			Min	Max	Units	Conditions
50	TCCL	CCPx Input Low Time	No prescaler		0.5 TCY + 20	—	ns	
			With prescaler	PIC18FXX20	10	—	ns	
				PIC18LFXX20	20	—	ns	
51	TCCH	CCPx Input High Time	No prescaler		0.5 TCY + 20	—	ns	
			With prescaler	PIC18FXX20	10	—	ns	
				PIC18LFXX20	20	—	ns	
52	TCCP	CCPx Input Period			$\frac{3\text{ TCY} + 40}{N}$	—	ns	N = prescale value (1, 4 or 16)
53	TCCR	CCPx Output Rise Time		PIC18FXX20	—	25	ns	
				PIC18LFXX20	—	45	ns	VDD = 2.0V
54	TCCF	CCPx Output Fall Time		PIC18FXX20	—	25	ns	
				PIC18LFXX20	—	45	ns	VDD = 2.0V

FIGURE 26-15: PARALLEL SLAVE PORT TIMING (PIC18F8X20)

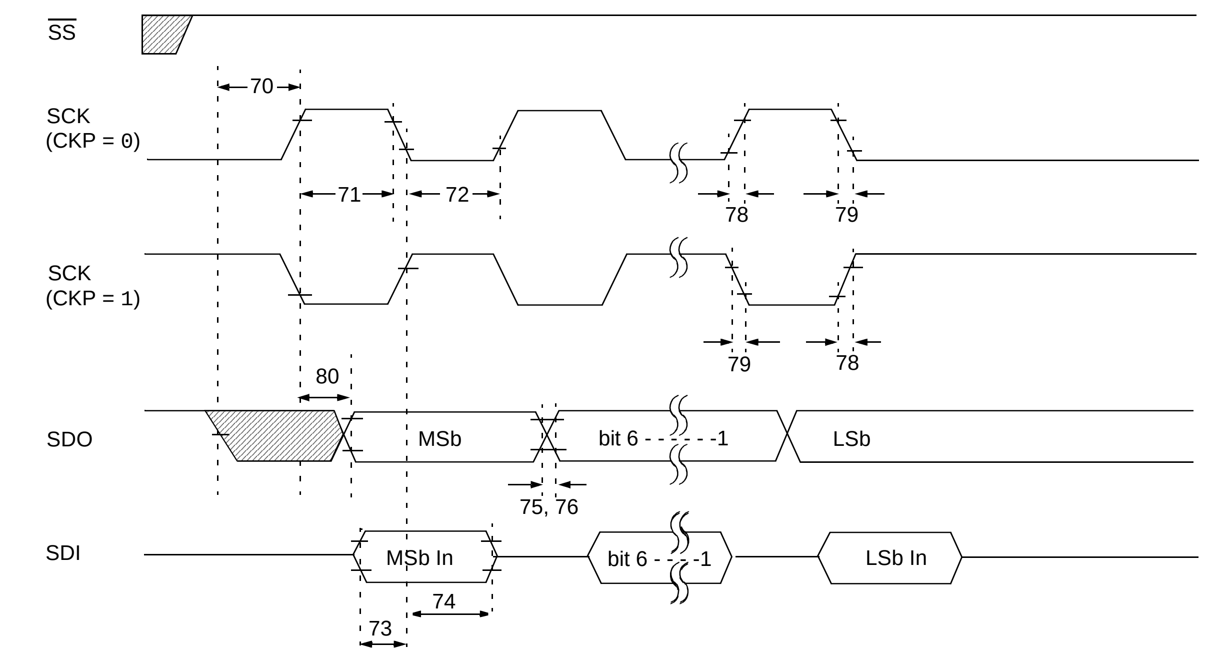


Note: Refer to Figure 26-6 for load conditions.

TABLE 26-14: PARALLEL SLAVE PORT REQUIREMENTS (PIC18F8X20)

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
62	TDTV2WRH	Data In Valid before $\overline{\text{WR}}$ ↑ or $\overline{\text{CS}}$ ↑ (setup time)		20 25	— —	ns ns	 Extended Temp. range
63	TWRH2DTI	$\overline{\text{WR}}$ ↑ or $\overline{\text{CS}}$ ↑ to Data–In Invalid (hold time)	PIC18FXX20	20	—	ns	
			PIC18LFXX20	35	—	ns	VDD = 2.0V
64	TRDL2DTV	$\overline{\text{RD}}$ ↓ and $\overline{\text{CS}}$ ↓ to Data–Out Valid		— —	80 90	ns ns	 Extended Temp. range
65	TRDH2DTI	$\overline{\text{RD}}$ ↑ or $\overline{\text{CS}}$ ↓ to Data–Out Invalid		10	30	ns	
66	TIBFINH	Inhibit of the IBF flag bit being cleared from $\overline{\text{WR}}$ ↑ or $\overline{\text{CS}}$ ↑		—	3 TCY		

FIGURE 26-16: EXAMPLE SPI MASTER MODE TIMING (CKE = 0)



Note: Refer to Figure 26-6 for load conditions.

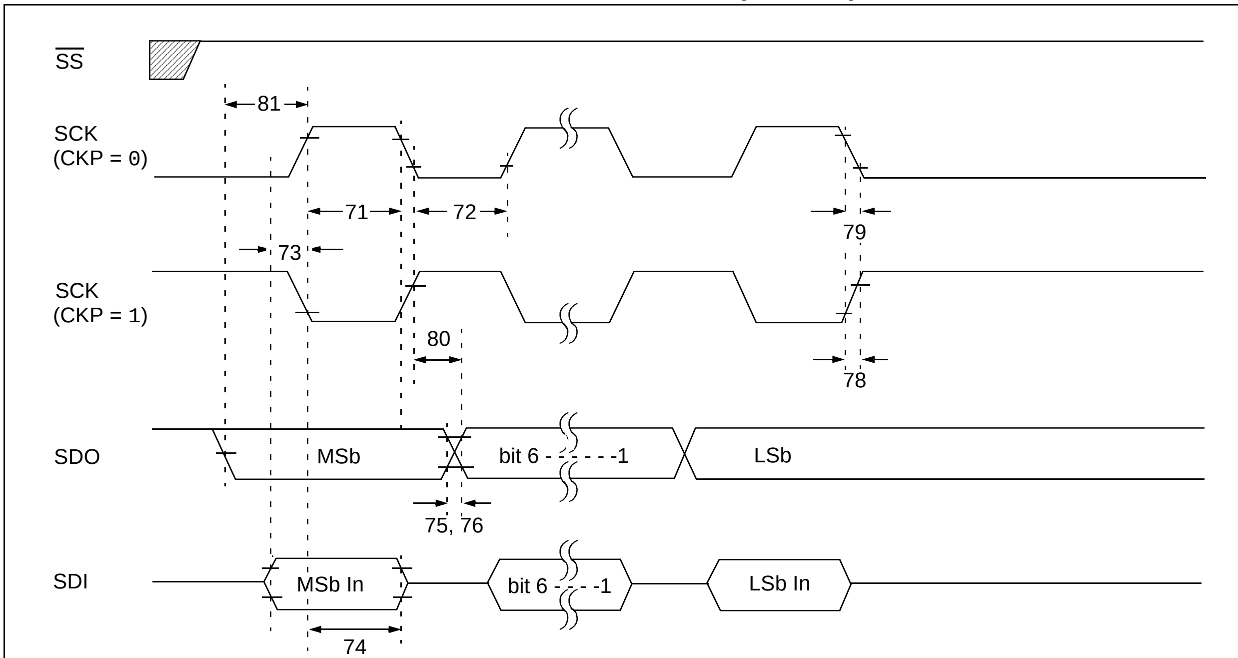
TABLE 26-15: EXAMPLE SPI MODE REQUIREMENTS (MASTER MODE, CKE = 0)

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
70	TssL2scH, TssL2scL	$\overline{SS}$ ↓ to SCK ↓ or SCK ↑ Input		TCY	—	ns	
71	TscH	SCK Input High Time (Slave mode)	Continuous	1.25 TCY + 30	—	ns	
71A			Single Byte	40	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
72	TscL	SCK Input Low Time (Slave mode)	Continuous	1.25 TCY + 30	—	ns	
72A			Single Byte	40	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
73	TdiV2scH, TdiV2scL	Setup Time of SDI Data Input to SCK Edge		100	—	ns	
73A	TB2B	Last Clock Edge of Byte 1 to the 1st Clock Edge of Byte 2		1.5 TCY + 40	—	ns	**(Note 2)**
74	TscH2diL, TscL2diL	Hold Time of SDI Data Input to SCK Edge		100	—	ns	
75	TdoR	SDO Data Output Rise Time	PIC18FXX20	—	25	ns	
			PIC18LFXX20	—	45	ns	VDD = 2.0V
76	TdoF	SDO Data Output Fall Time		—	25	ns	
78	TscR	SCK Output Rise Time (Master mode)	PIC18FXX20	—	25	ns	
			PIC18LFXX20	—	45	ns	VDD = 2.0V
79	TscF	SCK Output Fall Time (Master mode)		—	25	ns	
80	TscH2doV, TscL2doV	SDO Data Output Valid after SCK Edge	PIC18FXX20	—	50	ns	
			PIC18LFXX20	—	100	ns	VDD = 2.0V

Note 1: Requires the use of Parameter #73A.

2: Only if Parameter #71A and #72A are used.

FIGURE 26-17: EXAMPLE SPI MASTER MODE TIMING (CKE = 1)



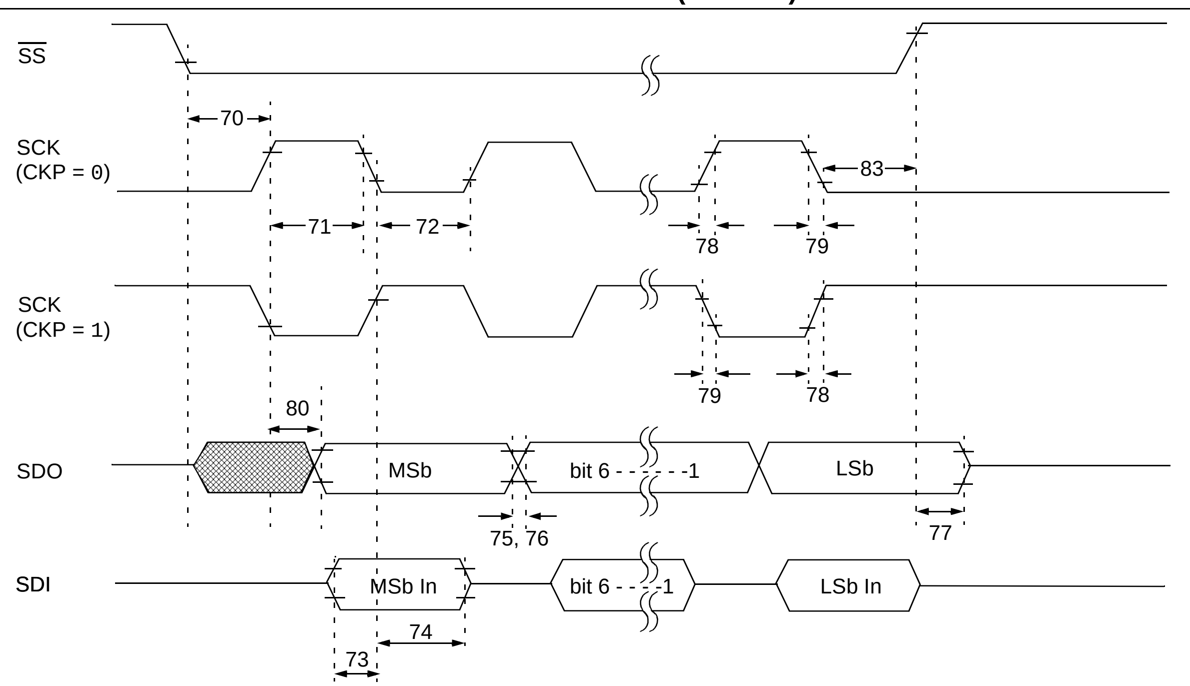
Note: Refer to Figure 26-6 for load conditions.

TABLE 26-16: EXAMPLE SPI MODE REQUIREMENTS (MASTER MODE, CKE = 1)

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
71	TSCH	SCK Input High Time (Slave mode)	Continuous	1.25 TCY + 30	—	ns	
71A			Single Byte	40	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
72	TSCL	SCK Input Low Time (Slave mode)	Continuous	1.25 TCY + 30	—	ns	
72A			Single Byte	40	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
73	TDIV2SCH, TDIV2SCL	Setup Time of SDI Data Input to SCK Edge		100	—	ns	
73A	TB2B	Last Clock Edge of Byte 1 to the 1st Clock Edge of Byte 2		1.5 TCY + 40	—	ns	**(Note 2)**
74	TSCH2DIL, TSCL2DIL	Hold Time of SDI Data Input to SCK Edge		100	—	ns	
75	TDOR	SDO Data Output Rise Time	PIC18FXX20	—	25	ns	
			PIC18LFXX20	—	45	ns	VDD = 2.0V
76	TDOF	SDO Data Output Fall Time		—	25	ns	
78	TSCR	SCK Output Rise Time (Master mode)	PIC18FXX20	—	25	ns	
			PIC18LFXX20	—	45	ns	VDD = 2.0V
79	TSCF	SCK Output Fall Time (Master mode)		—	25	ns	
80	TSCH2DOV, TSCL2DOV	SDO Data Output Valid after SCK Edge	PIC18FXX20	—	50	ns	
			PIC18LFXX20	—	100	ns	VDD = 2.0V
81	TDOV2SCH, TDOV2SCL	SDO Data Output Setup to SCK Edge		TCY	—	ns	

Note 1: Requires the use of Parameter #73A.
2: Only if Parameter #71A and #72A are used.

FIGURE 26-18: EXAMPLE SPI SLAVE MODE TIMING (CKE = 0)



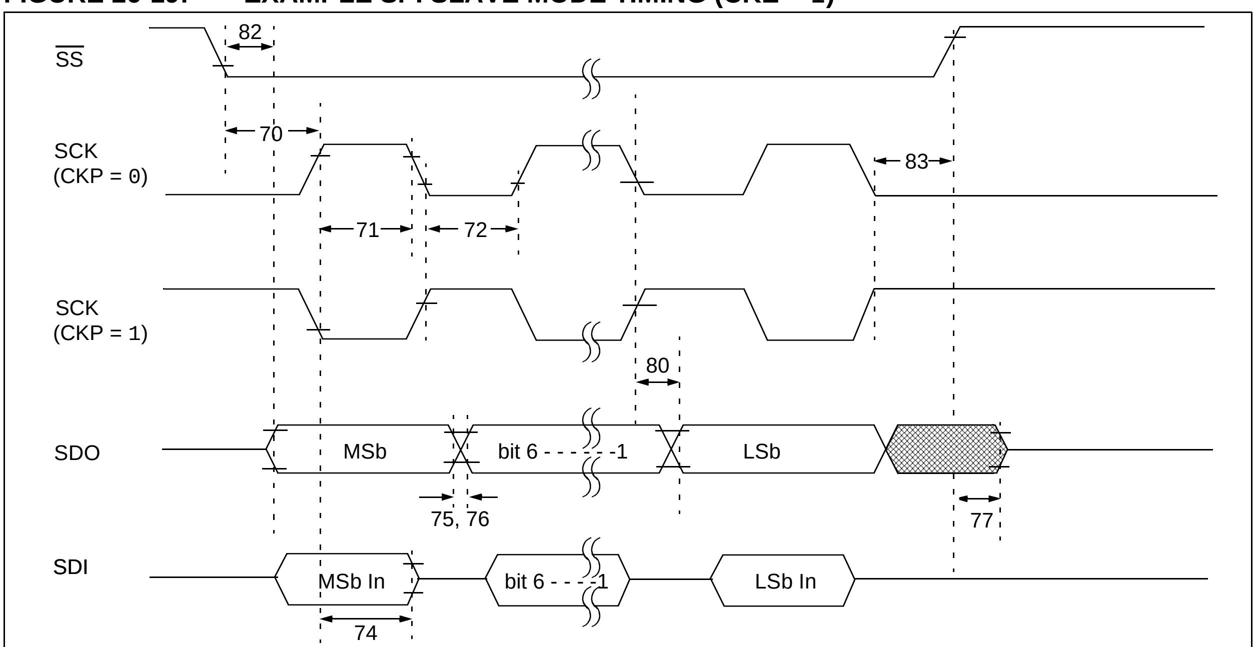
Note: Refer to Figure 26-6 for load conditions.

TABLE 26-17: EXAMPLE SPI MODE REQUIREMENTS (SLAVE MODE TIMING, CKE = 0)

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
70	TssL2scH, TssL2scL	SS ↓ to SCK ↓ or SCK ↑ Input		Tcy	—	ns	
71	TscH	SCK Input High Time (Slave mode)	Continuous	1.25 Tcy + 30	—	ns	
71A			Single Byte	40	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
72	TscL	SCK Input Low Time (Slave mode)	Continuous	1.25 Tcy + 30	—	ns	
72A			Single Byte	40	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
73	TdiV2scH, TdiV2scL	Setup Time of SDI Data Input to SCK Edge		100	—	ns	
73A	Tb2b	Last Clock Edge of Byte 1 to the First Clock Edge of Byte 2		1.5 Tcy + 40	—	ns	**(Note 2)**
74	TscH2diL, TscL2diL	Hold Time of SDI Data Input to SCK Edge		100	—	ns	
75	TdoR	SDO Data Output Rise Time	PIC18FXX20	—	25	ns	
			PIC18LFXX20	—	45	ns	VDD = 2.0V
76	TdoF	SDO Data Output Fall Time		—	25	ns	
77	TssH2doZ	SS ↑ to SDO Output High-Impedance		10	50	ns	
78	TscR	SCK Output Rise Time (Master mode)	PIC18FXX20	—	25	ns	
			PIC18LFXX20	—	45	ns	VDD = 2.0V
79	TscF	SCK Output Fall Time (Master mode)		—	25	ns	
80	TscH2doV, TscL2doV	SDO Data Output Valid after SCK Edge	PIC18FXX20	—	50	ns	
			PIC18LFXX20	—	100	ns	VDD = 2.0V
83	TscH2ssH, TscL2ssH	SS ↑ after SCK Edge		1.5 Tcy + 40	—	ns	

Note 1: Requires the use of Parameter #73A.
2: Only if Parameter #71A and #72A are used.

FIGURE 26-19: EXAMPLE SPI SLAVE MODE TIMING (CKE = 1)



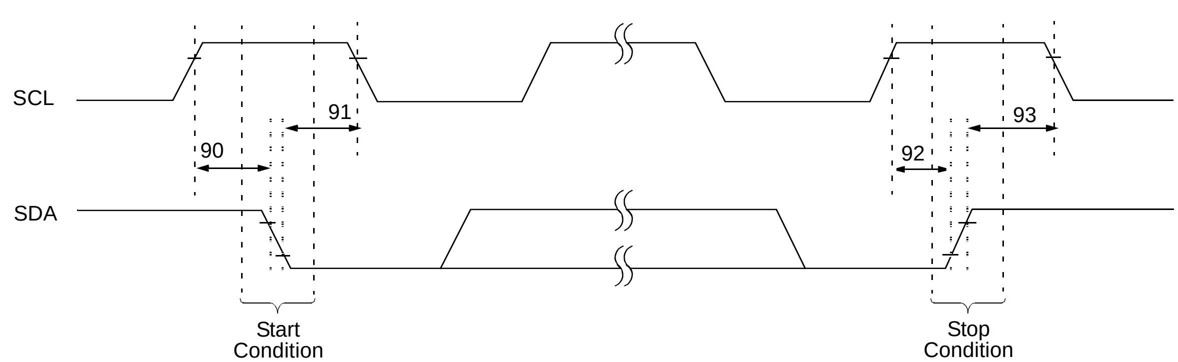
Note: Refer to Figure 26-6 for load conditions.

TABLE 26-18: EXAMPLE SPI SLAVE MODE REQUIREMENTS (CKE = 1)

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
70	TssL2scH, TssL2scL	$\overline{SS}$ ↓ to SCK ↓ or SCK ↑ Input		TCY	—	ns	
71	TscH	SCK Input High Time (Slave mode)	Continuous	1.25 TCY + 30	—	ns	
71A			Single Byte	40	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
72	TscL	SCK Input Low Time (Slave mode)	Continuous	1.25 TCY + 30	—	ns	
72A			Single Byte	40	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
73A	TB2B	Last Clock Edge of Byte 1 to the First Clock Edge of Byte 2		1.5 TCY + 40	—	ns	**(Note 2)**
74	TscH2diL, TscL2diL	Hold Time of SDI Data Input to SCK Edge		100	—	ns	
75	TdoR	SDO Data Output Rise Time	PIC18FXX20	—	25	ns	
			PIC18LFXX20	—	45	ns	VDD = 2.0V
76	TdoF	SDO Data Output Fall Time		—	25	ns	
77	TssH2doZ	$\overline{SS}$ ↑ to SDO Output High-Impedance		10	50	ns	
78	TscR	SCK Output Rise Time (Master mode)	PIC18FXX20	—	25	ns	
			PIC18LFXX20	—	45	ns	VDD = 2.0V
79	TscF	SCK Output Fall Time (Master mode)		—	25	ns	
80	TscH2doV, TscL2doV	SDO Data Output Valid after SCK Edge	PIC18FXX20	—	50	ns	
			PIC18LFXX20	—	100	ns	VDD = 2.0V
82	TssL2doV	SDO Data Output Valid after $\overline{SS}$ ↓ Edge	PIC18FXX20	—	50	ns	
			PIC18LFXX20	—	100	ns	VDD = 2.0V
83	TscH2ssH, TscL2ssH	$\overline{SS}$ ↑ after SCK Edge		1.5 TCY + 40	—	ns	

Note 1: Requires the use of Parameter #73A.
2: Only if Parameter #71A and #72A are used.

FIGURE 26-20: I²C BUS START/STOP BITS TIMING

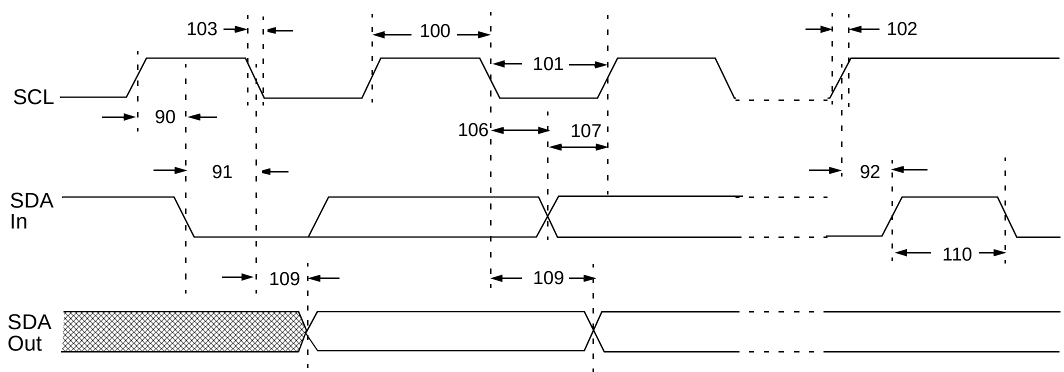


Note: Refer to Figure 26-6 for load conditions.

TABLE 26-19: I²C BUS START/STOP BITS REQUIREMENTS (SLAVE MODE)

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
90	TSU:STA	Start Condition	100 kHz mode	4700	—	ns	Only relevant for Repeated Start condition
		Setup Time	400 kHz mode	600	—		
91	THD:STA	Start Condition	100 kHz mode	4000	—	ns	After this period, the first clock pulse is generated
		Hold Time	400 kHz mode	600	—		
92	TSU:STO	Stop Condition	100 kHz mode	4700	—	ns	
		Setup Time	400 kHz mode	600	—		
93	THD:STO	Stop Condition	100 kHz mode	4000	—	ns	
		Hold Time	400 kHz mode	600	—		

FIGURE 26-21: I²C BUS DATA TIMING



Note: Refer to Figure 26-6 for load conditions.

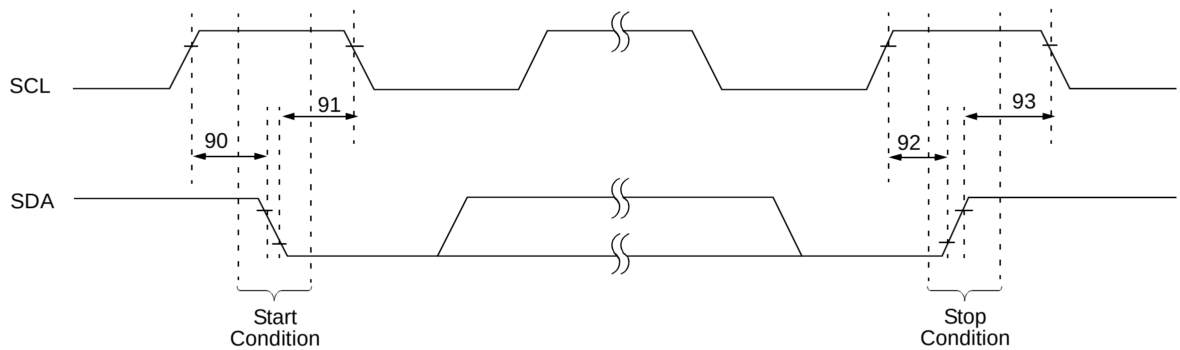
TABLE 26-20: I²C BUS DATA REQUIREMENTS (SLAVE MODE)

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
100	T_{HIGH}	Clock High Time	100 kHz mode	4.0	—	μs	
			400 kHz mode	0.6	—	μs	
			SSP module	1.5 T_{CY}	—		
101	T_{LOW}	Clock Low Time	100 kHz mode	4.7	—	μs	PIC18FXX20 must operate at a minimum of 1.5 MHz
			400 kHz mode	1.3	—	μs	PIC18FXX20 must operate at a minimum of 10 MHz
			SSP module	1.5 T_{CY}	—		
102	T_R	SDA and SCL Rise Time	100 kHz mode	—	1000	ns	
			400 kHz mode	20 + 0.1 C_B	300	ns	C_B is specified to be from 10 to 400 pF
103	T_F	SDA and SCL Fall Time	100 kHz mode	—	300	ns	
			400 kHz mode	20 + 0.1 C_B	300	ns	C_B is specified to be from 10 to 400 pF
90	$T_{SU:STA}$	Start Condition Setup Time	100 kHz mode	4.7	—	μs	Only relevant for Repeated Start condition
			400 kHz mode	0.6	—	μs	
91	$T_{HD:STA}$	Start Condition Hold Time	100 kHz mode	4.0	—	μs	After this period, the first clock pulse is generated
			400 kHz mode	0.6	—	μs	
106	$T_{HD:DAT}$	Data Input Hold Time	100 kHz mode	0	—	ns	
			400 kHz mode	0	0.9	μs	
107	$T_{SU:DAT}$	Data Input Setup Time	100 kHz mode	250	—	ns	**(Note 2)**
			400 kHz mode	100	—	ns	
92	$T_{SU:STO}$	Stop Condition Setup Time	100 kHz mode	4.7	—	μs	
			400 kHz mode	0.6	—	μs	
109	T_{AA}	Output Valid from Clock	100 kHz mode	—	3500	ns	**(Note 1)**
			400 kHz mode	—	—	ns	
110	T_{BUF}	Bus Free Time	100 kHz mode	4.7	—	μs	Time the bus must be free before a new transmission can start
			400 kHz mode	1.3	—	μs	
D102	C_B	Bus Capacitive Loading		—	400	pF	

Note 1: As a transmitter, the device must provide this internal minimum delay time to bridge the undefined region (min. 300 ns) of the falling edge of SCL to avoid unintended generation of Start or Stop conditions.

2: A fast mode I²C bus device can be used in a standard mode I²C bus system but the requirement, $T_{SU:DAT} \geq 250$ ns, must then be met. This will automatically be the case if the device does not stretch the LOW period of the SCL signal. If such a device does stretch the LOW period of the SCL signal, it must output the next data bit to the SDA line, T_R max. + $T_{SU:DAT} = 1000 + 250 = 1250$ ns (according to the standard mode I²C bus specification), before the SCL line is released.

FIGURE 26-22: MASTER SSP I²C BUS START/STOP BITS TIMING WAVEFORMS



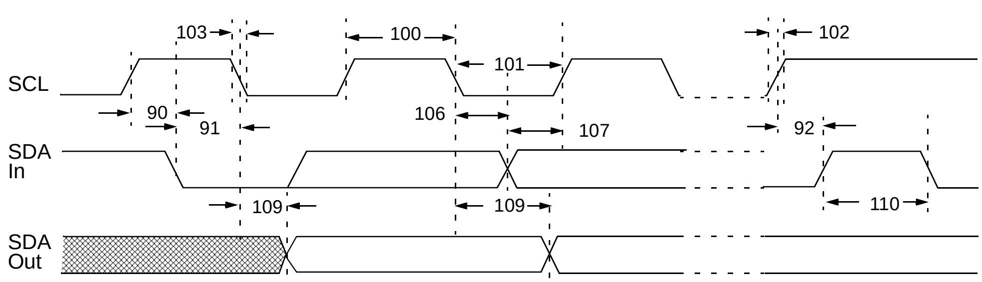
Note: Refer to Figure 26-6 for load conditions.

TABLE 26-21: MASTER SSP I²C BUS START/STOP BITS REQUIREMENTS

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
90	TSU:STA	Start Condition Setup Time	100 kHz mode	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ns	Only relevant for Repeated Start condition
			400 kHz mode	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—		
			1 MHz mode(1)	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—		
91	THD:STA	Start Condition Hold Time	100 kHz mode	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ns	After this period, the first clock pulse is generated
			400 kHz mode	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—		
			1 MHz mode(1)	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—		
92	TSU:STO	Stop Condition Setup Time	100 kHz mode	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ns	
			400 kHz mode	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—		
			1 MHz mode(1)	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—		
93	THD:STO	Stop Condition Hold Time	100 kHz mode	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ns	
			400 kHz mode	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—		
			1 MHz mode(1)	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—		

Note 1: Maximum pin capacitance = 10 pF for all I²C pins.

FIGURE 26-23: MASTER SSP I²C BUS DATA TIMING



Note: Refer to Figure 26-6 for load conditions.

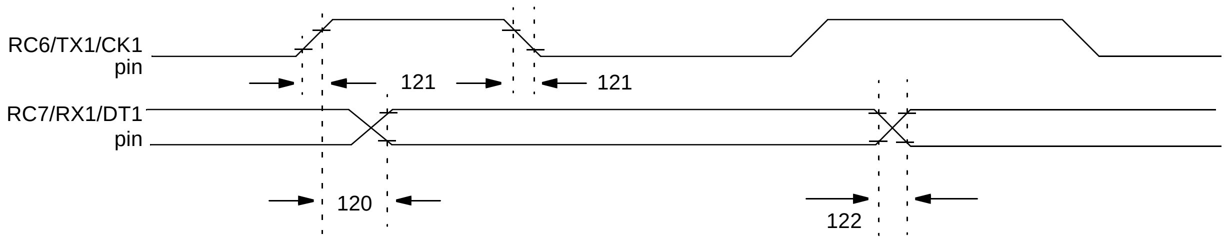
TABLE 26-22: MASTER SSP I²C BUS DATA REQUIREMENTS

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
100	THIGH	Clock High Time	100 kHz mode	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
			400 kHz mode	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
			1 MHz mode(1)	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
101	TLOW	Clock Low Time	100 kHz mode	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
			400 kHz mode	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
			1 MHz mode(1)	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
102	TR	SDA and SCL Rise Time	100 kHz mode	—	1000	ns	CB is specified to be from 10 to 400 pF
			400 kHz mode	20 + 0.1 CB	300	ns	
			1 MHz mode(1)	—	300	ns	
103	TF	SDA and SCL Fall Time	100 kHz mode	—	300	ns	CB is specified to be from 10 to 400 pF
			400 kHz mode	20 + 0.1 CB	300	ns	
			1 MHz mode(1)	—	100	ns	
90	TSU:STA	Start Condition Setup Time	100 kHz mode	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	Only relevant for Repeated Start condition
			400 kHz mode	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
			1 MHz mode(1)	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
91	THD:STA	Start Condition Hold Time	100 kHz mode	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	After this period, the first clock pulse is generated
			400 kHz mode	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
			1 MHz mode(1)	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
106	THD:DAT	Data Input Hold Time	100 kHz mode	0	—	ns	
			400 kHz mode	0	0.9	ms	
			1 MHz mode(1)	TBD	—	ns	
107	TSU:DAT	Data Input Setup Time	100 kHz mode	250	—	ns	**(Note 2)**
			400 kHz mode	100	—	ns	
			1 MHz mode(1)	TBD	—	ns	
92	TSU:STO	Stop Condition Setup Time	100 kHz mode	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
			400 kHz mode	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
			1 MHz mode(1)	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
109	TAA	Output Valid from Clock	100 kHz mode	—	3500	ns	
			400 kHz mode	—	1000	ns	
			1 MHz mode(1)	—	—	ns	
110	TBUF	Bus Free Time	100 kHz mode	4.7	—	ms	Time the bus must be free before a new transmission can start
			400 kHz mode	1.3	—	ms	
			1 MHz mode(1)	TBD	—	ms	
D102	CB	Bus Capacitive Loading		—	400	pF	

Note 1: Maximum pin capacitance = 10 pF for all I²C pins.

2: A fast mode I²C bus device can be used in a standard mode I²C bus system, but parameter #107 ≥ 250 ns, must then be met. This will automatically be the case if the device does not stretch the LOW period of the SCL signal. If such a device does stretch the LOW period of the SCL signal, it must output the next data bit to the SDA line, parameter #102 + parameter #107 = 1000 + 250 = 1250 ns (for 100 kHz mode), before the SCL line is released.

FIGURE 26-24: USART SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION (MASTER/SLAVE) TIMING

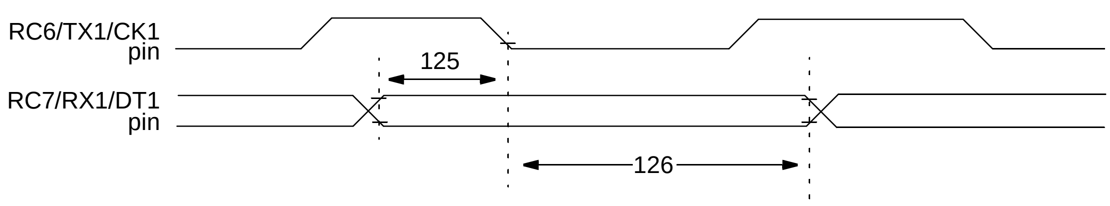


Note: Refer to Figure 26-6 for load conditions.

TABLE 26-23: USART SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION REQUIREMENTS

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
120	TCKH2DTV	SYNC XMIT (MASTER & SLAVE) Clock High to Data Out Valid	PIC18FXX20	—	40	ns	
			PIC18LFXX20	—	100	ns	VDD = 2.0V
121	TCKRF	Clock Out Rise Time and Fall Time (Master mode)	PIC18FXX20	—	20	ns	
			PIC18LFXX20	—	50	ns	VDD = 2.0V
122	TDTRF	Data Out Rise Time and Fall Time	PIC18FXX20	—	20	ns	
			PIC18LFXX20	—	50	ns	VDD = 2.0V

FIGURE 26-25: USART SYNCHRONOUS RECEIVE (MASTER/SLAVE) TIMING



Note: Refer to Figure 26-6 for load conditions.

TABLE 26-24: USART SYNCHRONOUS RECEIVE REQUIREMENTS

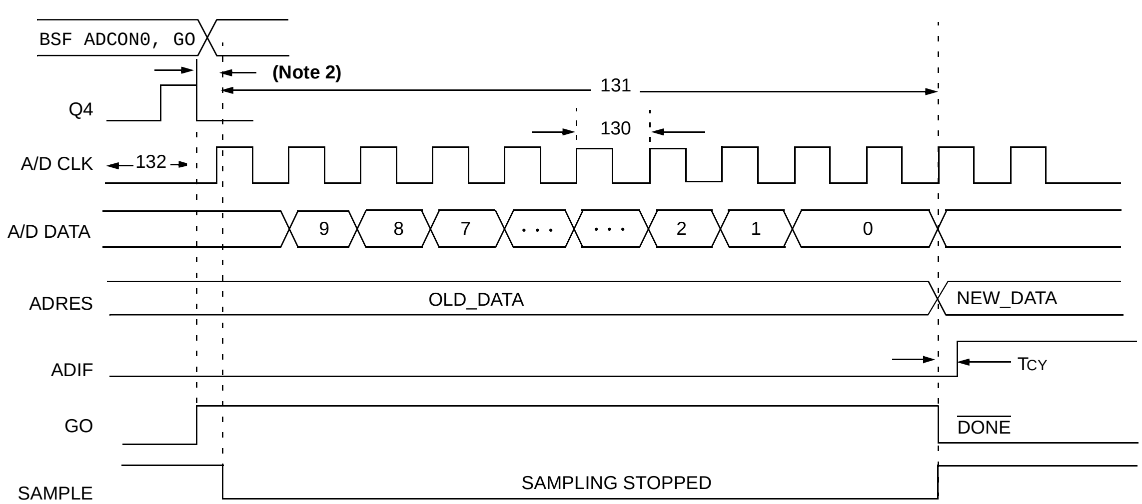
Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic	Min	Max	Units	Conditions
125	TDTV2CKL	SYNC RCV (MASTER & SLAVE) Data Hold before CK ↓ (DT hold time)	10	—	ns	
126	TCKL2DTL	Data Hold after CK ↓ (DT hold time)	15	—	ns	

TABLE 26-25: A/D CONVERTER CHARACTERISTICS: PIC18FXX20 (INDUSTRIAL, EXTENDED) PIC18LFXX20 (INDUSTRIAL)

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic	Min	Typ	Max	Units	Conditions
A01	NR	Resolution	—	—	10	bit	
A03	EIL	Integral Linearity Error	—	—	<±1	LSb	VREF = VDD = 5.0V
A04	EDL	Differential Linearity Error	—	—	<±1	LSb	VREF = VDD = 5.0V
A05	EG	Gain Error	—	—	<±1	LSb	VREF = VDD = 5.0V
A06	EOFF	Offset Error	—	—	<±1.5	LSb	VREF = VDD = 5.0V
A10	—	Monotonicity	guaranteed(2)			—	VSS ≤ VAIN ≤ VREF
A20 A20A	VREF	Reference Voltage (VREFH – VREFL)	1.8V 3V	— —	— —	V V	VDD < 3.0V VDD ≥ 3.0V
A21	VREFH	Reference Voltage High	AVSS	—	AVDD + 0.3V	V	
A22	VREFL	Reference Voltage Low	AVSS – 0.3V(5)	—	VREFH	V	
A25	VAIN	Analog Input Voltage	AVSS – 0.3V(5)	—	AVDD + 0.3V(5)	V	VDD ≥ 2.5V **(Note 3)**
A30	ZAIN	Recommended Impedance of Analog Voltage Source	—	—	2.5	kΩ	**(Note 4)**
A50	IREF	VREF Input Current **(Note 1)**	— —	— —	5 150	μA μA	During VAIN acquisition. During A/D conversion cycle.

Note 1: VSS ≤ VAIN ≤ VREF
2: The A/D conversion result never decreases with an increase in the input voltage and has no missing codes.
3: For VDD < 2.5V, VAIN should be limited to <.5 VDD.
4: Maximum allowed impedance for analog voltage source is 10 kΩ. This requires higher acquisition times.
5: |VDD – AVDD| must be <3.0V and |AVSS – VSS| must be <0.3V.

FIGURE 26-26: A/D CONVERSION TIMING



Note 1: If the A/D clock source is selected as RC, a time of TCY is added before the A/D clock starts. This allows the SLEEP instruction to be executed.
2: This is a minimal RC delay (typically 100 ns), which also disconnects the holding capacitor from the analog input.

TABLE 26-26: A/D CONVERSION REQUIREMENTS

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
130	T_{AD}	A/D Clock Period	PIC18FXX20	1.6	20(5)	μs	T_{OSC} based, $V_{REF} \geq 3.0V$
			PIC18LFXX20	3.0	20(5)	μs	T_{OSC} based, V_{REF} full range
			PIC18FXX20	2.0	6.0	μs	A/D RC mode
			PIC18LFXX20	3.0	9.0	μs	A/D RC mode
131	T_{CNV}	Conversion Time (not including acquisition time) **(Note 1)**		11	12	T_{AD}	
132	T_{ACQ}	Acquisition Time **(Note 3)**		15 10	— —	μs μs	-40°C ≤ Temp ≤ +125°C 0°C ≤ Temp ≤ +125°C
135	T_{SWC}	Switching Time from Convert → Sample		—	**(Note 4)**		
136	T_{AMP}	Amplifier Settling Time **(Note 2)**		1	—	μs	This may be used if the "new" input voltage has not changed by more than 1 LSb (i.e., 5 mV @ 5.12V) from the last sampled voltage (as stated on C_{HOLD}).

Note 1: ADRES register may be read on the following T_{CY} cycle.

2: See **Section 19.0 "10-Bit Analog-to-Digital Converter (A/D) Module"** for minimum conditions when input voltage has changed more than 1 LSb.

3: The time for the holding capacitor to acquire the "New" input voltage when the voltage changes full scale after the conversion (AV_{DD} to AV_{SS}, or AV_{SS} to AV_{DD}). The source impedance (R_S) on the input channels is 50Ω.

4: On the next Q4 cycle of the device clock.

5: The time of the A/D clock period is dependent on the device frequency and the T_{AD} clock divider.

NOTES:

27.0 DC AND AC CHARACTERISTICS GRAPHS AND TABLES

Note:	The graphs and tables provided following this note are a statistical summary based on a limited number of samples and are provided for informational purposes only. The performance characteristics listed herein are not tested or guaranteed. In some graphs or tables, the data presented may be outside the specified operating range (e.g., outside specified power supply range) and therefore, outside the warranted range.

"Typical" represents the mean of the distribution at 25°C. "Maximum" or "minimum" represents (mean + 3σ) or (mean –‘ 3σ) respectively, where σ is a standard deviation, over the whole temperature range.

FIGURE 27-1: TYPICAL IDD vs. FOSC OVER VDD (HS MODE)

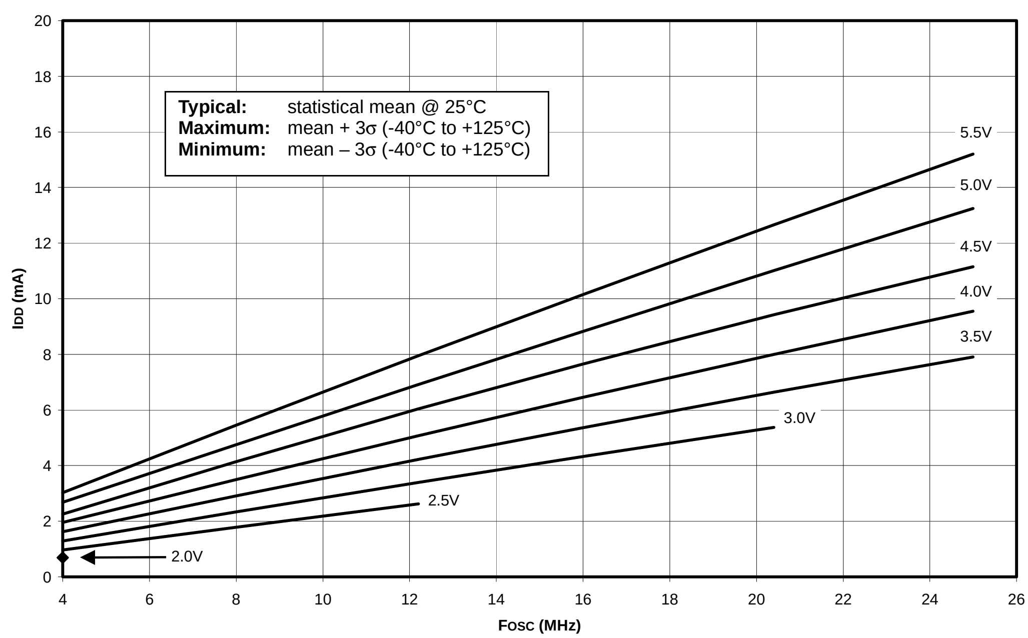


FIGURE 27-2: MAXIMUM IDD vs. FOSC OVER VDD (HS MODE) INDUSTRIAL

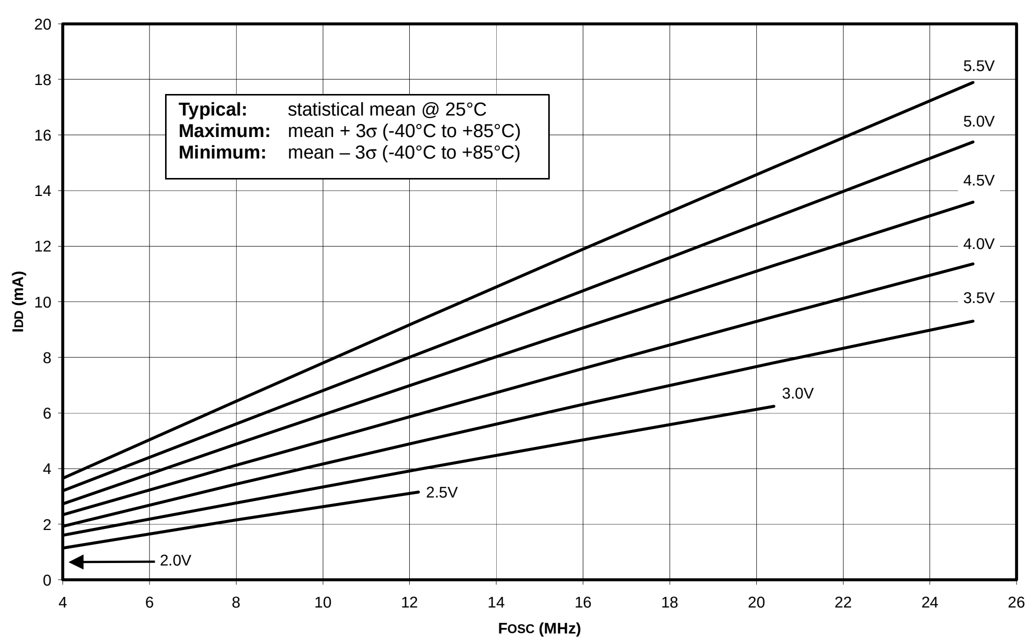


FIGURE 27-3: MAXIMUM IDD vs. FOSC OVER VDD (HS MODE) EXTENDED

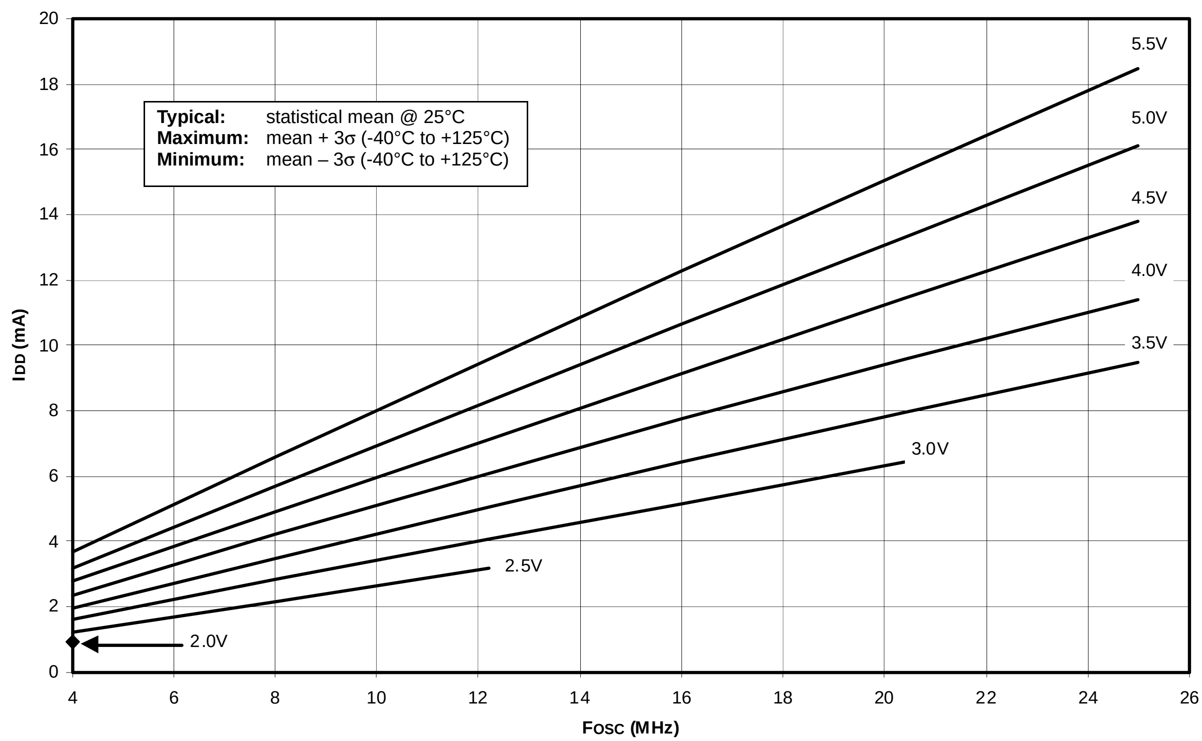


FIGURE 27-4: TYPICAL IDD vs. FOSC OVER VDD (HS/PLL MODE)

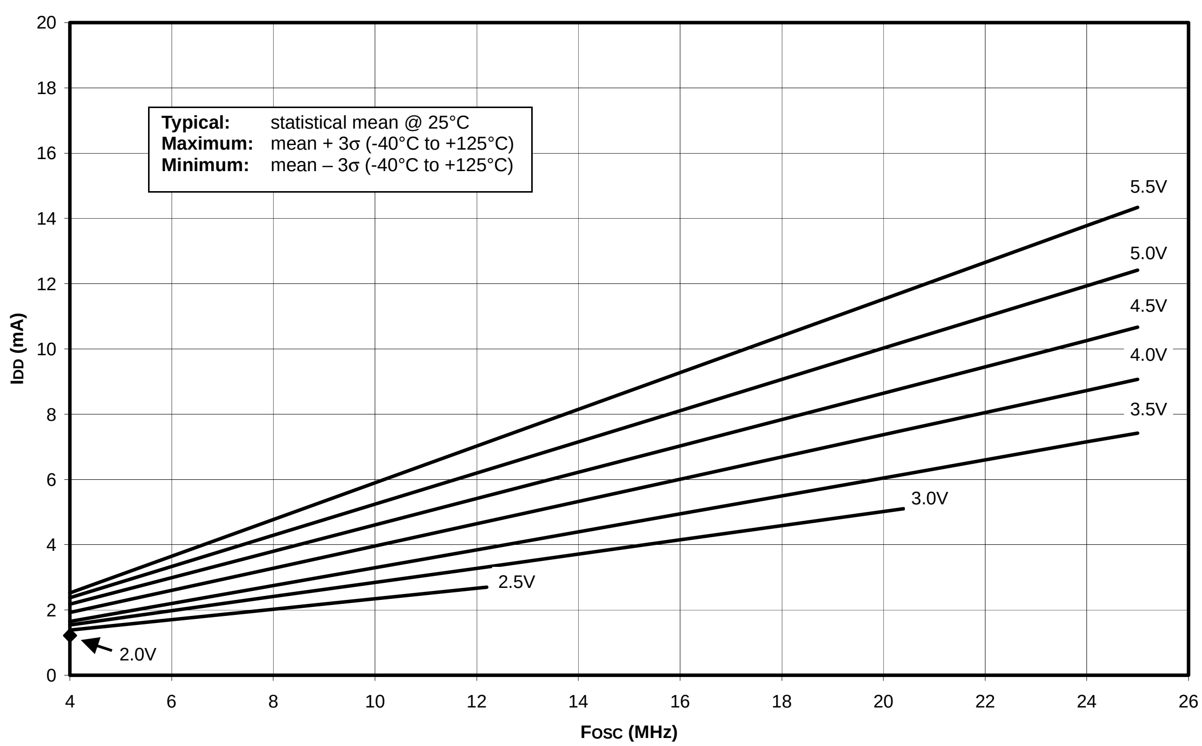


FIGURE 27-5: MAXIMUM I_{DD} vs. F_{OSC} OVER V_{DD} (HS/PLL MODE) INDUSTRIAL

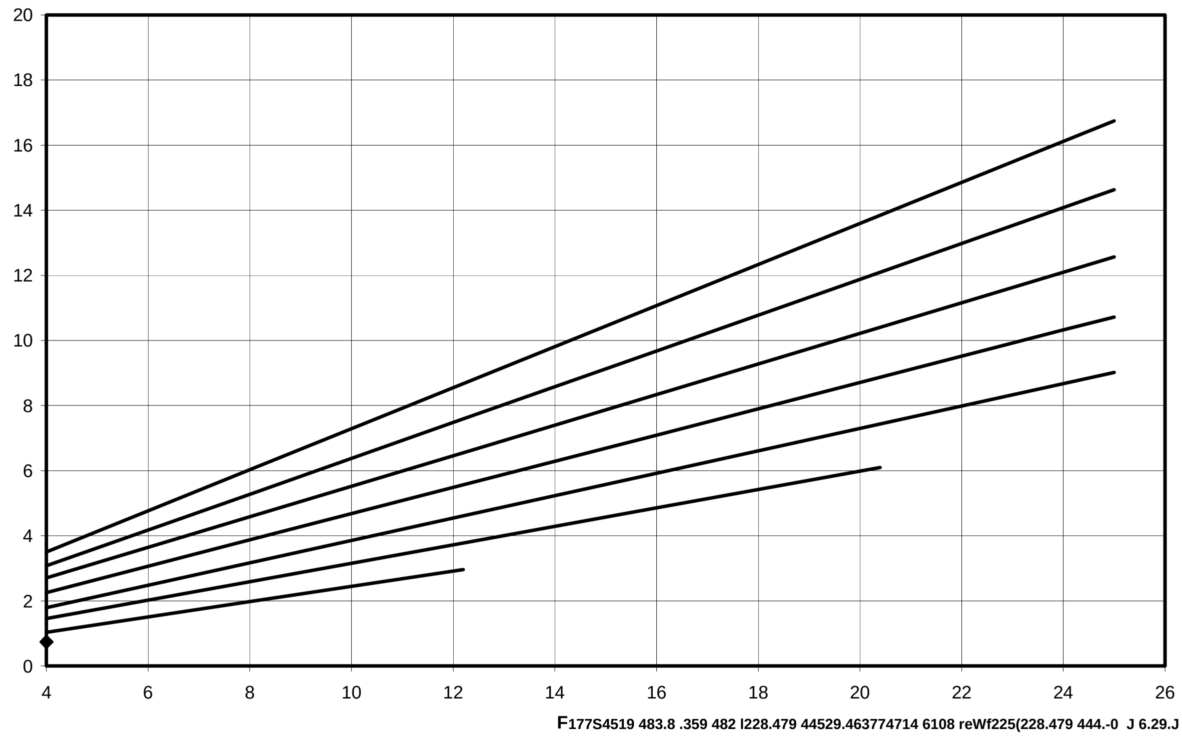


FIGURE 27-6: MAXIMUM I_{DD} vs. F_{OSC} OVER V_{DD} (HS/PLL MODE) EXTENDED

FIGURE 27-7: TYPICAL IDD vs. FOSC OVER VDD (XT MODE)

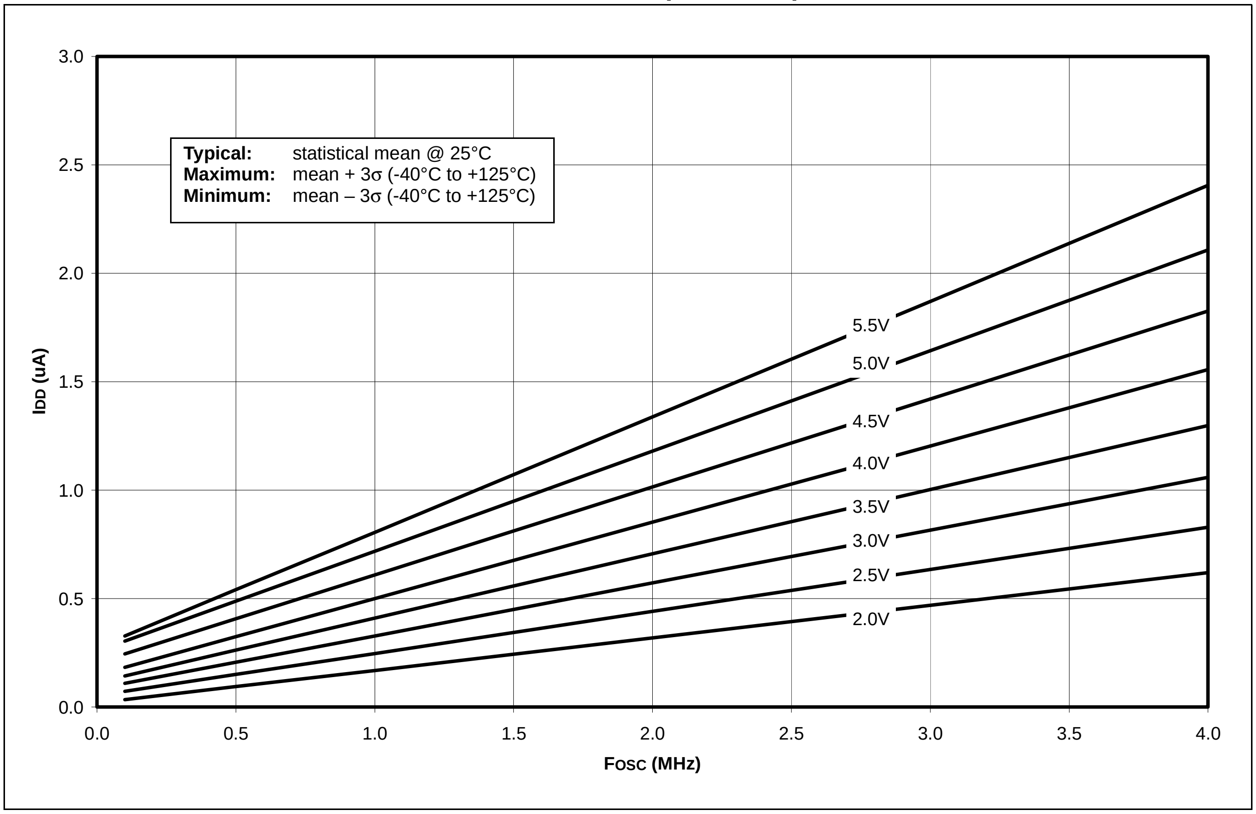


FIGURE 27-8: MAXIMUM IDD vs. FOSC OVER VDD (XT MODE) INDUSTRIAL

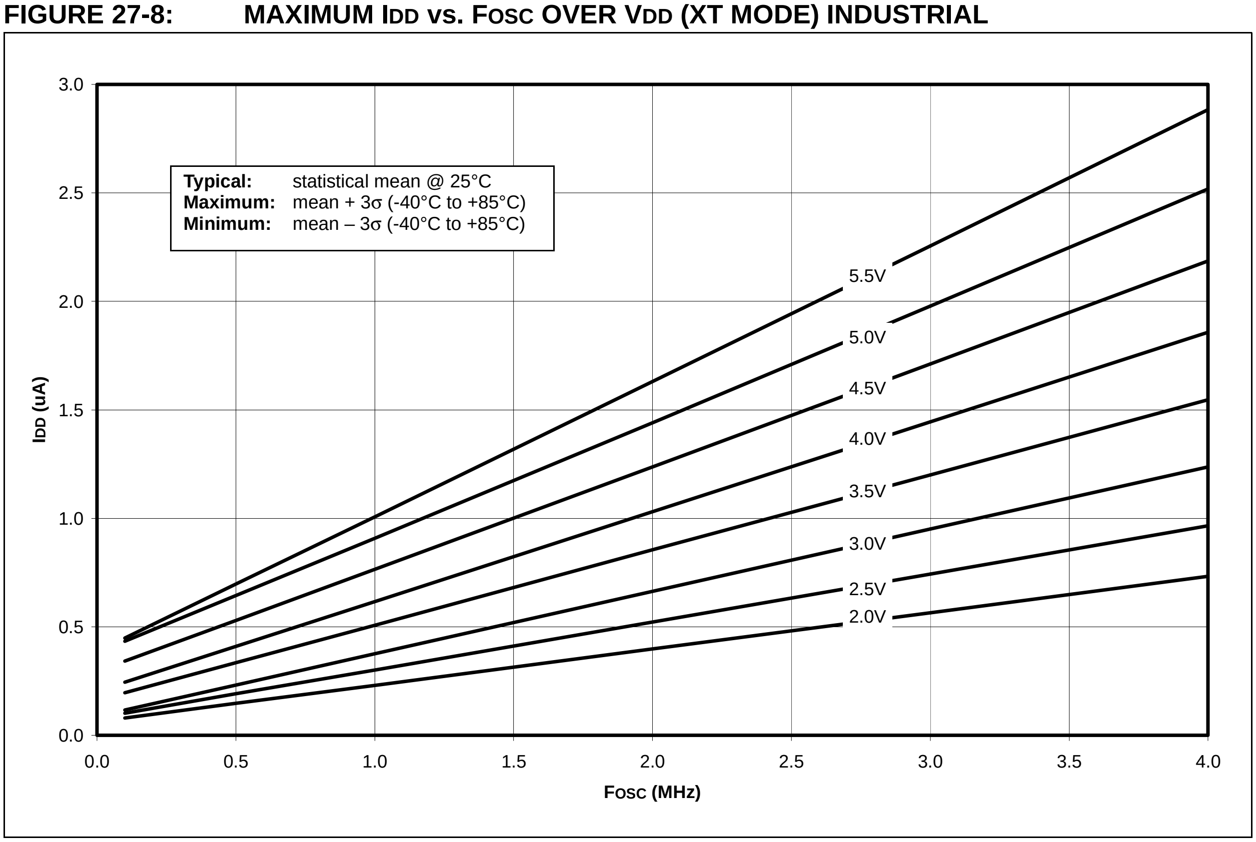


FIGURE 27-9: TYPICAL IDD vs. FOSC OVER VDD (LP MODE)

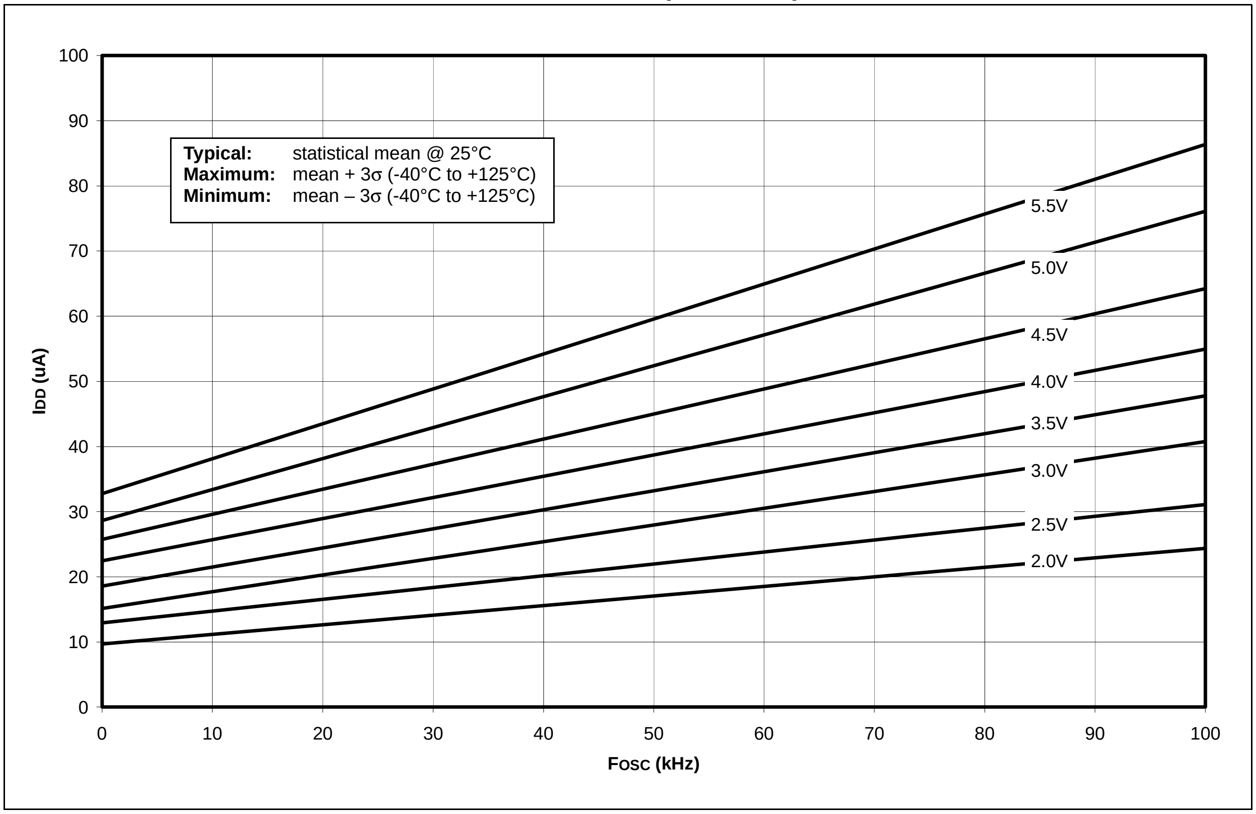


FIGURE 27-10: MAXIMUM IDD vs. FOSC OVER VDD (LP MODE) INDUSTRIAL

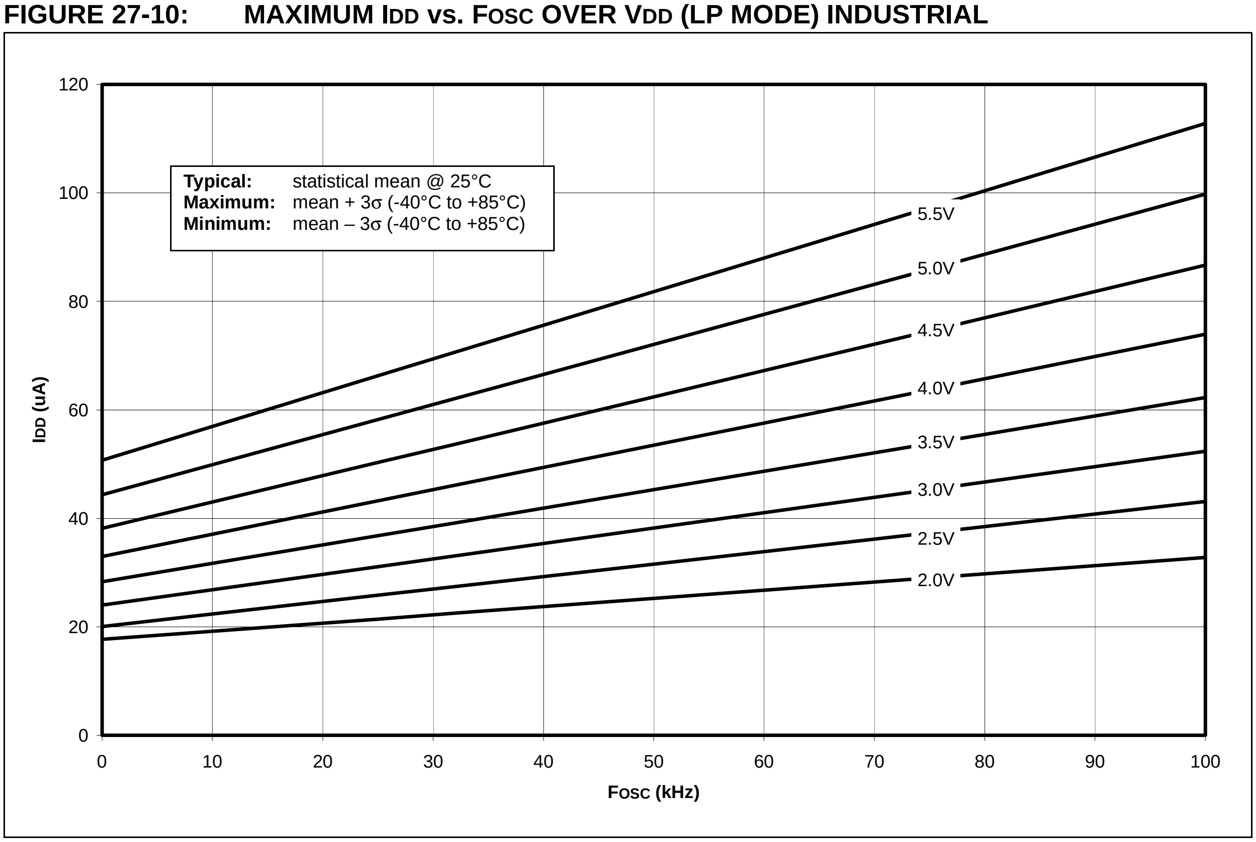


FIGURE 27-11: MAXIMUM IDD vs. FOSC OVER VDD (LP MODE) EXTENDED

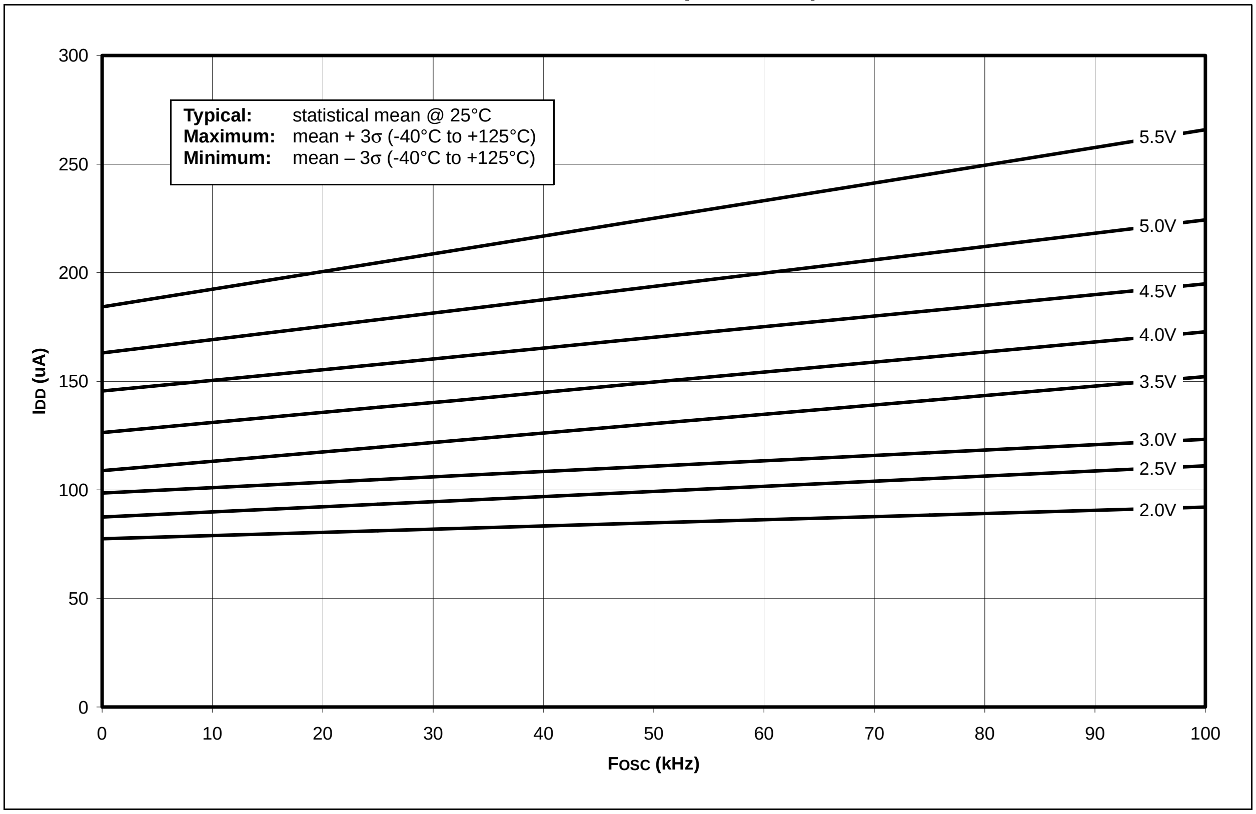


FIGURE 27-12: TYPICAL IDD vs. FOSC OVER VDD (EC MODE)

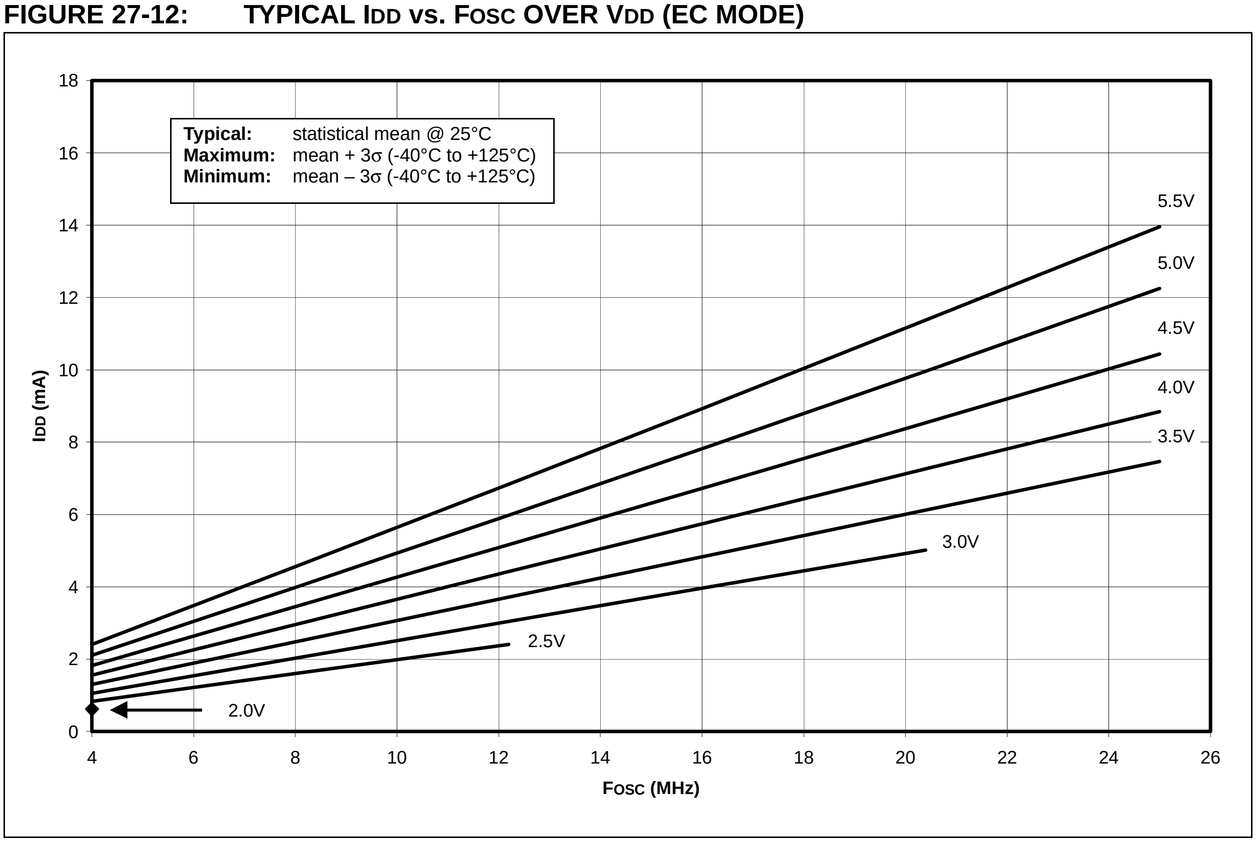


FIGURE 27-13: MAXIMUM IDD vs. FOSC OVER VDD (EC MODE)

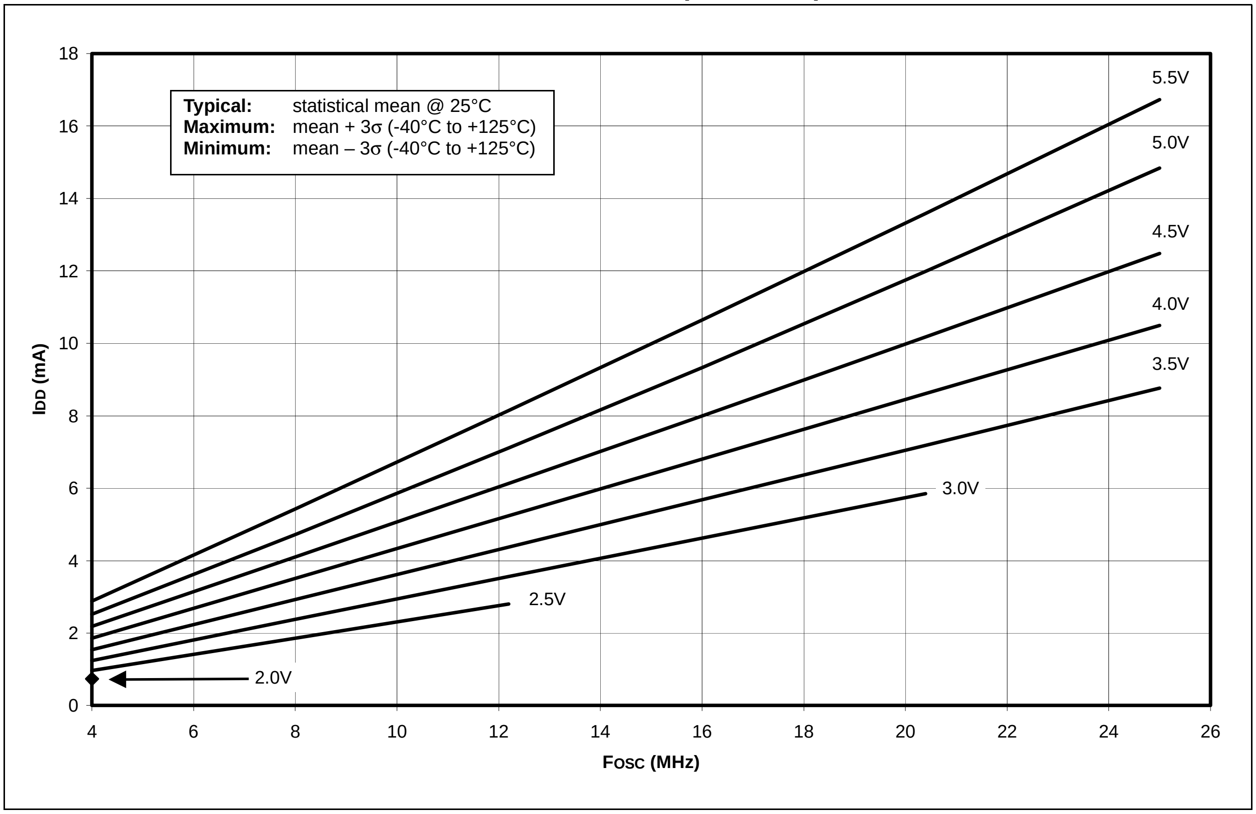


FIGURE 27-14: MAXIMUM IPD vs. VDD OVER TEMPERATURE

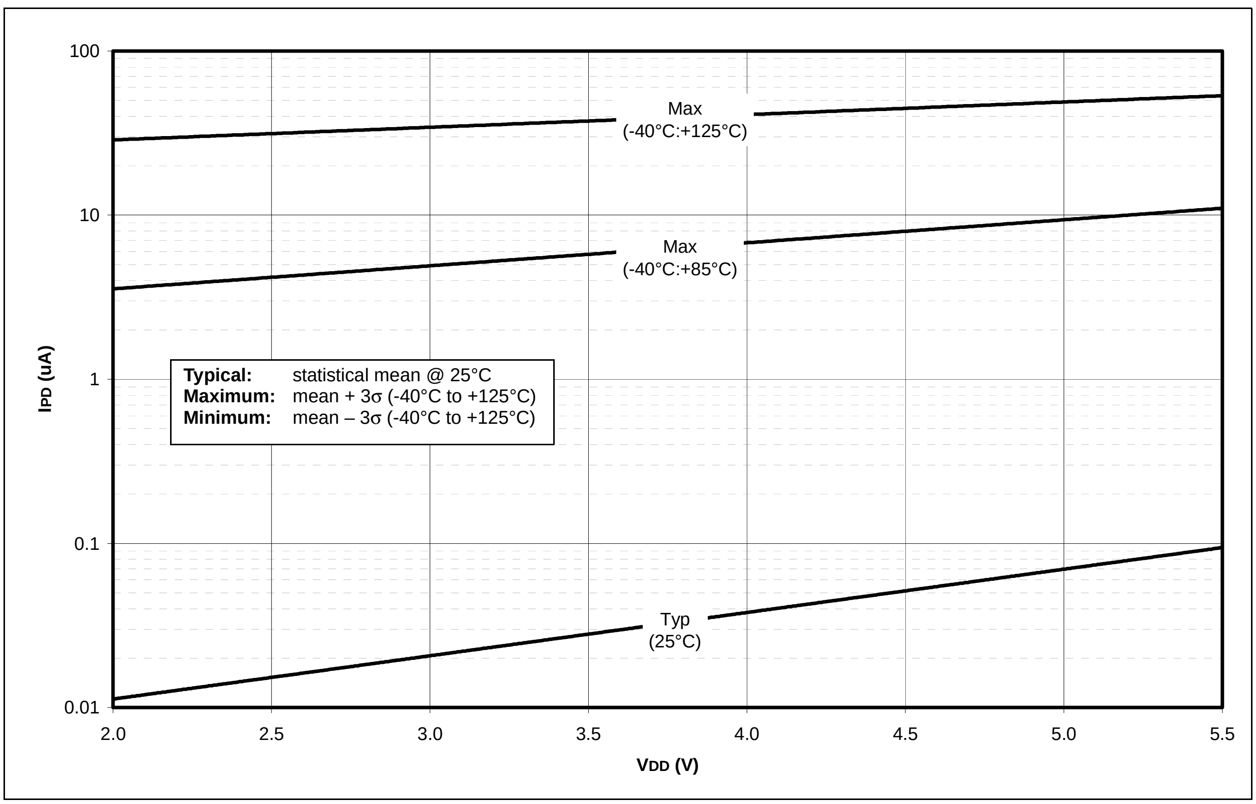


FIGURE 27-15: TYPICAL AND MAXIMUM I_{PD} vs. V_{DD} OVER TEMPERATURE (TIMER1 AS MAIN OSCILLATOR, 32.768 kHz, C1 AND C2 = 47 pF)

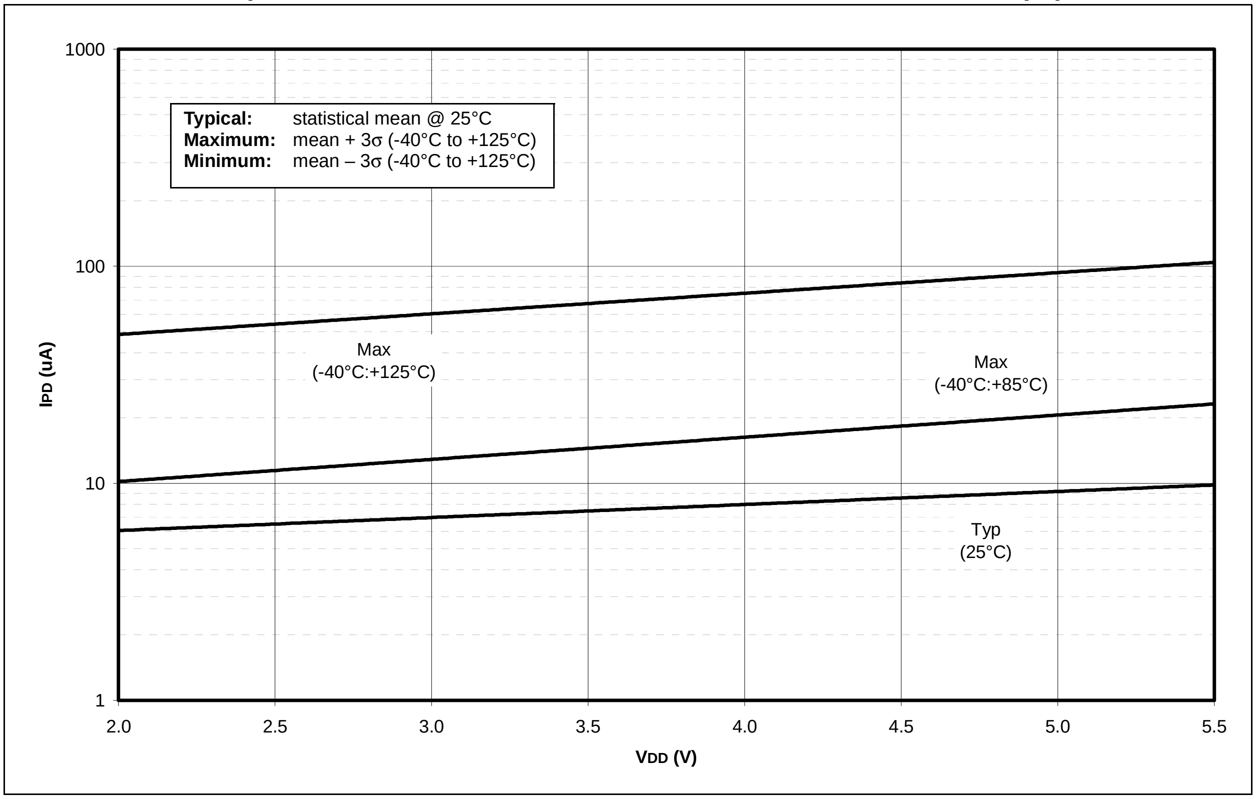


FIGURE 27-16: TYPICAL AND MAXIMUM ΔI_{WDT} vs. V_{DD} OVER TEMPERATURE (WDT ENABLED)

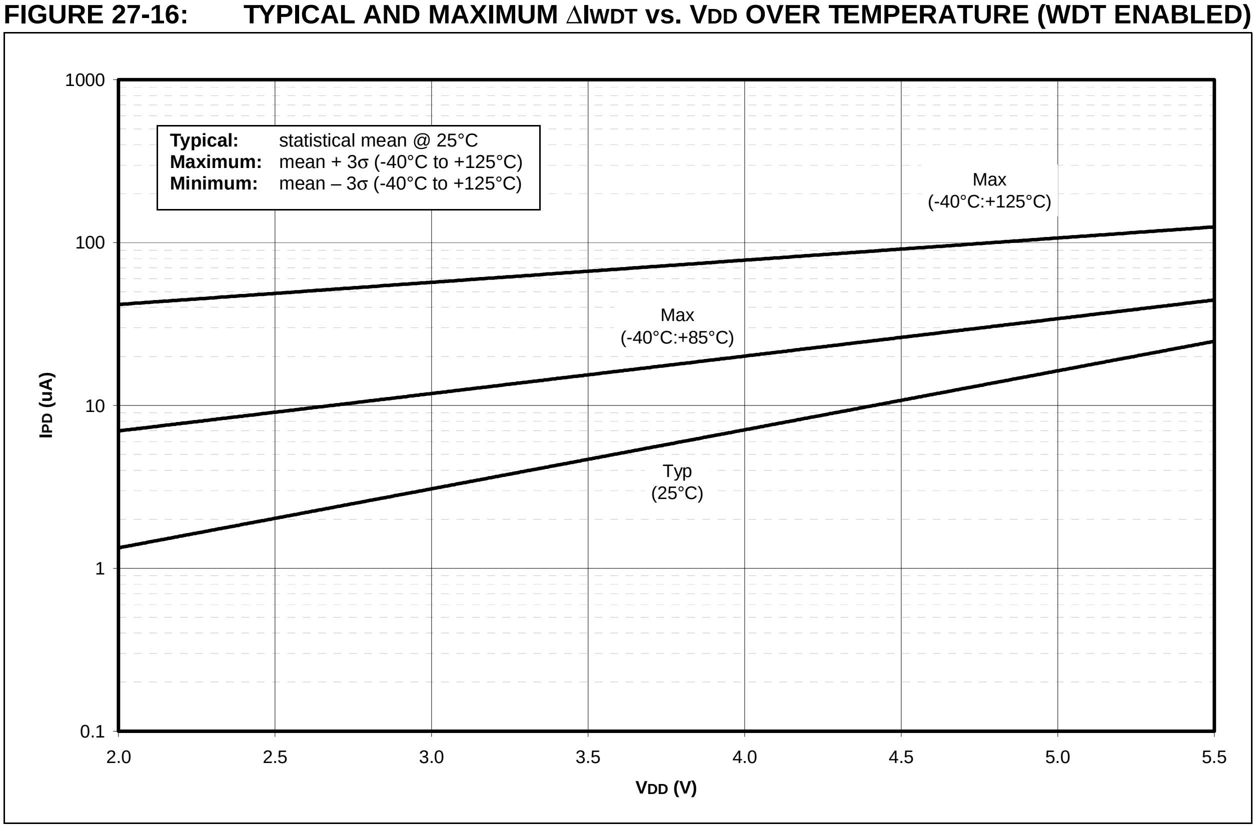


FIGURE 27-17: TYPICAL IDD vs. FOSC OVER VDD (EC MODE)

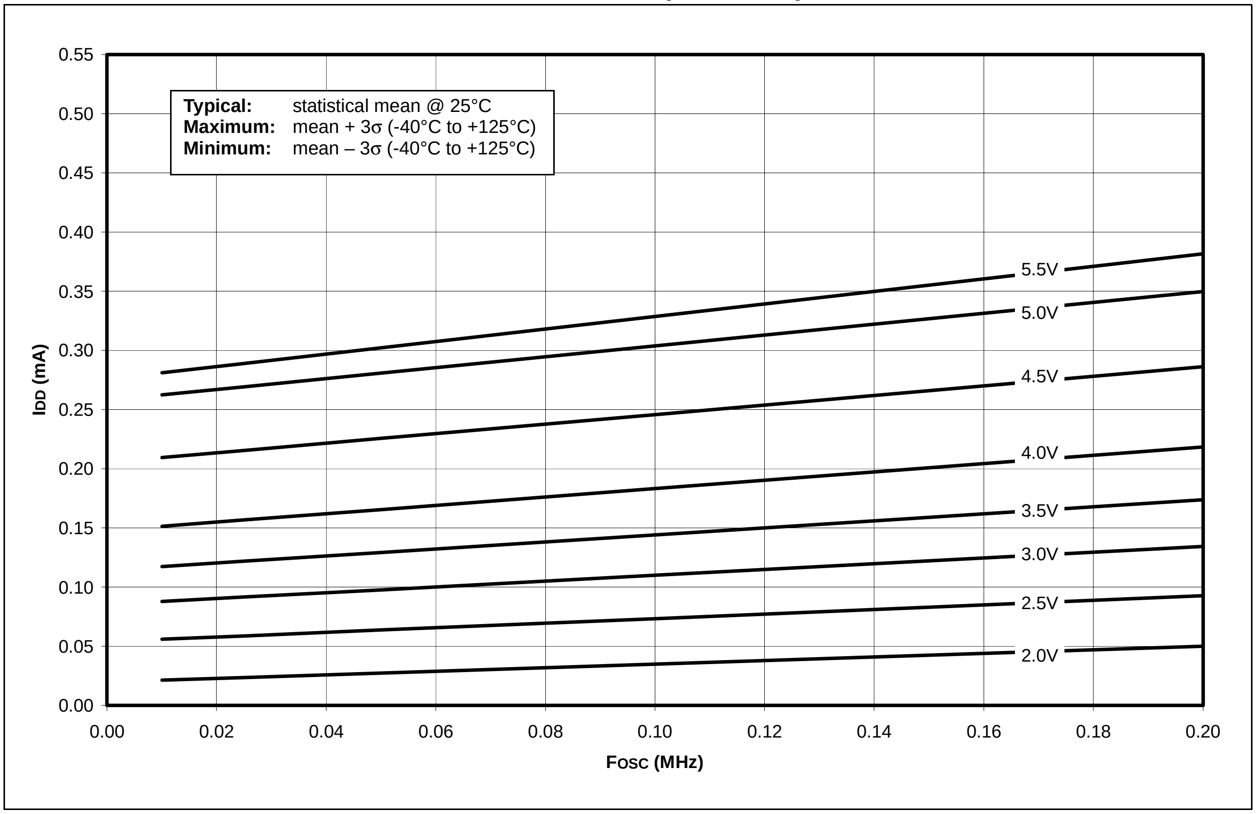


FIGURE 27-18: MAXIMUM IDD vs. FOSC OVER VDD (EC MODE)

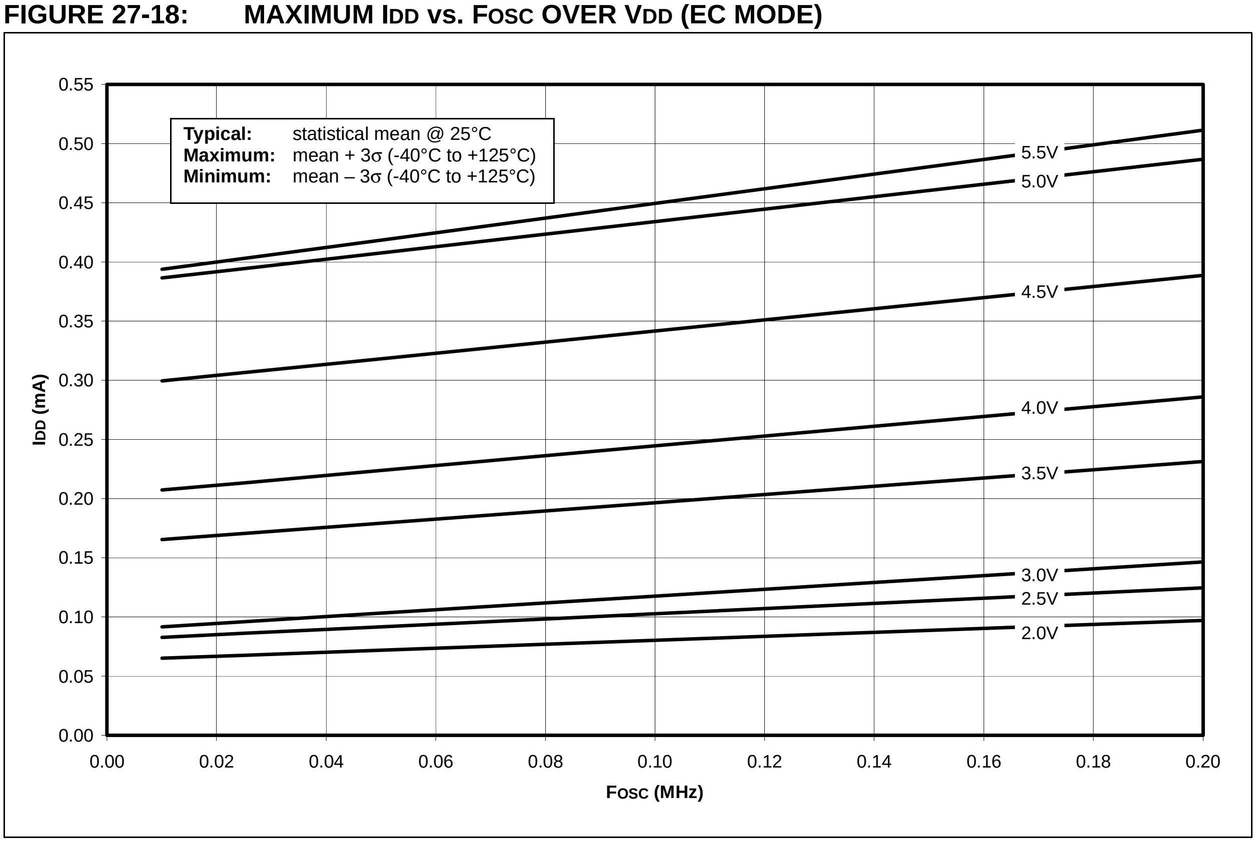


FIGURE 27-19: TYPICAL IDD vs. FOSC OVER VDD (EC MODE) (PIC18F8520 DEVICES ONLY)

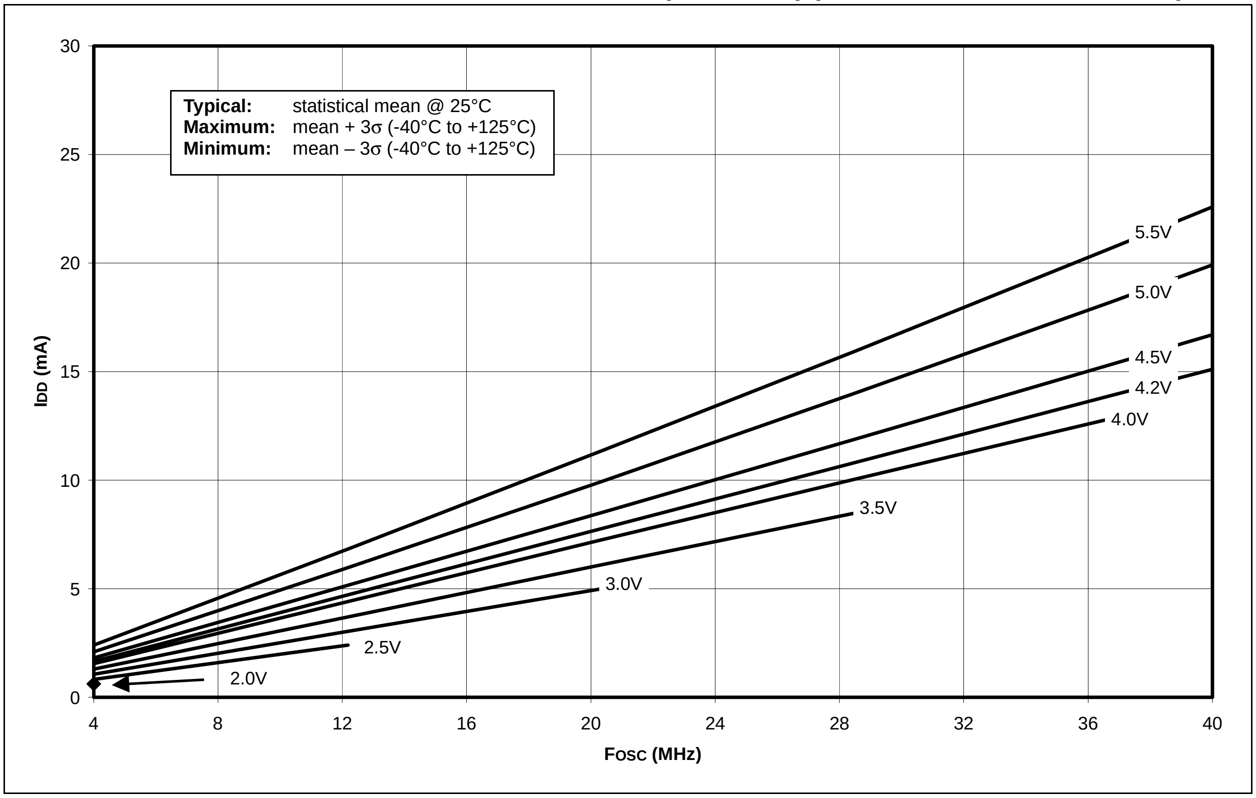


FIGURE 27-20: MAXIMUM IDD vs. FOSC OVER VDD (EC MODE) INDUSTRIAL (PIC18F8520 DEVICES ONLY)

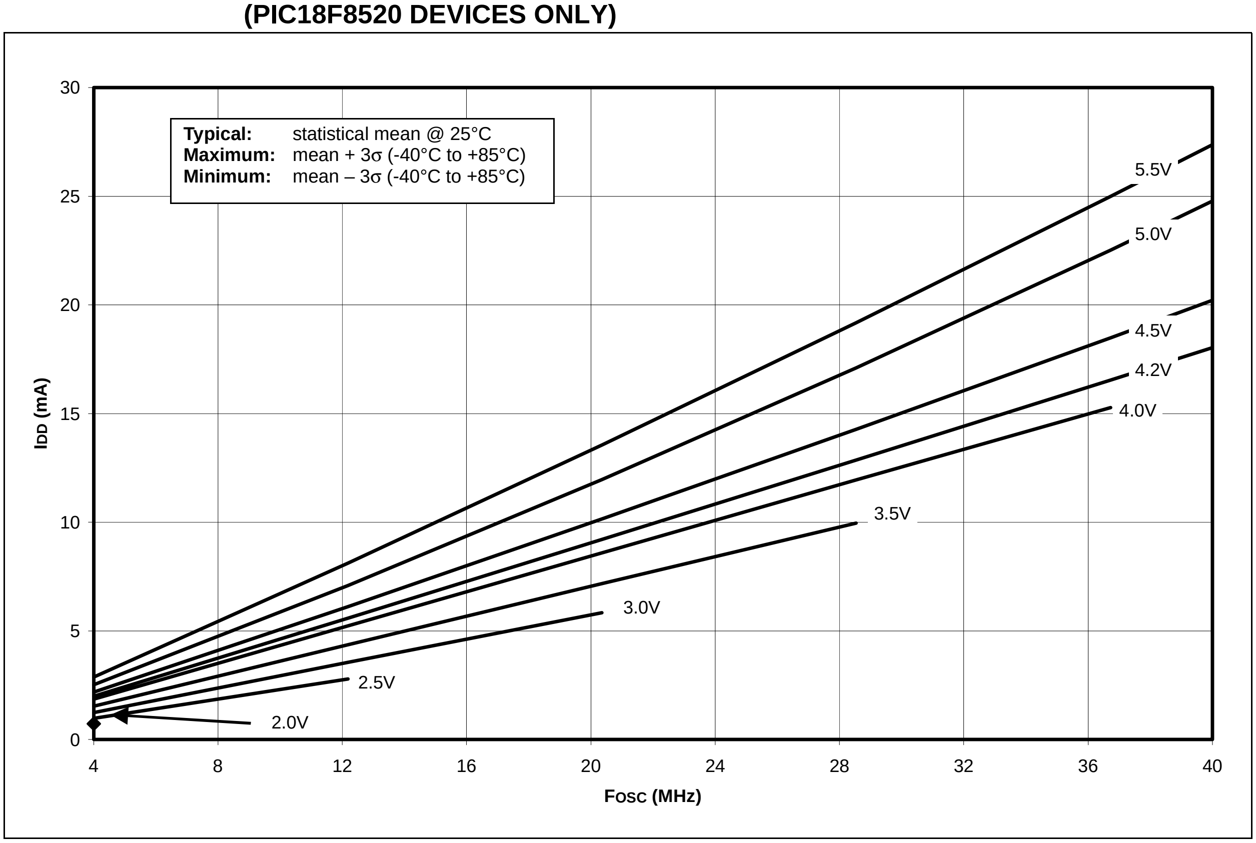


FIGURE 27-21: MAXIMUM IDD vs. FOSC OVER VDD (EC MODE) EXTENDED (PIC18F8520 DEVICES ONLY)

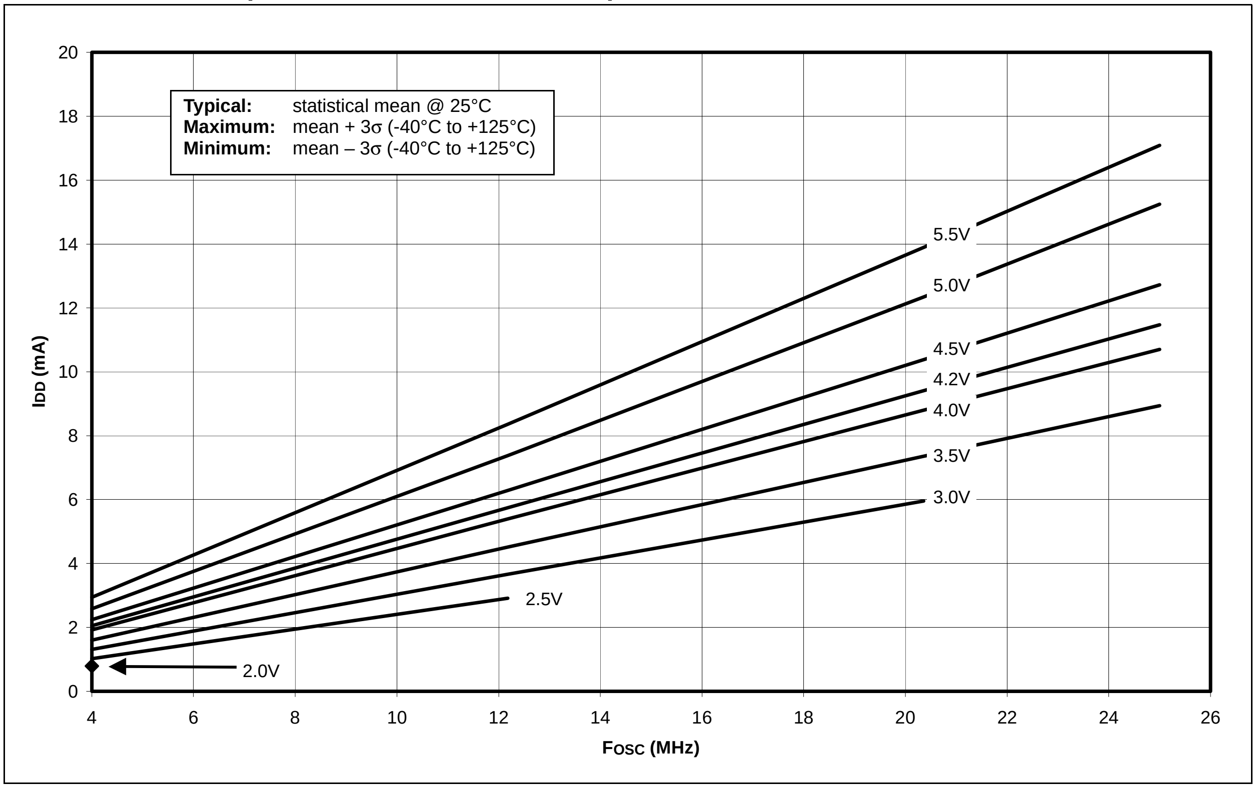


FIGURE 27-22: TYPICAL IDD vs. FOSC OVER VDD (HS/PLL MODE) (PIC18F8520 DEVICES ONLY)

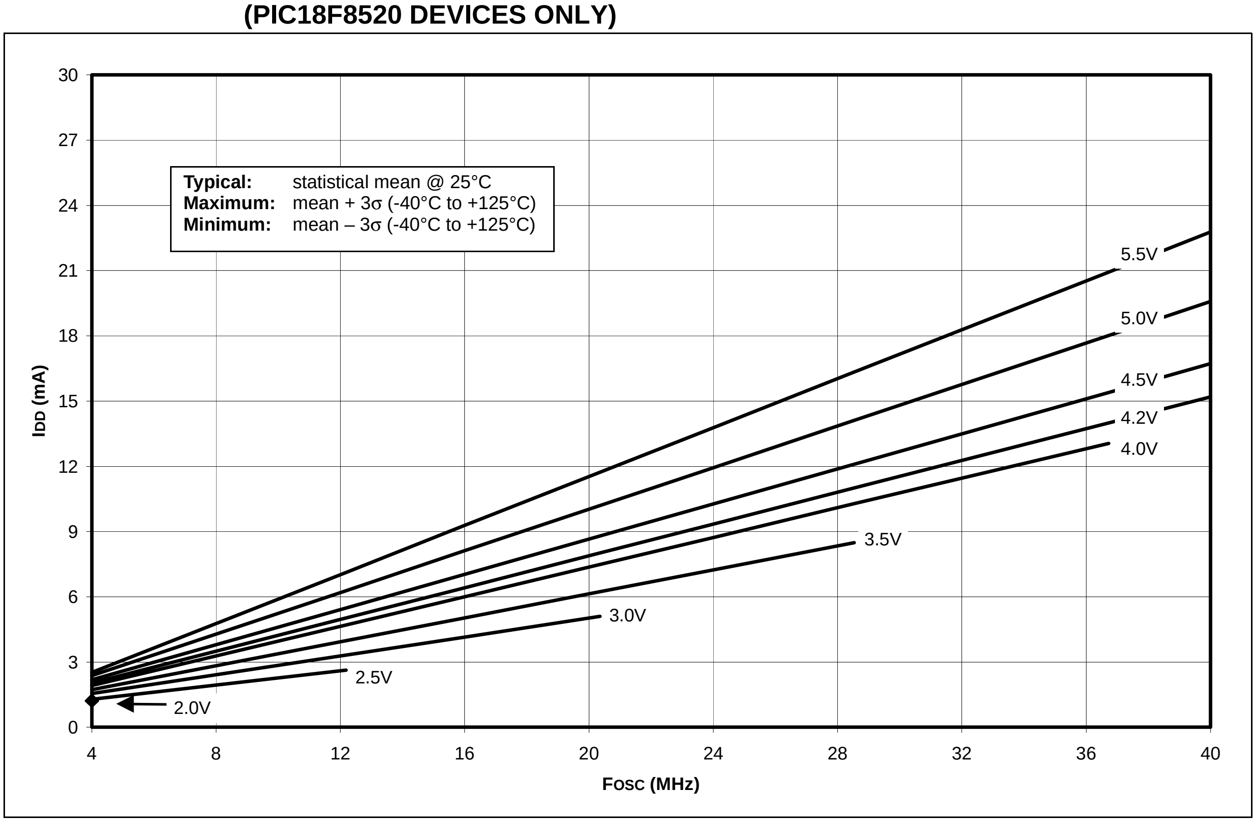


FIGURE 27-23: MAXIMUM IDD vs. FOSC OVER VDD (HS/PLL MODE) INDUSTRIAL (PIC18F8520 DEVICES ONLY)

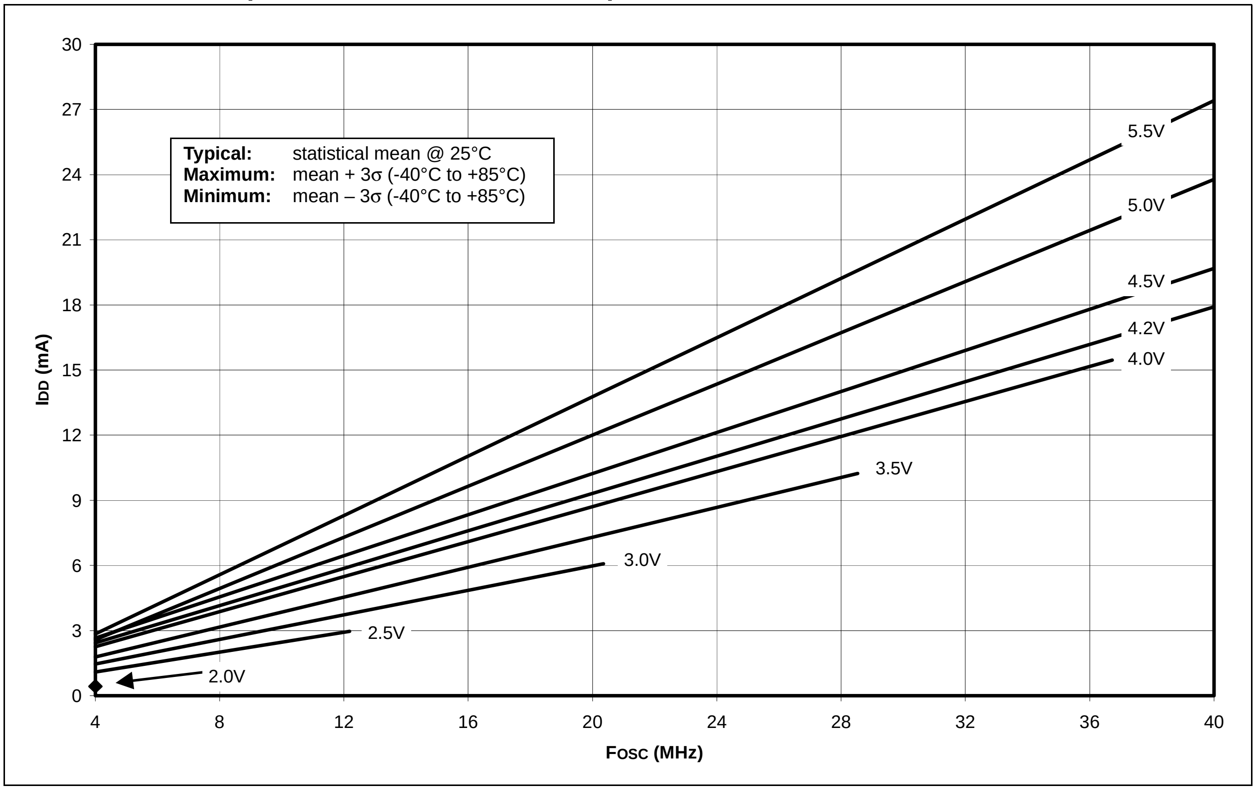


FIGURE 27-24: MAXIMUM IDD vs. FOSC OVER VDD (HS/PLL MODE) EXTENDED (PIC18F8520 DEVICES ONLY)

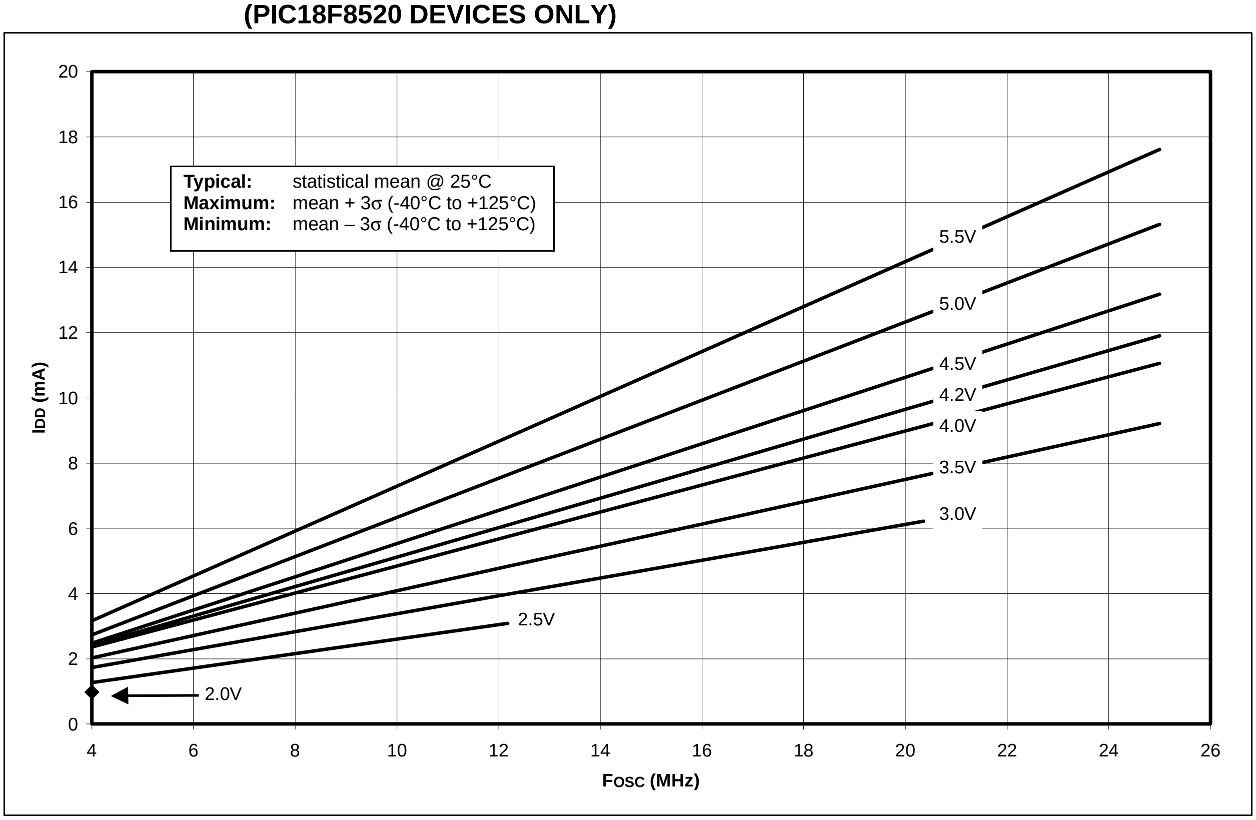


FIGURE 27-25: A/D NONLINEARITY vs. VREFH (VDD = VREFH, -40°C TO +125°C)

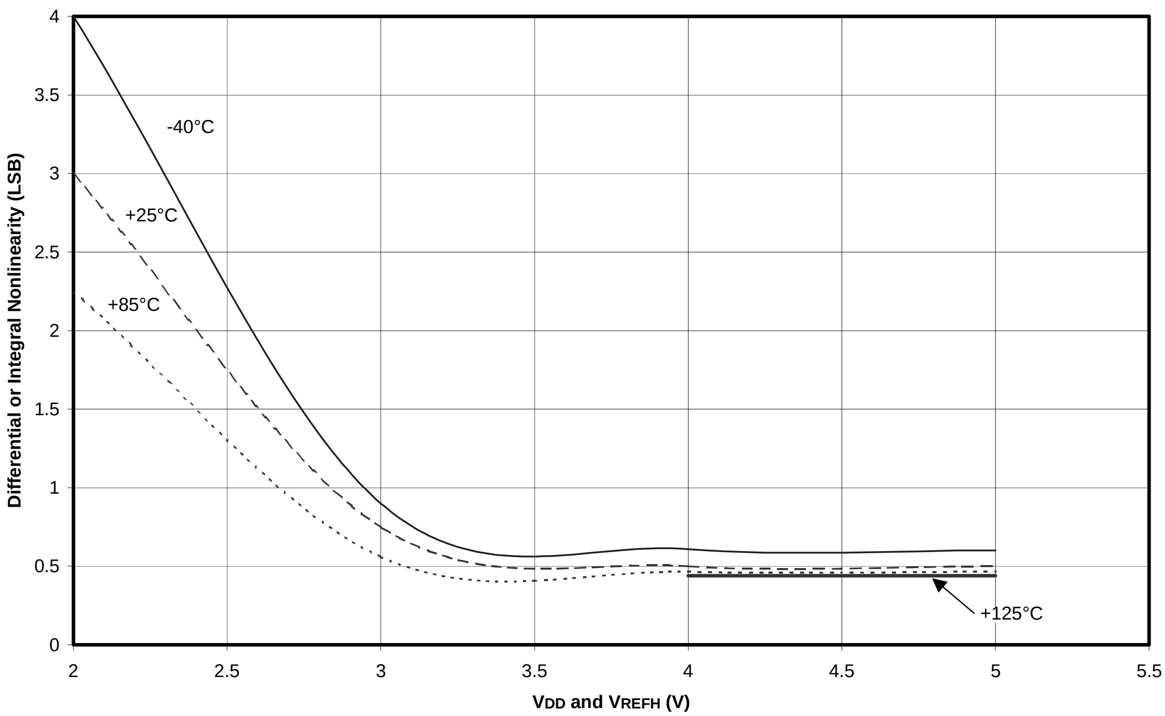
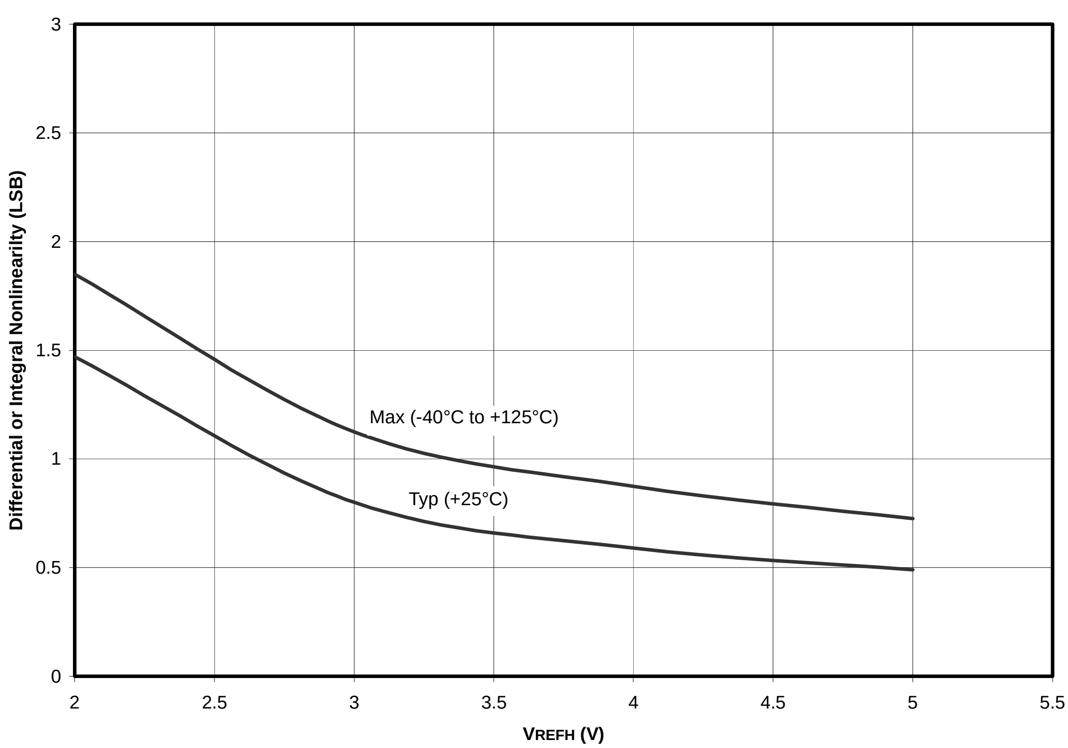


FIGURE 27-26: A/D NONLINEARITY vs. VREFH (VDD = 5V, -40°C TO +125°C)

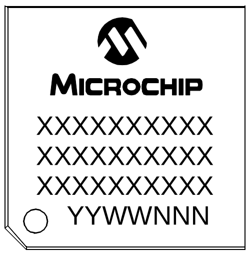


NOTES:

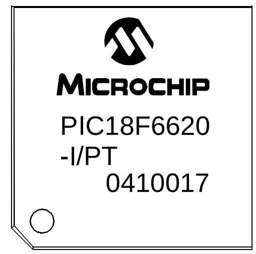
28.0 PACKAGING INFORMATION

28.1 Package Marking Information

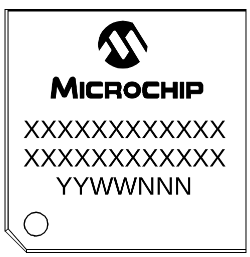
64-Lead TQFP



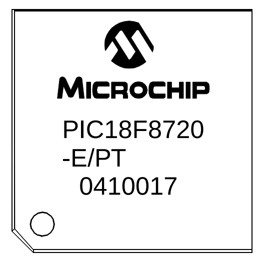
Example



80-Lead TQFP



Example



Legend:	XX...X	Customer specific information*
	Y	Year code (last digit of calendar year)
	YY	Year code (last 2 digits of calendar year)
	WW	Week code (week of January 1 is week ‘01’)
	NNN	Alphanumeric traceability code

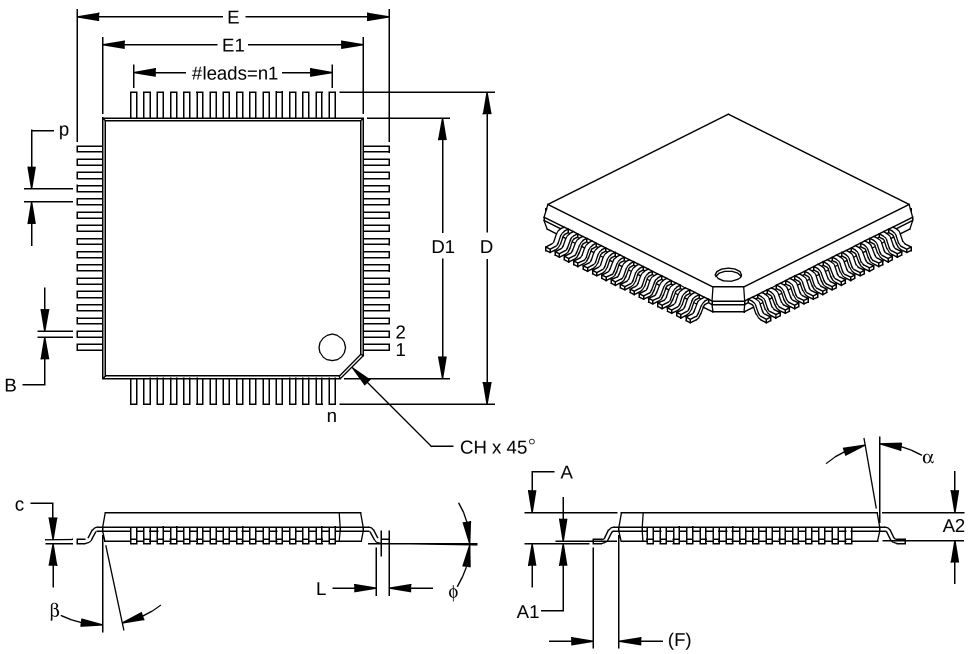
Note: In the event the full Microchip part number cannot be marked on one line, it will be carried over to the next line thus limiting the number of available characters for customer specific information.

***** Standard PICmicro device marking consists of Microchip part number, year code, week code, and traceability code. For PICmicro device marking beyond this, certain price adders apply. Please check with your Microchip Sales Office. For QTP devices, any special marking adders are included in QTP price.

28.2 Package Details

The following sections give the technical details of the packages.

64-Lead Plastic Thin Quad Flatpack (PT) 10x10x1 mm Body, 1.0/0.10 mm Lead Form (TQFP)

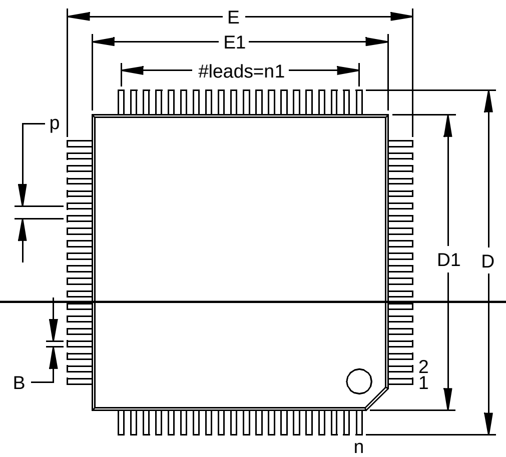


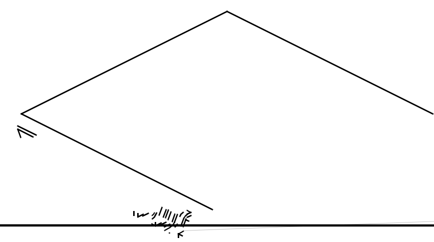
	Units	INCHES			MILLIMETERS*		
	Dimension Limits	MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX
Number of Pins	n		64			64	
Pitch	p		.020			0.50	
Pins per Side	n1		16			16	
Overall Height	A	.039	.043	.047	1.00	1.10	1.20
Molded Package Thickness	A2	.037	.039	.041	0.95	1.00	1.05
Standoff §	A1	.002	.006	.010	0.05	0.15	0.25
Foot Length	L	.018	.024	.030	0.45	0.60	0.75
Footprint (Reference)	(F)		.039			1.00	
Foot Angle	φ	0	3.5	7	0	3.5	7
Overall Width	E	.463	.472	.482	11.75	12.00	12.25
Overall Length	D	.463	.472	.482	11.75	12.00	12.25
Molded Package Width	E1	.390	.394	.398	9.90	10.00	10.10
Molded Package Length	D1	.390	.394	.398	9.90	10.00	10.10
Lead Thickness	c	.005	.007	.009	0.13	0.18	0.23
Lead Width	B	.007	.009	.011	0.17	0.22	0.27
Pin 1 Corner Chamfer	CH	.025	.035	.045	0.64	0.89	1.14
Mold Draft Angle Top	α	5	10	15	5	10	15
Mold Draft Angle Bottom	β	5	10	15	5	10	15

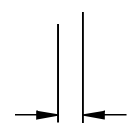
* Controlling Parameter
§ Significant Characteristic

Notes:
Dimensions D1 and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed .010” (0.254mm) per side.
JEDEC Equivalent: MS-026
Drawing No. C04-085

80-Lead Plastic Thin Quad Flatpack (PT) 12x12x1 mm Body, 1.0/0.10 mm Lead Form (TQFP)







		.039	.043		1.00	1.10	
Footprint (Reference)	(F)		.039			1.00	
Pin 1 Corner Chamfer	CH	.025	.035	.045	0.64	0.89	1.14

* Controlling Parameter

Notes:
Dimensions D1 and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed .010" (0.254mm) per side.
JEDEC Equivalent: MS-026
Drawing No. C04-092

NOTES:

APPENDIX A: REVISION HISTORY

Revision A (January 2003)

Original data sheet for the PIC18FXX20 family which includes PIC18F6520, PIC18F6620, PIC18F6720, PIC18F8520, PIC18F8620 and PIC18F8720 devices.

This data sheet is based on the previous PIC18FXX20 Data Sheet (DS39580).

Revision B (January 2004)

This revision includes the DC and AC Characteristics Graphs and Tables. The Electrical Specifications in **Section 26.0 "Electrical Characteristics"** have been updated and there have been minor corrections to the data sheet text.

APPENDIX B: DEVICE DIFFERENCES

The differences between the devices listed in this data sheet are shown in Table B-1.

TABLE B-1: DEVICE DIFFERENCES

Feature	PIC18F6520	PIC18F6620	PIC18F6720	PIC18F8520	PIC18F8620	PIC18F8720
On-Chip Program Memory (Kbytes)	32	64	128	32	64	128
Data Memory (bytes)	2048	3840	3840	2048	3840	3840
Boot Block (bytes)	2048	512	512	2048	512	512
Timer1 Low-Power Option	Yes	No	No	Yes	No	No
I/O Ports	Ports A, B, C, D, E, F, G	Ports A, B, C, D, E, F, G	Ports A, B, C, D, E, F, G	Ports A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, J	Ports A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, J	Ports A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, J
A/D Channels	12	12	12	16	16	16
External Memory Interface	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Maximum Operating Frequency (MHz)	40	25	25	40	25	25
Package Types	64-pin TQFP	64-pin TQFP	64-pin TQFP	80-pin TQFP	80-pin TQFP	80-pin TQFP

APPENDIX C: CONVERSION CONSIDERATIONS

This appendix discusses the considerations for converting from previous versions of a device to the ones listed in this data sheet. Typically, these changes are due to the differences in the process technology used. An example of this type of conversion is from a PIC17C756 to a PIC18F8720.

Not Currently Available

APPENDIX D: MIGRATION FROM MID-RANGE TO ENHANCED DEVICES

A detailed discussion of the differences between the mid-range MCU devices (i.e., PIC16CXXX) and the enhanced devices (i.e., PIC18FXXX) is provided in *AN716, "Migrating Designs from PIC16C74A/74B to PIC18C442"*. The changes discussed, while device specific, are generally applicable to all mid-range to enhanced device migrations.

This Application Note is available as Literature Number DS00716.

APPENDIX E: MIGRATION FROM HIGH-END TO ENHANCED DEVICES

A detailed discussion of the migration pathway and differences between the high-end MCU devices (i.e., PIC17CXXX) and the enhanced devices (i.e., PIC18FXXXX) is provided in *AN726, "PIC17CXXX to PIC18CXXX Migration*". This Application Note is available as Literature Number DS00726.

NOTES:

INDEX

K

L

M

Q

R

S

NOTES:

ON-LINE SUPPORT

Microchip provides on-line support on the Microchip World Wide Web site.

The web site is used by Microchip as a means to make files and information easily available to customers. To view the site, the user must have access to the Internet and a web browser, such as Netscape® or Microsoft® Internet Explorer. Files are also available for FTP download from our FTP site.

Connecting to the Microchip Internet Web Site

The Microchip web site is available at the following URL:

www.microchip.com

The file transfer site is available by using an FTP service to connect to:

ftp://ftp.microchip.com

The web site and file transfer site provide a variety of services. Users may download files for the latest Development Tools, Data Sheets, Application Notes, User's Guides, Articles and Sample Programs. A variety of Microchip specific business information is also available, including listings of Microchip sales offices, distributors and factory representatives. Other data available for consideration is:

- Latest Microchip Press Releases
- Technical Support Section with Frequently Asked Questions
- Design Tips
- Device Errata
- Job Postings
- Microchip Consultant Program Member Listing
- Links to other useful web sites related to Microchip Products
- Conferences for products, Development Systems, technical information and more
- Listing of seminars and events

SYSTEMS INFORMATION AND UPGRADE HOT LINE

The Systems Information and Upgrade Line provides system users a listing of the latest versions of all of Microchip's development systems software products. Plus, this line provides information on how customers can receive the most current upgrade kits. The Hot Line Numbers are:

1-800-755-2345 for U.S. and most of Canada, and

1-480-792-7302 for the rest of the world.

042003

READER RESPONSE

It is our intention to provide you with the best documentation possible to ensure successful use of your Microchip product. If you wish to provide your comments on organization, clarity, subject matter, and ways in which our documentation can better serve you, please FAX your comments to the Technical Publications Manager at (480) 792-4150.

Please list the following information, and use this outline to provide us with your comments about this document.

To: Technical Publications Manager Total Pages Sent ________

RE: Reader Response

From: Name ____

Company ____

Address ____

City / State / ZIP / Country ____

Telephone: (_______) _________ - _________ FAX: (______) _________ - _________

Application (optional):

Would you like a reply?____Y ____N

Device: PIC18F6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720 Literature Number: DS39609B

Questions:

1. What are the best features of this document?

____

____

2. How does this document meet your hardware and software development needs?

____

____

3. Do you find the organization of this document easy to follow? If not, why?

____

____

4. What additions to the document do you think would enhance the structure and subject?

____

____

5. What deletions from the document could be made without affecting the overall usefulness?

____

____

6. Is there any incorrect or misleading information (what and where)?

____

____

7. How would you improve this document?

____

____

PIC18F6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720 PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION SYSTEM

To order or obtain information, e.g., on pricing or delivery, refer to the factory or the listed sales office.

PART NO.	–	X	/XX	XXX
Device		Temperature Range	Package	Pattern

Device	PIC18F6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720(1), PIC18F6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720T(2); VDD range 4.2V to 5.5V PIC18LF6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720(1), PIC18LF6520/8520/6620/8620/6720/8720T(2); VDD range 2.0V to 5.5V	
Temperature Range	I = -40°C to +85°C (Industrial) E = -40°C to +125°C (Extended)	
Package	PT = TQFP (Thin Quad Flatpack)	

°

WORLDWIDE SALES AND SERVICE

AMERICAS

Corporate Office
2355 West Chandler Blvd.
Chandler, AZ 85224-6199
Tel: 480-792-7200
Fax: 480-792-7277
Technical Support: 480-792-7627
Web Address: http://www.microchip.com

Atlanta
3780 Mansell Road, Suite 130
Alpharetta, GA 30022
Tel: 770-640-0034
Fax: 770-640-0307

Boston
2 Lan Drive, Suite 120
Westford, MA 01886
Tel: 978-692-3848
Fax: 978-692-3821

Chicago
333 Pierce Road, Suite 180
Itasca, IL 60143
Tel: 630-285-0071
Fax: 630-285-0075

Dallas
4570 Westgrove Drive, Suite 160
Addison, TX 75001
Tel: 972-818-7423
Fax: 972-818-2924

Detroit
Tri-Atria Office Building
32255 Northwestern Highway, Suite 190
Farmington Hills, MI 48334
Tel: 248-538-2250
Fax: 248-538-2260

Kokomo
2767 S. Albright Road
Kokomo, IN 46902
Tel: 765-864-8360
Fax: 765-864-8387

Los Angeles
18201 Von Karman, Suite 1090
Irvine, CA 92612
Tel: 949-263-1888
Fax: 949-263-1338

Phoenix
2355 West Chandler Blvd.
Chandler, AZ 85224-6199
Tel: 480-792-7966
Fax: 480-792-4338

San Jose
1300 Terra Bella Avenue
Mountain View, CA 94043
Tel: 650-215-1444

Toronto
6285 Northam Drive, Suite 108
Mississauga, Ontario L4V 1X5, Canada
Tel: 905-673-0699
Fax: 905-673-6509

ASIA/PACIFIC

Australia
Suite 22, 41 Rawson Street
Epping 2121, NSW
Australia
Tel: 61-2-9868-6733
Fax: 61-2-9868-6755

China - Beijing
Unit 706B
Wan Tai Bei Hai Bldg.
No. 6 Chaoyangmen Bei Str.
Beijing, 100027, China
Tel: 86-10-85282100
Fax: 86-10-85282104

China - Chengdu
Rm. 2401-2402, 24th Floor,
Ming Xing Financial Tower
No. 88 TIDU Street
Chengdu 610016, China
Tel: 86-28-86766200
Fax: 86-28-86766599

China - Fuzhou
Unit 28F, World Trade Plaza
No. 71 Wusi Road
Fuzhou 350001, China
Tel: 86-591-7503506
Fax: 86-591-7503521

China - Hong Kong SAR
Unit 901-6, Tower 2, Metroplaza
223 Hing Fong Road
Kwai Fong, N.T., Hong Kong
Tel: 852-2401-1200
Fax: 852-2401-3431

China - Shanghai
Room 701, Bldg. B
Far East International Plaza
No. 317 Xian Xia Road
Shanghai, 200051
Tel: 86-21-6275-5700
Fax: 86-21-6275-5060

China - Shenzhen
Rm. 1812, 18/F, Building A, United Plaza
No. 5022 Binhe Road, Futian District
Shenzhen 518033, China
Tel: 86-755-82901380
Fax: 86-755-8295-1393

China - Shunde
Room 401, Hongjian Building, No. 2
Fengxiangnan Road, Ronggui Town, Shunde
District, Foshan City, Guangdong 528303, China
Tel: 86-757-28395507 Fax: 86-757-28395571

China - Qingdao
Rm. B505A, Fullhope Plaza,
No. 12 Hong Kong Central Rd.
Qingdao 266071, China
Tel: 86-532-5027355 Fax: 86-532-5027205

India
Divyasree Chambers
1 Floor, Wing A (A3/A4)
No. 11, O'Shaugnessey Road
Bangalore, 560 025, India
Tel: 91-80-2290061 Fax: 91-80-2290062

Japan
Benex S-1 6F
3-18-20, Shinyokohama
Kohoku-Ku, Yokohama-shi
Kanagawa, 222-0033, Japan
Tel: 81-45-471- 6166 Fax: 81-45-471-6122

Korea
168-1, Youngbo Bldg. 3 Floor
Samsung-Dong, Kangnam-Ku
Seoul, Korea 135-882
Tel: 82-2-554-7200 Fax: 82-2-558-5932 or
82-2-558-5934

Singapore
200 Middle Road
#07-02 Prime Centre
Singapore, 188980
Tel: 65-6334-8870 Fax: 65-6334-8850

Taiwan
Kaohsiung Branch
30F - 1 No. 8
Min Chuan 2nd Road
Kaohsiung 806, Taiwan
Tel: 886-7-536-4818
Fax: 886-7-536-4803

Taiwan
Taiwan Branch
11F-3, No. 207
Tung Hua North Road
Taipei, 105, Taiwan
Tel: 886-2-2717-7175 Fax: 886-2-2545-0139

EUROPE

Austria
Durisolstrasse 2
A-4600 Wels
Austria
Tel: 43-7242-2244-399
Fax: 43-7242-2244-393

Denmark
Regus Business Centre
Lautrup hoj 1-3
Ballerup DK-2750 Denmark
Tel: 45-4420-9895 Fax: 45-4420-9910

France
Parc d'Activite du Moulin de Massy
43 Rue du Saule Trapu
Batiment A - ler Etage
91300 Massy, France
Tel: 33-1-69-53-63-20
Fax: 33-1-69-30-90-79

Germany
Steinheilstrasse 10
D-85737 Ismaning, Germany
Tel: 49-89-627-144-0
Fax: 49-89-627-144-44

Italy
Via Quasimodo, 12
20025 Legnano (MI)
Milan, Italy
Tel: 39-0331-742611
Fax: 39-0331-466781

Netherlands
P. A. De Biesbosch 14
NL-5152 SC Drunen, Netherlands
Tel: 31-416-690399
Fax: 31-416-690340

United Kingdom
505 Eskdale Road
Winnersh Triangle
Wokingham
Berkshire, England RG41 5TU
Tel: 44-118-921-5869
Fax: 44-118-921-5820

01/08/04